National Défense
Defence nationale

A-CR-CCP-703/PF-001

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

BOOK 2 OF 2

SILVER STAR INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDES

(ENGLISH)

Cette publication est disponible en français sous le numéro A-CR-CCP-703/PF-002.

Issued on Authority of the Chief of the Defence Staff

Canada

National Défense
Defence nationale

A-CR-CCP-703/PF-001

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

BOOK 2 OF 2

SILVER STAR INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDES

(ENGLISH)

Cette publication est disponible en français sous le numéro A-CR-CCP-703/PF-002.

Issued on Authority of the Chief of the Defence Staff

OPI: D Cdts 3 – Senior Staff Officer Cadet Programs Development **2008-07-02**

Canada

LIST OF EFFECTIVE PAGES

Insert latest changed pages and dispose of superseded pages in accordance with applicable orders.

NOTE

The portion of the text affected by the latest change is indicated by a black vertical line in the margin of the page. Changes to illustrations are indicated by miniature pointing hands or black vertical lines.

Dates of issue for original and changed pages are:

Original	0	2008-07-02	Ch	3	
Ch	1		Ch	4	
Ch	2		Ch	5	

Zero in Change No. column indicates an original page. Total number of pages in this publication is 849 consisting of the following:

BOOK 2

Page No.	Change No.
Cover page	0
Title	0
A to C	0
i to xvi	0
11-1-1 to 11-1-6	0
11-2-1 to 11-2-6	0
11-3-1 to 11-3-14	0
11-4-1 to 11-4-8	0
11-5-1 to 11-5-6	0
11-6-1 to 11-6-2	0
11-7-1 to 11-7-4	0
11A-1 to 11A-2	0
11B-1 to 11B-2	0
11C-1 to 11C-2	0
11D-1 to 11D-2	0
11E-1 11E-2	0
11F-1 to 11F-4	0
11G-1 to 11G-2	0
11H-1 to 11H-2	0
11I-1 to 11I-2	0
11J-1 to 11J-2	0
11K-1 to 11K-2	0
11L-1 to 11L-2	0
11M-1 to 11M-2	0
11N-1 to 11N-2	0
11O-1 to 11O-2	0
11P-1 to 11P-2	0
11Q-1 to 11Q-2	0
11R-1 to 11R-4	0
11S-1 to 11S-2	0
11T-1 to 11T-2	0
11U-1 to 11U-2	0
11V-1 to 11V-4	0
11W-1 to 11W-2	0
11X-1 to 11X-2	0
11Y-1 to 11Y-2	0
11Z-1 to 11Z-2	0
11AA-1 to 11AA-2	0
11AB-1 to 11AB-2	0
11AC-1 to 11AC-2	0
11AD-1 to 11AD-48	0
11AE-1 to 11AE-2	0
11AF-1 to 11AF-2	0
11AG-1 to 11AG-2	0
11AH-1 to 11AH-2	0
11AI-1 to 11AI-2	0
11AJ-1 to 11AJ-2	0
11AK-1 to 11AK-2	0
11AL-1 to 11AL-2	0
11AM-1 to 11AM-2	0
11AN-1 to 11AN-2	0
11AO-1 to 11AO-4	0
11AP-1 to 11AP-2	0

LIST OF EFFECTIVE PAGES (Cont)

Page No.	Change No.
11AQ-1 to 11AQ-2	0
11AR-1 to 11AR-2	0
11AS-1 to 11AS-2	0
11AT-1 to 11AT-2	0
11AU-1 to 11AU-2	0
11AV-1 to 11AV-2	0
11AW-1 to 11AW-8	0
12-1-1 to 12-1-6	0
12-2-1 to 12-2-10	0
12-3-1 to 12-3-14	0
12-4-1 to 12-4-10	0
12-5-1 to 12-5-20	0
12A-1 to 12A-2	0
12B-1 to 12B-6	0
13-1-1 to 13-1-14	0
13-2-1 to 13-2-10	0
13-3-1 to 13-3-10	0
13-4-1 to 13-4-10	0
13-5-1 to 13-5-18	0
13-6-1 to 13-6-14	0
13-7-1 to 13-7-8	0
13-8-1 to 13-8-14	0
13-9-1 to 13-9-12	0
13-10-1 to 13-10-4	0
13A-1 to 13A-2	0
13B-1 to 13B-2	0
13C-1 to 13C-2	0
13D-1 to 13D-2	0
13E-1 to 13E-2	0
13F-1 to 13F-2	0
14-1-1 to 14-1-10	0
14-2-1 to 14-2-10	0
14-3-1 to 14-3-12	0
14-4-1 to 14-4-14	0
14-5-1 to 14-5-14	0
14-6-1 to 14-6-14	0
14-7-1 to 14-7-12	0
14-8-1 to 14-8-14	0
14-9-1 to 14-9-20	0
14-10-1 to 14-10-16	0
14A-1 to 14A-2	0
14B-1 to 14B-2	0
14C-1 to 14C-2	0
14D-1 to 14D-2	0
14E-1 to 14E-2	0
14F-1 to 14F-8	0
14G-1 to 14G-2	0
14H-1 to 14H-2	0
14I-1 to 14I-2	0
14J-1 to 14J-6	0
15-1-1 to 15-1-12	0
15-2-1 to 15-2-14	0
15-3-1 to 15-3-8	0
15-4-1 to 15-4-18	0
15-5-1 to 15-5-8	0
15A-1 to 15A-2	0
15B-1 to 15B-2	0
15C-1 to 15C-2	0
15D-1 to 15D-2	0
15E-1 to 15E-2	0
15F-1 to 15F-6	0
15G-1 to 15G-4	0
15H-1 to 15H-2	0
15I-1 to 15I-2	0
15J-1 to 15J-6	0
16-1-1 to 16-1-10	0
16-2-1 to 16-2-38	0
16-3-1 to 16-3-32	0
16-4-1 to 16-4-24	0
16-5-1 to 16-5-12	0
16-6-1 to 16-6-12	0
16-7-1 to 16-7-14	0
16-8-1 to 16-8-18	0
16-9-1 to 16-9-8	0
16A-1 to 16A-6	0

Contact Officer: D Cdts 3-2-5 – Army Cadet Program Development Staff Officer

© 2009 DND/MDN Canada

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

FOREWORD AND PREFACE

1. **Issuing Authority.** This Instructional Guide (IG) A-CR-CCP-703/PF-001 was developed under the authority of the Director Cadets and Junior Canadian Rangers, and issued on the authority of the Chief of Defence Staff.

2. **Development.** Development of this IG was in accordance with the performance oriented concept of training outlined in the A-P9-050 Series, Canadian Forces Individual Training and Education System, with modifications to meet the needs of the Canadian Cadet Organization.

3. **Purpose of the IG.** The IG to be used by Royal Canadian Army Cadet Corps in conjunction with other resources to conduct the Silver Star Program. The IG provides instructors with the base means from which to deliver training. Individual IGs are to be reviewed in conjunction with the Lesson Specifications (LSs) found in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, *Royal Canadian Army Cadets – Silver Star – Qualification Standard and Plan*, Chapter 4, before instructing, so that each instructor can adequately plan for and prepare each lesson. Instructors may be required to develop instructional materials to support training in addition to any that may be provided, eg, posters, videos, handouts, models, etc, supplemental to training control and support documents. Suggested instructional activities are included in most IGs to maximize learning and fun. Instructors are also encouraged to modify and/or enhance the activities, as long as they continue to contribute to enabling objective achievement.

4. **Use of the IG.** Throughout these instructional guides, a series of information boxes are used to highlight information; they include:

Note to the Instructor.

Key information to pass along to cadets.

Refer to the following CF regulations and policies.

Points of interest or special instructions the instructor should pass along to cadets.

5. **Suggested Changes.** Suggested changes to this document shall be forwarded through the normal chain of command to National Defence Headquarters (NDHQ) Attention: Army Cadet Program Development Staff Officer (D Cdts 3-2-5), or by e-mail to arm.dev@cadets.gc.ca. Suggested changes shall be in tabular format with three columns to capture; the page number, the paragraph/sub-paragraph number and suggested text amendment.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

BOOK 2

CHAPTER 11	**PO 320 – RECOGNIZE THE VALOUR OF MEMBERS OF THE CANADIAN ARMY**	
Section 1	EO M320.01 – IDENTIFY CANADIAN HISTORICAL SITES AND THEIR SIGNIFICANCE	11-1-1
Section 2	EO M320.02 – DEFINE VALOUR	11-2-1
Section 3	EO M320.03 – DISCUSS WAYS CANADIAN CITIZENS RECOGNIZE THE SERVICE OF CANADIAN FORCES (CF) MEMBERS	11-3-1
Section 4	EO C320.01 – VIEW *HISTORICA MINUTES* OF CANADIAN MILITARY HISTORY	11-4-1
Section 5	EO C320.02 – IDENTIFY HONOURS AND AWARDS OF THE CANADIAN FORCES (CF)	11-5-1
Section 6	EO C320.03 – TOUR A LOCAL HISTORICAL SITE ILLUSTRATING THE ROLE OF THE CANADIAN ARMY	11-6-1
Section 7	EO C320.04 – DISCUSS THE ACTIONS OF A CANADIAN ARMY SERVICE MEMBER HONOURED FOR AN ACT OF VALOUR	11-7-1
Annex A	LIST OF WAR MEMORIALS IN CANADA AND OVERSEAS	11A-1
Annex B	PRESENTATION GRAPHIC ORGANIZER	11B-1
Annex C	NEWFOUNDLAND NATIONAL MEMORIAL	11C-1
Annex D	MONTREAL WAR MEMORIAL	11D-1
Annex E	TOMB OF THE UNKNOWN SOLDIER	11E-1
Annex F	THE NATIONAL WAR MEMORIAL	11F-1
Annex G	RECONCILIATION: THE PEACEKEEPING MONUMENT	11G-1
Annex H	NATIONAL ABORIGINAL VETERANS MONUMENT	11H-1
Annex I	KOREAN VETERANS NATIONAL WALL OF REMEMBRANCE	11I-1
Annex J	VALOUR ROAD	11J-1
Annex K	WOMEN'S TRI-SERVICE MEMORIAL	11K-1
Annex L	MEMORIAL GATES (UNIVERSITY OF SASKATCHEWAN)	11L-1
Annex M	CANADIAN MEMORIAL CHURCH	11M-1
Annex N	THE CENOTAPH–VICTORY SQUARE	11N-1
Annex O	THE CANADIAN NATIONAL VIMY MEMORIAL	11O-1
Annex P	LE QUESNEL MEMORIAL	11P-1
Annex Q	COURCELETTE MEMORIAL	11Q-1
Annex R	BEAUMONT-HAMEL NEWFOUNDLAND MEMORIAL	11R-1
Annex S	THE PASSCHENDAELE MEMORIAL	11S-1
Annex T	ST JULIEN MEMORIAL	11T-1
Annex U	HILL 62 (SANCTUARY WOOD) MEMORIAL	11U-1
Annex V	BAYEAUX MEMORIAL	11V-1
Annex W	BROOKWOOD MEMORIAL	11W-1

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Cont)

		PAGE
Annex X	GROESBEEK MEMORIAL	11X-1
Annex Y	CASSINO MEMORIAL	11Y-1
Annex Z	CANADIAN KOREAN WAR MEMORIAL GARDEN	11Z-1
Annex AA	LIST OF BIOGRAPHIES	11AA-1
Annex AB	DESCRIPTIONS OF DECORATIONS OF VALOUR	11AB-1
Annex AC	SELF STUDY ACTIVITY SHEET	11AC-1
Annex AD	CANADIAN ARMY SERVICE MEMBERS AWARDED THE VICTORIA CROSS	11AD-1
Annex AE	BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (JOHN MCCRAE)*	11AE-1
Annex AF	BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (VALOUR ROAD)*	11AF-1
Annex AG	BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (VIMY RIDGE)*	11AG-1
Annex AH	BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (WARRANT OFFICER JOHN OSBORN)*	11AH-1
Annex AI	BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (TOMMY PRINCE)*	11AI-1
Annex AJ	BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (JUNO BEACH)*	11AJ-1
Annex AK	HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #1	11AK-1
Annex AL	HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #2	11AL-1
Annex AM	HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #3	11AM-1
Annex AN	HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #4	11AN-1
Annex AO	HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #5	11AO-1
Annex AP	HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #6	11AP-1
Annex AQ	HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #1	11AQ-1
Annex AR	HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #2	11AR-1
Annex AS	HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #3	11AS-1
Annex AT	HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #4	11AT-1
Annex AU	HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #5	11AU-1
Annex AV	HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #6	11AV-1
Annex AW	HONOURS AND AWARDS ANSWER KEY	11AW-1
CHAPTER 12	**PO 321 – PERFORM THE DUTIES OF A TEAM LEADER ON A WEEKEND BIVOUAC EXERCISE**	
Section 1	EO M321.01 – PERFORM THE DUTIES OF A TEAM LEADER IN THE FIELD	12-1-1
Section 2	EO M321.02 – CONSTRUCT COMPONENTS OF A BIVOUAC SITE	12-2-1
Section 3	EO C321.01 – IDENTIFY METHODS OF WASTE DISPOSAL IN THE FIELD	12-3-1
Section 4	EO C321.02 – IDENTIFY SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS WHEN TRAVELLING OVER SNOW AND ICE	12-4-1
Section 5	EO C321.03 – CONSTRUCT FIELD AMENITIES	12-5-1
Annex A	SAMPLE BIVOUAC SITE DIAGRAM HANDOUT	12A-1
Annex B	FIELD AMENITIES	12B-1

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Cont)

PAGE

CHAPTER 13	**PO 322 – PLOT LOCATION ON A TOPOGRAPHICAL MAP USING A GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM RECEIVER**	
Section 1	EO M322.01 – REVIEW RED STAR NAVIGATION	13-1-1
Section 2	EO M322.02 – CALCULATE MAGNETIC DECLINATION	13-2-1
Section 3	EO M322.03 – IDENTIFY COMPONENTS OF THE GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS)	13-3-1
Section 4	EO M322.04 – IDENTIFY FEATURES OF A GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS) RECEIVER	13-4-1
Section 5	EO M322.05 – SET A MAP DATUM ON A GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS) RECEIVER	13-5-1
Section 6	EO M322.06 – IDENTIFY LOCATION USING A GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS) RECEIVER	13-6-1
Section 7	EO C322.01 – PRACTICE NAVIGATION AS A MEMBER OF A SMALL GROUP	13-7-1
Section 8	EO C322.02 – IDENTIFY FACTORS THAT IMPACT NAVIGATION IN THE WINTER	13-8-1
Section 9	EO C322.03 – IDENTIFY THE PRINCIPLES OF MAP-MAKING	13-9-1
Section 10	EO C322.04 – DRAW A MAP OF AN AREA IN THE LOCAL TRAINING FACILITY	13-10-1
Annex A	DECLINATION PROBLEM WORKSHEET	13A-1
Annex B	ANSWER KEY TO DECLINATION PROBLEM WORKSHEET	13B-1
Annex C	SIMULATED MAP DATUM	13C-1
Annex D	GRID OVERLAY	13D-1
Annex E	CANADIAN UTM ZONES	13E-1
Annex F	GRAPH PAPER	13F-1
CHAPTER 14	**PO 324 – SURVIVE WHEN LOST**	
Section 1	EO M324.01 – CONSTRUCT AN IMPROVISED SHELTER	14-1-1
Section 2	EO M324.02 – COLLECT DRINKING WATER	14-2-1
Section 3	EO M324.03 – LIGHT A FIRE WITHOUT MATCHES	14-3-1
Section 4	EO M324.04 – PREDICT WEATHER	14-4-1
Section 5	EO M324.05 – DETERMINE WHEN TO SELF-RESCUE	14-5-1
Section 6	EO C324.01 – IDENTIFY ANIMAL AND INSECT FOOD SOURCES	14-6-1
Section 7	EO C324.02 – CONSTRUCT SNARES	14-7-1
Section 8	EO C324.03 – CATCH A FISH	14-8-1
Section 9	EO C324.04 – COLLECT EDIBLE PLANTS	14-9-1
Section 10	EO C324.05 – PREPARE A MEAL FROM FIELD FOOD SOURCES	14-10-1
Annex A	BOW AND DRILL	14A-1
Annex B	FIRE SAW	14B-1
Annex C	FLINT AND STEEL	14C-1
Annex D	SUN AND GLASS	14D-1

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Cont)

		PAGE
Annex E	COMMON TYPES OF CLOUDS	14E-1
Annex F	COMMON HABITAT	14F-1
Annex G	INSECT NUTRITIONAL VALUE CHART	14G-1
Annex H	COMMON POISONOUS PLANTS	14H-1
Annex I	COMMON POISONOUS PLANTS	14I-1
Annex J	METHODS OF FIELD COOKING HANDOUT	14J-1
CHAPTER 15	**PO 325 – IDENTIFY THE COMPETENCIES OF AN OUTDOOR LEADER**	
Section 1	EO M325.01 – PARTICIPATE IN A DISCUSSION ON ARMY CADET EXPEDITION TRAINING	15-1-1
Section 2	EO M325.02 – LIST THE COMPETENCIES OF AN OUTDOOR LEADER (OL)	15-2-1
Section 3	EO M325.03 – DISCUSS SELF-AWARENESS AND PROFESSIONAL CONDUCT AS A COMPETENCY OF AN OUTDOOR LEADER (OL)	15-3-1
Section 4	EO C325.01 – COMMUNICATE DURING AN EXPEDITION	15-4-1
Section 5	EO C325.02 – PARTICIPATE IN A PRESENTATION ON THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH AWARD PROGRAM	15-5-1
Annex A	SCENARIO	15A-1
Annex B	INFORMATION CARD A	15B-1
Annex C	INFORMATION CARD B	15C-1
Annex D	INFORMATION CARD C	15D-1
Annex E	EXPERT ACTIVITY SHEET	15E-1
Annex F	COMPETENCIES OF AN OUTDOOR LEADER HANDOUT	15F-1
Annex G	HOMEWORK ASSIGNMENT	15G-1
Annex H	SCENARIO	15H-1
Annex I	PHONETIC ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION OF NUMBERS HANDOUT	15I-1
Annex J	RADIO COMMUNICATION EXERCISE	15J-1
CHAPTER 16	**PO 326 – PERFORM EXPEDITION SKILLS**	
Section 1	EO M326.01 – PREPARE FOR EXPEDITION TRAINING	16-1-1
Section 2	EO M326.02A – PADDLE A CANOE	16-2-1
Section 3	EO M326.02B – RIDE A MOUNTAIN BIKE	16-3-1
Section 4	EO M326.02C – HIKE ALONG A ROUTE	16-4-1
Section 5	EO M326.03 – PRACTICE ENVIRONMENTAL STEWARDSHIP AS A TEAM LEADER	16-5-1
Section 6	EO M326.04 – NAVIGATE ALONG A ROUTE USING A MAP AND COMPASS	16-6-1
Section 7	EO M326.05 – USE EXPEDITION EQUIPMENT	16-7-1
Section 8	EO M326.06 – FOLLOW DAILY ROUTINE	16-8-1
Section 9	EO M326.07 – RECORD ENTRIES IN A JOURNAL	16-9-1
Annex A	SILVER STAR EXPEDITION JOURNAL	16A-1

LIST OF FIGURES

BOOK 2

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
11-3-1	Examples of “Support Our Troops” Merchandise	11-3-3
11-3-2	Yellow Ribbon	11-3-3
11-3-3	Remembrance Day, National War Memorial, Ottawa, 2007	11-3-6
11-3-4	Ramp Ceremony, Kandahar, Afghanistan	11-3-7
11-3-5	Repatriation Ceremony, CFB Trenton, Ont	11-3-8
11-3-6	Highway of Heroes Road Sign	11-3-8
11-3-7	Highway of Heroes Overpass	11-3-9
11C-1	Newfoundland National Memorial	11C-2
11D-1	Montreal War Memorial	11D-2
11E-1	Tomb of the Unknown Soldier	11E-2
11E-2	Tomb of the Unknown Soldier	11E-2
11F-1	The National War Memorial	11F-3
11F-2	The National War Memorial – Front and Back	11F-4
11G-1	Reconciliation: The Peacekeeping Monument	11G-2
11H-1	National Aboriginal Veterans Monument	11H-2
11I-1	Korean Veterans National Wall of Remembrance	11I-2
11J-1	Valour Road Memorial Plaque	11J-2
11K-1	Women’s Tri-Service Memorial	11K-2
11L-1	Memorial Gates (University of Saskatchewan)	11L-2
11M-1	All Canada Window	11M-2
11N-1	The Cenotaph – Victory Square	11N-2
11O-1	The Canadian National Vimy Memorial	11O-2
11P-1	Le Quesnel Memorial	11P-2
11Q-1	Courcelette Memorial	11Q-2
11Q-2	Courcelette Memorial	11Q-2
11R-1	Beaumont-Hamel Newfoundland Memorial	11R-3
11S-1	Passchendaele Memorial	11S-2
11T-1	St Julien Memorial	11T-2
11T-2	St Julien Memorial	11T-2
11U-1	Hill 62 (Sanctuary Wood) Memorial	11U-2
11V-1	Bayeux Memorial	11V-3
11W-1	Brookwood Memorial	11W-2
11X-1	Groesbeek Memorial	11X-2
11X-2	Groesbeek Memorial	11X-2
11Y-1	Cassino Memorial	11Y-2
11Z-1	Canadian Korean War Memorial Garden	11Z-2
11AK-1	Insignia of OMM	11AK-1
11AL-1	Medals of Valour	11AL-1
11AM-1	Decorations for Bravery	11AM-1
11AN-1	Meritorious Service Decorations	11AN-1

LIST OF FIGURES (Cont)

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
11AO-1	Campaign Medals	11AO-1
11AO-2	Service Medals	11AO-2
11AO-3	Service Medals	11AO-3
11AO-4	Service Medals	11AO-4
11AP-1	Commemorative Medals	11AP-1
12-3-1	Cathole	12-3-4
12-3-2	Outhouse	12-3-5
12-3-3	Thunder Box	12-3-6
12-3-4	Ammo Can	12-3-6
12-3-5	Round Leaf	12-3-8
12-3-6	Poison Ivy	12-3-9
12-3-7	Poison Sumac	12-3-9
12-3-8	Poison Oak	12-3-10
12-3-9	Coniferous Needles	12-3-11
12-5-1	Round Lashing	12-5-2
12-5-2	Square Lashing	12-5-5
12-5-3	Timber Hitch	12-5-9
12-5-4	Diagonal Lashing	12-5-11
12-5-5	Figure-of-Eight Lashing	12-5-15
12A-1	Sample Bivouac Site	12A-1
12B-1	Swamp Bed	12B-1
12B-2	Pack Frame	12B-2
12B-3	Meat-Drying Rack	12B-3
12B-4	Raft	12B-4
12B-5	Tool Rack	12B-5
12B-6	Tool Rack 2	12B-6
13-1-1	Compass Rose	13-1-3
13-1-2	Compass	13-1-6
13-1-3	Declination Screw	13-1-7
13-1-4	Measuring Distance Point-to-Point	13-1-8
13-1-5	Calculating Distance	13-1-8
13-1-6	Measuring Distance Along a Route	13-1-9
13-1-7	Determining Distance Using Pacing	13-1-10
13-1-8	Set Declination	13-1-11
13-1-9	Set Compass to 00	13-1-11
13-1-10	Turn Until Red is in the Bed	13-1-11
13-1-11	Taking a Magnetic Bearing	13-1-12
13-2-1	Three Norths	13-2-3
13-2-2	Declination Diagram Sample	13-2-5
13-2-3	Declination Diagram Sample	13-2-6
13-3-1	GPS Satellite	13-3-2
13-3-2	Time Screens	13-3-7

LIST OF FIGURES (Cont)

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
13-3-3	Speed Screens	13-3-8
13-4-1	eXplorist 200 GPS Receiver	13-4-4
13-4-2	Satellite Status Page	13-4-6
13-4-3	Menu Page	13-4-7
13-4-4	Position Page	13-4-7
13-4-5	Compass Navigation Page	13-4-8
13-4-6	Map Page	13-4-9
13-5-1	Shape of a UTM Zone – Six Minutes of Longitude Wide	13-5-4
13-5-2	Canadian UTM Zones	13-5-5
13-5-3	Grid Zone Identifier	13-5-6
13-5-4	Grid Overlay	13-5-7
13-5-5	UTM Sub Zones	13-5-7
13-5-6	UTM Zone Numbers	13-5-8
13-5-7	Eastings and Northings	13-5-9
13-5-8	Layout of MGRS	13-5-10
13-5-9	GPS Receiver Coordinates	13-5-12
13-5-10	Grid Zone Designator	13-5-13
13-5-11	Topographical Map 100 000 m Square Identifier	13-5-14
13-5-12	Map Datum	13-5-15
13-6-1	eXplorist 200 GPS Receiver	13-6-4
13-6-2	Satellite Status Page	13-6-5
13-6-3	Menu Page	13-6-5
13-6-4	Position Page	13-6-6
13-6-5	Compass Navigation Page	13-6-7
13-6-6	Map Page	13-6-8
13-6-7	Map Datum	13-6-8
13-6-8	GPS Receiver Coordinates	13-6-10
13-6-9	Grid Zone Designator	13-6-11
13-6-10	Topographical Map 100 000 m Square Identifier	13-6-12
13-8-1	Sample Cairn	13-8-2
13-8-2	Sample Trail Blaze	13-8-3
13-9-1	Representation of Lines of Longitude and Latitude	13-9-5
13-9-2	UTM Zones – Canada	13-9-6
13-9-3	Scale – Map	13-9-7
13-9-4	Scale – Real Distance	13-9-7
13-9-5	Scale Representation	13-9-7
13-9-6	Grid Square	13-9-8
13-9-7	Map Scale	13-9-8
13-9-8	Adding Symbols to the Map	13-9-9
13C-1	Simulated Map for Making a Datum	13C-1
13D-1	Grid Overlay	13D-1
13E-1	Canadian UTM Zones	13E-1

LIST OF FIGURES (Cont)

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
13F-1	Graph Paper	13F-1
14-1-1	Bent Tree Shelter	14-1-5
14-1-2	Lean-To With Poncho	14-1-6
14-1-3	Bough Shelter	14-1-7
14-1-4	Root Shelter	14-1-8
14-2-1	Vegetation Bag	14-2-6
14-2-2	Transpiration Bag	14-2-7
14-3-1	CFFDRS Fire Index	14-3-2
14-3-2	Bearing Block	14-3-5
14-3-3	Softwood Base	14-3-5
14-3-4	Drill	14-3-6
14-3-5	Fire Bow and Drill	14-3-6
14-3-6	Fire Saw	14-3-7
14-3-7	Fire Saw in Motion	14-3-7
14-3-8	Flint and Steel	14-3-8
14-3-9	Sun and Glass	14-3-8
14-4-1	Cumulus Clouds	14-4-2
14-4-2	Altocumulus Clouds	14-4-3
14-4-3	Stratocumulus Clouds	14-4-3
14-4-4	Cirrus Clouds	14-4-4
14-4-5	Cirrostratus Clouds	14-4-4
14-4-6	Nimbostratus Clouds	14-4-5
14-4-7	Coriolis Effect	14-4-8
14-4-8	Cold Front	14-4-11
14-4-9	Warm Front	14-4-12
14-5-1	Shadow Stick	14-5-7
14-5-2	Analog Watch	14-5-8
14-5-3	Cairn	14-5-11
14-5-4	Trail-Marking Techniques	14-5-12
14-6-1	Nutritional Value	14-6-4
14-6-2	Grasshopper	14-6-5
14-6-3	Beetles	14-6-5
14-6-4	Earth Worm	14-6-6
14-6-5	Grubs	14-6-6
14-6-6	Water Insects	14-6-7
14-6-7	Rabbit and Tracks	14-6-8
14-6-8	Squirrel and Tracks	14-6-9
14-6-9	Marmot (Groundhog) and Tracks	14-6-9
14-6-10	Porcupine and Tracks	14-6-10
14-6-11	Beaver and Tracks	14-6-11
14-6-12	Raccoon and Tracks	14-6-11
14-7-1	Simple Snare	14-7-2

LIST OF FIGURES (Cont)

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
14-7-2	Squirrel Snare	14-7-3
14-7-3	Baited Spring Snare	14-7-3
14-7-4	Squirrel Trap	14-7-7
14-7-5	Squirrel Snare	14-7-9
14-7-6	Baited Spring Snare	14-7-9
14-8-1	Fish Jumping	14-8-3
14-8-2	Ripples on a Lake	14-8-3
14-8-3	Fishing Hook	14-8-4
14-8-4	Weights	14-8-5
14-8-5	Grasshopper	14-8-6
14-8-6	Earth Worm	14-8-6
14-8-7	Fishing Lures	14-8-6
14-8-8	Clinch Knot Steps 1, 2 and 3	14-8-8
14-8-9	Clinch Knot Steps 4 and Finished Knot	14-8-9
14-8-10	Skewer Hook	14-8-9
14-8-11	Shank Hook	14-8-10
14-8-12	Safety Pin Hook	14-8-10
14-8-13	Automatic Fishing Rod	14-8-11
14-8-14	Barbed Spear	14-8-11
14-9-1	Cattail	14-9-3
14-9-2	Cambium	14-9-3
14-9-3	Hibiscus	14-9-4
14-9-4	Seaweed	14-9-5
14-9-5	Blackberry	14-9-6
14-9-6	Wild Strawberries	14-9-7
14-9-7	Crab Apples	14-9-7
14-9-8	Plums	14-9-8
14-9-9	Wild Cherries	14-9-8
14-9-10	Blueberry	14-9-9
14-9-11	Dandelions	14-9-9
14-9-12	Cattail	14-9-10
14-9-13	Reed	14-9-10
14-9-14	Pine	14-9-11
14-9-15	Maple	14-9-11
14-9-16	Sweet Flag	14-9-12
14-9-17	Willow	14-9-12
14-9-18	Pine Nut	14-9-13
14-9-19	Chestnuts	14-9-13
14-9-20	Hazelnut	14-9-14
14-10-1	Skinning a Small Animal – Step 2	14-10-3
14-10-2	Skinning a Small Animal – Step 3	14-10-3
14-10-3	Skinning a Small Animal – Step 4	14-10-3

LIST OF FIGURES (Cont)

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
14-10-4	Skinning a Small Animal – Step 5	14-10-4
14-10-5	Skinning a Small Animal – Step 6	14-10-4
14-10-6	Skinning a Small Animal – Step 7	14-10-5
14-10-7	Skinning a Small Animal – Step 8	14-10-5
14-10-8	Skinning a Small Animal – Step 9	14-10-6
14-10-9	Skinning a Small Animal – Step 10	14-10-6
14-10-10	Filleting a Fish	14-10-8
14-10-11	Baking in the Ground	14-10-10
14-10-12	Roasting	14-10-10
14-10-13	Roasting With a Rotor	14-10-11
14-10-14	Roasting Fish	14-10-11
14-10-15	Boiling	14-10-12
14-10-16	Boiling Using a Counterweight	14-10-12
14-10-17	Boiling on an Open Flame With Wood	14-10-13
14-10-18	Boiling on an Open Flame With Rocks	14-10-13
14-10-19	Frying on a Flat Rock	14-10-13
14-10-20	Frying With a Metal Sheet	14-10-14
14A-1	Fire Bow and Drill	14A-1
14B-1	Fire Saw in Motion	14B-1
14C-1	Flint and Steel	14C-1
14D-1	Sun and Glass	14D-1
14E-1	Common Types of Clouds	14E-1
14F-1	Grasshopper	14F-1
14F-2	Beetles	14F-1
14F-3	Earth Worm	14F-2
14F-4	Grubs	14F-2
14F-5	Water Insects	14F-3
14F-6	Rabbit and Tracks	14F-4
14F-7	Squirrel and Tracks	14F-4
14F-8	Marmot (Groundhog) and Tracks	14F-5
14F-9	Porcupine and Tracks	14F-5
14F-10	Beaver and Tracks	14F-6
14F-11	Raccoon and Tracks	14F-7
14G-1	Nutritional Value	14G-1
14H-1	Poison Ivy	14H-1
14H-2	Poison Oak	14H-1
14I-1	Castor Bean	14I-1
14I-2	Death Camas	14I-1
14I-3	Oleander	14I-2
14I-4	Poison Hemlock	14I-2
14J-1	Baking in the Ground	14J-1
14J-2	Roasting on a Stick	14J-2

LIST OF FIGURES (Cont)

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
14J-3	Roasting With a Rotor	14J-2
14J-4	Roasting Fish	14J-2
14J-5	Boiling	14J-3
14J-6	Boiling Using a Counterweight	14J-3
14J-7	Boiling on an Open Flame With Wood	14J-4
14J-8	Boiling on an Open Flame With Rocks	14J-4
14J-9	Frying on a Flat Rock	14J-4
14J-10	Frying With a Metal Sheet	14J-5
15-1-1	Army Cadet Expedition Model	15-1-5
15-2-1	Format of Jigsaw Activity Groups	15-2-11
15-4-1	Hand-Held Radio	15-4-6
15-4-2	Battery Compartment	15-4-7
15-4-3	Batteries	15-4-9
15-4-4	Changing the Batteries	15-4-9
16-2-1	Parts of the Canoe	16-2-3
16-2-2	Parts of a Paddle	16-2-4
16-2-3	Tandem Hand Carry	16-2-8
16-2-4	Tandem Portage Carry Steps 1–8	16-2-9
16-2-5	Stop	16-2-13
16-2-6	Emergency	16-2-14
16-2-7	All Clear	16-2-14
16-2-8	Universal Distress Signal	16-2-15
16-2-9	Bow First Launch	16-2-18
16-2-10	Dock Launch	16-2-19
16-2-11	Tandem Canoe Over Canoe Assisted Rescue	16-2-22
16-2-12	Power Stroke	16-2-26
16-2-13	J-Stroke	16-2-27
16-2-14	Forward Sweep	16-2-29
16-2-15	Draw	16-2-30
16-2-16	Pry	16-2-31
16-2-17	Low Brace	16-2-33
16-2-18	Backpaddling	16-2-34
16-3-1	Parts of a Mountain Bike	16-3-6
16-3-2	Proper Fit of a Helmet	16-3-9
16-3-3	Parts of a Helmet	16-3-10
16-3-4	Sizing Measurements	16-3-11
16-3-5	Brake Lever Positioning	16-3-13
16-3-6	Lubricating the Chain	16-3-14
16-3-7	Quick Release Incorrect Position – Example 1	16-3-15
16-3-8	Quick Release Incorrect Position – Example 2	16-3-15
16-3-9	Quick Release Correct Position	16-3-16
16-3-10	Hand Signals	16-3-18

LIST OF FIGURES (Cont)

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
16-3-11	Straddle Mount a Bike	16-3-21
16-3-12	Braking Hand Position	16-3-22
16-3-13	Front Chainset and Rear Cassette	16-3-23
16-3-14	Front Chainset	16-3-24
16-3-15	Rear Cassette	16-3-24
16-3-16	Right Gear Shifter	16-3-25
16-3-17	Proper Ascent Position	16-3-26
16-3-18	Proper Descent Position	16-3-27
16-4-1	Fanny Pack	16-4-4
16-4-2	Day Pack	16-4-4
16-4-3	Wide Mouth Water Bottle	16-4-5
16-4-4	Hydration Bag	16-4-5
16-4-5	Headlamp	16-4-6
16-4-6	Ski Pole	16-4-8
16-4-7	Telescoping Trekking Pole	16-4-8
16-4-8	Wooden Walking Stick	16-4-9
16-4-9	Telescoping Pole	16-4-9
16-4-10	Grip With Strap	16-4-10
16-4-11	Snowflake Baskets	16-4-10
16-4-12	Solid Baskets	16-4-11
16-4-13	Replaceable Tips	16-4-11
16-4-14	Trekking Uphill	16-4-12
16-4-15	Trekking Downhill	16-4-12
16-4-16	Rest Step	16-4-15
16-4-17	Scrambling Technique	16-4-16
16-4-18	Boulder Hopping With Trekking Poles	16-4-17
16-4-19	Scree	16-4-17
16-6-1	Measuring Distance Point-to-Point	16-6-2
16-6-2	Calculating Distance	16-6-3
16-6-3	Measuring Distance Along a Route	16-6-4
16-6-4	Determining Distance Using Pacing	16-6-5
16-6-5	Set Declination	16-6-6
16-6-6	Set Compass to 00	16-6-6
16-6-7	Turn Until Red is in the Bed	16-6-6
16-6-8	Taking a Magnetic Bearing	16-6-7
16-6-9	Declination Screw	16-6-9
16-7-1	Single-Burner Mountain Stove	16-7-4
16-7-2	Priming the Fuel Tank	16-7-5
16-7-3	Water Filter	16-7-7
16-7-4	Aluminum Fuel Bottle	16-7-9
16-7-5	Multi-Purpose Knife	16-7-11
16-7-6	Multi-Purpose Tool	16-7-11

LIST OF FIGURES (Cont)

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
16-7-7	Headlamp	16-7-12
16-8-1	Fallen Trees	16-8-3
16-8-2	Hornet's Nest	16-8-4
16-8-3	Common Campsite Layout	16-8-5
16-8-4	CFFDRS Fire Index	16-8-6

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 11

PO 320 – RECOGNIZE THE VALOUR OF MEMBERS OF THE CANADIAN ARMY

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 1

EO M320.01 – IDENTIFY CANADIAN HISTORICAL SITES AND THEIR SIGNIFICANCE

Total Time: 60 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Take pictures of the local community war memorial or cenotaph for use in TP 1 if possible.

Photocopy the following:

- List of war memorials in Canada and overseas located at Annex A (one per cadet),
- Presentation graphic organizer located at Annex B (one per cadet), and
- Memorial fact sheet handout located at Annexes C to Z.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 to present background information on war memorials and their significance in the remembrance of the service of Canadian soldiers.

An in-class activity was chosen for TPs 2 and 3 as it is an interactive way to provoke thought and stimulate interest in a new subject.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have identified Canadian historical sites and their significance.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to identify Canadian historical sites and their significance because they commemorate the historic contribution Canadians have made to their country and the world. Identifying how Canadians have overcome obstacles in the past can strengthen the resolve of present day Canadians to meet current challenges.

Teaching Point 1 — **Discuss the Importance of War Memorials as a Means to Remember the Historical Service of Canadian Soldiers**

Time: 10 min — Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is an introduction to war memorials in Canada and overseas. Begin the TP by having the cadets brainstorm:

1. What do war memorials signify?
2. Why are war memorials so important?
3. How can war memorials help us to better understand current conflicts?

WAR MEMORIALS

War memorials provide us the opportunity to express our gratitude to Canadians for their extraordinary achievements. Canadians have served around the world in military actions for peace and freedom since before Confederation. In the wars of the past century, more than 116 000 Canadians have made the ultimate sacrifice and their final resting places are located in over 75 countries around the world.

The *Oxford English Dictionary* defines a memorial as a “sign of remembrance; preserving or intended to preserve the memory of a person or thing.”

Canadian war dead are remembered in the places where they lived and served, in the cemeteries where they are buried and on the principle battlefields and geographical areas of importance during wartime. Currently there are hundreds of different war memorials all over the globe recognizing the service of members of the Canadian military which include:

- regimental memorials,
- municipally funded war memorials,
- provincially funded war memorials, and
- nationally funded war memorials.

Provide cadets with a visual representation of a local war memorial, such as a cenotaph. If possible have them look through the names inscribed on the memorial to see if any of their relatives are included.

Types of Memorials

Any object is considered a war memorial as long as the inscription or purpose of its erection or placement links it to a war or casualty of war.

There are no specific parameters that dictate what a memorial should be constructed of, what it should look like, or what should be listed on it. While many memorials are monuments or statues, some are entire buildings containing a museum, or a plaque affixed to a building or under a pane of stained glass in a church. Whatever form a memorial takes, it is its significance and the people whose memory it preserves, that make it important.

Each year in July, the Canadian Forces (CF) sends a contingent of members to Holland to participate in the Nijmegen (Ny megan) Four-Day March. The Nijmegen March is a prestigious international event in which the CF has been participating since the Second World War. As a result of the Canadian liberation of the Netherlands during the Second World War, there are strong emotional bonds between the Dutch people and the Canadian people.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is a war memorial?

Q2. Where are war memorials erected?

Q3. An object can be identified as a war memorial under what conditions?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. A war memorial provides us the opportunity to express our gratitude to Canadians for their extraordinary achievements. The *Oxford English Dictionary* defines a memorial as a “sign of remembrance; preserving or intended to preserve the memory of a person or thing.”

A2. Canadian war dead are remembered in the places where they lived and served, in the cemeteries where they are buried and on the principle battlefields and geographical areas of importance during wartime.

A3. Any object is considered a war memorial as long as the inscription or purpose of its erection or placement links it to a war or casualty of war.

Teaching Point 2 — **Conduct an Activity Where the Cadet, in Groups of No More Than Three, Will Research the Historical Significance of a War Memorial in Canada or Overseas**

Time: 25 min — Method: In-Class Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for the cadets to research the historical significance of a war memorial in either Canada or overseas.

RESOURCES

- List of war memorials in Canada and overseas located at Annex A,
- Presentation graphic organizer located at Annex B,
- Memorial fact sheet handout located at Annexes C to Z,
- Pen/pencil, and
- Paper.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into groups of no more than three.
2. Provide each group with a list of war memorials found in Canada and overseas located at Annex A.
3. Have each group select a different war memorial.
4. Provide each group with the presentation graphic organizer located at Annex B.
5. Provide each group with the appropriate memorial fact sheet located at Annexes C to Z.
6. Have the cadets research their site and fill out their presentation graphic organizer.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 3 **Each Group Will Deliver a Two-Minute Presentation on Their Chosen Memorial**

Time: 20 min Method: In-Class Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for each group to deliver a two-minute presentation on their chosen war memorial from TP 2.

RESOURCES

N/A.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

Have each group present the information gathered about their respective war memorial to the class using the main headings of the presentation graphic organizer as a guideline.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the activities associated with TPs 1 and 2 will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Historical sites are a link to Canada's past, which provide today's citizens the opportunity to express gratitude and thankfulness for the sacrifices that were made to ensure our freedom. With each passing year, the courageous acts of Canadians in World War I and II and the Korean War, are becoming more and more distant memories. Remembering their sacrifices and those that follow, is an incredibly important task. Our youth, specifically cadets, need to become ambassadors of remembrance.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Ensure that when presenting the information about the war memorial, the cadets do not exceed the two-minute time limit.

Each group must present information associated with the main headings included on the presentation graphic organizer. If time permits additional information may be included.

REFERENCES

A1-001 Veterans Affairs Canada. (2008). *Memorials to Canadians' Achievements and Sacrifices*. Retrieved February 13, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/.

C1-084 National Capital Commission. (2007). *Reconciliation: The Peacekeeping Monument*. Retrieved February 13, 2008, from http://www.canadascapital.gc.ca/bins/ncc_web_content_page.asp?cid=16297-24563-24548-24552&lang=1&bhcp=1.

C1-089 Santin, A. (2005). *One Street, Three Great Men*. Retrieved February 13, 2008, from http://forums.army.ca/forums/index.php?topic=30220.0;all.

C2-172 (ISBN 1-84342-262-X) Hurst, S. (1929). *The Silent Cities: An Illustrated Guide to the War Cemeteries and Memorials to the 'Missing' in France and Flanders: 1914–1918 Containing 959 Illustrations and 31 Maps*. London, England: Methuen & Co. Ltd.

C2-178 United Kingdom National Inventory of War Memorials. (2005). *Family History*. Retrieved March 10, 2008, from http://ukniwm.org.uk/server/show/ConWebDoc.22/setPaginate/No.

C2-185 Encyclopedia of Saskatchewan. (2006). *Military History of Saskatchewan*. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://esask.uregina.ca/entry/military_history_of_saskatchewan.html.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 2

EO M320.02 – DEFINE VALOUR

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Photocopy:

- Annexes AA to AC (one per cadet), and
- Annex AD (one biography per cadet).

If desired additional research may be completed to provide cadets with the biography of a Canadian Army Service member from the local affiliated unit. This information will have to be located and organized for the cadets use.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

A self study was chosen for this lesson as it provides the cadet the opportunity to conduct small-scale research of valour with predetermined resources in a supervised setting.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have defined valour in relation to the acts of an historical or contemporary Canadian Army service member who was decorated for an act of valour.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to study the act of a historical or contemporary Canadian Army service member who was decorated for an act of valour because it will assist them in developing a definition of valour. By investigating

the actions of a Canadian Army service member, cadets will be able to assess their actions and see what actually constitutes valour. As well, many of today's youth are unaware of the heroic, selfless acts of Canadian service members, and this self-study will provide them the opportunity to familiarize themselves with lives and actions of these amazing men and women.

Teaching Point 1 **Have the Cadets Define Valour by Investigating the Heroic Actions of a Canadian Army Service Member, Historical or Contemporary**

Time: 25 min Method: Self Study

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for the cadet to define valour by researching a historical or contemporary Canadian Army service member who was decorated for an act of valour by being awarded a military valour decoration.

RESOURCES

- List of Biographies (located at Annex AA),
- Description of Decorations of Valour (located at Annex AB),
- Self Study activity sheet (located at Annex AC)
- Biographies of Canadian Army service members awarded the Victoria Cross (located at Annex AD),
- Notebook, and
- Pen/pencil.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Brief the cadets on the expectations of the assignment:
    a. Research a historical or contemporary Canadian Army service member who was decorated for an act of valour by being awarded a military valour decoration (Victoria Cross, Star of Military Valour, Medal of Military Valour).
    b. Record information about the decoration recipient, to include:
        (1) hometown,
        (2) occupation prior to commencement of conflict,
        (3) age when decoration was awarded,
        (4) unit,
        (5) rank,
        (6) description of events for which the decoration was awarded,

(7) post-war/current activities,

(8) date of passing, and

(9) any additional information as desired.

c. Develop a definition of valour, taking into account the actions of the researched service member.

d. Present how the recipient's actions define valour, to a fellow classmate.

2. Hand out the following to each cadet:

a. List of Biographies,

b. Description of Decorations of Valour, and

c. Self study activity sheet.

3. Give the cadets one minute to select a member to research.

4. Hand out the corresponding biography sheet to each cadet.

5. Provide cadets 15 minutes to complete their research.

6. Walk around and ensure that all cadets have developed a definition of valour.

7. Divide cadets into pairs and have them share their information for three minutes.

8. Have cadets hand in their research notes to ensure that they have all completed the requirements of the assignment.

9. Debrief the cadets.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadets' participation in the self study will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the self study will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Being aware of the heroic actions of Canadian Army service members, historical or contemporary, will provide cadets with a framework with which to develop a definition of valour. Understanding valour in this way will make it more than just a concept, it will provide a connection to real people and real events.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Each cadet in the class must select a different recipient to research.

EO C320.04 (Discuss the Actions of a Canadian Army Service Member Honoured for an Act of Valour, Section 7) may be scheduled after this EO to provide more time for the cadet to present information on the contributions of members of the Canadian Army.

The instructor may broaden the scope of this lesson to feature a local or affiliated unit member that has been awarded one of the decorations listed in the activity instructions, paragraph 1a. It is the responsibility of the instructor to locate the information and organize for the use of the cadets. Citations relating to awards most recently bestowed on Canadian Army service members can be found in Honours News Releases on the Governor General of Canada's website: http://www.gg.ca/media/index_e.asp?typeID=2.

REFERENCES

A1-001 Veterans Affairs Canada. (2008). *Memorials to Canadians' Achievements and Sacrifices*. Retrieved February 13, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/.

A2-064 A-AD-200-000/JD-001 Department of National Defence. (2005). *Canadian Honours and Awards Bestowed Upon Members of the Canadian Forces*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

A2-066 (ISBN 0-662-62281-9) Veterans Affairs Canada. (1996). *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*. Ottawa, ON: Public Works & Government Services Canada.

C2-173 (ISBN 0-7509-3695-9) Glanfield, J. (2005). *Bravest of the Brave: The Story of the Victoria Cross*. Gloucestershire, England: Sutton Publishing Limited.

C2-175 (ISBN 1-55439-57-5) Douglas, T. (2005). *Great Canadian War Heroes: Victoria Cross Recipients of World War II*. Canmore, AB: Altitude Publishing Canada Ltd.

C2-176 (ISBN 1-84342-091-0) Creagh, O., & Humphris, E. (Eds). (1920). *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920*. Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

C2-177 Governor General of Canada. (2005). *Honours News Releases*. Retrieved March 7, 2008, from http://www.gg.ca/media/index_e.asp?typeID=2.

C2-178 (ISBN 0-330-49133-4) Arthur, M. (2004). *Symbol of Courage: The Men Behind the Medal*. London, England: Pan Books.

C2-181 Legion Magazine. (2004–2006). *Canada and the Victoria Cross*. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/category/features/canada-and-the-victoria-cross/.

C2-182 Canadian War Museum. (2005). *Backgrounder: Francis Scrimger, V.C*. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.civilization.ca/cwm/media/bg_scrimger_e.html.

C2-183 The Great War, 1914–1919. (2005). *The Gallantry of Lance-Corporal Fisher of the 13th Canadian Battalion*. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.greatwar.co.uk/westfront/ypsalient/secondypres/gravenstafel/fisher.htm.

C2-184 Chilliwack War Memorial, British Columbia. (2007). *World War One Roll of Honour: Private (Piper) James Cleland Richardson V.C*. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://Chilliwack.museum.bc.ca/WWI_R_names.html.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 3

EO M320.03 – DISCUSS WAYS CANADIAN CITIZENS RECOGNIZE THE SERVICE OF CANADIAN FORCES (CF) MEMBERS

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Research the locations of Canada's current operational theatres. This is just a brief introduction, so only long-term operational theatres should be researched. Once research is completed prepare of list of three questions and answers for the TP confirmation.

Go to the CF "Write the Troops" message board and print two posts.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for this lesson to orient the cadet to current CF operational theatres and generate interest in ways to support CF members, as an individual and a member of the community, in a setting which provides cadets the opportunity to present their own thoughts and ideas under the direction of the instructor.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have discussed ways Canadian citizens recognize the service of CF members.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to discuss the way Canadian citizens recognize the service of CF members because there are many ways individuals can choose to show support for the men and women serving our country. Being aware of the different ways in which Canadian citizens recognize the service of CF members may provide

cadets with activities in which they may organize/participate in. CF familiarization is a component of the CCM and knowing how to support serving men and women is an important factor in knowing what the CF is and what it does.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss Current Operational Theatres of the CF**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

The information presented in this TP should be a brief introduction to the CF's current operational theatres. This information is dynamic in nature and as such will require research prior to the commencement of the lesson. Information may be gathered from the National Defence website: www.forces.gc.ca/site/operations/current_ops_e.asp.

As of 2009, more than 2 900 Canadian soldiers, sailors and air force personnel were deployed overseas on operational missions. On any given day, about 8 000 CF members – one third of the deployable force – were preparing for, engaged in or returning from an overseas mission.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

Confirmation questions will be related to information gathered concerning the location of current operational theatres of the CF.

Teaching Point 2 **Brainstorm Ways in Which Individuals Demonstrate Their Support of CF Members**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Cadets should have some ideas of how individuals demonstrate their support of CF members. Have cadets brainstorm ideas of individual support using a flip chart with the statement "How I Support CF Members" in the centre.

People across Canada seek ways to show their support for the brave men and women who serve with the CF both at home and abroad. In response to this outpouring support the Canadian Forces Personnel Support Agency (CFPSA) launched an official "Support Our Troops" campaign which gives Canadians easy and effective ways to support the CF community.

"SUPPORT OUR TROOPS" MERCHANDISE

"Support Our Troops" merchandise was introduced by the CFPSA in 2005. A wide variety of items are available for purchase, at CANEX stores on Canadian Forces Bases (CFB) across Canada and through the CFPSA website (www.cfpsa.com/canex). All proceeds from the sale of CFPSA "Support Our Troops" merchandise are invested directly into morale and welfare programs for CF members and their families.

Individuals can go to CANEX stores or the online store to purchase items such as:

- t-shirts,
- ball caps,
- car and fridge magnets,

- bracelets,
- lapel pins,
- fleece jackets, and
- travel mugs.

Canadian Forces Personal Support Agency, "Support Our Troops Merchandise". Retrieved April 7, 2008, from https://www3.cfpsa.com/wyn/en/generalPublic/shoplist_e.asp?uid=610517&location=&dept=6

Figure 11-3-1 Examples of "Support Our Troops" Merchandise

YELLOW RIBBONS

The yellow ribbon represents support for military members and their families. It also represents the hope for a safe and speedy return from overseas deployment.

Canadian Forces Personal Support Agency, Support Our Troops Merchandise. Retrieved April 7, 2008, from https://www3.cfpsa.com/wyn/en/generalPublic/shoplist_e.asp?uid=610517&location=&dept=6

Figure 11-3-2 Yellow Ribbon

The yellow ribbon became a symbol of support in the classic 1949 John Wayne movie *She Wore a Yellow Ribbon*. The female lead wore the yellow ribbon to express her undying love for a cavalry officer (John Wayne). Cavalry uniform pants had a yellow stripe down the outer seam of the pants, thus the yellow ribbon.

RED FRIDAYS

Wearing red on Fridays demonstrates support for the CF and their families. It is a symbolic gesture to show fellow Canadians and our troops that we care and honour those who fight/fought for freedom, peace and resolve.

WRITING TO THE TROOPS

Read two posts from CF “Write the Troops” message board to the cadets. Encourage the cadets to write a post when they get home.

The CF members serving overseas may receive correspondence from individuals as well as from groups, schools and organizations across Canada. Cadets may have taken part in this activity as part of Green or Red Star complementary training. There are two ways which Canadians can communicate with serving members overseas:

1. the CF “Write the Troops” message board, www.forces.gc.ca/site/community/messageboard/index_e.asp; and
2. by mailing postcards and letters to “Any CF Member” through Canada post. Mailing addresses can be found at www.forces.gc.ca/site/Community/Messageboard/addresses-2_e.asp.

MONETARY DONATIONS

Individuals may contribute to the CF Personnel Assistance Fund (CFPAF) and the Military Family Resource Centre (MFRC) through fundraising activities.

CFPAF

The CFPAF provides financial assistance to former and current members of the CF and their immediate families. Programs supported by the CFPAF are:

- self-improvement loan program,
- financial distress program,
- minor disbursement program, and
- educational assistance loan program.

Individuals who wish to make a donation to the CFPAF can contact them online through www.sisip.com and by telephone 1-888-753-9828.

MFRC

The CF recognizes the many challenges facing families as a result of the military lifestyle. It also recognizes the important role played by families in maintaining troop morale. Located on CF bases across the country, MFRCs provide support to the parents or spouses and children of deployed CF members through specialized programs and services that promote health, education and social well-being.

Individuals can contribute money, clothing, services, and volunteer hours to the MFRC closest to them. To find the closest centre visit: www.cfpsa.com/en/psp/dmfs/mfrccontact.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What does the yellow ribbon represent?

Q2. If an individual organized a fundraising initiative to the CFPAF, the donations would be used to support what type of programs?

Q3. What are the two methods that individuals or groups can use to communicate with CF members overseas?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The yellow ribbon represents a show of support for military members and their families. It also represents the hope for a safe and speedy return from overseas deployment.

A2. The donations would be used to support the following programs:

- self-improvement loan program,
- financial distress program,
- minor disbursement program, and
- educational assistance loan program.

A3. Individuals can post messages on the “Write to the Troops” message board and send postcards and letters through Canada Post.

Teaching Point 3 **Discuss Community Displays of Support for the CF**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Cadets should be familiar with the information being presented in this TP. Begin by having the cadets discuss why they believe community displays of support for the CF are important. Then present different ways communities can show support for CF members.

In many cases, individual and community displays of support are intertwined. It is important to understand what is demonstrated by a nation presenting a united front. It demonstrates that even if there are individuals who do not believe in conflict, that they support the men and women who are risking or have risked their lives for our nation.

REMEMBERANCE DAY

One day every year, Canadians pay special homage to those who have died in service. We honour those who have fought for Canada in the First World War (1914-1918), the Second World War (1939-1945), and the

Korean War (1950-1953), as well as those who have served since then. More than 1 500 000 Canadians have served our country, and more than 100 000 have died.

On Remembrance Day, Canada acknowledges the courage and sacrifice of those who have served and acknowledge our responsibility to work for the peace they have fought to achieve. People wear poppies, attend ceremonies, and visit memorials. For one brief moment, we remember why we work for peace.

Canadian Forces Support Unit (Ottawa), Photo Archive Remembrance Day National War Memorial 2007. Copyright by Department of National Defence. Retrieved April 8, 2008, from http:// www.cfsuo.forces.gc.ca/ndhq_cwo/images/11-Nov-07-Remembrance-Day-NWM/CFSU2007-0539-04.jpg

Figure 11-3-3 Remembrance Day, National War Memorial, Ottawa, 2007

REPATRIATION

Repatriation is the process of returning a soldier's remains to their homeland.

When a Canadian soldier or diplomat is killed during international operations their remains are repatriated to Canada for burial.

The repatriation process begins with a Ramp Ceremony. This is when the body of the fallen soldier is loaded onto the aircraft. The soldier's unit forms up at the rear of the aircraft, flanking both sides, with a gap in the middle. The flag-draped casket is removed from a military vehicle by the honour guard and is then marched to the aircraft. The formation comes to attention, and salutes as their comrade begins their journey home.

Canadian Forces Image Gallery, Combat Camera. Copyright by Department of National Defence. Retrieved April 8, 2008, from http://www.combatcamera.forces.gc.ca/netpub/server.np?base&site=combatcamera&catalog=photos&template=find_e.np

Figure 11-3-4 Ramp Ceremony, Kandahar, Afghanistan

The remains of the soldier are then flown to CFB Trenton where in a ceremony on the tarmac, similar to the Ramp Ceremony, they are repatriated to Canada and their family. High ranking political and military personnel stand with the family as he/she is paraded from the plane by an honour guard of fellow soldiers and carried into an awaiting hearse.

Canadian Forces Image Gallery, Combat Camera. Copyright by Department of National Defence. Retrieved April 8, 2008, from http://www.combatcamera.forces.gc.ca/netpub/server.np?base&site=combatcamera&catalog=photos&template=find_e.np

Figure 11-3-5 Repatriation Ceremony, CFB Trenton, Ont.

On August 24, 2007, the Ministry of Transportation (Ontario) announced that the section of Highway 401 from Glen Miller Road in Trenton, Ont. to the Don Valley Parkway/Highway 404 in Toronto would bear the additional name "Highway of Heroes" in honour of Canada's fallen soldiers, notably those who have died on duty in Afghanistan.

The Kings Highway, Other Provincial Highway Signs Used in Ontario. Copyright by Cameron Bevers, 2002–2008. Retrieved April 8, 2008, from http://www.thekingshighway.ca/signs2.htm

Figure 11-3-6 Highway of Heroes Road Sign

Canadian Forces Image Gallery, Combat Camera. Copyright Department of National Defence. Retrieved April 8, 2008, from http://www.combatcamera.forces.gc.ca/netpub/server.np?base&site=combatcamera&catalog=photos&template=find_e.np

Figure 11-3-7 Highway of Heroes Overpass

Since 2002, when the first of Canada's fallen soldiers were returned from Afghanistan, crowds from the communities along this section of the 401 have lined the overpasses to pay their respects as the convoy passes.

"50 WAYS TO REMEMBER"

Have cadets brainstorm different ways to remember veterans and serving members of the CF.

One of the mandates of Veterans Affairs Canada is to ensure the Canadian public remembers the sacrifices of soldiers – past and present. While Remembrance Day ceremonies are the best way to show support and recognize those who serve/have served Canada in times of war, military conflict and peace operations, this is not the only way. There are many other ways in which support can be demonstrated throughout the year to express gratitude for the sacrifices and achievements of the one and a half million brave Canadians who have served, and continue to serve Canada.

Veterans Affairs Canada has developed a list of 50 ways in which individuals and groups can share the importance of remembrance. This may take many forms: music, ceremonies, private reflection, poetry, art, etc. It is the responsibility of all Canadians to take an active role in remembering the more than 100 000 men and women who have died so that Canadians may live in peace and freedom.

The following is the list of "50 Ways to Remember" developed by Veterans Affairs Canada:

1. Wear a poppy to honour those in uniform who have served Canada and also those who have died in service to our country.
2. Attend Remembrance Day ceremonies or if you can not go, watch them on television.
3. Lay a wreath at the cenotaph with classmates and friends.
4. Pause for one minute of silence at 1100 hours on November 11 to honour those who served and died in times of war, military conflict and peace.
5. Help plan and participate in a commemorative ceremony at school or with a community group.
6. Thank a veteran or Canadian Forces member for supporting peace and freedom efforts around the world.
7. Organize, participate in, or attend a candlelight tribute ceremony at a cemetery to remember citizens in your community who died during military service to Canada.
8. Spread the word about Veterans' Week, Remembrance Day and other commemorative events using your school's newspaper, website or daily announcements.
9. Organize an essay or poster contest on the topic of Canada's role in the First or Second World War, the Korean War or Peace Support missions.
10. Plan, organize or participate in a debate or discussion looking at how Canada's military history still influences our lives today.
11. Plan, organize or participate in a 1920s, 1940s, or 1950s dance or "Victory Ball." Research the clothing, hairstyles, music, food and decorations of the time and include those themes in the event.
12. Bring examples of wartime art (such as paintings or posters), books and stories, poetry and music to school to show and talk about with your peers. Discuss what their purpose was during the war, why they were important, and what makes them unique.
13. Organize a concert featuring music from the war era. Take the concert to a nursing home and perform for the residents.
14. Hold a series of community readings where citizens share their favourite passages from military-related books, novels, poems, letters and diaries.
15. Read a selection of books on the topic of remembrance.
16. Show a video or film on Canada's role in the wars and peace missions of the 20th and 21st centuries.
17. Adopt a veteran's grave in your community. With the permission of the person's family or the cemetery, visit and take care of the grave. You could dig weeds, plant flowers or clean the headstone.
18. Research the story of a family member, friend or neighbour who served Canada in wartime or peacetime. Tell that person's story to your class. Describe how his or her life was affected by their service and talk about the challenges they faced after the war.
19. Invite a veteran or a Canadian Forces member to speak to your class. You can find a list of speakers by visiting the Dominion Institute's "Memory Project" website. The Royal Canadian Legion's website also lists veterans who may wish to speak in your community.
20. Listen to veterans and Canadian Forces members talk about their wartime and peacetime experiences on the "Heroes Remember" feature of the Veterans Affairs Canada website.

21. Invite a Dutch immigrant to your school to speak about the special connection between the people of the Netherlands and Canadian troops during the Second World War – a connection still felt today! Your local chapter of the Dutch Canadian Association can help you find a speaker.

22. Contact your local or provincial War Brides Association and invite a war bride to visit your school. Ask her to describe what it was like to marry a Canadian soldier and move to a new country. Discuss what challenges war brides faced in Canada at the time.

23. Visit local nursing homes to spend time with those from the wartime generation. Prepare a question list as a class before going and report to other classes at your school following your visit.

24. Invite someone to speak to your class about their work with a community support or volunteer organization during the war years. These may include the Girl Guides, Boy Scouts, the Canadian Red Cross Society, the Salvation Army, St John's Ambulance and the Imperial Order of the Daughters of the Empire (IODE). Research their wartime activities prior to their visit.

25. Research how Canadians at home supported the war effort overseas. Discuss what you have learned as a class.

26. Interview a veteran, relative, family friend, neighbour, war bride, nursing sister, factory worker or another person who was impacted by the war. Ask about his or her wartime experiences and how they contributed to the war effort. Prior to the interview, prepare a question list. Record the interview and share it with the class.

27. Find evidence that citizens in your community participated in the war – things such as memorials, veterans' graves or honour rolls in churches. Visit the local cenotaph or war memorial to study its inscription. Make a map of the community and mark where war memorials/statues/monuments are located. Research what they commemorate, when they were erected, who erected them and why.

28. Using the Internet, research Canadian memorial sites located around the world. Show them on a map and describe their significance. Have your class design and construct its own monument. For information on Canadian memorials, visit the "Memorials" section of the Veterans Affairs Canada website.

29. Research memorials located around the world that commemorate animals in war. Show the memorials on a map and describe their significance.

30. Make a list of animals that helped in war and peace support efforts – either overseas or in Canada. Explain what each animal did and why it was important.

31. Do a novel study, individually or as a group. Choose a fictional or historic book with a storyline based on Canada's war or peacekeeping involvement.

32. Write to a Canadian Forces member posted in Canada or overseas.

33. Participate in the "Valentines for Vets" or "Christmas Cards for Troops" projects. Send special greetings to veterans in local nursing homes or Canadian Forces members posted overseas.

34. Plant tulips, a tree or an entire memorial garden in memory of local citizens who died during their military service and/or veterans from your community who have passed on.

35. Write a letter to a veteran (it could be a relative, family friend or someone from your community) thanking them for their sacrifice and celebrating their achievements.

36. Play the role of a war correspondent from the First or Second World War. Write headlines, news stories, local interest features, or advertisements as if you went back in time.

37. Compile a list of scientific and technological innovations developed in times of war. Write an essay on their impact on today's world.

38. Research the contribution of Aboriginal, African or Asian-Canadian soldiers during the First or Second World War or the Korean War. Present your findings to your classmates.

39. Create a flag, crest or symbol commemorating the contribution of certain groups during the First or Second World War or the Korean War. These groups could include women, or Aboriginal, African or Asian-Canadians.

40. Prepare a graph showing various statistics on Canada's involvement in the First or Second World War or the Korean War. Compare the numbers of those who died, were injured or taken prisoner of war to the population of your school, town, city or province. How do these statistics compare to other countries involved in the war?

41. Research and prepare a report on the various war service medals awarded to Canadians. Look at the reasons why specific medals are awarded, their "order of precedence," and at the stories of people who have earned certain ones. Present your findings to your class.

42. Research and write an essay on a Canadian who earned the Victoria Cross and present your findings to your classmates. For information on Canadian recipients of the Victoria Cross, visit the Veterans Affairs Canada website.

43. Create a war memorabilia exhibit or a "Wall of Honour" in your school. Display photographs, newspaper articles, artifacts and pictures of community members who served in the military. Invite family members and the public to visit. To see an example of a "Wall of Honour," visit the Canadian Forces section of the Veterans Affairs Canada website.

44. Prepare a menu, a cookbook or a meal-plan based on wartime rations. What was substituted for rationed items such as sugar? Sell the cookbook to raise funds for another school project.

45. Plan and organize a play that tells the stories of Veterans from your community who have served in wars and peace support missions.

46. Make "Izzy" dolls and send them to Canada's service men and women to give to children who live in troubled areas of the world. To learn how to make "Izzy" dolls, visit the Mark Isfeld Memorial website.

47. Encourage your local public library or local businesses to create a display of wartime memorabilia. Ask them to include photographs, uniforms, badges, military medals and decorations or diaries in the displays.

48. Volunteer at an elementary school library to read wartime stories to young children. You could also share the personal stories of local veterans and members of the Canadian Forces.

49. Visit the Veterans Affairs Canada website regularly for news, information and ideas on how to mark Veterans' Week and other important times of remembrance.

50. Last but certainly not least: never forget the contributions and sacrifices of the men and women who have served Canada in times of war, military conflict and peace – especially those who did not return.

CF Appreciation days are also very common events sponsored by private citizens and businesses. For example, sports teams giving free tickets to CF members, ski resorts allowing CF members to ski for free, VIA Rail providing free rail travel for CF members, half price white water rafting, etc.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. Who is honoured during Remembrance Day ceremonies?

Q2. When does repatriation occur?

Q3. What is one of the mandates of Veterans Affairs Canada?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. We honour those who fought for Canada in the First World War (1914–1918), the Second World War (1939–1945), and the Korean War (1950–1953), as well as those who have served since then.

A2. When a Canadian soldier or diplomat is killed during international operations their remains are repatriated (returned) to Canada for burial.

A3. One of the mandates of Veterans Affairs Canada is to ensure that the Canadian public remembers the sacrifices of the soldiers – past and present.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are two ways in which individuals can demonstrate their support of CF members?

Q2. What is a Ramp Ceremony?

Q3. Why was Highway 401 from Glen Miller Road in Trenton, Ont. to the Don Valley Parkway/Highway 404 in Toronto given the additional name “Highway of Heroes”?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Individuals can demonstrate their support of CF members by:

- purchasing “Support Our Troops Merchandise”;
- making monetary donations;
- wearing yellow ribbons; and
- wearing red on Fridays.

A2. A Ramp Ceremony is when the body of the fallen soldier is loaded onto the aircraft. The soldier’s unit forms up at the rear of the cargo aircraft, flanking both sides, with a gap in the middle. The flag-draped casket is removed from a military vehicle by the honour guard and is then marched to the aircraft. The formation comes to attention, and salutes as their comrade begins their journey home.

A3. Highway 401 from Glen Miller Road in Trenton, Ont. to the Don Valley Parkway/Highway 404 in Toronto bears the additional name “Highway of Heroes” in honour of Canada’s fallen soldiers, notably those who have died on duty in Afghanistan. This stretch of the freeway is often travelled by a convoy of vehicles carrying a fallen soldier’s body with his or her family from CFB Trenton to the coroner’s office in Toronto.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Being aware of the different ways in which Canadian citizens recognize the service of CF members may provide cadets with activities in which they can organize/participate in. Citizenship is a critical component of the CCM. Exhibiting patriotism through displays of support for the serving members of the CF is important.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

A2-043 Department of National Defence. (2008). *Current Operations*. Retrieved February 12, 2008, from http://www.forces.gc.ca/site/operations/current_ops_e.asp.

A2-061 Department of National Defence. (2008). *Support our Troops*. Retrieved February 12, 2008, from http://www.cfpsa.com/supportourtroops/.

A2-062 Department of National Defence. (2008). *Canada Remembers*. Retrieved February 12, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 4

EO C320.01 – VIEW *HISTORICA MINUTES* OF CANADIAN MILITARY HISTORY

Total Time: 2 X 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Photocopy selected *Historica Minutes* background information handouts located at Annexes AE to AJ for each cadet.

Set up a TV and DVD player.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An in-class activity was chosen for TP 1 as it is an interactive way to stimulate interest in the historical actions of the Canadian Army.

A group discussion was chosen for TP 2 as it allows the cadet to interact with their peers and share their knowledge, opinions and feelings about the Historica Minutes they watched.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have viewed and discussed *Historica Minutes* of Canadian military history.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to view and discuss *Historica Minutes* of Canadian military history because they represent a part of Canada's history. The sacrifices and actions of Canadian soldiers during both World Wars helped to build Canada into the nation that it is today. As Canadian citizens, cadets need to be aware that although these events happened decades ago, the aftermath still continues to have an influence on how we live

and how Canada is viewed as a nation. Currently, thousands of Canadian soldiers are deployed in overseas operations where they are required to risk their lives on a daily basis. Watching the *Historica Minutes* will help develop awareness for what current soldiers may be experiencing.

Teaching Point 1 **View *Historica Minutes***

Time: 15 min Method: In-Class Activity

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

This information is to be used when introducing each *Historica Minute*.

MILITARY *HISTORICA MINUTES*

Historica Minutes are one-minute movies that portray exciting and important stories from Canada's past. Currently, Canada is internationally recognized for its role as a peacekeeping nation, but Canadian soldiers have been involved in war for centuries and their dedication and heroism should not be forgotten. *Historica Minutes* pays homage to Canada's military history.

WORLD WAR I (WW I)

John McCrae

John McCrae is the author of, "In Flanders Fields", the famous war poem which commemorates the fallen soldiers of WW I. During the Battle of Ypres, McCrae, a doctor, wrote the poem describing the experiences he faced while tending to wounded soldiers in the trenches. The poem was first published in *Punch* magazine, December 8, 1915. Posthumously, the poem was published in 1918, as one of a collection of poems in the book, *In Flanders Fields and Other Poems*.

John McCrae was born in Guelph, Ont., on November 30, 1872. He received his education at the University of Toronto, and completed his fellowship in pathology at McGill University in Montreal, Que. Prior to the outbreak of the war, he worked at both the Alexandra and Royal Victoria hospitals in Montreal, Que. McCrae died January 28, 1918, of pneumonia while being the officer in charge of medicine at the Boulogne No. 3 General Hospital.

Valour Road

WW I is also known as "The Great War," because of its international scale; its massive mobilization of men, munitions and supplies and its huge impact on human life. Canadians fought and died in battles at Ypres, Mount Sorrel, Beaumont-Hamel, Courcelette, Vimy Ridge, Passchendaele and Amiens. More than 50 000 Canadians died in WW I.

Throughout WW I, Canadian soldiers earned 69 Victoria Crosses (VC) – awarded for the most conspicuous bravery, a daring or pre-eminent act of valour or self-sacrifice or extreme devotion to duty, in the presence of the enemy. Of those 69 men, three – Corporal Leo Clarke, Sergeant-Major Frederick William Hall and Lieutenant Robert Shankland – remarkably hailed from the same street in Winnipeg, Man. – Pine Street, which was later renamed Valour Road in their honour. The trio was nicknamed the "Pine Street Boys" and over an 18-month period from 1915–1917, their actions in battle resulted in each of them being awarded the VC. It is believed to be the only time that this military honour has been given to three men who lived on the same street.

Corporal Leo Clarke won his VC in the trenches during the Battle of the Somme. Clarke, despite being alone and under attack by 20 enemy soldiers, attacked the enemy emptying his revolver twice and then firing a German

rifle he picked up from the ground. In the struggle that followed, a German officer bayoneted him in the knee before Clarke could shoot him. Wounded and bleeding, Clarke kept up the attack, and as enemy soldiers fled, Clarke followed, killing four more and taking a prisoner. Though he was ordered to hospital, Clarke returned to battle the next day. Leo Clarke died in action a month later.

Sergeant-Major Frederick William Hall was awarded the VC for giving his life to save a comrade at the Battle of Ypres. With his company pinned in the trenches by fierce enemy fire, Hall went out twice at night to rescue injured men. On the morning of February 21, 1915, men in the trenches heard groans of an injured soldier on the battlefield. Hall and two others volunteered to go after him, but as they went over the top of their trench they drew heavy fire. The two other men were injured, and all were forced back into their trench. After a few minutes, Hall went out alone in broad daylight, with enemy guns waiting for him. He crawled out and across the field under a hail of bullets. Reaching the fallen soldier, Hall managed to squirm himself under the wounded man and began to move him on his back towards his lines. However, when Hall raised his head to find his way back to the trench, he was struck with a bullet in the head and died instantly.

At the battle of Passchendaele, Lieutenant Robert Shankland led his men to a forward position which they held during a fierce counterattack by the Germans. Knowing that an accurate description of his company's position was critical in the Allied battle plan, Shankland made his way alone through the battlefield to Battalion Headquarters, delivered the necessary information, and returned the way he came. Rejoining his men, Shankland carried on until the end of the battle. The citation of his VC commends his personal courage, gallantry and skill, and emphasizes the example he set for the men under his command. Of the three VC recipients from Valour Road, only Shankland survived the war.

Vimy Ridge

The WW I battle of Vimy Ridge is one of the greatest battles in Canadian history. On April 9, 1917, Canadian bravery and valour led to the tremendous victory for the entire Allied force and was considered the turning point in the war.

Vimy Ridge was a formidable stronghold to overcome as it was where the Germans' heavily fortified Hindenburg Line met with their main trench lines leading north from Hill 70 near Arras, France. The fortifications consisted of three layers of trenches, barbed wire and deep tunnels. Allied troops were offered little cover when attacking due to the natural slope of the hill. Both British and French forces had tried unsuccessfully to take the ridge throughout 1915 and 1916. In the spring of 1917 the Canadian Corps was given the task to break through the impenetrable German lines.

The Battle of Vimy Ridge, commanded by Sir Arthur William Currie, was to be the first time that all four Canadian divisions were to fight on the same battlefield. It was Currie who was determined to keep the Canadian divisions together rather than having them mixed in with various British units. The battle began in the early morning of April 9, with a heavy artillery bombardment, followed by the advance of 20 000 Canadians. Despite great numbers of casualties from heavy machine-gun fire, the advance continued and by April 12, the Canadians had taken Vimy Ridge. The Canadians, along with the British, captured more ground, more prisoners and more guns in the Battle of Vimy Ridge, than during any previous offensive of WW I. Canadian casualties numbered 10 602 with 3 598 of them being fatal. During this single campaign, four Canadians were awarded the VC and the entire Canadian contingent was commended for their bravery.

The victory at Vimy was a distinctly Canadian triumph which helped create a new and stronger sense of Canadian identity and pride. This victory, along with other Canadian military achievements during WW I, raised Canada's international reputation and helped earn a separate place at the peace conference which drew up the Treaty of Versailles, officially ending WW I.

WORLD WAR II (WW II)

Warrant Officer John Osborn

During WW II, Canadians did not just battle in the fields across Europe. They fought on land, in the air and on the seas in France, the Netherlands, North Africa and Hong Kong. When Japanese troops began to attack Hong Kong in 1941, the Canadian government sent two units – the Royal Rifles of Canada and the Winnipeg Grenadiers – to assist in the defense of the British colony.

During the morning of December 19, 1941, a company of the Winnipeg Grenadiers led by Warrant Officer John Osborn became divided during an attack on Mount Butler. The group led by Osborn, which was vastly outnumbered by the enemy, was able to capture the hill and hold it for over three hours until they were forced to withdraw. The Warrant Officer and a small group covered the retreat and when their turn came to fall back, Osborn single-handedly engaged the enemy, coming under heavy fire as he assisted his men to rejoin the company.

In the afternoon, the company was cut off from the battalion and completely surrounded by the enemy, who were able to approach to within grenade throwing distance of the slight depression which the company was holding. Several enemy grenades were thrown which Warrant Officer Osborn picked up and threw back. The enemy threw a grenade which landed in a position where it was impossible to pick it up and return it in time. Shouting a warning to his comrades this gallant Warrant Officer threw himself on the grenade which exploded, killing him instantly. His self-sacrifice undoubtedly saved the lives of many others. Warrant Officer Osborn for his act of bravery was posthumously awarded Hong Kong's only VC. At 42, he was the second oldest VC recipient in World War II.

Tommy Prince

Thomas George Prince was born October 25, 1915, in Petersfield, Man. He was one of 11 children born to Harry and Elizabeth Prince of the Brokenhead Band. Prince was accepted into the army in June 1940. He was initially employed as a field engineer and then with the Canadian Parachute Battalion. Prince was then chosen to train with the 1st Special Service Force, a specialized assault team. To the enemy they were known as the Devil's Brigade.

Sergeant Prince distinguished himself throughout the war. In 1944, while in Italy, Prince was tasked to spy on the Germans. He set up an observation post in an abandoned farmhouse and for days reported on activity in the German camp. When shelling severed his communication wire, Prince donned civilian clothing and, acting as a farmer, successfully repaired the break in the wire in full view of German soldiers. His actions resulted in the destruction of four enemy tanks that had been firing on the Allies. King George VI decorated Prince with both the Military Medal and the Silver Star, an American decoration for gallantry in action.

Following the war, Tommy Prince re-enlisted and served with the Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry through two tours of duty in Korea. For his service he was awarded the Korean, Canadian Volunteer Service and United Nations medals. After being wounded in the knee, he was honourably discharged on October 28, 1953.

Tommy Prince is Canada's most decorated Aboriginal war veteran. He dedicated himself to attaining increased educational and economic opportunities for Aboriginal people.

Juno Beach

After the mainland of Northwest Europe was lost to Germany in the summer of 1940, except for the large-scale raid on Dieppe in August of 1942, Allied forces did not return in strength until the invasion of Normandy on June 6, 1944. Now known in history as D-Day – Operation Overlord. The task was formidable, for the Germans had turned the coastline into a continuous fortress with guns, pillboxes, wire, mines and beach obstacles.

On June 6, 1944, British, American, Polish and Canadian forces poured across the English Channel under the cover of night and landed at Normandy to remove the German forces from France. Two armies carried out

the operation. On the western half, extending from the base of the Cotentin Peninsula to a point northwest of Bayeux, the 1st United States Army attacked on the beaches “Utah” and “Omaha”. In a sector reaching eastward to the mouth of the River Orne, the 2nd British Army assaulted the beaches of “Gold”, “Juno” and “Sword”.

The Canadians, under Major-General R.F.L. Keller, were responsible for “Juno” in the centre of the British front. Their task was to establish a beachhead along the 8 km between Courseulles and St-Aubin-sur-Mer, push through the gap between Bayeux and Caen, then penetrate to Carpiquet airfield 18 km (11 miles) inland. It was hoped that by nightfall the two British divisions to their left and right flanks would have taken Caen and Bayeux and the Canadians would be across the road and railway linking the two towns.

By the end of the day, after facing fierce opposition, the 3rd Canadian Infantry Division was well established on its intermediate objectives, though short of the planned D-Day objectives. Progress was much the same on either Allied flank; it was a magnificent accomplishment. The strong Atlantic Wall had been breached and supplies and men were moving ashore on the day following D-Day to resume the advance. The Allies were back in Europe.

Approximately 14 000 Canadians landed in Normandy on D-Day. Inevitably, the cost of life was considerable, but not nearly as high as had been feared. The Canadian assault force suffered 1 074 casualties, of which 359 were fatal. Ahead lay more fighting – very bitter fighting in which Canadian forces would play their part. The day of victory in Europe was still 11 months away.

ACTIVITY

Time: 15 min

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have cadets view and discuss *Historica Minutes* of Canadian military history.

RESOURCES

- TV,
- DVD player,
- *Historica Minutes*, and
- Background information handouts located at Annexes AE to AJ.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

Select a suitable classroom or viewing area.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Select three *Historica Minutes* to view from the following list:
    a. WW I, to include:
        (1) John McCrae,
        (2) Valour Road, and
        (3) Vimy Ridge; and
    b. WW II, to include:
        (1) Warrant Officer John Osborn,

(2) Tommy Prince, and

(3) Juno Beach.

2. Introduce the *Historica Minute*.

3. Have the cadets view the *Historica Minute*.

4. Repeat steps 2. and 3. until three *Historica Minutes* have been viewed.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadets' participation in the in-class activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 2 **Conduct a Group Discussion in Which the Cadets Discuss *Historica Minutes***

Time: 10 min Method: Group Discussion

TIPS FOR ANSWERING/FACILITATING DISCUSSION

- Establish ground rules for discussion, eg, everyone should listen respectfully; don't interrupt; only one person speaks at a time; no one's ideas should be made fun of; you can disagree with ideas but not with the person; try to understand others as much as you hope they understand you; etc.
- Sit the group in a circle, making sure all cadets can be seen by everyone else.
- Ask questions that will provoke thought; in other words avoid questions with yes or no answers.
- Manage time by ensuring the cadets stay on topic.
- Listen and respond in a way that indicates you have heard and understood the cadet. This can be done by paraphrasing their ideas.
- Give the cadets time to respond to your questions.
- Ensure every cadet has an opportunity to participate. One option is to go around the group and have each cadet answer the question with a short answer. Cadets must also have the option to pass if they wish.
- Additional questions should be prepared ahead of time.

SUGGESTED QUESTIONS

Q1. How did watching the *Historica Minutes* make you feel?

Q2. What did you learn from the *Historica Minutes*?

Q3. Was there anything presented in any of the *Historica Minutes* that surprised you or had an impact on you?

Q4. How did the actions of the individual/individuals portrayed in the *Historica Minutes* influence the history of the Canadian Army and Canada as a nation?

Other questions and answers will develop throughout the group discussion. The group discussion should not be limited to only those suggested.

Reinforce those answers given and comments made during the group discussion, ensuring the teaching points have been covered.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets' participation in the group discussion will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the in-class activity and group discussion will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Being aware of the sacrifices and actions of the Canadian Army and Canadian soldiers during the First and Second World Wars provides cadets with a basis with which to understand what currently deployed soldiers are experiencing. Regardless of when conflict happens, the results are similar.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Instructors are encouraged to link the *Historica Minutes* shown in this EO with memorials discussed in EO M320.01 (Identify Canadian Historical Sites and Their Significance, Section 1) and the Victoria Cross recipients discussed in EO M320.02 (Define Valour, Section 2).

This EO has been allocated two periods, which do not have to be taught in sequence. Corps are not required to use all periods allocated.

REFERENCES

C3-030 Historica Foundation of Canada. (2005). *Military*. Retrieved April 24, 2008, from http://histori.ca/minutes/theme.do?id=10007&className=ca.histori.minutes.entity.ClassicMinute.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 5

EO C320.02 – IDENTIFY HONOURS AND AWARDS OF THE CANADIAN FORCES (CF)

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

The activity in TP 2 uses learning stations. Learning stations are a form of group work, where the cadets learn by sorting through the information presented. When setting up learning stations, ensure there is enough room for each cadet to be comfortable and adequate space for writing down information. When the cadets arrive at a learning station, all required information shall be available. These stations should be placed closely together to minimize time for movement; however, far enough apart to avoid interruptions from other groups. For this lesson, set up six learning stations for the honours and awards of the CF.

Photocopy the honours and awards learning station information cards located at Annexes AK to AP (three per station) and the honours and awards activity sheets located at Annexes AQ to AV (one per cadet).

Post the CF Honours and Awards Chart in the classroom.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 to orient the cadet to the honours and awards system of the CF.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 2 as an interactive way to identify honours and awards of the CF and to confirm the cadets' comprehension of the material.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to identify honours and awards of the CF.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to be able to identify honours and awards of the CF as there may be situations where cadets will interact with current/former service members. Being able to identify honours and awards that have been bestowed upon them demonstrates the cadets' knowledge and understanding of the commitments and sacrifices of the individual. CF familiarization is a key component of the Cadet Program, identifying and understanding the circumstances for which honours and awards are presented provides cadets with a contextual understanding of the role of the CF and its members in Canada and abroad.

Teaching Point 1 **Describe the CF Honours and Awards System**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

The purpose of this TP is to provide a brief introduction to CF honours and awards. It is suggested that the categories of honours are listed on flip chart paper and the characteristics are added as they are discussed. A cadet may be selected to be the scribe.

Since ancient times it has been customary to recognize military valour, bravery or meritorious service by awarding trophies, badges, insignia or medals. For the last three centuries, Canadians have been presented with awards from the French Regime and the British Empire. Canadian honours are a recent innovation, beginning with the creation of the Order of Canada in 1967. The system expanded in 1972 to become the wide ranging system that is currently in place.

The modern Canadian honours system recognizes outstanding achievements, gallantry in combat, bravery and service to Crown and country. In Canada, all honours originate from Her Majesty The Queen and are divided into three main categories:

Orders. Orders are societies of merit, which recognize outstanding achievement and exceptional service over the course of a career or life. Orders usually have different levels or grades of membership and the distinction is made with differences in the insignia associated to the various levels or in the way they are worn. As an order is a society of merit, one is not awarded an order but admitted into it and, where subsequent service justifies it, one may be promoted within the order. As it is a membership, a person can resign from an order or be expulsed if that person failed to respect the principle of honour.

Decorations. Decorations recognize an act of gallantry in combat, or of bravery or meritorious service in a single event or over a specific period of time. A decoration is only awarded once to an individual; if further actions meet the criteria for the same decoration, a bar is awarded to be worn on the initial decoration in order to denote a second award.

Medals. Medals recognize participation in a campaign or operation, service under exceptional circumstances, commemorate royal or national anniversaries, or recognize long and loyal service. Bars may also be awarded to campaign or service medals to specify the service being recognized and on long service awards to denote additional periods of eligible service.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What and when was the first Canadian honour created?

Q2. What category of honour is awarded for an act of gallantry in combat, or of bravery or meritorious service in a single event or over a specific period of time?

Q3. What type of service are medals awarded for?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The first Canadian honour created was the Order of Canada in 1967.

A2. A decoration.

A3. Medals recognize participation in a campaign or operation, service under exceptional circumstances, commemorate royal or national anniversaries or recognize long and loyal service.

Teaching Point 2 **Conduct an Identification Activity in Which the Cadet Will Identify CF Honours and Awards**

Time: 20 min Method: Practical Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for the cadet to identify CF honours and awards.

RESOURCES

- CF Honours and Awards Chart,
- Honours and awards learning station information cards located at Annexes AK to AP (three per station),
- Honours and awards activity sheets located at Annexes AQ to AV (one per cadet),
- Honours and awards answer key located at Annex AW, and
- Pen/pencil.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

Set up six learning stations, to include:

- honours and awards learning station information cards (three per station), and
- pens/pencils.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Brief cadets on activity instructions, to include:
   a. time limit for each station (two minutes),
   b. direction of rotation between stations (clockwise),
   c. signal for rotation (whistle blast),
   d. explanation of learning station information cards, and
   e. an overview of the honours and awards activity sheets.
2. Hand out honours and awards activity sheets located at Annexes AQ to AV (to each cadet).
3. Divide cadets into six groups.

4. Have groups move to the learning station which corresponds to their group number.

5. Have the cadets complete the honours and awards activity sheets while rotating from station to station every two minutes.

It is important to circulate around the room to facilitate the activities and help the cadets as required. If possible, assign other instructors to aid with the supervision and facilitation.

6. Once each group has been to each station, have one cadet from each group share the information they recorded from the station they just completed with the rest of the cadets. In most cases the groups will have recorded the same information for each station. If a group has listed different information, have them share their answers.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' completion of the honours and awards activity sheets will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Each day CF members in Canada and around the world risk their lives to protect and enforce the social and political institutions that we have become accustomed to. They have no expectation to be recognized for their service. Their actions are selfless. CF honours and awards are tools which recognize the outstanding service of CF members. It is important for cadets to be able to identify the different honours and awards as they demonstrate the commitment and sacrifices made by CF members.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

A1-001 Veterans Affairs Canada. (2008). *Modern Honours of Canada (1972)*. Retrieved February 13, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=collections/cmdp/mainmenu/group02.

A2-064 A-AD-200-000/JD-001 Department of National Defence. (2005). *Canadian Honours and Awards Bestowed Upon Members of the Canadian Forces*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 6

EO C320.03 – TOUR A LOCAL HISTORICAL SITE ILLUSTRATING THE ROLE OF THE CANADIAN ARMY

Total Time:	90 min

THERE IS NO INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE PROVIDED FOR THIS EO.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 7

EO C320.04 – DISCUSS THE ACTIONS OF A CANADIAN ARMY SERVICE MEMBER HONOURED FOR AN ACT OF VALOUR

Total Time:	2 X 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, *Silver Star Qualification Standard and Plan*, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Photocopy biographies of Canadian Army service members awarded the Victoria Cross located at Annex AD, if cadets require an additional copy.

Bring the cadets' research notes from EO M320.02 (Define Valour, Section 2).

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An in-class activity was chosen for this lesson as it is an interactive way for the cadet to be exposed to a number of different Canadian Army service members who have been honoured for acts of valour.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have discussed, with a fellow classmate, the actions of a historical or contemporary Canadian Army service member honoured for an act of valour.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to discuss, with a fellow classmate, the actions of a historical or contemporary Canadian Army Service member honoured for an act of valour because it will further assist them in developing a definition for valour. By discussing and comparing the actions of Canadian Army Service members, cadets will be able to recognize valour through example.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss the Actions of a Canadian Army Service Member Honoured for an Act of Valour**

Time: 25 min Method: In-Class Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for the cadet to discuss the actions of a historical or contemporary Canadian Army service member honoured for an act of valour.

RESOURCES

- List of biographies located at Annex AA,
- Description of decorations of valour located at Annex AB,
- Biographies of Canadian Army service members awarded the Victoria Cross located at Annex AC,
- Notebook, and
- Pen/pencil.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Hand out the cadets' research notes.
2. Have the cadets review their research notes on their respective Canadian Army service member.
3. Divide the cadets into pairs to discuss the actions of their respective, historical or contemporary, Canadian Army service member for no longer than 20 minutes.
4. Bring the class back together. Ask cadets to provide one example of how their chosen Canadian Army service member demonstrated valour.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadets' participation in the in-class activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the discussion of the actions of their respective, historical or contemporary, Canadian Army service member, with their fellow classmates, will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Being aware of the heroic actions of Canadian Army Service members, historical or contemporary, will provide cadets with a framework to understand valour. In many cases, cadets have developed their understanding of heroism and valour through movies and television. This research will help to establish a more realistic perspective of the type of actions which represent valour.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

This EO provides the cadet additional time to present information relating to the act(s) of valour of their chosen recipient.

Biographies of historical or contemporary military service members can be found at Annex AD.

Corps may schedule up to two periods for this EO. During the second period, cadets may be given the opportunity to research and discuss additional Canadian Army Services members.

REFERENCES

A2-064 A-AD-200-000/JD-001 Department of National Defence. (2005). *Canadian Honours and Awards Bestowed Upon Members of the Canadian Forces*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C2-173 (ISBN 0-7509-3695-9) Glanfield, J. (2005). *Bravest of the Brave: The Story of the Victoria Cross. Gloucestershire*, England: Sutton Publishing Limited.

C2-174 (ISBN 0-7478-0635-7) Duckers, P. (2005). *The Victoria Cross*. Buckinghamshire, England: Shire Publications Ltd.

C2-175 (ISBN 1-55439-057-5) Douglas, T. (2005). *Great Canadian War Heroes: Victoria Cross Recipients of World War II*. Canmore, AB: Altitude Publishing Canada Ltd.

C2-176 (ISBN 1-84342-091-0) Creagh, O., & Humphris, E. (Eds). (1920). *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920*. Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

C2-177 Governor General of Canada. (2005). *Honours News Releases*. Retrieved March 7, 2008, from http://www.gg.ca/media/index_e.asp?typeID=2.

C2-178 (ISBN 0-330-49133-4) Arthur, M. (2004). *Symbol of Courage: The Men Behind the Medal*. London, England: Pan Books.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

LIST OF WAR MEMORIALS IN CANADA AND OVERSEAS

MEMORIALS IN CANADA

Newfoundland National Memorial (St. John's, N.L.)

Montreal War Memorial (Montreal, Que.)

Tomb of the Unknown Soldier (Ottawa, Ont.)

The National War Memorial (Ottawa, Ont.)

Reconciliation: The Peacekeeping Monument (Ottawa, Ont.)

National Aboriginal Veterans Monument (Ottawa, Ont.)

Korean Veterans National Wall of Remembrance (Brampton, Ont.)

Valour Road (Winnipeg, Man.)

Women's Tri-Service Memorial (Winnipeg, Man.)

Memorial Gates (University of Saskatchewan) (Saskatoon, Sask.)

Canadian Memorial Church (Vancouver, B.C.)

The Cenotaph, Victory Square (Vancouver, B.C.)

MEMORIALS OVERSEAS

WWI

The Canadian National Vimy Memorial (Vimy Ridge, France)

La Quesnel Memorial (Amiens, France)

Courcelette Memorial (Courcelette, France)

Beaumont-Hamel Newfoundland Memorial (Beaumont-Hamel, France)

The Passchendaele Memorial (Passendale, Belgium)

St Julien Memorial (Ypres, Belgium)

Hill 62 (Sanctuary Wood) Memorial (Ypres, Belgium)

WWII

Bayeux Memorial (Bayeux, France)

Brookwood Memorial (London, England)

Groesbeek Memorial (Nijmegen, Netherlands)

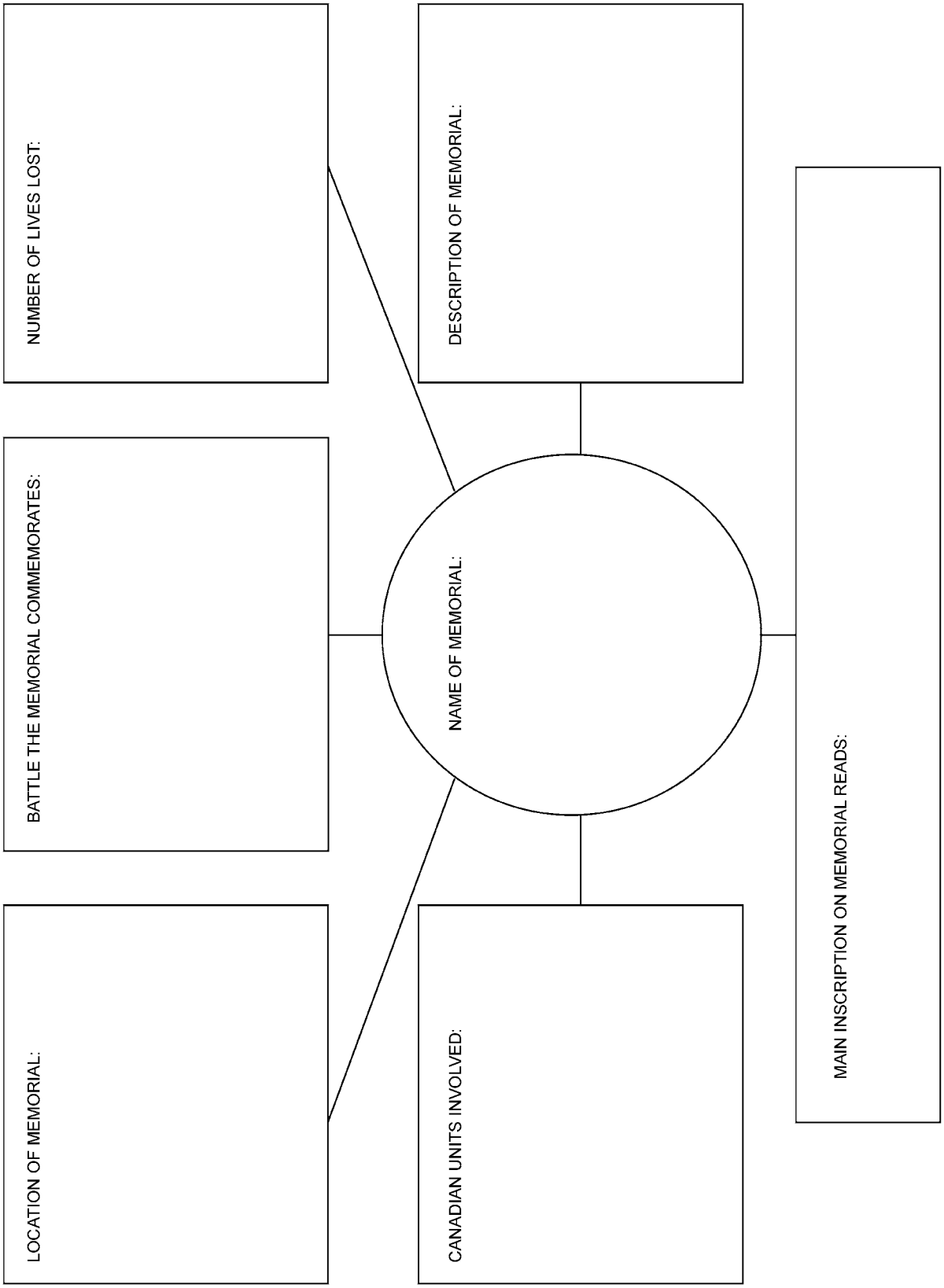
Cassino Memorial (Cassino, Italy)

Korean War

Canadian Korean War Memorial Garden (Naechon, Korea)

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PRESENTATION GRAPHIC ORGANIZER



THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

NEWFOUNDLAND NATIONAL MEMORIAL

Memorial	Newfoundland National Memorial
Location	St. John's, Newfoundland and Labrador
War	World War I, World War II

The Newfoundland National Memorial stands on a main street in St. John's, N.L. facing the harbour. It commemorates all of Newfoundland's wartime achievements on land and sea. The Newfoundland National Memorial is locally funded and represents the war effort of Newfoundlanders who were not part of Confederation during either of the World Wars. Newfoundland sent 8 500 soldiers and sailors abroad in the First World War, from a population of less than 250 000; over 1 500 gave their lives.

The monument is at the back of a semicircular wall of granite flanked by wide stone steps. Flowers in stone urns flank the approach and trees have been planted around the dais. The Royal Newfoundland Regiment, the Royal Naval Reserve, the Mercantile Marine and the Forestry Corps are each represented by lifelike bronzed figures at the base of the monument. Above, on a granite pedestal, is a female figure symbolizing Newfoundland's willingness to serve and the spirit of loyalty to the Empire. The figure holds a torch in her left hand as a symbol of freedom and a sword in her right, poised and ready for battle as need be.

The memorial was unveiled by Field Marshal D. Haig on July 1, 1924, the anniversary of Newfoundland's First World War battle at Beaumont-Hamel. The maintenance of the memorial falls under the responsibility of the Government of Newfoundland and Labrador.

During WWI, the Royal Newfoundland Regiment's fiercest battle was fought at Beaumont-Hamel, the Battle of the Somme. The Somme was considered the main Allied attack on the Western Front during 1916. The Somme's offensive had its origins in the English/French plans to bring the war to a rapid close. The Allies desperately needed a success, after numerous failures on the Eastern Front, so a victory on the Western Front was seen as a critical step in ending the war.

When the 29th British Division, which included the Royal Newfoundland Regiment, arrived in western Europe in the spring of 1916, the 4th Army's front extended 30 km (18 miles), from north of the Somme river between Arras and Albert. It was matched by the Germans who held their side of the front with a three-tiered system of forward trenches, which were well dug in, with extensive protective wire, and capable of surviving sustained artillery attacks. There were also second and third lines of trenches constructed 200 m (218 yards) and 5 000 m (5 400 yards) behind the first line of trenches.

To combat the heavily defended lines, an intense week-long artillery attack was carried out in the last week of June to soften enemy resistance and cut the protective wire. Unfortunately, unbeknown to 4th Army commanders, while considerable damage was done to the trenches, the barbed wire remained mostly intact. Even worse, the Germans, protected within deep trenches, were largely unscathed.

The July 1st offensive called for the 4th Army to move along the 30 km (18 miles) front, driving the enemy from it first and second positions. In the Beaumont-Hamel area, this meant a 5 000 m (5 400 yards) advance for the 29th Division. The 86th and 87th Brigades were to lead off the advance securing the First Line while the 88th, and its leading battalions, the Essex and the Royal Newfoundland Regiment were to attack, under artillery cover, the German positions on the Beaucourt Road.

From the beginning it was apparent that the actions were not going according to plans. The 86th and 87th Brigades were virtually annihilated and never reached their objectives, however, due to poor communications the second wave, the 88th, were ordered to advance and attack the German front line. They had to cross more than 200 m (218 yards) of unprotected ground just to reach the front line. Without the expected artillery and support cover, the attack was over in less than 30 minutes. Of the 801 Newfoundlanders who went to battle that day, only 68 remained unwounded.

"We Will Remember: War Monuments in Canada World Wide Web Site", National War Memorial, Retrieved March 10, 2008, from http://www.stemnet.nf.ca/momuments/nf/nationalNF.htm

Figure 11C-1 Newfoundland National Memorial

MONTREAL WAR MEMORIAL

Memorial	Montreal War Memorial
Location	Montreal, Quebec
War	World War I, World War II

The Montreal War Memorial, located at Place du Canada in Montreal, Que, is dedicated to the men and women from Montreal who fought in WWI and WWII. It was unveiled on November 11, 1924, by the Governor-General, Julian Hedworth George, Viscount Byng of Vimy. It is the most well known cenotaph in Montreal. Until it was unveiled, Montreal used a portable war memorial made of plaster that was wheeled out whenever and wherever it was needed.

The inscription reads:

“To the glory of God and the memory of the immortal dead who brought us honour and peace.”

Many of the soldiers names inscribed on the monument were members of the Royal Montreal Regiment (RMR). The Regiment traces its origins to the creation of the 14th Battalion of the Canadian Expeditionary Force (CEF) on August 27, 1914. The 14th was created by the amalgamation of several companies of three existing Montreal Militia Regiments: The 1st Regiment (Canadian Grenadier Guards), the 3rd Regiment (Victoria Rifles of Canada) and the 65th Regiment (Carabiniers Mont-Royal). Shortly thereafter, the Battalion was granted its present title by special warrant.

In October 1914 the RMR, over 1 000 strong, arrived in Britain with the rest of the first contingent of the CEF. Six months after leaving Montreal, elements of the Regiment were committed to the Western Front, soon to be followed by the remainder of the RMR. The Regiment’s first battle honour, Ypres, coincided with the first use of poison gas by the Germans.

The RMR fought through much of the bitter trench warfare that characterized World War I. In the process, the Regiment left a battalion, 1 192 strong, in the fields of France and Flanders. By war’s end, of the 6 000 soldiers who had worn the RMR badge, over half had suffered serious wounds.

"DC Memorials", Montreal War Memorials, Copyright 2006–2007 by M. Solberg. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.dcmemorials.com/index_indiv0008321.htm

Figure 11D-1 Montreal War Memorial

TOMB OF THE UNKNOWN SOLDIER

Memorial	Tomb of the Unknown Soldier
Location	Ottawa, Ontario
War	All conflicts – past, present and future

The remains of an unidentified Canadian soldier who died in the First World War were repatriated from France and, with great ceremony, were buried in a tomb in front of the National War Memorial in Ottawa, Ont. The Royal Canadian Legion developed the idea as a Millennium project and it was taken up by the Canadian Government under the lead of Veterans Affairs Canada.

The Tomb of the Unknown Soldier was created to honour the more than 116 000 Canadians who sacrificed their lives for peace and freedom. The Unknown Soldier represents all Canadians, whether they were/are navy, army, air force or merchant marine.

Public Works and Government Services Canada is the custodian of the National War Memorial and was responsible for designing and constructing the tomb and bringing the unknown Canadian soldier home from a cemetery in Vimy, France where he had been laid to rest. The sculpture was designed and created by Mary-Ann Liu, a well known Canadian artist from Mission, B.C.

The tomb is located in the upper plaza of the National War Memorial in Ottawa, in front of the existing monument. It consists of a granite sarcophagus enclosing a casket containing the remains of the unknown soldier. A bronze relief sculpture is secured to the top with stainless steel pins. The four corner pieces of the sarcophagus also have bronze relief work.

The sarcophagus is 3.6 m (12 feet) long, 2.4 m (8 feet) wide and 0.9 m (3 feet) high. It is constructed of dark Caledonian granite which was selected to complement the paler-coloured stone used in the National War Memorial.

The bronze relief sculpture includes the key elements of the stone carving at the Vimy Alter–a medieval sword, a WWI style helmet and branches of maple and laurel leaves. The laurel leaves symbolize both victory and death.

There are four bronze corner pieces; three are decorated with large replicas of the Memorial Cross, while the fourth displays a replica of a poppy, representing soldiers who may fall in future conflicts.

"We Will Remember: War Monuments in Canada World Wide Web Site", Tomb of the Unknown Soldier. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.stemnet.nf.ca/monuments/on/nationalwar.htm

Figure 11E-1 Tomb of the Unknown Soldier

"Answers.Com", Tomb of the Unknown Soldier, Copyright 2008 by Answers Corporation. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.answers.com/topic/cdntomboftheunknownsoldier2-jpg-1

Figure 11E-2 Tomb of the Unknown Soldier

THE NATIONAL WAR MEMORIAL

Memorial	The National War Memorial
Location	Ottawa, Ontario
War	World War I, World War II, Korean War

The National War Memorial, located in Confederation Square, Ottawa, Ont. was originally intended to commemorate the Canadians in World War I. It was officially dedicated on May 21, 1939 by King George VI, less than four months before the start of World War II. The memorial has since had bronze numerals added to each side to commemorate all of Canada's war dead, 1939–1945 (World War II) and 1950–1953 (Korean War).

The monument is 21 m (69 feet) high and reflects the spirit of heroism and self-sacrifice but does not glorify war. It depicts 22 members of the Canadian Forces in uniform passing through a granite arch under the guidance of two figures representing Peace and Freedom. These two figures appear side by side, atop the arch, suggesting that without freedom there can be no enduring peace, and without peace no enduring freedom.

The structure was designed by Vernon March of England, whose design was chosen in a world-wide competition in 1925. The idea, March wrote, was "to perpetuate in this bronze group the people of Canada who went Overseas to the Great War, and to represent them, as we of today saw them, as a record for future generations…" There was to be no suggestion of glorifying war. Vernon March was assisted by his six brothers and his sister who completed the work after his untimely death in 1930.

All branches of the service engaged in the war are represented. Leading the way are infantrymen, the mainstay of the Army. In the front is an infantryman carrying the basic load which weighed 27 kg (60 pounds). At the far left is another infantryman, portrayed older than the rest with a Lewis gun over his right shoulder; on his left and slightly behind is another infantryman with his rifle over his shoulder. The respirator he is wearing was a significant item in a soldier's kit for poison chlorine gas that the Germans introduced in 1915 at Ypres. In front of the cavalryman's horse stands another infantryman depicted with a curly moustache. The other soldier beside the cavalryman represents one of the 3 500 native Canadians who served in the war overseas.

At the front to the right is a kilted soldier with the barrel of a Vickers machine gun over his left shoulder; there were 28 Scottish Regiments in the war. Next to the kilted soldier is an infantryman depicted as very youthful, appropriate of the many soldiers of the First World War that were still in their teens. The soldier with his rifle placed horizontally on his left shoulder represents the Motor Machine Gun Corps, a force of 16 000 responsible for devastating firepower on the battlefield. The artilleryman mounted on the horse on the right was to assist the infantryman by means of heavy bombardment of enemy lines. A sailor, located on the far right, wears a 'cap tally' of HMCS Stadacona. The RCN grew to more than 5 500 officers and men by 1918.

The pilot and air mechanic stand side-by-side in front of the mounted artilleryman. A cavalry soldier is mounted on a horse on the left of the monument. A sapper at the rear of the arch carries a pickaxe over his right shoulder. They were responsible for building roads, bridges and tunnels and for water supplies and major fortifications. The soldier at the rear of the arch, carries a railway spike hammer over his right shoulder. The railways carried men, ammunition and supplies to the front. With his broad-brimmed hat and his cant hook over his shoulder, the forester is easy to locate at the rear of the monument. The Canadian Forestry Corps produced railroad ties, logs for road building and timber for major fortifications.

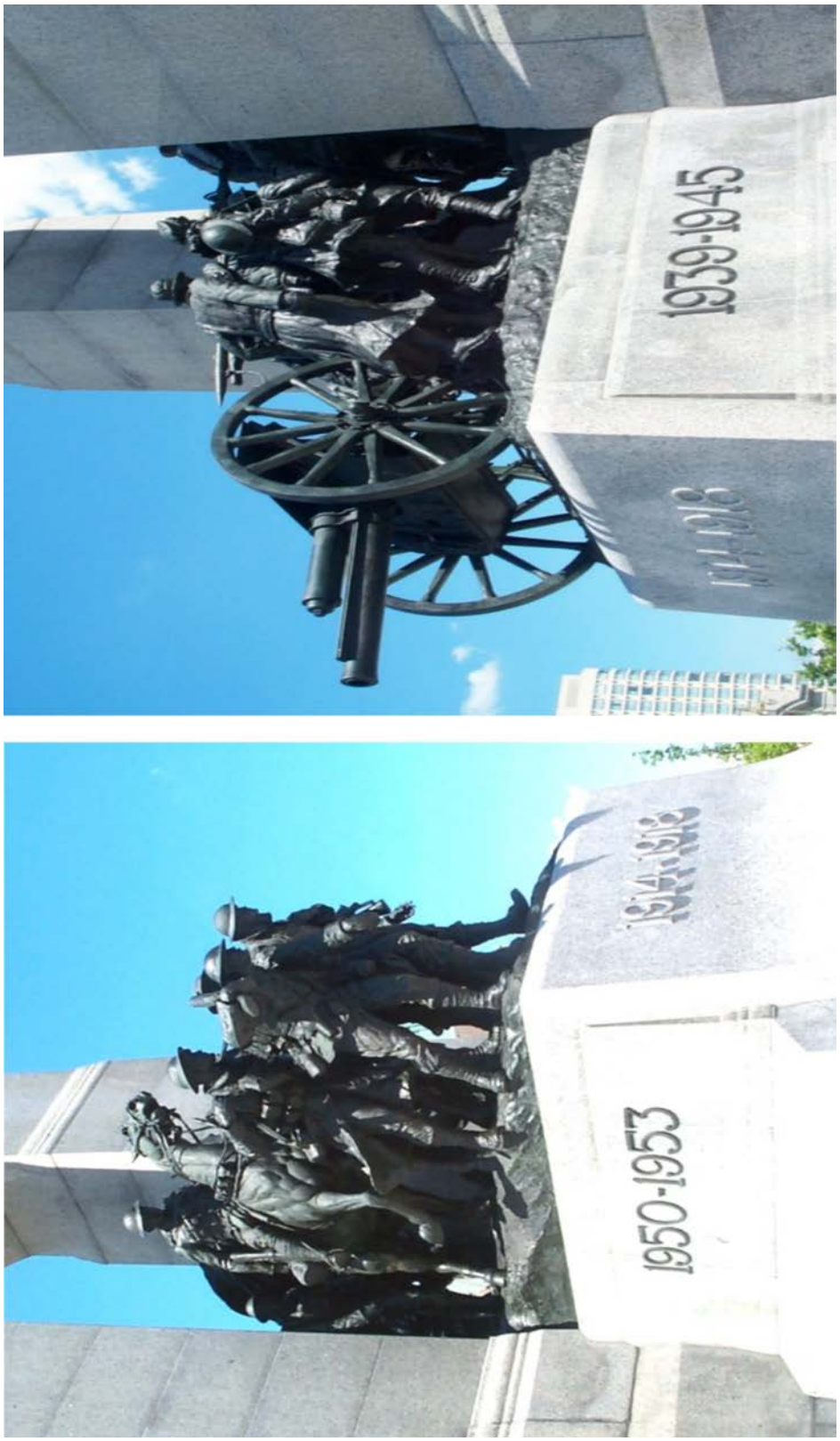
Inside the arch is a soldier who represents those in the Canadian Army Service Corps, which supplied the troops with food, ammunition and other supplies. With his goggles on the front of his field service cap, the dispatch rider stands out at the left rear of the monument. To the rear of the sailor stands a member of the Canadian Corps of Signals. From his shoulder hangs a field telephone that was used to communicate in the trenches and between unit headquarters. The stretcher bearer is to the right and rear of the monument.

Just behind him are two nurses representing the Canadian Army Medical Corps. There is a field artillery piece, an 18-pounder, located at the rear of the monument.

Every year on November 11, Canadians gather at memorials from coast to coast to remember those who died in wartime. The capital hosts the National Remembrance Day ceremony, usually attended by the Governor General, the Prime Minister, veterans, serving military members, the RCMP, cadets and the general public, and is broadcasted across Canada. The ceremony takes place at the National War Memorial, within view of Parliament Hill. The War Memorial owes its prominent position to former Prime Minister Mackenzie King who insisted that Confederation Square be designed with the Memorial in the centre, despite the difficulties it posed for traffic circulation.

"We Will Remember: War Monuments in Canada World Wide Web Site", The National War Memorial, Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.stemnet.nf.ca/monuments/on/nationalwar.htm

Figure 11F-1 The National War Memorial



"We Will Remember: War Monuments in Canada World Wide Web Site", The National War Memorial. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.stemnet.nf.ca/monuments/on/nationalwar.htm

Figure 11F-2 The National War Memorial – Front and Back

RECONCILIATION: THE PEACEKEEPING MONUMENT

Memorial	Reconciliation: The Peacekeeping Monument
Location	Ottawa, Ontario
War	Past/Current/Future peacekeeping actions

The Peacekeeping monument, entitled Reconciliation, is the first monument of its kind in the world. It commemorates Canada's role in international peacekeeping. The monument was formally dedicated on October 8, 1992 and is located at the intersection of Sussex Drive and St. Patrick Street in Ottawa, Ont.

The monument honours both the living and the dead. Since 1948, more than 110 000 Canadian peacekeepers have served in zones of conflict around the world. In 1998, United Nations (UN) peacekeepers, mainly as a result of Canadian participation, were awarded the Nobel Peace Prize.

The monument shows three peacekeepers – two men and one woman – standing on two sharp edges of stone, cutting through the rubble and debris of war and converging at a high point, which symbolizes the resolution of conflict.

In 1956, Lester B. Pearson, former Prime Minister of Canada, was the Nobel Peace Prize Recipient for his work in the establishment of the UN Emergency Force in the Middle East. The base of the monument includes his quote "we need action not only to end the fighting but to make the peace…My own government would be glad to recommend Canadian participation in such a United Nations force, a truly international peace and police force."

Canada has always been a strong supporter of the UN and of peacekeeping, and has participated in almost every mission since its inception. However, the extent of Canada's contribution of peacekeeping personnel (and percentage of cost of peacekeeping missions) is on a decline. As of August 31, 2006, Canada ranked 55th out of 108 troop-contributing countries with 126 military observers, UN police and troops to UN peacekeeping missions. This is less than France with 806, the United Kingdom with 350, and the United States with 345. The top contributors are Bangladesh, Pakistan, and India with 10 156, 9 820, and 9 279 troops respectively.

Nevertheless, Canada contributes to UN peacekeeping in other ways. For example, Canada provided diplomatic, financial and expert support to the African Union throughout the peace process. Canada is also assisting the African Union with strategic planning, logistics and air operations, training, information support, and communications.

Over the years, Canada has had over 120 000 troops as part of UN peacekeeping missions. However, Canada's role in UN peacekeeping has not been without sacrifice. As of 2008, Canada has the 2nd highest peacekeeping fatality numbers with 114. As a result, it is not only important to remember and honour those who have served and have lost their lives in the cause of peace, but all who have contributed, and continue to contribute, to making this world a more peaceful place.

"National Capital Commission", Reconciliation: The Peacekeeping Monument, Copyright 2007 NCC. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.canadascapital.gc.ca/data/2/rec_imgs/1882_peacekeeping.jpg

Figure 11G-1 Reconciliation: The Peacekeeping Monument

NATIONAL ABORIGINAL VETERANS MONUMENT

Memorial	National Aboriginal Veterans Monument
Location	Ottawa, Ontario
War	World War I, World War II, Korean War

The National Aboriginal Veterans Monument pays tribute to the extensive and voluntary contribution of Aboriginal men and women to Canada's armed forces. An estimated 12 000 Native Canadians served in World War I, World War II and the Korean War.

The monument reflects traditional beliefs about honour, duty and harmony with the environment. The two figures holding weapons and the two holding spiritual items are drawn from various Aboriginal groups of Canada and convey a sense of balance, implying that often a desire for peace lies at the root of war. The eagle that occupies the highest point is the symbol of the Creator (known as the Thunderbird), and embodies the spirit of the Aboriginal peoples of Canada. The four animals – the wolf, grizzly, buffalo and caribou – represent spirit guides.

The monument was formally dedicated on June 21, 2001, National Aboriginal Day. It is located in Confederation Park, on Elgin Street in Ottawa, Ont.

The most highly decorated Native Canadian in the First World War was Francis Pegahmagabow, an Ojibwa from the Parry Island Band in Ont. He was awarded the Military Medal (MM) plus two bars for bravery in Belgium and France. Pegahmagabow was one of 39 members of the Canadian Expeditionary Force (CEF) who received two bars to the MM.

Pegahmagabow enlisted with the 23rd Regiment (Northern Pioneers) in August 1914, almost immediately after war was declared. Previously, he had worked along the Great Lakes as a marine fireman for the Department of Marine and Fisheries. Within weeks of volunteering, he became one of the original members of the 1st Canadian Infantry Battalion, which, along with the rest of the 20 000-strong 1st Canadian Division, landed in France in February 1915. Sniping was his specialty. It has been written, "His iron nerves, patience and superb marksmanship helped make him an outstanding sniper." In addition, Pegahmagabow developed a reputation as a superior scout.

The 1st Battalion experienced heavy action as soon as they arrived on the battlefield. They fought at Ypres, where the enemy introduced a new deadly weapon, poison gas, and on the Somme, where Pegahmagabow was shot in the leg. In November 1917, the 1st Battalion joined the assault near the village of Passchendaele. Roughly 20 000 Allied soldiers crawled from shell crater to shell crater, through water and mud to reach their objective. With two British divisions, the Canadian Corps attacked and took the village, holding it for five days, until reinforcements arrived. The Allies suffered 16 000 casualties at Passchendaele, and Corporal Pegahmagabow earned his first bar for his MM.

In April 1919, Pegahmagabow was invalided out to Canada, having served for nearly the entire war. Following in the steps of his father and grandfather, he became chief of the Parry Island Band and later a councillor. A member of Canada's Indian Hall of Fame, Pegahmagabow died on the reserve in 1952.

"Capital News Online", National Aboriginal Veterans Monument, Copyright 1997-2007 by Capital News Online. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.carleton.ca/jmc/cnews/01112002/news/images/n1photo1.jpg

Figure 11H-1 National Aboriginal Veterans Monument

KOREAN VETERANS NATIONAL WALL OF REMEMBRANCE

Memorial	Korean Veterans National Wall of Remembrance
Location	Brampton, Ontario
War	Korean War

The Korean Veterans National Wall of Remembrance is a place to remember and reflect upon the events and sacrifices associated with the Korean War. The Wall of Remembrance is located in Meadowvale Cemetery, Brampton, Ont. It is a curved 61 m (200 feet) long polished granite wall. It contains 516 bronze plaques, one for each of the volunteer Canadian soldiers who paid the ultimate sacrifice in Korea. A central bronze feature lists all of the Canadian military units that served in the war.

The monument was formally dedicated on July 27, 1997, with a memorial service occurring each subsequent July 27th.

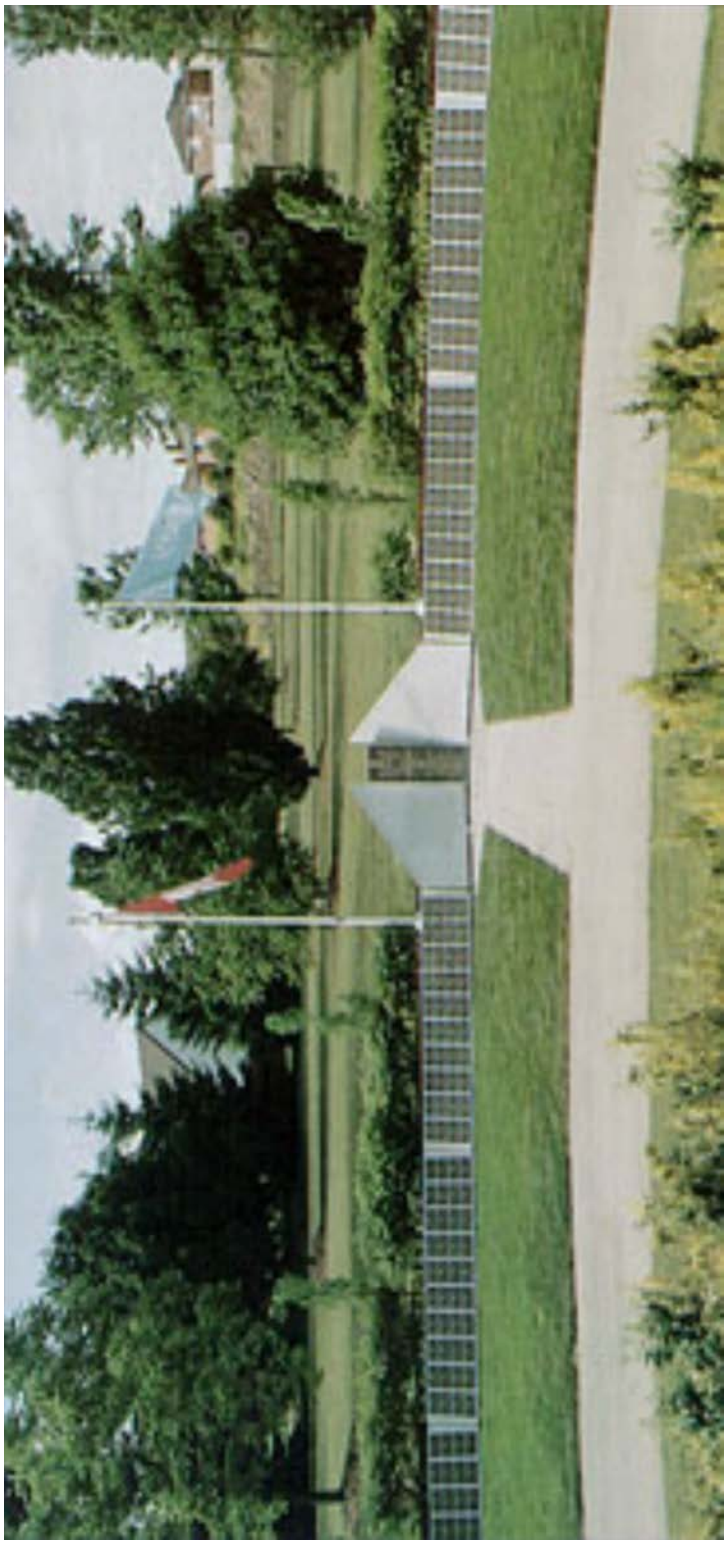
The United Nations (UN) was put in place following the Second World War to promote global peace and security. After only five years of peace, an international crisis between North and South Korea forced the UN to take action to resolve the conflict between the two countries. While the UN's primary mandate was to deal with conflict between member nations through dialogue and negotiation, it also had the flexibility to use force in the pursuit of peace. The situation in Korea required armed intervention, and 16 member nations, including Canada, contributed forces under command of the United States.

On June 25, 1950, the forces of North Korea crossed the 38th Parallel into the Republic of Korea. This marked the beginning of hostilities which were to rage for more than three years, throughout the country known to its people as the Land of the Morning Calm.

Both sides had reached their peak strengths just prior to the end of hostilities. On the North Korean side, the total manpower has been estimated at 1 155 000, of whom 858 000 were Chinese. In addition there were 10 000 Soviet troops in various non-battlefield roles. The United Nations Command consisted of 272 000 South Koreans and 266 000 from the 16 nations represented in the formation. There were thousands more employed along the lines of communication and in quasi-military roles.

The Korea Armistice Agreement was signed in Panmunjeom on July 27, 1953, ending three years of fighting. The truce that followed was an uneasy truce and Korea has remained a divided country. The UN's intervention in Korea was a move of incalculable significance. For the first time in history an international organization had intervened effectively with a multinational force to stem aggression. The UN emerged from the crisis with enhanced prestige.

Altogether, 26 791 Canadians served in the Korean War, and another 7 000 served between the cease-fire and the end of 1955. This was a larger contribution in proportion to its population than most of the nations which provided troops for the international force. The Canadian casualties numbered over 1 500 including 516 who lost their lives. The names of 516 Canadian war dead are inscribed in the Korean War Book of Remembrance.



" We Will Remember: War Monuments in Canada World Wide Web Site", Koran Veterans National Wall of Remembrance. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.stemnet.nf.ca/monuments/on/bramont1.htm

Figure 11I-1 Korean Veterans National Wall of Remembrance

VALOUR ROAD

Memorial	Valour Road
Location	Winnipeg, Manitoba
War	World War I

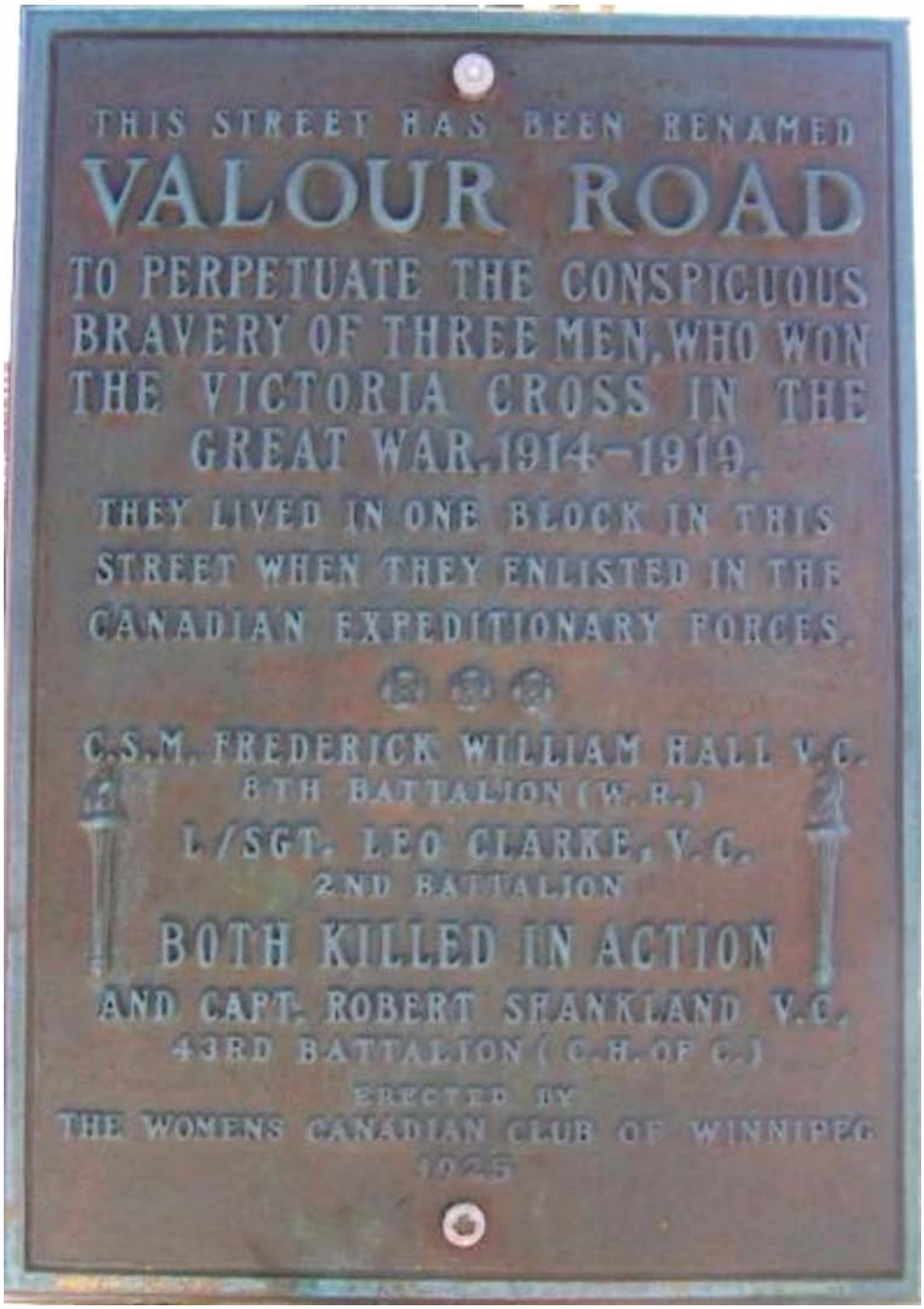
This street, located in Winnipeg, Man. is marked by a golden lamppost and citation plaque. It is a memorial to three recipients of the Victoria Cross (VC) who lived on the street originally named Pine Street but later renamed Valour Road. It is believed to be the only time that this military honour has been given to three men who lived on the same street. The trio was nicknamed the “Pine Street Boys” and over an 18-month period from 1915–1917, their actions in battle resulted in each of them being awarded the VC.

The citation plaque reads: "This street has been renamed Valour Road to perpetuate the conspicuous bravery of three men, who won the Victory Cross in the Great War 1914–1919. They all lived in one block, on this street when they enlisted in the Canadian Expeditionary Forces. CSM Frederick William Hall, V.C., 8th Battalion (W.R.), L/Sgt Leo Clarke, V.C., 2nd Battalion, both killed in action, and Captain Robert Shankland, V.C., 43rd Battalion (C.H. of C.); erected by the Women’s Canadian Club of Winnipeg, 1925."

Corporal (L/Sgt) Leo Clarke won his VC in the trenches during the Battle of the Somme. Clarke, despite being alone and under attack by 20 enemy soldiers, attacked the enemy emptying his revolver twice and then firing a German rifle he picked up from the ground. In the struggle that followed, a German officer bayoneted him in the knee before Clarke could shoot him. Wounded and bleeding, Clarke kept up the attack, and as enemy soldiers fled Clarke followed, killing four more and taking a prisoner. Though he was ordered to hospital, Clarke returned to battle the next day. Leo Clarke died in action a month later.

Sergeant-Major Frederick William Hall was awarded the VC for giving his life to save a comrade at the Battle of Ypres. With his company pinned in the trenches by fierce enemy fire, Hall went out twice at night to rescue injured men. On the morning of February 21, 1915, men in the trench heard groans of an injured soldier on the battlefield. Hall and two others volunteered to go after him, but as they went over the top of their trench they drew heavy fire. The two other men were injured, and all were forced back into their trench. After a few minutes, Hall went out alone in broad daylight, with enemy guns waiting for him. He crawled out and across the field under a hail of bullets. Reaching the fallen soldier, Hall managed to squirm himself under the wounded man and began to move him on his back towards his lines. However, when Hall raised his head to find his way back to the trench, he was struck with a bullet in the head and died instantly.

At the battle of Passchendaele, Lieutenant (Captain) Robert Shankland led his men to a forward position which they held during a fierce counterattack by the Germans. Knowing that an accurate description of his company’s position was critical in the Allied battle plan, Shankland made his way alone through the battlefield to Battalion Headquarters, delivered the necessary information, and returned the way he came. Rejoining his men, Shankland carried on until the end of the battle. The citation of his VC commends his personal courage, gallantry and skill, and emphasizes the example he set for the men under his command. Of the three VC recipients from Valour Road, only Shankland survived the war.



"Waymarking", Pine Street Memorial, Winnipeg, MB, Copyright 2008 by Ground Speak Inc. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://img.groundspeak.com/waymarking/display/82ba5d67-b9be-4ef3-8574-b23030e66de7.jpg

Figure 11J-1 Valour Road Memorial Plaque

WOMEN'S TRI-SERVICE MEMORIAL

Memorial	Women's Tri-Service Memorial
Location	Winnipeg, Manitoba
War	World War II, Korean War

The Women's Tri-Service Memorial was constructed in 1976 in memory of the contribution of Women to the Commonwealth Armed Forces in World War II and the Korean War. The monument depicts women of the three former branches of the Canadian Forces (CF) standing back to back. The sculpture, bronzed at Studio West foundry in Cochrane, Alta., was flown to Winnipeg and later dedicated by Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II on July 4, 1976.

Women enrolled in the Women's Royal Canadian Naval Service (WRCNS) formed 39 branches of the Royal Canadian Navy (RCN). They performed a variety of jobs such as messengers, cooks, drivers, sick bay attendants, supply assistants, photographers, and trades such as radar, switchboard and teletype operators.

The Canadian Women's Army Corps (CWACS) had over 22 000 women enlisted during World War II. CWACS were assigned to non-traditional clerical and other duties in combat zones, as well as more traditional nursing-related jobs outside combat zones.

The Royal Canadian Air Force Women's Division (RCAFWD), like their navy and army counterparts were given positions such as clerical and administrative assistants, dental assistants, equipment assistants, weather observers, telephone operators, fabric workers, tailors, and cooks. During the final stages of WWII, due to severe shortages in manpower, they also had opportunities to hold jobs that were for men, such as electrical and mechanical workers. In all, over 17 000 women proudly wore the uniform of the RCAFWD before it disbanded.

Women did not just fill military-related roles; their participation in the war effort was seen in the private sector also. Out of a total Canadian population of 11 million people, only about 600 000 Canadian women held permanent jobs when the war started. During the war, the number doubled to 1 200 000. At the peak of wartime employment in 1943–44, 439 000 women worked in the service sector, 373 000 in manufacturing and 4 000 in construction. Women's smaller physical size and manual dexterity helped them develop a reputation for fine precision work in electronics, optics, and instrument assembly. Canada's Elsie Gregory McGill was the first woman in the world to graduate as an aeronautical engineer. She worked for Fairchild Aircraft Limited during the war. In 1940, her team's design and production methods turned out more than 100 Hurricane combat aircraft per month.

" We Will Remember: War Monuments in Canada World Wide Web Site", Women's Tri-Service Memorial. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.stemnet.nf.ca/monuments/mb/winnipegwtsm.htm

Figure 11K-1 Women's Tri-Service Memorial

MEMORIAL GATES (UNIVERSITY OF SASKATCHEWAN)

Memorial	Memorial Gates (University of Saskatchewan)
Location	Saskatoon, Saskatchewan
War	World War I

Memorial Gates is a military memorial at the University of Saskatchewan. The gates were originally the entrance to the university. The Memorial Gates no longer mark the entrance to the University of Saskatchewan, but remain as the University's memorial to the 67 students and faculty who perished during WWI.

Designed by the original university architect, David R. Brown of Montreal, the memorial consists of two main gates for vehicular traffic and two small gates for pedestrians. The gates are solid bronze imported from England; the balance is local greystone. A stone tablet, between the bronze gates, bears the inscription: "These are they who went forth from this University to the Great War and gave their lives that we might live in freedom."

Erected in 1927–28 at a cost of thirty thousand dollars, the gates and tablet were unveiled by the President of the university, W.C. Murray and the memorial was dedicated by the Bishop of Saskatchewan on May 3, 1928. From November of that year to the present, Remembrance Day services are held annually at the Memorial Gates.

At the outbreak of World War I in August, 1914, the Canadian government began recruiting units to go overseas to fight alongside the armies of Great Britain and the other members of its Empire. The first contingent of the Canadian Expeditionary Force (CEF) was assembled at Camp Valcartier in September of that year. Saskatchewan's soldiers were found in many units including the 5th (Western Cavalry) Battalion, which was raised from the cavalry units of the province and fought as infantry in the 1st Canadian Division. The 28th (Northwest) Battalion of the 2nd Canadian Division, which initially recruited throughout Saskatchewan and the West, became primarily a Regina infantry regiment. The 46th Battalion was recruited from southern Saskatchewan. These units all saw service in the Canadian Corps and took part in its famous battles. Soldiers from the province were present at Vimy Ridge and at the breaking of the German lines by the Canadians in the final hundred days of the war.

Saskatchewan suffered many casualties in World War I; in proportion, western Canada endured more losses than any other region of the country. One of its units, the 46th Battalion, became known as the "Suicide Battalion" because of its extraordinarily high numbers of dead and wounded. It was in response to the sacrifice of its citizens that the Canadian and provincial governments set up a system of benefits, which included land grants, for their returned servicemen. Veterans' organizations were also formed to aid in rehabilitation and reintegration into civilian life. In this war, Saskatchewan soldiers showed their bravery by winning eleven Victoria Crosses.

"Rossnagal Artworks", Memorial Gates. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.rossnagelartworks.com/prints

Figure 11L-1 Memorial Gates (University of Saskatchewan)

CANADIAN MEMORIAL CHURCH

Memorial	Canadian Memorial Church
Location	Vancouver, British Columbia
War	World War I, World War II, Korean War

Located in Vancouver, B.C., the Canadian Memorial Church is unique, not just for its pure Gothic style, or the extraordinary manner in which funds were raised throughout Canada to build it, but for its portrayal of Canadian unity and its Christian symbolism. The church in no way glorifies war, it is a peace memorial.

The idea of erecting a chapel and community centre as a memorial to the Canadians who made the supreme sacrifice was conceived by Rev. (Lt. Col.) G.O. Fallis, C.B.E., E.D., D.D., a padre in the Canadian Expeditionary Force during the First World War. His idea was supported by his congregation and many others across Canada. The Memorial Hall was completed in February 1923 and the Memorial Chapel in November 1928.

The Chapel specifications called for ten stain glass windows, one for each province and the Yukon Territory, as well as a Chancel window and an All-Canada window. Each window would contain a religious motif with the provincial coat-of-arms directly underneath, flanked on either side by historical events of the specific province.

Over the main entrance to the church is the All-Canada window, which bears the inscription, “this window is erected in honour of all men and women in Canada who endured service in The World War.” The central figure is Miss Canada, depicted as an angelic visitor, holding the symbol of peace in her left hand and the laurel wreath in her right hand. She represents the idea that ’right not might shall rule the world.’ Surrounding Miss Canada are representations of important historical events in Canadian history – the death of Wolfe on the Plains of Abraham, the coming of Jacques Cartier, the return of the United Empire Loyalists, the founding of Fort Garry (Winnipeg, Man.), and the driving of the last spike in the Canadian Pacific Railway at Craiglachie, B.C.

"Veterans Affairs Canada", Canadian Memorial Church. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/koreawar/pilgrimage/church

Figure 11M-1 All Canada Window

THE CENOTAPH–VICTORY SQUARE

Memorial	The Cenotaph–Victory Square
Location	Vancouver, British Columbia
War	World War I

The Cenotaph, located in Victory Square, Vancouver, B.C. is a gray granite column, 9 m (29 feet) high, commemorating those who fought in World War I (WWI). The monument's three sides form the triangular shape of Victory Square Park. Each side is engraved with one of the following quotes: "Their name liveth for evermore," "Is it nothing to you," and "All ye that pass by."

The monument is decorated with a long sword and two wreaths, one of laurel and the other of poppies entwined with maple leaves. There are stone replicas of WWI steel helmets sitting on each of the corners, with the wreath of laurels surrounding "1914–1918" at the front base. The Maple Leaf, the Union Jack, the Canadian Ensign, and the White Ensign are displayed above the wreath of laurels.

The monument was unveiled on Sunday, April 27, 1924 with the following dedication: "To the Glory of God, and in thankful remembrance; Of those who served their King and Country overseas; In the cause of truth, righteousness and freedom."

The 7th Battalion British Columbia Regiment's first major action was in Ypres at the Battle of St Julien. On April 22, 1915, when poison chlorine gas had been unleashed on the French Division to the west and north of the Canadian positions at Ypres, the Regiment was in the reserve. Before the gas, many Turcos and Algerians came running in all directions, throwing their weapons away and falling as they ran. The 7th fell in, without No. 1 Company who was left with the 8th Battalion as the reserve, and marched up the Grafenstafel Ridge where they remained until midnight occupying support trenches. At midnight they moved to a new position in the hollow ground north of St Julien at Keerselaere. They began to dig in at the foot of a ridge, occupying old artillery dugouts and along a hedge line. The fighting for St Julien was fierce and the 7th Battalion barely managed to escape capture when it was surrounded by the Germans. Lieutenant E.D. Bellew won the 7th Battalion's first Victoria Cross for his efforts with Sergeant Peerless and the Machine Gun section, who stayed behind to try to hold off the Germans long enough for the Battalion to withdraw.

Of the 24 officers and 900 men who went into battle, only six officers and 325 men returned safely on April 25, 1915. The men in No. 1 Company and the 8th Battalion had been ordered out to the west to fill the gap left by the French. They were able to hold out until April 26, withstanding gas and artillery attacks with little support on either flank; however the cost was high, with only 22 out of 100 returning to the 7th Battalion.

Each November 11, many residents of British Columbia attend the provincial Remembrance Day services at the Cenotaph in Victory Square.

"We Will Remember: War Monuments in Canada World Wide Web Site", The Cenotaph-Victory Square. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.stemnet.nf.ca/monuments/bc/victory.htm

Figure 11N-1 The Cenotaph – Victory Square

THE CANADIAN NATIONAL VIMY MEMORIAL

Memorial	The Canadian National Vimy Memorial
Location	Vimy Ridge, France
War	World War I

The Canadian National Vimy Memorial is located atop Hill 145, overlooking the Canadian battlefield of 1917, one of the points of the fiercest fighting. It was unveiled July 26, 1936 by King Edward VII who declared “It is a memorial to no man, but a memorial for a nation.”

The memorial commemorates the Battle of Vimy Ridge which was fought April 9–12, 1917. The battle began in the early morning of April 9 with a heavy artillery bombardment, followed by the advance of 20 000 Canadians. Despite great numbers of casualties from heavy machine gun fire, the advance continued and by April 12, the Canadians had taken Vimy Ridge. The Canadians, along with the British, captured more ground, prisoners and guns in the Battle of Vimy Ridge, than during any previous offensive of World War I. Canadian casualties numbered 10 602 with 3 598 of them being fatal.

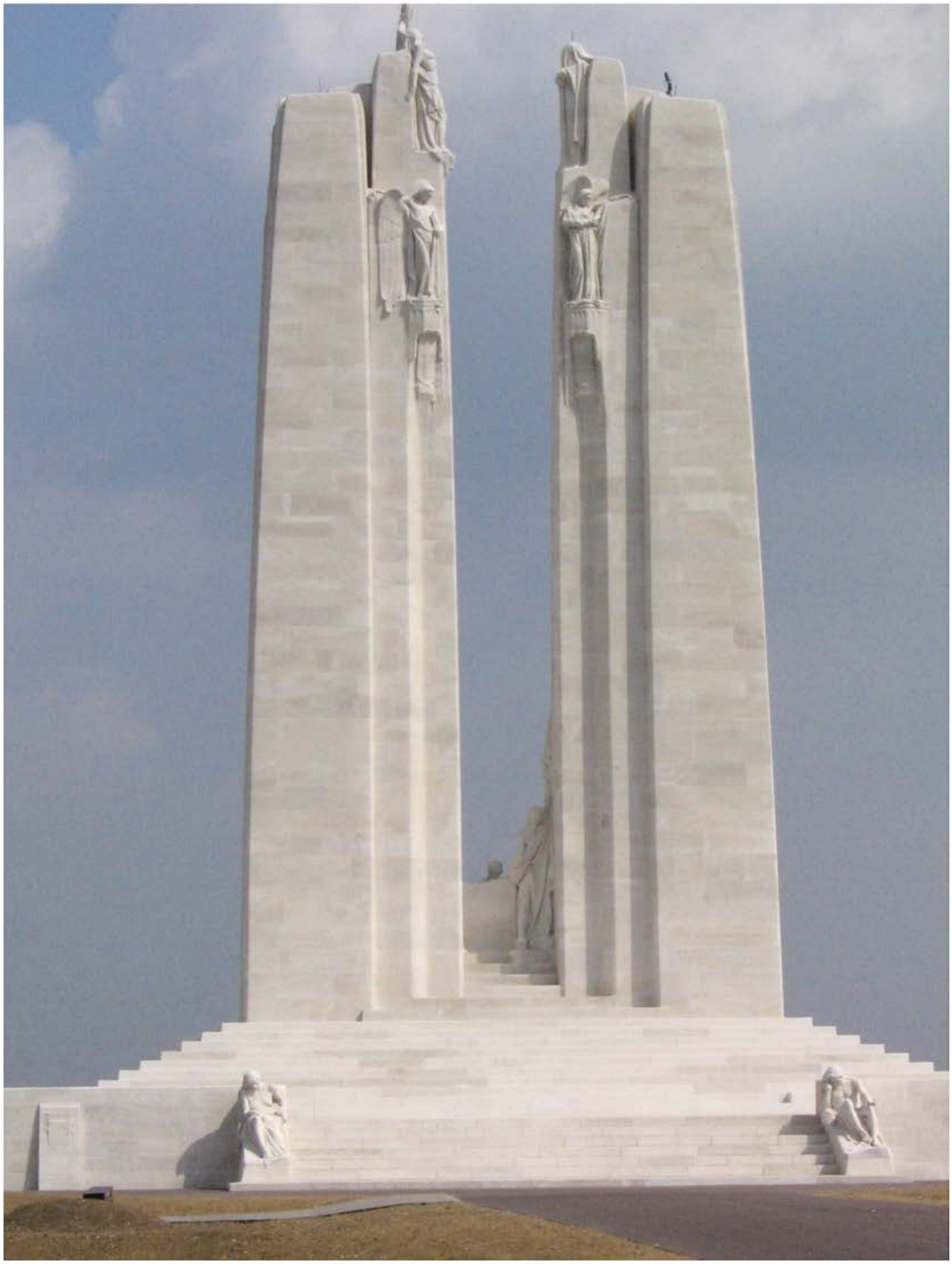
The victory at Vimy was a distinctly Canadian triumph which helped create a new and stronger sense of Canadian identity and pride. This victory, along with other Canadian military achievements during WWI, raised Canada’s international reputation and helped earn a separate place at the peace conference which drew up the Treaty of Versailles, officially ending WWI.

The Memorial is inscribed with the names of the 11 285 Canadian soldiers who were listed as missing and presumed dead in France. It contains 20 figures set on a stone platform set off by two large columns, representing Canada and France that reach upward for 27 m (88.5 feet). The largest figure is a woman draped from head to foot, eyes cast downward in grief, representing Canada. She is surrounded by other figures representing sympathy, sacrifice, justice, honour, peace and faith.

It was designated a Canadian National Historic Site on April 10, 1997, because “Canada’s accomplishment, contribution and sacrifice in the First World War are themselves of major national significance. The war itself was a landmark in the development of Canada as a nation. Vimy is the site of a great Canadian victory in the First World War, and it memorializes Canadians lost in the conflict who have no known grave” (Veterans Affairs Canada, 1999, p. 1).

At the base of the memorial, these words appear: “To the valour of their countrymen in the Great War and in memory of their sixty thousand dead this monument is raised by the people of Canada.”

On April 9, 2007, tens of thousands of people gathered in France and Canada to celebrate the 90th anniversary of the Battle of Vimy Ridge. As part of the events, the newly restored Canadian National Vimy Memorial was rededicated by Queen Elizabeth II.



"The Men of Bidford-on-Avon", Vimy Memorial. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://i29.photobucket.com/albums/c291/dennisstinton/Vimy20Memorial.jpg

Figure 11O-1 The Canadian National Vimy Memorial

LE QUESNEL MEMORIAL

Memorial	Le Quesnel Memorial
Location	Amiens, France
War	World War I

The Le Quesnel Memorial, made of Quebec granite, pays tribute to the achievements of the Canadian Corps in the Battle of Amiens, August 8–11, 1918. The memorial is located about 150 km (93 miles) north of Paris, on the road from Amiens to Royce.

Le Quesnel is one of six memorials across France and Belgium that were created from the same common design; a large centre block of Stanstead granite in the centre of a circular patch of grass, set in a landscaped garden. Its massive sides are inscribed in English and French, to read: “The Canadian Corps, one hundred thousand strong, on 8 August, 1918, attacked between Hourges and Villers-bretonneux and drove the enemy eastward for eight miles.”

The avenue leading up to the memorial is bordered by maples and the monument is set in a bed of low growing conifers and enclosed by a holly hedge. The garden includes many variations of green provided by shrubs and small trees that have been planted. The effect is low-keyed, dignified and restrained.

The Battle of Amiens was scheduled for August 8, 1918 and the Canadian Corps, who were regarded as ‘Storm Troopers’ and were seen as an omen of a coming attack, were kept away from Amiens, and only moved south to Amiens the night before the attack to ensure complete secrecy of the offensive. The front of the attack extended 22.5 km (14 miles) with the French in the southern half, the Canadians on the right and the Australians on the left, with the British 3rd Corps acting as flank-guard on the extreme left.

An hour before dawn on August 8, 1918 the attack began and was a total surprise. More than 2 000 guns suddenly flashed out in barrage, while 420 tanks, closely followed by the infantry, surged forward over ground that was heavily shrouded in mist. German machine-gunners found few targets as the tanks, accompanied by determined men, crashed through their positions. The enemy artillery had been effectively neutralized by counter-battery fire; batteries were quickly overrun, many of them without having fired a shot. In what was then open warfare, massed cavalry and light ‘whippet’ tanks swept ahead to exploit success.

On that first victorious day, ‘The Black Day of the German Army’, as the enemy termed it, the Canadians gained 13 km (8 miles), the Australians 11 km (7 miles), the French 8 km (5 miles), and the British 3 km (2 miles). The Germans lost 27 000 men and 400 guns, as well as hundreds of mortars and machine-guns. The Canadian Corps captured 5 033 prisoners and 161 guns. The Allied casualties totalled 9 000 of whom about 4 000 were from the Canadian Corps.

"Veterans Affairs Canada", Le Quesnel Memorial. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http:// www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/ww1mem/le_quesnel

Figure 11P-1 Le Quesnel Memorial

COURCELETTE MEMORIAL

Memorial	Courcelette Memorial
Location	Courcelette, France
War	World War I

Located about 145 km (90 miles) north of Paris, the Courcelette Memorial recognizes the contributions of the Canadian Corps during the 1916 Battle of the Flers-Courcelette, a subsidiary attack of the Somme offensive.

Courcelette is one of six memorials across France and Belgium that were created from the same common design; a large centre block of Stanstead granite in the centre of a circular patch of grass, set in a landscaped garden. Its massive sides are inscribed in English and French, to read: "The Canadian Corps bore a valiant part in forcing back the Germans on these slopes during the Battle of the Somme, September 3rd–November 18th, 1916."

A circular park surrounds the memorial, screened from the road by tall trees. More than ten varieties of maples have been planted beside wide paths of well-tended grass. The memorial park at Courcelette is free from bright colours to distract the eye from the pleasing shades of green, allowing for a feeling of calm and meditation.

When the Canadian Corps moved from the Ypres Salient to the Somme River region at the beginning of September 1916, its first major action was the Battle of Fler-Courcelette – a two-army assault launched by Field Marshal D. Haig on September 15, 1916. In the offensive that began at dawn, the Canadian Corps assaulted on a two-kilometre (one and a half-mile) front near the village of Courcelette. Advancing behind a creeping barrage, the infantry was aided by the armoured tank, a 'new' engine of war, which frequently confused the enemy. The attack went well, and by 0800 hours, a defence bastion known as the Sugar Factory was taken, and the Canadians pushed into Courcelette. Numerous German counterattacks were successfully repulsed and by the next day the position was consolidated. The memorial is located at the scene of the initial victory of the 11 weeks of bloody fighting by Canadians on the battlefields of the Somme.

During the remaining three months of the Battle of the Somme, the Allied line moved forward only 10 km (6 miles) and the loss of life was astronomical. Allied forces suffered 600 000 casualties, of which 24 029 were Canadian, and 236 000 Germans were killed. Although Canadian casualties were enormous, it was the Somme that confirmed the reputation of Canadians as hard-hitting shock troops. For the remainder of the war they headed the assault in one great battle after another. Whenever the Germans found the Canadian Corps coming into the line they prepared for the worst.

"Veterans Affairs Canada", Le Quesnel Memorial. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/ww1mem/courcelette

Figure 11Q-1 Courcelette Memorial

"The Great War", World War I Photo Gallery & Poetry. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.thegreatwar.com

Figure 11Q-2 Courcelette Memorial

BEAUMONT-HAMEL NEWFOUNDLAND MEMORIAL

Memorial	Beaumont-Hamel Newfoundland Memorial
Location	Beaumont-Hamel, France
War	World War I

The Beaumont-Hamel Newfoundland Memorial is located on a thirty-hectare site at Beaumont-Hamel in France. This site commemorates all Newfoundlanders who fought in World War I (WWI), particularly those who have no known grave. The site is one of the few in France where the trench lines of a WWI battlefield can be seen.

The monument, a great bronze caribou, which is the emblem of the Royal Newfoundland Regiment, is situated on a mound, surrounded by rock and shrubs native to Newfoundland. The caribou faces in the direction of the former enemy overlooking the trenches and the open ground across which the 1st Battalion of the Royal Newfoundland Regiment advanced July 1, 1916, the first day of the Battle of the Somme. At the base of the mound, three bronze tablets bear the names of the 820 members of the Royal Newfoundland Regiment, the Newfoundland Royal Naval Reserve and the Merchant Navy who gave their lives in WWI and have no known grave.

The site was officially opened by Field Marshall D. Haig on June 7, 1925. On April 10, 1997, the Beaumont-Hamel Newfoundland Memorial in France was designated a Canadian National Historic Site by the Canadian government. Beaumont-Hamel is commemorated with a plaque which was unveiled November 8, 1997.

The Battle of the Somme was considered the main Allied attack on the Western Front during 1916. The Somme offensive had its origins in the English/French plans to bring the war to a rapid close. The Allies were in a situation where they desperately needed success, after numerous failures on the Eastern Front, so a victory on the Western Front was seen as a critical step in ending the war.

When the 29th British Division, which included the Newfoundland Regiment, arrived in western Europe in the spring of 1916, the 4th Army's front extended 30 km (18 miles), from north of the Somme river between Arras and Albert. It was matched by the Germans who held their side of the front with a three-tiered system of forward trenches, which were well dug in, with extensive protective wire, and capable of surviving sustained artillery attacks. There were also second and third lines of trenches constructed 200 m (218 yards) and 5 000 m (5400 yards) behind the first line of trenches.

To combat the heavily defended lines, an intense week-long artillery attack was carried out in the last week of June to soften enemy resistance and cut the protective wire. Unfortunately, unbeknown to 4th Army commanders, while considerable damage was done to the trenches, the barbed wire remained mostly intact. Even worse, the Germans, protected within deep trenches, were largely unscathed.

The July 1st offensive called for the 4th Army to move along the 30 km (18 miles) front, driving the enemy from it first and second positions. In the Beaumont-Hamel area, this meant a 5000 m (5400 yards) advance for the 29th Division. The 86th and 87th Brigades were to lead off the advance securing the First Line while the 88th, and its leading battalions, the Essex and the Royal Newfoundland Regiment were to attack, under artillery cover, the German positions on the Beaucourt Road. From the beginning it was apparent that the actions were not going according to plans. The 86th and 87th Brigades were virtually annihilated and never reached their objectives, however, due to poor communications the second wave, the 88th, were ordered to advance and attack the German front line. They had to cross more than 200 m (218 yards) of unprotected ground just to reach the front line. Without the expected artillery and support cover, the attack was over in less than 30 minutes. Of the 801 Newfoundlanders who went to battle that day, only 68 remained unwounded.

Casualties for the British Division on the opening day of the Battle of the Somme totalled 57 470, of which 19 240 were fatal.

At the entrance of the memorial site the following epitaph composed by John Oxenham is inscribed in bronze:

"And with bowed head and heart abased
Strive hard to grasp the future gain in this sore loss.
For not one foot of this dank sod
But drank its surfeit of the blood of gallant men
Who for their Faith, Hope, for Life and Liberty
Here made the sacrifice.
Here gave their lives, and right willingly for you and me."

"First World War.Com", The Western Front Today - Beaumont-Hamel Newfoundland Memorial, Copyright 2000-07 by Michael Duffy. Retrieved March 12, 2008, from http://www.firstworldwar.com/today/graphics/00bhamel01.jpg

Figure 11R-1 Beaumont-Hamel Newfoundland Memorial

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

THE PASSCHENDAELE MEMORIAL

Memorial	The Passchendaele Memorial
Location	Passchendaele, Belgium
War	World War I

On the slopes overlooking the peaceful fields of the valley of the Ravebeek, Belgium, the Passchendaele Memorial marks the site of Crest Farm, where Canadian soldiers encountered some of the fiercest resistance they were to meet during the First World War.

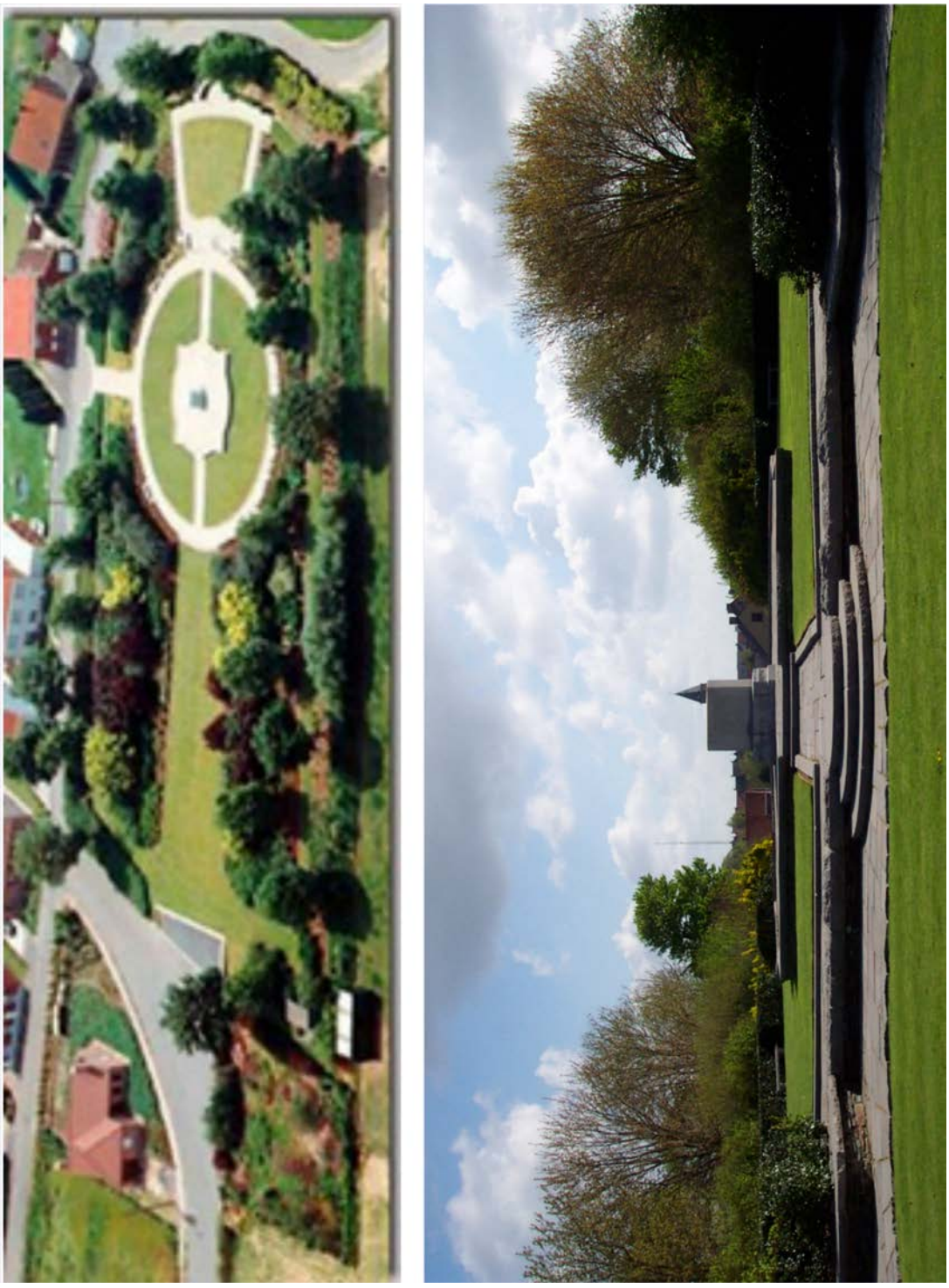
Passchendaele is one of six memorials across France and Belgium that were created from the same common design; a large centre block of Stanstead granite in the centre of a circular patch of grass, set in a landscaped garden. Its massive sides are inscribed in English and French, to read: “The Canadian Corps in Oct–Nov 1917 advanced across this valley – then a treacherous morass – captured and held the Passchendaele Ridge.” Set in a grove of maple trees and encircled with a low hedge of holly, from the centre of the memorial grounds one can see, down a long avenue of trees, the rebuilt spires of Ypres.

Passchendaele, also called the Third Battle of Ypres, was intended to be British Commander, Field Marshal D. Haig’s drive into Flanders, designed to break through the front and capture the German submarine bases on the Belgian coast. The offensive had a successful prelude at Messines in June, 1917, but this local success was followed by weeks of delay.

The second and main stage of the attack began with a tremendous artillery barrage that not only forewarned the Germans, but also ground the battlefield into potholes and dust. Summer rains poured down on the very night that the offensive began and in no time the area became an impassable swamp. As the British soldiers struggled in the swamp, the Germans inflicted casualties from lines fortified with machine guns placed in concrete pill boxes.

In the next four months at Ypres, only negligible advances were made. Early in October, 1917, with the main objectives still in German hands and the British forces reaching the point of exhaustion, Haig was determined to attempt one more drive. The Canadian Corps was ordered to relieve the decimated Anzac forces in the Ypres sector and prepare for the capture of Passchendaele.

General Currie inspected the muddy battlefield and protested that the operation was impossible without heavy cost. He was overruled and so began careful and painstaking preparations for the assault. In a series of attacks beginning on October 26, 1917, 20 000 men under heavy fire inched their way from shell-crater to shell-crater. Then on October 30, 1917, with two British divisions, the Canadians began the assault on Passchendale itself. They gained the ruined outskirts of the village during a violent rainstorm and for five days they held on grimly, often waist-deep in mud and exposed to a hail of jagged iron from German shelling. On November 6, 1917, when reinforcements arrived, four fifths of the attackers were dead. Currie’s estimate of 16 000 casualties proved frighteningly accurate. The award of nine Victoria Crosses testified to the heroic determination and skill with which Canadian soldiers played their part in the bitter struggle for Passchendaele.



"Veterans Affairs Canada", Passchendaele Memorial. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http:// www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/ww1mem/Passchendaele

Figure 11S-1 Passchendaele Memorial

ST JULIEN MEMORIAL

Memorial	St Julien Memorial
Location	Ypres, Belgium
War	World War I

The St Julien Memorial is located on the main road from Ypres to Bruges. Visible for several kilometres from its site beside the main road, the impressive St Julien Memorial stands like a sentinel over those who died during the heroic stand of Canadians during the first gas attacks of the First World War. It is one of the most striking of all the battlefield memorials on the Western Front. Rising almost 11 m (36 feet) from a stone-flagged court, “The Brooding Soldier” surmounts a single shaft of granite – the bowed head and shoulders of a Canadian soldier with folded hands resting on arms reversed. The expression on the face beneath the steel helmet is resolute yet sympathetic, as though meditating on the battle in which his comrades displayed such great valour. The statue is set in the middle of a garden surrounded by cedars, which are kept trimmed to perfect cones to match and complement the towering granite shaft.

The St Julien Memorial was unveiled on July 8, 1923, by His Royal Highness (HRH) the Duke of Connaught. It is inscribed with the following words which recall the Canadian participation in the Second Battle of Ypres: "This column marks the battlefield where 18 000 Canadians on the British left withstood the first German gas attacks the 22nd–24th of April 1915, 2 000 fell and here lie buried."

In the first week of April 1915, Canadian troops were moved to a bulge in the Allied line in front of the city of Ypres. On the Canadian right were two British divisions and on their left a French division, the 45th Algerian. Here on April 22, the Germans sought to break the stalemate by introducing a new weapon, poison gas. Following an intensive artillery bombardment, they released 135 tons of chlorine gas into a light northeast wind. As thick clouds of yellow-green chlorine drifted over their trenches, the French defences crumbled and the unprotected troops, with their lungs seared, died or broke and fled, leaving a gaping six-kilometre (four mile) hole in the Allied line. German troops pressed forward threatening to sweep behind the Canadian trenches and put 50 000 Canadian and British troops in deadly jeopardy. After advancing only three kilometres (two miles) the Germans stopped and dug in due to offensive fighting from the Allies.

The Canadian troops manoeuvred through the night to close the gap and mount a counterattack to drive the enemy out of the oak plantation of Kitchener’s Wood near St Julien. This was followed by two days of counterattacks against enemy positions. These attacks bought precious time to close the flank, however, little ground was gained and casualties were high. On April 24, 1915, the Germans attacked again and another violent bombardment was followed by another gas attack. This time the target was the Canadian line. Here through terrible fighting, withered with shrapnel and machine-gun fire, hampered by rifles that jammed, violently ill and gasping for air through mud-soaked handkerchiefs, they held on until reinforcements arrived.

In their first appearance on a European battlefield, the Canadians established a reputation as a formidable fighting force, but the cost was high. In these 48 hours, 6 035 Canadians – one man in every three – was lost from Canada’s little force of hastily trained civilians. This was a grim forerunner of what was still to come.

"Veterans Affairs Canada", St. Julien Memorial. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/ww1mem/stjulien

Figure 11T-1 St Julien Memorial

"The Great War", World War I Photo Gallery & Poetry. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.thegreatwar.com

Figure 11T-2 St Julien Memorial

HILL 62 (SANCTUARY WOOD) MEMORIAL

Memorial	Hill 62 (Sanctuary Wood) Memorial
Location	Ypres, Belgium
War	World War I

The Hill 62 Memorial is located about three kilometres east of Ypres at Mount Sorrel. The memorial commemorates the sacrifices and achievements of Canadians who fought over a period of five months to keep the last few square kilometres of Belgian territory in Allied hands.

Hill 62 (Sanctuary Wood) is one of six memorials across France and Belgium that were created from the same common design; a large centre block of Stanstead granite in the centre of a circular patch of grass, set in a landscaped garden. Its massive sides are inscribed in English and French, to read “here at Mount Sorrel on the line from Hooge to St. Eloi, the Canadian Corps fought in the defence of Ypres, April–August 1916.”

From the top of the steps leading up to the Hill 62 Memorial, visitors, looking down past Sanctuary Wood and Maple Copse, can see the church towers of Ypres, five kilometres (three miles) to the west. Many of the Canadian headstones in the Maple Copse and Hooge Crater Cemeteries nearby bear the date June 1916.

Before the Canadians joined the ill-fated operation of the Somme, they were engaged in local offensives to keep the Germans occupied in the southern part of the Ypres Salient – from St. Eloi to a point just northwest of Hoge (Hooge) on the Ypres-Menin road. At the battle of St. Eloi the Canadian Corps’ 2nd Division received its “baptism of fire” in a battlefield of water-filled craters and shell holes. The Canadians, wearing the newly introduced steel helmets, suffered 1 375 casualties in the 13 days of confused attacks and counterattacks.

For the 3rd Division, the initiation to battle was even more devastating. On the morning of June 2, 1916, the Germans mounted an attack to dislodge the Allies from their positions at Mount Sorrel just north of the Ypres-Menin road. In the fiercest bombardment experienced by Canadian troops yet, whole sections of the trench were obliterated and the defending garrisons annihilated. Bodies and trees of Sanctuary Wood were hurled into the air by the explosions. As men were literally blown from their positions, the 3rd Division fought desperately until overwhelmed by enemy infantry. By evening, the enemy advance was checked, but the important vantage points of Mount Sorrel and Hills 61 and 62 were lost. A counterattack by the Canadians the next morning failed and on June 6, 1916, after exploding four mines on the Canadian front, the Germans assaulted again and captured Hooge on the Menin Road.

On June 13, 1916, determined to win back Mount Sorrel and Hill 62, the 1st Canadian Division carried out a carefully planned attack, well supported by artillery, under the Command of Major-General Currie. Preceded by a vicious bombardment, the Canadian infantry attacked at 0130 hrs in the dark, wind and rain and regained the heights lost on June 2, 1916. The positions regained by the Canadians would remain part of the Allied line in front of Ypres until the massive German offensives in the spring of 1918. However, the cost was high with 8 430 Canadian troops losing their lives at Mount Sorrel.

"Veterans Affairs Canada", Hill 62. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http:// www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/ww1mem/hill62

Figure 11U-1 Hill 62 (Sanctuary Wood) Memorial

BAYEAUX MEMORIAL

Memorial	Bayeaux Memorial
Location	Bayeaux, France
War	World War II

The Bayeux Memorial honours men of the land forces of the British Commonwealth and Empire who fell in the early stages of the campaign in northwest Europe of 1945 and have no known grave. It stands in the centre of a green lawn. On either side is a bed of low growing laurustinus, known for their attractive flowers, berries and foliage.

The Memorial is a building of classical design. The roof is supported by four columns, on which are panels of Portland stone bearing 1 808 names; 275 of them are Canadian. An explanatory inscription reads: "The names of the soldiers of the British Commonwealth and Empire who fell in the assault upon the Normandy beaches or in the sweep to the Seine but to whom the fortune of war denied a known and honoured grave are recorded upon these walls June 6–August 29, 1944."

After the mainland of Northwest Europe was lost to Germany in the summer of 1940, except for the large-scale raid on Dieppe in August of 1942, Allied forces did not return in strength until the invasion of Normandy on June 6, 1944. Now known in history as D-Day–Operation Overlord. The task was formidable, for the Germans had turned the coastline into a continuous fortress with guns, pillboxes, wire, mines and beach obstacles.

Following an all-night bombardment of the assault areas, the Allies attacked “Fortress Europe” on a five-division front, and troops from three airborne divisions descended by parachute and glider on the flanks of the invasion area. All three Canadian services shared in the assault. One of the assault formations was the 3rd Canadian Infantry Division supported by the 2nd Canadian Armoured Brigade and troops attached from other arms and services of the Canadian Army. Forming part of the British 6th Airborne Division, which dropped on the eastern flank of the bridgehead, was the 1st Canadian Parachute Battalion.

The crossing of the English Channel was made through lanes that minesweepers of the Royal Canadian Navy helped to clear. Canadian naval guns joined in hammering the enemy’s beach defences. Some of the 3rd Division’s units were carried in Canadian landing ships and put ashore by Canadian assault landing craft. In the skies, the Royal Canadian Air Force made its important contribution as bombers attacked German batteries and Canadian fighter squadrons assailed targets further inland.

Two armies carried out the operation. On the western half, extending from the base of the Cotentin Peninsula to a point northwest of Bayeux, the 1st United States Army attacked on the beaches “Utah” and “Omaha”. In a sector reaching eastward to the mouth of the River Orne, the 2nd British Army assaulted the beaches of “Gold”, “Juno” and “Sword”.

The Canadians, under Major-General R.F.L. Keller, were responsible for “Juno” in the centre of the British front. Their task was to establish a beachhead along the eight kilometres between Courseulles and St-Aubin-sur-Mer, push through the gap between Bayeux and Caen, then penetrate to Carpiquet airfield 18 km (11 miles) inland. It was hoped that by nightfall the two British divisions to their left and right flanks would have taken Caen and Bayeux and the Canadians would be across the road and railway linking the two towns.

By the end of the day, after facing fierce opposition, the 3rd Canadian Infantry Division was well established on its intermediate objectives, though short of the planned D-day objectives. Progress was much the same on either Allied flank; it was a magnificent accomplishment. The strong Atlantic Wall had been breached and supplies and men were moving ashore on the day following D-Day to resume the advance. The Allies were back in Europe.

Approximately 14 000 Canadians landed in Normandy on D-Day. Inevitably the cost of life was considerable, but not nearly as high as had been feared. The Canadian assault force suffered

1 074 casualties, of which 359 were fatal. Ahead lay more fighting – very bitter fighting in which Canadian forces would play their part. The day of victory in Europe was still 11 months away.

"Veterans Affairs Canada", Bayeux Memorial. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http:// www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/ww2mem/Bayeux

Figure 11V-1 Bayeux Memorial

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

BROOKWOOD MEMORIAL

Memorial	Brookwood Memorial
Location	London, England
War	World War II

The Brookwood Memorial stands in a large military cemetery, which forms part of the London Necropolis at Brookwood. It is west of the town of Woking, England about 48 km (30 miles) from London. The garden in which the memorial stands is at the south end of the Canadian World War II (WWII) section of Brookwood Military Cemetery. The memorial commemorates 3 475 men and women of the land forces of the British Commonwealth and Empire who died during the Second World War and whose names could not appropriately be recorded on any of the battlefield memorials.

The memorial is an open circle of Portland stone, standing on a low paved platform reached by broad flights of steps alternating with raised flower supports. Piers radiating from a central grassed court separate 16 roofed bays in the circular building. On either face of each pier a panel of green slate bears the names of the dead. Facing the central court, a curved stone panel carries the inscription: “1939-1945, this memorial bears the names of three thousand five hundred men and women of the forces of the British Commonwealth and Empire who gave their lives in their own country and in many foreign lands, in home and distant waters, in the campaign of 1940 in Norway and in later raids on the coasts of Europe, and to whom the fortune of war denied a known and honoured grave.” Immediately above the main inscription the following words are engraved: “The eternal God is thy refuge and underneath are the everlasting arms.”

The Brookwood Memorial provides the final resting place for members of the land forces of the British Commonwealth and Empire who died in a variety of situations and locations throughout WWII. Some perished in ships that were sunk in waters outside the territorial limits of any major campaign; some were lost overboard; some died from various causes on hospital ships or troop transports and were given burial at sea. It also commemorates those who died during the campaign in Norway in 1940, and in raids on enemy-occupied territory in Europe, including the costly operation against Dieppe in August 1942. The memorial includes the names of men and women who served as special agents and died as prisoners or while working with allied underground movements. Names of members whose bodies were never recovered after flying accidents or air battles are also included.

The names of members of the United Kingdom forces are the bulk of those who are remembered on the memorial; however, the names of 199 Canadians form the second largest total.

"Veterans Affairs Canada", Brookwood Memorial. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/ww2mem/brookwood

Figure 11W-1 Brookwood Memorial

GROESBEEK MEMORIAL

Memorial	Groesbeek Memorial
Location	Nijmegen, Netherlands
War	World War II

The Groesbeek Memorial stands in the Groesbeek Canadian War Cemetery about 10 km (6 miles) southeast of the Dutch town of Nijmegen. It commemorates, by name, those members of the Commonwealth land forces who died during the campaign in Northwest Europe between the time of crossing the Seine at the end of August 1944 and the end of the war.

During the Second World War, thousands of men and women from all countries of the British Commonwealth and Empire lost their lives in trying to repel the German invasion of the Netherlands and Belgium in 1940. In the ensuing struggle to liberate the occupied countries, 11 000 of these have their graves in Belgium and nearly 20 000 lie in the Netherlands. There are 1 068 that have no known grave, of these, 103 are Canadians.

The Memorial consists of twin columned buildings, which face each other across the turfed forecourt of the Groesbeek Canadian War Cemetery, between the entrance and the Stone of Remembrance. The names of the men commemorated are inscribed in panels of Portland stone built into the rear walls. Within each building are inscribed the words: "these walls bear the names of the soldiers of the British Commonwealth and Empire who fell in the advance from the river Seine through the low countries and into Germany but to whom the fortune of war denied a known and honoured grave August 1944–5th May 1945."

The Allied victory in Normandy in the summer of 1944 was followed by a rapid pursuit of the disorganized German armies across Northern France and into Belgium. The 2nd British Army swept forward on the left flank of General Sir Bernard Montgomery's 21st Army Group to liberate Antwerp on September 3, 1944. At the same time, the 1st Canadian Army, commanded by General H.D.G. Crerar, was engaged in clearing the coastal belt, opening Channel ports to much needed Allied supply ships and overrunning the launching sites.

In bitter fighting in Belgium and southwestern Holland, the Canadians drove the Germans back from the Scheldt estuary, to make the great port of Antwerp accessible to Allied shipping. During the winter of 1944–45, the Canadian Army held a line of more than 322 km (200 miles), extending from the German frontier south of Nijmegen, along the Maas River and through the Dutch Islands to Dunkirk on the Channel coast.

February 1945, opened with the Allied offensive moving to drive the Germans back across the Rhine. In one of the most decisive Rhineland battles, the 1st Canadian Army broke through the strong defences of the Siegfried Line in the Reichswald Forest south of Nijmegen. The 21st Army Group attacked over the Rhine on March 23, and from then on events moved swiftly. While American armies encircled the vital industrial area of the Ruhr valley and pushed eastward, the Canadian Army cleared the Netherlands and joined with British forces in a drive north-eastward to the Baltic. Fighting ended on May 5, followed by the formal surrender of the German armies in Northwest Europe two days later.

"Veterans Affairs Canada", Groesbeek Memorial. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http:// www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/ww2mem/groesbeek

Figure 11X-1 Groesbeek Memorial

"Wikipedia", Groesbeek Canadian Memorial Cemetery. Retrieved March 19, 2008, from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Groesbeek_Canadian_War_Cemetery

Figure 11X-2 Groesbeek Memorial

CASSINO MEMORIAL

Memorial	Cassino Memorial
Location	Cassino, Italy
War	World War II

The Cassino Memorial is located in the Cassino War Cemetery, 139 km (86 miles) southeast of Rome. The memorial commemorates the British Commonwealth and Empire soldiers who died fighting for the liberation of Italy. Of the 49 261 members of the British Commonwealth and Empire forces who died fighting in Italy, nearly one tenth have no known grave. The 4 054 names recorded on the Cassino Memorial include those of 194 Canadians.

The Memorial is situated within the Cassino War Cemetery and consists of pillars of green marble which rise approximately five metres (fifteen feet) on either side of an ornamental pool and a formal garden. The names are inscribed on these pillars. On the walls above the stairways that lead from the main road to the Cemetery, the following words, in English and Italian, are inscribed: “1939–1945, within this cemetery stand monuments which bear the names of soldiers of the British Commonwealth and Empire who fell in the assaults upon the shores of Italy and Sicily or in later battles to free Italian soil and to whom the fortune of war denied a known and honoured grave. Around them are the graves of their comrades who died fighting in these parts to open the way to Rome and the north.”

The Allied campaign on the island of Sicily and in Italy during the Second World War lasted from early July 1943 to the beginning of May 1945. The name Cassino is associated with some of the fiercest fighting engaged in by Allied armies in those 22 months. On July 10, 1943, the landing on the Sicilian coast of an Allied force comprising the American 7th and the British 8th Armies marked the first breach in Adolf Hitler’s European fortress. The conquest of Sicily was completed in 38 days, the 1st Canadian Division having played an important part in the 8th Army’s operations. On September 3, 1943, British and Canadian troops landed unopposed in the “toe” of the Italian mainland, and six days later a large American-British invasion force assaulted the Salerno beaches south of Naples.

Slowly the Allied forces battled northward. On the Adriatic coast, the 8th Army broke the German Winter Line in November, and during Christmas week in some of the most bitter street fighting of the war, Canadian infantry and armour drove German troops out of the battered coastal town of Ortona. In the following spring the 8th Army crossed the peninsula to join the American 5th Army in an offensive to capture Rome. American and Commonwealth divisions forced the strong Gustav Line between Cassino and the Tyrrhenian Sea, and on May 23, 1944, Canadian forces breached the formidable Adolf Hitler Line. American troops entered Rome on June 4, 1944 and the enemy fell back to the prepared defences of the Rimini-Pisa (or Gothic) Line. In September, the two Allied Armies smashed their way through the Gothic position, the Eighth Army’s assault on the Adriatic flank spearheaded by the 1st Canadian Corps. After a winter of making little progress across the muddy flats south of the Lombardy Plain, the 1st Canadian Corps moved to Northwest Europe. In the spring a renewed offensive by the American and British armies cleared the northern Italian plains and brought the surrender of nearly a million Axis forces on May 2, 1945.

"Veterans Affairs Canada", Cassino Memorial. Retrieved March 11, 2008, from http:// www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/ww2mem/cassino

Figure 11Y-1 Cassino Memorial

CANADIAN KOREAN WAR MEMORIAL GARDEN

Memorial	Canadian Korean War Memorial Garden
Location	Naechon, Korea
War	Korean

The Canadian Korean War Memorial Garden is situated in Naechon, Korea, northeast of Kap'yong-gun and just below the hills which were defended by Canadian forces in the Battle of Kap'yong-gun in April of 1951.

Three separate monuments have been erected. The first, a stone cairn which commemorates the service of members of the Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry (PPCLI). The second is a stone tablet with three panels in Korean, English and French listing the units of the Canadian forces that participated in the Korean War. Finally, the largest memorial is a stone cenotaph, unveiled in 1985, and dedicated by the people of Korea in the memory of the approximately 26 000 Canadians who served in Korea. Of these, 516 died and 1 255 were wounded.

The Canadians, and their British Commonwealth colleagues, fought well at Kap'yong-gun. The actions of the 27th British Commonwealth Infantry Brigade at Kap'yong-gun won the Canadians, along with two other Commonwealth units, a United States Presidential Unit Citation. The 2nd Battalion, Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry (2 PPCLI) remains the only Canadian unit to have received this award.

Late on the evening of April 22, 1951, the Chinese launched a massive attack on a South Korean division. The assault threatened to isolate the South Korean division as it attempted to retreat through the Kap'yong-gun valley. The UN Command ordered the 27th Brigade to establish a defensive position in the valley and provide a line of retreat for its Korean allies.

The Canadians went into action on the night of April 22, 1951. The 2 PPCLI, contended with wave after wave of Chinese assaults. Machine gun fire and grenades rained down on the Canadian positions at point-blank range. Lieutenant-Colonel Stone and his soldiers managed to fend off the determined attackers. However, after hours of combat, Stone's troops were dangerously low on ammunition and medical supplies. They were also completely surrounded by the enemy. At one point, the struggle was so desperate that a company commander ordered his men into their slit trenches and called down artillery fire on his own position to deal with the assaulting enemy. The following morning, American supply planes dropped vital supplies to the struggling Canadian troops. Later in the day, American ground troops moved in to relieve 2 PPCLI.

Ultimately, 2 PPCLI, along with their British Commonwealth counterparts, were able to accomplish their mission: they stopped the enemy advance, and they prevented a massive Chinese breakthrough in central Korea. At the end of the battle, 10 members of 2 PPCLI had been killed and 23 wounded.

"Wikimedia Foundation, Inc. ",Gapyeong Canada Monument. Retrieved March 19, 2008, from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gapyeong_Canada_Monument

Figure 11Z-1 Canadian Korean War Memorial Garden

LIST OF BIOGRAPHIES

WWI

Fredrick Fisher

Edward Donald Bellew

Francis Alexander Carron Scrimger

James Cleland Richardson

Robert Shankland

Cecil John Kinross

Hugh McDonald McKenzie

George Harry Mullin

George Randolph Pearkes

Thomas Ricketts

WWII

John Robert Osborn

John Weir Foote

Charles Cecil Ingersoll Merritt

Paul Triquet

Charles Ferguson Hoey

John Keefer Mahony

David Vivian Currie

Ernest Alvia ’Smokey’ Smith

Aubrey Cosens

Frederick Albert Tilston

Frederick George Topham

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

DESCRIPTIONS OF DECORATIONS OF VALOUR

(From Canadian Honours and Awards Bestowed Upon Members of the Canadian Forces (p. 13), by Department of National Defence, 2005, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.)

The Victoria Cross

The Victoria Cross “shall be awarded for the most conspicuous bravery, a daring or pre-eminent act of valour or self-sacrifice or extreme devotion to duty, in the presence of the enemy”.

The Star of Military Valour

The Star of Military Valour is the second highest Military Valour Decoration of Canada. It “shall be awarded for distinguished and valiant service in the presence of the enemy.”

The Cross of Military Valour

The Cross of Valour is awarded only for acts of conspicuous courage in circumstances of extreme peril. Posthumous awards may be made. All Canadian citizens, both civilians and members of the Canadian Forces, are eligible for the award. Persons who are not Canadian Citizens may receive this award if they perform an act of bravery in Canada, or perform an act of bravery outside of Canada that merits recognition by Canada as an act in the interest of Canada.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SELF STUDY ACTIVITY SHEET

Name	
Rank	
Hometown	
Unit	
Description of Events for Which the Decoration Was Awarded	
Age When Decoration Was Awarded	
Post-War/Current Activities	
Date of Passing	
Any Additional Information as Desired	
Definition of Valour	

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CANADIAN ARMY SERVICE MEMBERS AWARDED THE VICTORIA CROSS

LANCE CORPORAL FREDERICK FISHER

St-Julien, Belgium – April 23, 1915
Royal Highlanders of Canada

"Legion Magazine", The Class of 1915: Part 4 of 18, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2004/07/the-class-of-1915/

Biographical Information

Lance Corporal Fisher was born in St. Catherines, Ont. on August 3, 1895. Fisher served two years in the Toronto Public School's Battalion Cadet Corps and on August 13, 1914 while still a student he enlisted in the 5th Regiment (Royal Highlanders of Canada). He went overseas with the 13th Battalion (Royal Highlanders of Canada) in the Canadian Expeditionary Force. He was promoted to the rank of Lance Corporal on December 22, 1914.

According to the records of The Commonwealth War Graves Commission, Frederick Fisher was killed on April 24, 1915, aged 22. There is possibly a discrepancy about the date of his death, which is given as April 23, 1915 by the Official History of the Canadian Forces 1914–1919 and the history of the 13th Battalion. He was buried by his comrades in the trenches where he fell but this grave has been lost. Frederick Fisher is commemorated on the Menin Gate Memorial to the Missing in Ypres.

In 1970, a memorial plaque was dedicated in Montreal in memory of Fred Fisher.[I]

Historical Information

In the first week of April 1915, Canadian troops were moved to a bulge in the Allied line in front of the city of Ypres. On the Canadian right were two British divisions and on their left a French division: the 45th Algerian. Here on April 22, the Germans sought to break the stalemate by introducing a new weapon: poison gas. Following an intensive artillery bombardment, they released 135 tonnes of chlorine gas into a light northeast wind. As thick clouds of yellow-green chlorine drifted over their trenches, the French defences crumbled and the troops, unprotected, their lungs seared, died or broke and fled, leaving a gaping six–kilometre (four–mile) hole on the Allied line. German troops pressed forward threatening to sweep behind the Canadian trenches and put 50 000 Canadian and British troops in jeopardy. Offensive fighting from the Allies held off the German attack allowing them to gain only 3 km (two miles) before being forced to dig in.

A battery of Canadian 18-pounders, commanded by Major W.B.M. King, C.F.A., maintained its original position well into the second day of the battle – April 23, 1915. The gunners were supported by a depleted Company of the 14th (Royal Montreal) Battalion, and kept up their fire on the approaching Germans, continually moving their guns back enemy moved closer. They were pushed out and back by the survivors of their own crews and

supporting company of infantry; but all those heroic and Herculean efforts would have availed nothing if Lance Corporal Fisher had not played his part.[ii]

Victoria Cross Citation

Fisher was in command of a machine gun and four men of his battalion – the 13th. He saw and understood the situation of Major King's battery and instantly hastened to the rescue. He set up his machine gun in an exposed position and opened fire on the advancing Germans, choosing for his target the point of the attack which most immediately menaced the battery of field-guns. His four men were put out of action. They were replaced, as they fell, by men of the 14th, with Fisher and his Colt remaining un-hit. The pressure of his finger did not relax from the trigger, nor did his eyes waver from the sights. The front of the attack was sprayed and ripped by bullets. Thus it was held until the 18-pounders were dragged back to safety.

Not satisfied with this piece of invaluable work, Fisher advanced again, took up a yet more exposed position and under the combined enemy fire of shrapnel, machine guns and rifles, continued to check and slay the Germans. The men who went up with him from his former firing position fell, one by one, crawling away or laying still in death, but the Lance Corporal continued to fire. The pressure of his finger did not relax from the trigger until he was shot dead.[iii]

His Victoria Cross citation reads: "On April 23, 1915, in the neighbourhood of St. Julien, he went forward with the machine gun, of which he was in charge, under heavy fire, and most gallantly assisted in covering the retreat of a battery, losing four men of his gun team. Later, after obtaining four more men, he went forward again to the firing line and was himself killed while bringing his machine gun into action under very heavy fire, in order to cover the advance of support."[iv]

LIEUTENANT EDWARD DONALD (E.D.) BELLEW

Ypres, France – April 24, 1915
1st British Columbia Regiment

"Legion Magazine", The Class of 1915: Part 4 of 18, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2004/07/the-class-of-1915/

Biographical Information

E.D. Bellew was born October 28, 1882, at Malabar Hill, Bombay, India the son of Major Patrick Prancis Bellew, H.E.I.C.S., and Letitia Frances Bellew. He was educated at Blundell's School; Clifton College; and at the Royal Military College, Sandhurst. He joined the 18th Royal Irish Regiment in May 1901, and retired with the rank of Lieutenant. He married Charlotte Muriel Rees on August 24, 1901, and went to Canada, where he became an engineer of harbour construction in the Dominion of Canada Civil Service. He joined the Canadian Military Forces, and served in the European War in the British Columbia Regiment, 17th Canadian Infantry, as a Lieutenant, from August 10, 1914, being promoted to Captain on January 10, 1916.

Following his return home to Vancouver, Bellew became involved in survey and construction work in British Columbia. He died on February 1, 1961, in Kamloops, B.C. and is buried in Hillside Cemetery.

Lieutenant Bellew's Victoria Cross was stolen from the Royal Canadian Military Institute between January 1975 and July 1977, and has never been recovered.[v]

Historical Information

During the Second Battle of Ypres on April 22, 1915, Von Wurttemberg's 4th Army released chlorine gas, opening a 5-mile gap in the line. Ypres lay before them. The break was filled with 12 Canadian and 9 British battalions, all severely weakened, facing 42 German battalions with a five-to-one superiority in guns. At 0400 hours on April 24, 1915, the Germans launched a gas attack on the Canadians, whose only protection were handkerchiefs, towels and cotton bandoliers soaked in water or urine.[vi]

Victoria Cross Citation

Battalion machine gun officer Bellew had sited his two Vickers machine guns on high ground, where the enemy's assault broke in full force, exposing the Canadian flank. Under intense fire and in a haze of gas, with no further assistance in sight, the 7th retired to a new position under covering fire from Bellew's guns. His detachment stood firm and kept up fire until a heavy shell killed everyone except Bellew, who was wounded. However, he continued firing his weapon until he ran out of ammunition. In the pause, he was rushed by the enemy but before being overcome, he snatched a rifle which he emptied upon the coming enemy smashed his machine gun so it was unusable to the enemy.

Bellew's captors sentenced him to death for continuing to resist after the surrender of elements of his unit. He faced a firing squad against the wall of Staden church, the officer in charge relenting only at the last moment in the face of his (Bellew's) protests. Sir John French later praised the Canadians for saving the day. Lieutenant Bellew was released from captivity in early 1919. He learned of his award when the announcement appeared in a Vancouver newspaper on his return home.[vii]

"For the most conspicuous bravery and devotion to duty near Keerselaere on April 24, 1915, during the German attack on the Ypres salient. The enemy's attack broke in full force against the front and right flank of the battalion, the latter being exposed owing to a gap in the line. The advance was temporarily stayed by Lieutenant (Captain) Bellew, who had sited his guns on the left of the right company. Reinforcements were sent forward, but were surrounded and destroyed. With the enemy in strength less than 100 yards from him, with no further assistance in sight, and with his rear threatened, Lieutenant (Captain) Bellew and Sergeant Peerless, each operating a gun, decided to stay where they were and fight it out. Sergeant Peerless was killed and Lieutenant (Captain) Bellew was wounded and fell. Nevertheless he got up and maintained his fire till ammunition failed and the enemy rushed the position. Lieutenant (Captain) Bellew then seized a rifle, smashed his machine gun, and, fighting to the last, was taken prisoner."[viii]

CAPTAIN FRANCIS ALEXANDER CARRON SCRIMGER

St-Julien, Belgium – April 25, 1915
Royal Canadian Army Medical Corps
Royal Montreal Regiment

"Legion Magazine", The Class of 1915: Part 4 of 18, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2004/07/the-class-of-1915/

Biographical Information

Francis Alexander Carron Scrimger, VC, BA, MD, CM, FRCS(C), FACS, was born in Montreal on February 7, 1880, and attended McGill University. He graduated from Medicine in 1905 and won an appointment to Montreal's prestigious Royal Victoria Hospital. In 1912, he joined the Canadian Army Medical Corps. Two years later he became the medical officer for the Montreal Heavy Brigade of the Canadian Garrison Artillery. In August 1914, Captain Scrimger enlisted in the First Contingent as medical officer for the 14th Battalion. In February 1915, he accompanied the Canadian Division to France and served with the 14th Battalion during the Second Battle of Ypres. Following his heroic actions in Ypres, Scrimger continued to serve in a number of medical capacities, eventually rising to become chief surgeon at No. 3 Canadian General Hospital.

Scrimger returned to Montreal after the war with his battlefield surgical experience. In 1921, he joined McGill University as a lecturer in clinical surgery. He continued to practice and teach medicine for another two decades, eventually acquiring a reputation as one of Canada's finest surgeons. He died in 1937 and is buried in Mount Royal Cemetery.

In 1986, a plaque bearing his Victoria Cross citation was unveiled at the National Defence Medical Centre in Ottawa. The Victoria Cross is now housed in the permanent collection of the Canadian War Museum, Ottawa, Ont.[ix]

Historical Information

In the first week of April 1915, Canadian troops were moved to a bulge in the Allied line in front of the City of Ypres. On the Canadian right were two British divisions and on their left a French division, the 45th Algerian. Here on April 22, the Germans sought to break the stalemate by introducing a new weapon: poison gas. Following an intensive artillery bombardment, they released 135 tonnes of chlorine gas into a light northeast wind. As thick clouds of yellow-green chlorine drifted over their trenches, the French defences crumbled and the troops, unprotected, their lungs seared, died or broke and fled, leaving a gaping six–kilometre (four–mile) hole in the Allied line. German troops pressed forward threatening to sweep behind the Canadian trenches and put 50 000 Canadian and British troops in jeopardy. Offensive fighting from the Allies held off the German attack allowing them to gain only 3 km (two miles) before being forced to dig in.

The Canadian troops maneuvered through the night to close the gap and mount a counterattack to drive the enemy out the oak plantation of Kitchener's Wood near St. Julien. This was followed by two days of

counterattacks against enemy positions. These attacks bought precious time to close the flank, however, little ground was gained and casualties were extremely heavy. On April 24, the Germans attacked again and another violent bombardment was followed by another gas attack in the same pattern as before. This time the target was the Canadian line. Here through terrible fighting, withered with shrapnel and machine gun fire, hampered by rifles that jammed, violently ill and gasping for air through water and urine soaked handkerchiefs, they held on until reinforcements arrived.[x]

Victoria Cross Citation

On April 25, Scrimger set up his Advanced Dressing Station in Shelltrap Farm, an old structure near the front, which was surrounded by a small moat. He had some 30 to 40 patients under his care. The situation grew steadily worse as a heavy German artillery bombardment began to fall near the farm. While suturing and binding wounds, Scrimger warily eyed crates containing 350 000 rounds of small-arms ammunition that were stacked next to his patients.

Realizing the dangerous situation, Scrimger organized the evacuation of the wounded to the rear, but one of his patients, Captain H. F. McDonald, had a serious head wound. Any movement before he was stabilized would likely kill him. Scrimger chose to stay behind. The shells fell around them and then began to land on the farm. The slight, 5-foot-7-inch doctor, who weighed only 148 pounds, shielded McDonald's prone body while he worked over him. During the bombardment, the building was demolished and set on fire, but both Scrimger and McDonald survived the whirling shrapnel and exploding ammunition. Blinded by the smoke and heat of the fire, Scrimger pulled the larger, unconscious infantry officer onto his back and staggered out of the building.

German infantry were advancing on the farm and the only escape was to cross the moat to the rear. Lurching to safety with McDonald on his back, Scrimger passed through the barrage, moving from shell hole to shell hole for cover. Hiding in a nearby ditch throughout the rest of the day, they avoided the enemy infantry. Captain McDonald later testified that each time the shells exploded around them, "Captain Scrimger curled himself round my wounded head and shoulder to protect me from the heavy shell fire, at obvious peril to his life. He stayed with me all that time and by good luck was not hit." Scrimger later directed the evacuation of McDonald and several additional wounded soldiers.[xi]

"On the afternoon of April 25, 1915, in the neighbourhood of Ypres, when in charge of an advanced dressing station in farm buildings which were being heavily shelled by the enemy, he directed under heavy fire the removal of wounded, and he himself carried a severely wounded Officer out of a stable in search of a place of greater safety. When he was unable alone to carry this Officer further, he remained with him under fire until help could be obtained. During the very heavy fighting between April 22–25, Captain Scrimger displayed continuously day and night the greatest devotion to duty among the wounded at the front."[xii]

PIPER JAMES CLELAND RICHARDSON

Somme, France – October 8-9, 1916
The Canadian Scottish

"Legion Magazine", Valour on the Somme: Part 5 of 18, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2004/09/valour-on-the-somme/

Biographical Information

Piper James Richardson was the eldest son of David and Mary Prosser Richardson and was born November 25, 1895 at Bellshill, Lanarkshire. The Richardson family arrived in Chilliwack in 1913 and their father became Chilliwack's Chief of Police. James lived in Chilliwack for a few months before he joined the pipe band of Vancouver's 72nd Battalion Cadet Corps, the Seaforth Highlanders of Canada. With the outbreak of war James joined the "Seaforths" as part of their first detachment and left with them for Valcartier, Que. Absorbed by the 16th Battalion C.E.F., James became one of the 110 original members of the newly formed battalion. James served with the 16th in France from February 9, 1915, throughout the battles of Ypres, Givenchy and the heavy fighting on the Ypres Salient in early 1916.

In April 1918, both of James' parents were summoned from Chilliwack to Victoria to receive the Victoria Cross and an autographed letter from King George V from the Lieutenant Governor. On April 3, 1919, Lieutenant Governor Barnard pinned the Victoria Cross on the breast of Chief Richardson in the Ritz Hotel building that was being used as a Knights of Columbus "hut". General John Edwards Leckie, who was Richardson's Commanding Officer, the Mayor of Victoria and other military and civilian officials were in attendance. Upon the Richardson's return to Chilliwack, their son's Victoria Cross was displayed in a local store window. The Victoria Cross is now housed in the permanent collection of the Canadian War Museum, Ottawa, Ont.[xiii]

Historical Information

During the last six months of 1916, over that part of the French countryside aptly named Santerre, a contraction of the French words sang (blood) and terre (land), the Allies suffered more than 620 000 casualties, including 24 029 Canadians to gain a insignificant 10 km (six miles) of ground. But the heroism of the Dominion troops moved British Prime Minister Lloyd George to write: "The Canadians played a part of such distinction that henceforward they were marked as storm troops…. Whenever the Germans found the Canadian Corps coming into the line, they prepared for the worst."

Add to that accolade, the fact that those titanic clashes produced four Canadian Victoria Crosses, awarded to Thomas Orde Lawder Wilkinson, Lionel Beaumaurice Clarke, John Chipman Kerr and James Cleland Richardson.[xiv]

Victoria Cross Citation

During an attack on the Regina Trench, October 8, 1916, Piper Jimmy Richardson of the 16th Canadian Infantry Battalion, Canadian Scottish, distinguished himself so well that he ensured the tradition of bagpipes and bagpipers in the Canadian military forever.

Originally, Richardson was not among the pipers scheduled to go over the top that morning, but he was so insistent that his company commander finally gave in. The attack began at 0450 hours, to the thunder of the field guns. Richardson, his company commander and the Company Sergeant Major (CSM) all went over the top together. Halfway to the enemy's barbed wire, the CSM asked Richardson why he was not playing his pipes. The piper replied that he had been told not to do so until he received an order from the company commander. When the trio reached the barbed wire they were shocked, frustrated, devastated and angry with despair. Their artillery had failed to cut any of the wire. Worse still, when the rest of the company arrived, the Germans opened up with rifle fire and hand grenades. The CSM found a shell hole in which he advised the company commander to take shelter while he went looking for some wire cutters, but it was too late. The company commander died after he was shot in the chest.

Sizing up how desperate the situation had become, Richardson surmised that a marching air or two from his pipes might just help turn things around and give morale a boost. Richardson began coolly playing his pipes, marching slowly and deliberately back and forth along a route 400 yards long that ran in front of the barbed wire. All the while he ignored the gunfire bursting all around him. The high shrill skirl of the pipes had a tonic effect on the troops trapped and grovelling in the mud and taking shelter in the shell holes. Inspired by his selfless, dauntless example and the tunes he played, Richardson's comrades sprang to their feet and charged forward with renewed venom and vigour, slashing their way through the barbed wire with their bayonets, and into the German trenches where they quickly overcame all enemy resistance. After participating in the assault on the trenches, Richardson was detailed to take a wounded countryman as well as some enemy prisoners back to the Canadian lines. He had gone about halfway when he realized he had left his bagpipes behind. Against strong advice he insisted on returning to retrieve them. He was never seen or heard from again, but, for his gallantry and inspired example he was awarded the VC, although it was not gazetted until October 22, 1918.[xv]

"For most conspicuous bravery and devotion to duty when, prior to attack he obtained permission from his Commanding Officer to play his company 'over the top'. As the company approached the objective, it was held up by very strong wire, and came under intense fire, which caused heavy casualties and demoralized the formation for the moment. Realizing the situation, Piper Richardson strode up and down outside the wire playing his pipes with the greatest coolness. The effect was instantaneous. Inspired by his splendid example, the company rushed the wire with such fury and determination that the obstacle was overcome and the position captured. Later, after participating in bombing operations, he was detailed to take back a wounded comrade and prisoners. After proceeding about 200 yards, Piper Richardson remembered that he had left his pipes behind. Although strongly urged not to do so, he insisted on returning to recover his pipes. He has never been seen since, and death has been presumed accordingly, owing to lapse of time."[xvi]

LIEUTENANT ROBERT SHANKLAND

Passchendaele, Belgium – October 26, 1917
Cameron Highlanders of Canada

"Legion Magazine", The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/

Biographical Information

Robert Shankland was born in Ayr, Scotland, only son of William Shankland, railway guard for 40 years in the service of the Glasgow and South Western Railway Company. He was educated at Smith's Institution, and at Russell Street School, Ayr, and was a member of the local battalion of the Boys' Brigade. For two years he was in an accountant's office, and subsequently for seven years was clerk at Ayr Passenger Station. He moved to Canada in 1910 where he worked as assistant cashier for the Crescent Creamery Company in Winnipeg, Man.

Prior to the outbreak of the war, Robert Shankland lived on Pine Street as a neighbour to Leo Clarke, VC and Frederick William Hall, VC. It is believed to be the only street in the world to have three Victoria Cross winners. The city of Winnipeg later renamed it Valour Road in honour of the men. A bronze plaque is mounted on a street lamp at the corner of Portage Avenue and Valour Road to tell this story. Shankland was the only one of the three who made it back to Pine Street.

When war broke out he joined the 43rd Battalion as a private and went through all non-commissioned ranks to that of Regimental Sergeant-Major, and while holding this rank was awarded the Distinguished Conduct Medal. He was given commission as Second Lieutenant and was later promoted to Lieutenant. He was awarded the VC for his actions during the Battle of Passchendaele, October 26, 1917.

Following the war, Shankland served as secretary-manager for several Winnipeg firms. When WW II started, he re-enlisted and held the rank of Major. Because he was in his 50s, he was too old for combat duty. In December 1940, he was appointed camp commandant of the Canadian Army Headquarters in England.

In 1946, Shankland took his discharge and became secretary of a leading securities firm in Vancouver. He died January 20, 1968, in Shaughnessy, Vancouver, and his body was cremated and his ashes scattered in the grounds of Mountain View Cemetery.[xvii]

Historical Information

The battle for the Belgian crossroads village of Passchendaele was one of the bloodiest battles of all time. The sad part is that it never would have happened if Canadian Lieutenant-General Sir Arthur Currie had been successful in having it called off. In just 12 days – from October 26 to November 6, 1917 – the Canadian Corps suffered nearly 16 000 casualties for a useless gain of 7 km (4 1/2 miles).

Currie, the Corps Commander, had recommended the assault be called off because the battlefield was a quagmire; a mass of shell holes filled with suffocating yellow ooze that made it impossible to advance let alone build proper gun emplacements. He was convinced that any attack would be suicidal. Besides, he considered Passchendaele a useless, worthless objective – a wretchedly flat little Flemish village that offered not a single military vantage point. Currie was overruled by the British commander, Sir Douglas Haig, whose strategy was to overwhelm enemy manpower with the expenditure of greater manpower. His thinking was that victory was to be achieved through sheer brute force, no matter what the cost in human lives.

At dawn on October 26, 20 000 men began inching their way across no man's land in rain and mist, shell hole by muddy shell hole toward their objective. Before the bloody battle was over on November 6, nine Canadian VCs had been earned, four of them on the same day, two of them posthumously.[xviii]

Victoria Cross Citation

On the morning of October 26, Robert Shankland led his platoon of 40 men from Company D to the crest of the hill at the Bellevue Spur, the main trench line defending Passchendaele. Overrunning it and holding the position was critical to capturing the town. On the right, the 58th Battalion, which was under heavy fire from Snipe Hill, was forced to retract after failing to reach its objective. Some of the men joined Shankland's platoon, but this still left his right flank open. For four hours they withstood incessant artillery shelling and German counterattacks, sustaining frightful casualties. But by this time, the 8th Brigade on the left was forced to withdraw. This left both of Shankland's flanks exposed.

He and his men were in danger of being cut off and losing the vital position gained at such fearful cost. The only solution was to bring up reinforcements and counterattack. Shankland turned over his command to another officer and then weaved his way through heavy mud and German shelling to battalion headquarters where he gave a first-hand report of the situation. He also offered a detailed plan on how a counterattack with reinforcements could best be achieved. He then returned to his men to lead the forthcoming attack supported by reinforcements from the 52nd and 58th battalions.[xix]

"For most conspicuous bravery and resource on action under critical and adverse conditions. Having gained a position, he rallied the remnant of his own platoon and men of other companies, disposed them to command the ground in front, and inflicted heavy casualties upon the retreating enemy. Later, he dispersed a counterattack, thus enabling supporting troops to come up unmolested. He then personally communicated to Headquarters an accurate and valuable report as to the position on the brigade frontage, and, after doing so, rejoined his command and carried on until relieved. His courage and splendid example inspired all ranks, and, coupled with his great gallantry and skill, undoubtedly saved a very critical situation."[xx]

PRIVATE CECIL JOHN KINROSS

Passchendaele, Belgium – October 30, 1917
49th Battalion, Edmonton Regiment

"Legion Magazine", The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/

Biographical Information

Cecil John Kinross was born in Hillend, Clackmannan, Scotland, on July 13, 1897. He attended Birmingham school before his family moved to Lougheed, Alta., where they began farming. In 1915, "Hoodoo" Kinross enlisted in the 51st Battalion. He later transferred to Edmonton's 49th.

Two days after receiving his VC from King George V at Buckingham Palace on April 6, 1918, he was arrested by the military police while waiting for a train to Scotland. He was charged with illegally wearing the claret-coloured ribbon, but when he produced the medal from his pocket with his name inscribed on it there were red or claret-coloured faces and apologies all around.

The incident came as no surprise to those who knew him. One of his officers described him as an unorthodox soldier: "Frankly incorrigible. He was strictly a front-line soldier and gloried to be there, but he loathed parades. When he was forced to parade…his appearance was usually disgraceful. There would be a hard look in his eyes during rebuke – almost but not quite enough to put him on a charge of unspoken insolence."

On June 23, 1919, Kinross returned to the family farm at Lougheed, Alta. and several days later was given a hero's welcome in Edmonton, Alta. He took up farming, but civilian life in no way changed his nonconformist attitude. In the summer of 1934, he entered the hospital to have his tonsils removed but refused to take an anaesthetic. One winter when a friend bugged him as to which act showed more courage – earning the VC or plunging into icy water – Kinross calmly stripped off his coat, walked to a hole in the ice and dived in.

In 1956, he was on his best ceremonial behaviour when he attended the 100th anniversary of the founding of the VC in London. By this time he had become reclusive; he gave up farming and moved into a hotel in Lougheed, Alta. where he lived by himself on his veteran's pension. He died in his hotel room in June 1957. Kinross was given a military funeral that included an honour guard from Wainwright, Alta. He was buried in the Soldier's Plot at the Lougheed Cemetery. In 1951, a mountain in Jasper National Park was named after him.[xxi]

Historical Information

The battle for the Belgian crossroads village of Passchendaele was one of the bloodiest battles of all time. Winston Churchill called it "a forlorn expenditure of valour and life without equal in futility." The sad part is that it never would have happened if Canadian Lieutenant-General Sir Arthur Currie had been successful in having it called off. In just 12 days – from October 26 to November 6, 1917 – the Canadian Corps suffered nearly 16 000 casualties, and all for a contemptible gain of 7 km (4 1/2 miles).

Currie, the Corps Commander, had recommended the assault be called off because the battlefield was a quagmire; a mass of shell holes filled with suffocating yellow ooze that made it impossible to advance let alone build proper gun emplacements. He was convinced that any attack would be suicidal. Besides, he considered Passchendaele a useless, worthless objective – a wretchedly flat little Flemish village that offered not a single military vantage point. Currie was overruled by the British commander, Sir Douglas Haig, whose strategy was to overwhelm enemy manpower with the expenditure of greater manpower. His thinking was that victory was to be achieved through sheer brute force, no matter what the cost in human lives.

At dawn on October 26, 20 000 men began inching their way across no man's land in rain and mist, shell hole by muddy shell hole toward their objective. Before the bloody battle was over on November 6, nine Canadian Victoria Crosses had been earned, four of them on the same day, two of them posthumously.[xxii]

Victoria Cross Citation

As soon as the assault on Passchendaele Ridge got started, the 49th Canadian Infantry Battalion's advance came under intense artillery fire and was stopped. Private Cecil Kinross came to the conclusion that the only way to put an end to the machine-gun fire was to attack the nest head-on. He stripped off all his gear except for his rifle and cartridge belt, and then – in full view of the enemy – dashed toward the nest. Undaunted, Kinross charged into the emplacement and killed the six-man gun crew. He then seized the weapon and destroyed it. The action allowed his company to advance for 300 yards. Kinross continued fighting all day until he was wounded so severely he had to be evacuated from the battlefield.[xxiii]

"For most conspicuous bravery in action during prolonged and sever operations. Shortly after the attack was launched, the company to which he belonged came under intense artillery fire, and further advance was held up by a very severe fire from an enemy machine gun. Private Kinross, making a careful survey of the situation, deliberately divested himself of all his equipment save his rifle and bandolier, and, regardless of his personal safety, advanced alone over the open ground in the broad daylight, charged the enemy machine gun, killing the crew of six, and seized and destroyed the gun. His superb example and courage instilled the greatest confidence in his company and enabled a further advance of 300 yards to be made and a highly important position to be established. Throughout the day he showed marvellous coolness and courage, fighting with the utmost aggressiveness against heavy odds until severely wounded."[xxiv]

LIEUTENANT HUGH McDONALD McKENZIE

Passchendaele, Belgium – October 30, 1917
The Canadian Machine Gun Company, Canadian Machine Gun Corps

"Legion Magazine", The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/

Biographical Information

Hugh McKenzie was born in Liverpool, England, on December 5, 1885, and received his education in Dundee, Scotland, where he worked for the railway. He moved to Canada in 1911 and lived in Ottawa, Ont. where, in 1914, he joined the Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry (PPCLI). The following January he was promoted to Corporal and later to Sergeant. In August 1916, he transferred to the Canadian Machine Gun Company and was appointed Sergeant-Major. He was commissioned on January 28, 1917.

McKenzie has no known grave, but his name is inscribed on the Menin Gate Memorial at Ypres, Belgium. His VC and his service medals were destroyed when fire ripped through a relative's house in Amherstburg, Ont., in 1955. His Distinguished Conduct Medal and Croix de Guerre were in the custody of his family in Scotland. Through the efforts of the Canadian War Museum, the destroyed medals were replaced and presented to the museum on March 18, 1979.[xxv]

Historical Information

The battle for the Belgian crossroads village of Passchendaele was one of the bloodiest battles of all time. Winston Churchill called it "a forlorn expenditure of valour and life without equal in futility." The sad part is that it never would have happened if Canadian Lieutenant-General Sir Arthur Currie had been successful in having it called off. In just 12 days – from October 26 to November 6, 1917 – the Canadian Corps suffered nearly 16 000 casualties, and all for a contemptible gain of 7 km (4 1/2 miles).

Currie, the Corps Commander, had recommended the assault be called off because the battlefield was a quagmire; a mass of shell holes filled with suffocating yellow ooze that made it impossible to advance let alone build proper gun emplacements. He was convinced that any attack would be suicidal. Besides, he considered Passchendaele a useless, worthless objective – a wretchedly flat little Flemish village that offered not a single military vantage point. Currie was overruled by the British commander, Sir Douglas Haig, whose strategy was to overwhelm enemy manpower with the expenditure of greater manpower. His thinking was that victory was to be achieved through sheer brute force, no matter what the cost in human lives.

At dawn on October 26, 20 000 men began inching their way across no man's land in rain and mist, shell hole by muddy shell hole toward their objective. Before the bloody battle was over on November 6, nine Canadian Victoria Crosses had been earned, four of them on the same day, two of them posthumously.[xxvi]

Victoria Cross Citation

By October 30, the fifth day of the offensive, the Canadians were in a position to assault what was left of Passchendaele village. The 49th Battalion and the PPCLI were in the vanguard of the attack from Meetcheele Spur. Lieutenant Hugh McKenzie, who was in charge of four guns of the 7th Canadian Machine Gun Corps, saw all the officers and non-commissioned officers of the PPCLI mowed down by machine-gun fire. The survivors of the unit could not advance, but they staunchly refused to retire and so stood their ground waiting for someone to take charge. McKenzie placed a corporal in charge of his guns and strode out onto the battleground to investigate.

It quickly became obvious that a German machine gun in a pillbox atop a hill had inflicted the damage that was holding up the advance. Taking command of the company, he cheered them by his good spirits, and instantly set about arranging a plan for the downfall of the pillbox above them. Not only was there the pillbox to deal with, but the upper hill was a veritable nest of machine guns, and McKenzie had to make a daring reconnaissance before he could affect a suitable scheme of attack. Detailing small parties, one which was lead by Sergeant George Mullin, he sent them off to work their way round the flanks, overcoming any hostile resistance they might encounter, and to be prepared at a given moment to make an attack from the rear upon the pillbox that was holding up the advance.

Then he arranged the frontal attack, choosing himself to lead a small party of men directly up the slope to the fort, while the remainder of his men attacked the same front from a different angle. At the word they went forward, McKenzie lead the most exposed front of the attack. It was not possible to win through such fire unharmed, and he was shot through the head and killed at the moment of the capture of the pillbox by the flanking parties he had detailed.[xxvii]

“For most conspicuous bravery and leading when in charge of a section of four machine guns accompanying the infantry in an attack. Seeing that all the officers and most of the non-commissioned officers of an infantry company had become casualties, and that the men were hesitating before a nest of enemy machine guns, which were on commanding ground and causing them severe causalities, he handed over command of his guns to an NCO, rallied the infantry, organized an attack, and captured the strong point. Finding that the position was swept by machine gun fire from a pillbox, which dominated all the ground over which the troops were advancing, Lieutenant McKenzie made a reconnaissance and detailed flanking and frontal parties, which captured the pillbox, he himself being killed while leading the frontal attack. By his valour and leadership this gallant officer ensured and enabled the objectives to be attained.”[xxviii]

SERGEANT GEORGE HARRY MULLIN

Passchendaele, Belgium – October 30, 1917
Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry

"Legion Magazine", The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/

Biographical Information

George Harry Mullin was born in Portland, Oregon, on August 15, 1892. When he was two, his parents moved to Moosomin, Sask. He attended the local public school and Moosomin Collegiate. In 1914, he joined the Canadian Army and became a gunner with the PPCLI.

Mullin was awarded the Military Medal for his actions in patrolling a small trench raid on December 8, 1916 at Vimy Ridge. In the early morning hours of that day, Lieutenant A. McDougall led a patrol of ten men including Mullin who guided the party. Crawling within six feet, the raiding group surprised the German two-man sentry post. The Germans fought back and were killed but not before both severely wounding Lieutenant McDougall in both legs with a grenade. Mullin shot one sentry, then helped carry McDougall back to "Patricia's" Line. In March, 1917 he was promoted to Corporal and given a battlefield promotion to Sergeant during the Vimy Ridge assault in April 9, 1917.

Mullin received his VC from King George V at Buckingham Palace on May 16, 1918.

After the war he returned to Moosomin where he took up farming and joined the militia, attaining the rank of Major. In 1934, Mullin was appointed Sergeant-At-Arms for the Province of Saskatchewan. He served in the Veterans Guard during WW II, and in June 1953 was among those representing Saskatchewan at the coronation of Queen Elizabeth II. He died April 5, 1963, at age 70 and was buried in the South Cemetery Legion Plot in Moosomin, Sask.[xxix]

Historical Information

The battle for the Belgian crossroads village of Passchendaele was one of the bloodiest battles of all time. Winston Churchill called it "a forlorn expenditure of valour and life without equal in futility." The sad part is that it never would have happened if Canadian Lieutenant-General Sir Arthur Currie had been successful in having it called off. In just 12 days – from October 26 to November 6, 1917 – the Canadian Corps suffered nearly 16 000 casualties, and all for a contemptible gain of 7 km (4 1/2 miles).

Currie, the Corps Commander, had recommended the assault be called off because the battlefield was a quagmire; a mass of shell holes filled with suffocating yellow ooze that made it impossible to advance let alone build proper gun emplacements. He was convinced that any attack would be suicidal. Besides, he considered Passchendaele a useless, worthless objective – a wretchedly flat little Flemish village that offered not a single military vantage point. Currie was overruled by the British commander, Sir Douglas Haig, whose strategy was

to overwhelm enemy manpower with the expenditure of greater manpower. His thinking was that victory was to be achieved through sheer brute force, no matter what the cost in human lives.

At dawn on October 26, 20 000 men began inching their way across no man's land in rain and mist, shell hole by muddy shell hole toward their objective. Before the bloody battle was over on November 6, nine Canadian Victoria Crosses had been earned, four of them on the same day, two of them posthumously.[xxx]

Victoria Cross Citation

On October 30, 1917 the PPCLI were fighting at Meetcheele Ridge (France) and suffering many casualties as they made their way through the mud and across open ground. They were being held back by heavy artillery and machine-gun fire as well as one particular pillbox on the crest of the hill maintained such a murderous fire that the attacking company of the unit was brought to a halt upon the slope of the hill, with every officer and NCO shot down, and the men remaining seeking what cover they could, unable to advance and unwilling to retreat.

A PPCLI officer, from the 7th Machine Gun Company, named Lieutenant Hugh McKenzie, noted the difficulties they were having and moved to their position to provide assistance with developing a plan of attack. Detailing small parties, one of which was lead by Mullin, he sent them off to work their way round the flanks, overcoming any hostile resistance they might encounter, and to be prepared at a given moment to make an attack from the rear upon the pillbox that was holding up the advance. A frontal attack moved directly up the slope to the fort, while the remainder of the men, including Mullin, attacked the same front from a different angle. McKenzie was shot and killed in front of the pillbox, however Mullin was able to move forward separately on a different route capturing the pillbox.[xxxi]

"For conspicuous bravery in attack, when, single-handed, he captured a commanding pillbox which had withstood the heavy bombardment and was causing heavy causalities to our forces and holding up the attack. He rushed a sniper's post in front, destroyed the garrison with bombs, and, crawling on to the top of the pillbox, he shot the two machine gunners with his revolver. Sergeant Mullin then rushed to another entrance, and compelled the garrison of 10 to surrender. His gallantry and fearlessness were witnessed by many, and although rapid fire was directed upon him and his clothes riddled by bullets, he never failed in his purpose, and he not only helped to save the situation but also indirectly saved many lives."[xxxii]

A/MAJOR GEORGE RANDOLPH PEARKES

Passchendaele, Belgium – October 30-31, 1917
5th Battalion, Canadian Mounted Rifles

"Legion Magazine", The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/

Biographical Information

George Randolph Pearkes, was born February 26, 1888, in Watford, England, was wounded in every major battle in which he participated. Educated at Berkhamsted School before coming to Canada, he joined the Bedfordshire Regiment as a bugle boy. Around 1911 he arrived in Red Deer, Alta., where he worked on a training farm. Two years later he joined the Northwest Mounted Police and in 1915 paid his way out for $50 to join the 2nd Canadian Mounted Rifles. In France, he was granted a commission and earned rapid promotion to Lieutenant-Colonel and later Major-General. In addition to the VC, which Pearkes received from King George V at Buckingham Palace on June 22, 1918, he was awarded the Military Cross, the Distinguished Service Order, the United States Order of Merit, the Order of the Knights of St. George and the French Croix de Guerre.

After the war, from 1922 to 1933, Pearkes served as general staff officer at the Royal Military College in Kingston, Ont.; from 1935 to 1938 he was director of military training. When WW II started, he was given command of the First Canadian Division, and when Japan entered the war he became general officer commanding, Pacific Command.

After WW II, Pearkes was elected Conservative member of Parliament for Nanaimo, B.C., and in 1957 became Defence Minister. In 1960, he was named British Columbia's Lieutenant-Governor and served as grand president of The Royal Canadian Legion from 1966 to 1976. He died May 30, 1984, at the age of 96. Pearkes was given a full military funeral beginning at Christ Church Cathedral in Victoria. The funeral parade was led by 32 Mounties followed by units of the PPCLI, a 50-man guard from the Canadian Scottish Regiment and a black horse without a rider. At his burial he received a 15-gun salute. Legion branches in Summerside, P.E.I., and Princeton, B.C., are named after him. His VC was donated to the Canadian War Museum in 1994.[xxxiii]

Historical Information

The battle for the Belgian crossroads village of Passchendaele was one of the bloodiest battles of all time. Winston Churchill called it "a forlorn expenditure of valour and life without equal in futility." The sad part is that it never would have happened if Canadian Lieutenant-General Sir Arthur Currie had been successful in having it called off. In just 12 days – from October 26 to November 6, 1917 – the Canadian Corps suffered nearly 16 000 casualties, and all for a contemptible gain of 7 km (4 1/2 miles).

Currie, the Corps Commander, had recommended the assault be called off because the battlefield was a quagmire; a mass of shell holes filled with suffocating yellow ooze that made it impossible to advance let alone build proper gun emplacements. He was convinced that any attack would be suicidal. Besides, he considered

Passchendaele a useless, worthless objective – a wretchedly flat little Flemish village that offered not a single military vantage point. Currie was overruled by the British commander, Sir Douglas Haig, whose strategy was to overwhelm enemy manpower with the expenditure of greater manpower. His thinking was that victory was to be achieved through sheer brute force, no matter what the cost in human lives.

At dawn on October 26, 20 000 men began inching their way across no man's land in rain and mist, shell hole by muddy shell hole toward their objective. Adding to the soldiers' difficulties was the fact that German planes had managed to bomb and strafe the supply areas, reducing the capability of the artillery. But before the bloody battle was over on November 6, nine Canadian Victoria Crosses had been earned, four of them on the same day, two of them posthumously.[xxxiv]

Victoria Cross Citation

As commander of a company of the 5th Canadian Mounted Rifles, A/Major George Pearkes had been ordered to capture Vapor Farm and the outlying defences of Passchendaele. Just before the advance got underway, a piece of shrapnel struck him in the left thigh with such force it knocked him down. Some of those closest to him thought the advance should be called off, but Pearkes would not do it.

Pearkes struggled to his feet and was able to drag himself forward. With 50 troops, he reached the objective only to find that both flanks were dangerously exposed. The battalion on the left had failed to capture Source Farm and so his unit turned its attention to it and took it by storm. Pearkes then consolidated the position amid a ragged line of shell holes and, although his unit was reduced to fewer than 20 men, it managed to beat off a succession of German counterattacks until reinforcements arrived well after dark on the second day.[xxxv]

"For most conspicuous bravery and skilful handling of the troops under his command during the capture and consolidation of considerably more than the objectives allotted to him in an attack. Just before the advance, A/Major Pearkes was wounded in the left thigh. Regardless of his wound, he continued to lead his men with the utmost gallantry, despite many obstacles. At a particular stage of the attack his further advance was threatened by a strong point which was an objective of the battalion on his left, but which was they had not succeeded in capturing. Quickly appreciating the situation, he captured and held this point, thus enabling his further advance to be successfully pushed forward. It was entirely due to his determination and fearless personality that he was able to maintain his objective with the small number of men at his command against repeated enemy counterattacks, both his flanks being unprotected for a considerable depth meanwhile. His appreciation of the situation throughout, and the reports rendered by him were invaluable to his Commanding Officer in making dispositions of troops to hold the position captured. He showed throughout a supreme contempt of danger and wonderful powers of control and leading."[xxxvi]

PRIVATE THOMAS RICKETTS

Ledeghem, Belgium – October 14, 1918
Royal Newfoundland Regiment

"Legion Magazine", Securing Victory: Part 13 of 18, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2006/01/securing-victory/

Biographical Information

Thomas Ricketts was born on April 15, 1901 in Middle Arm, White Bay, N.L. He was the son of John and Amelia (nee Castle). Thomas was a fisherman by trade but when the war broke out in Europe, he travelled to St. John's where he enlisted in the Royal Newfoundland Regiment on September 2, 1916. He stated that he was 18 years and 3 months, when in fact he was only 15 years and 4 months.

Ricketts went overseas in January 1917 with the 1st Batallion, Royal Newfoundland Regtiment. He proceeded to France in June of that year and after being wounded near Cambrai in November returned to action in April 1918.

Ricketts was awarded the Victoria Cross by King George V, who introduced Ricketts as "the youngest VC in my army." The King wrote in his diary on January 20, 1919, the following entry: "Yesterday I gave the VC to Private Ricketts, Newfoundland Regiment, who is only 17 and a half now, a splendid boy." In addition to earning the VC, Ricketts was also awarded the French Croix de Guerre with Gold Star.

Ricketts returned to Newfoundland a hero, but a modest one. For the rest of his life, he never boasted of his valour, and was content to keep a low profile in private life. He studied pharmacy, and went on to open a successful business in St. John's, N.L. The City of St. John's erected a plaque to commemorate Ricketts at the site of his business, at the corner of Job and Water Streets.

Tommy Ricketts died February 10, 1967. As a sign of respect, the provincial government held a state funeral. He is buried at the Anglican Cemetery in St. John's, N.L.

In 2003, Ricketts' family donated his war medals – including his VC – to the Canadian War Museum, so that his honours can be shared and preserved for future generations.[xxxvii]

Historical Information

Following the capture of the Drocourt-Quéant Line, the Allies launched a knockout blow to end the war with a massive breakthrough on a front stretching 290 km (180 miles) from Bruges, Belgium, in the north to Saint-Mihiel, France, in the south. The major tasks facing the Canadian Corps involved crossing the Canal du Nord, occupying Bourlon Wood and then capturing the city of Cambrai. From there the Canadians were expected to advance through Mont Houy and Valenciennes to Mons, Belgium. The first phase began at dawn September 27, 1918, when a barrage fell on enemy positions. Four battalions dashed across a dry portion of the canal and quickly established a bridgehead. Other units followed and took the lead. By the end of the day, a number of villages had been overrun and the Bourlon Wood was in Canadian hands. That same day, the Canadians

came up against the well-defended Marcoing Line, the last remaining trench line in the area. On the September 28, 1918, the line was overrun.[xxxviii]

Victoria Cross Citation

On October 14, 1918, at Ledeghem, Belgium, the regiment had successfully beaten back the Germans, but not without heavy losses. Ricketts' B Company was pinned down by German field-gun shelling and tried a counterattack, but the Newfoundlanders had outrun their own artillery and so the enemy guns had to be taken out.

Armed with a Lewis gun, Ricketts volunteered to join his section commander to try and outflank the enemy position. Advancing in stages under heavy fire, the men came within 300 yards of the German battery when they ran out of ammunition. The enemy, seeing an opportunity to get their field guns away, began to bring up their gun teams. Private Ricketts at once realized the situation and doubled back 100 yards, procured ammunition and dashed back to the Lewis gun and by very accurate fire drove the enemy and their gun teams into a farm. His platoon then advanced without casualties, and captured four field guns, four machine guns and eight prisoners. A fifth field gun was subsequently intercepted by fire and captured. By his presence of mind in anticipating the enemy intention and his utter disregard for personal safety, Private Ricketts secured the further supplies of ammunition which directly resulted in these important captures and undoubtedly saved many lives.[xxxix]

"During the advance from Ledgehem the attack was temporarily held up by heavy hostile fire, and the platoon to which he belonged suffered severe casualties from the fire of a battery at point blank range. Private Ricketts at once volunteered to go forward with his Section Commander and a Lewis gun to attempt to outflank the battery. They advanced by short rushes while subject to severe fire from enemy machine guns. When 300 yards away, their ammunition gave out. The enemy, seeing an opportunity to get their field guns away, began to bring up their gun teams. Private Ricketts at once realized the situation. He doubled back 100 yards, procured some ammunition and dashed back to the Lewis gun, and by very accurate fire drove the enemy and their gun teams into a farm. His platoon then advanced without casualties, and captured four field guns, four machine guns and eight prisoners. A fifth field gun was subsequently intercepted by fire and captured. By his presence of mind in anticipating the enemy intention and his utter disregard for personal safety, Private Ricketts secured the further supplies of ammunition which directly resulted in these important captures and undoubtedly saved many lives."[xl]

WARRANT OFFICER JOHN ROBERT OSBORN

Hong Kong – December 19, 1941
1st Battalion, The Winnipeg Grenadiers

"Veterans Affairs Canada", For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/osborn

Biographical Information

John Robert Osborn was born in Norfolk, England on January 2, 1899. He served in the First World War as a seaman in the Royal Naval Volunteer Reserve and saw action at the Battle of Jutland in May 1916. At the end of the war he moved to Saskatchewan where he farmed for two years at Wapella. He then worked with the maintenance division of the Canadian Pacific Railway in Manitoba where he married and had five children. He joined the Winnipeg Grenadiers in 1933 and was called to active duty on September 3, 1939. At 42 he was the second oldest VC recipient in the Second World War. Company Sergeant-Major Osborn has no known grave but his name appears on the Hong Kong Memorial. His medal is on display at the Canadian War Museum in Ottawa, Ont.

Historical Information

Hong Kong, the headquarters of the Royal Navy's China Squadron, was attacked by air on December 8, 1941, shortly after Pearl Harbor. On December 19, nine Japanese divisions landed on three beaches on the north of the island with artillery and air cover, and the defenders withdrew to Victoria Peak, where they held out until Christmas Day. It was Canada's first engagement of the war.[xli]

Victoria Cross Citation

In Hong Kong on the morning of the December 19, 1941, a company of the Winnipeg Grenadiers to which Warrant Officer Osborn belonged, became divided during an attack on Mount Butler, a hill rising steeply above sea level. A part of the company led by Warrant Officer Osborn captured the hill at the point of the bayonet and held it for three hours when, owing to the superior numbers of the enemy and to fire from an unprotected flank, the position became untenable. Warrant Officer Osborn and a small group covered the withdrawal, and when their turn came to fall back Osborn, single-handed, engaged the enemy while the remainder successfully joined the company. Warrant Officer Osborn had to run the gauntlet of heavy rifle and machine-gun fire. With no consideration for his own safety he assisted and directed stragglers to the new company position, exposing himself to heavy enemy fire to cover their retreat.

During the afternoon the company was cut off from the battalion and completely surrounded by the enemy, who were able to approach to within grenade throwing distance of the slight depression which the company was holding. Several enemy grenades were thrown which Warrant Officer Osborn picked up and threw back. The

enemy threw a grenade which landed in a position where it was impossible to pick it up and return it in time. Shouting a warning to his comrades this gallant Warrant Officer threw himself on the grenade which exploded, killing him instantly. His self-sacrifice undoubtedly saved the lives of many others.

Warrant Officer Osborn was an inspiring example to all throughout the defence which he assisted so magnificently in maintaining against an overwhelming enemy force for over eight and a half hours, and in his death he displayed the highest quality of heroism and self-sacrifice.[xlii]

REVEREND JOHN WEIR FOOTE

Dieppe – August 19, 1942
Canadian Chaplin Services
The Royal Hamilton Light Infantry

"Veterans Affairs Canada", For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/foote

Biographical Information

John Weir Foote was born in Madoc, Ont., on May 5, 1904. He was educated at the University of Western Ontario, London, at Queen's University, Kingston, and at McGill University, Montréal. He then entered the Presbyterian Ministry, serving congregations in Fort-Coulonge, Que. and Port Hope, Ont. In December 1939, he enlisted in the Canadian Chaplin Services and was posted to the Royal Hamilton Light Infantry. Reverend Foote was taken prisoner on August 19, 1942 and was not released until the May 5, 1945.

He did not accept demobilization until 1948, remaining with the Canadian Chaplain Services until that time. Then he entered the political arena and represented Durham County in the Legislature of the Province of Ontario. He had for some time filled the post of Minister of Reform Institutions for Ontario. Reverend Foote is the only member of the Canadian Chaplain Services ever to be awarded the Victoria Cross. Prior to his death, he donated his medals to the Royal Hamilton Light Infantry. He made his home with his wife in Cobourg, Ont., until his death on May 2, 1988. He is buried in Union Cemetery, Cobourg, Ont.[xliii]

Historical Information

The Dieppe Raid of August 1942 was the largest amphibious raid of the war, with 5 000 Canadians with 1 000 British, and American Rangers supported by 237 warships and landing craft and 69 squadrons of aircraft. Two battalions would land at Puits and Pourville, the headlands at each side of the port, followed by the main assault, two battalions with 27 tanks covered by eight destroyers, on the beach. A third battalion would then land at Pourville, which would link up with the armour landed on the beach. Army commandos would take out coastal batteries, and Royal Marine commandos would assault the harbour, destroy installations and capture prisoners, invasion craft and intelligence.

One of the batteries was prevented from engaging by the commandos, and the other was taken. At Puits the Canadians landed late, and were not able to leave the beach; at Pourville they landed in the wrong place, but the 2nd Battalion advanced inland. The main assault was a failure: the destroyer's fire did not suppress the defences, the tanks could not advance over the shingle beach and the infantry suffered heavy casualties. The Royal Marines did not attempt they role because the guns were still active, and were instead sent in support of one of the infantry battalions: the position on the beaches was hidden by a smoke screen, and all those who

landed were killed or taken prisoner. The landed forces were withdrawn six minutes behind schedule. Just over 1 000 of the raiding force were killed, the bulk of whom were Canadians – 907 – and 2 000 were taken prisoner.[xliv]

Victoria Cross Citation

At Dieppe August 19, 1942, Honourary Captain Foote, Canadian Chaplain Services, was the Regimental Chaplain with the Royal Hamilton Light Infantry. Upon landing on the beach under heavy fire he attached himself to the Regimental Aid Post which had been set up in a slight depression on the beach, but which was only sufficient to give cover to men lying down. During the subsequent period of approximately eight hours, while the action continued, he not only assisted the Regimental Medical Officer in ministering to the wounded in the Regimental Aid Post, but time and again left this shelter to inject morphine, give first aid and carry wounded personnel from the open beach to the Regimental Aid Post. On these occasions, with utter disregard for his personal safety, Honourary Captain Foote exposed himself to an inferno of fire and saved many lives by his gallant efforts.

During the action, as the tide went out, the Regimental Aid Post was moved to the shelter of a stranded landing craft. Honourary Captain Foote continued tirelessly and courageously to carry wounded men from the exposed beach to the cover of the landing craft. He also removed wounded from inside the landing craft when ammunition had been set on fire by enemy shells. When landing craft appeared he carried wounded from the Regimental Aid Post to the landing craft through heavy fire. On several occasions he had the opportunity to embark but returned to the beach as his chief concern was the care and evacuation of the wounded. He refused a final opportunity to leave the shore, choosing to suffer the fate of the men he had ministered to for over three years.

Honourary Captain Foote personally saved many lives by his efforts and his example inspired all around him. Those who observed him state that the calmness of this heroic officer as he walked about, collecting the wounded on the fire-swept beach will never be forgotten.[xlv]

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL CHARLES CECIL INGERSOLL MERRITT

Dieppe – August 19, 1942
The South Saskatchewan Regiment
The Seaforth Highlanders of Canada

"Veterans Affairs Canada", For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/merritt

Biographical Information

Charles Cecil Ingersoll Merritt was born in Vancouver, B.C., on November 10, 1908, the son of a First World War hero. He was educated at Lord Roberts School, Vancouver, B.C., University School, Victoria, B.C., and the Royal Military College, Kingston, Ont. In his private life he was a barrister and solicitor. Prior to the outbreak of war in 1939 he had been, since 1929, an officer in the Seaforth Highlanders of Canada. In 1942, he was transferred to the South Saskatchewan Regiment. Following his gallant action at Dieppe he became a prisoner of war for the balance of the hostilities.

In 1945, he was elected to the Federal Parliament for Vancouver-Burrard and served in that capacity until 1948. Following the loss of his seat in the general election of that year, he returned to his law practice in Vancouver where he and his wife took up residence. In 1951, he was appointed Commanding Officer of the Seaforth Highlanders of Canada Regiment, a post he held for three years.

On July 12, 2000, Lieutenant-Colonel Merritt passed away in Vancouver, B.C.[xlvi]

Historical Information

The Dieppe Raid of August 1942, was the largest amphibious raid of the war, with 5 000 Canadians with 1 000 British, and American Rangers supported by 237 warships and landing craft and 69 squadrons of aircraft. Two battalions would land at Puits and Pourville, the headlands at each side of the port, followed by the main assault, two battalions with 27 tanks covered by eight destroyers, on the beach. A third battalion would then land at Pourville, which would link up with the armour landed on the beach. Army commandos would take out coastal batteries, and Royal Marine commandos would assault the harbour, destroy installations and capture prisoners, invasion craft and intelligence.

One of the batteries was prevented from engaging by the commandos, and the other was taken. At Puits the Canadians landed late, and were not able to leave the beach; at Pourville they landed in the wrong place, but the 2nd Battalion advanced inland. The main assault was a failure: the destroyer's fire did not suppress the defences, the tanks could not advance over the shingle beach and the infantry suffered heavy casualties. The Royal Marines did not attempt they role because the guns were still active, and were instead sent in support of one of the infantry battalions: the position on the beaches was hidden by a smoke screen, and all those who

landed were killed or taken prisoner. The landed forces were withdrawn six minutes behind schedule. Just over 1 000 of the raiding force was killed, the bulk of whom were Canadians – 907 – and 2 000 were taken prisoner.[xlvii]

Victoria Cross Citation

Merritt was awarded the VC for matchless gallantry and inspiring leadership while commanding his battalion during the Dieppe raid on August 19, 1942. From the point of landing, his unit's advance had to be made across a bridge in Pourville which was swept by very heavy machine-gun, mortar and artillery fire: the first parties were mostly destroyed and the bridge thickly covered by their bodies. A daring lead was required; waving his helmet, Lieutenant-Colonel Merritt rushed forward shouting, "Come on over! There's nothing to worry about here."

He personally led the survivors of at least four parties in turn across the bridge. Quickly organizing these, he led them forward and when held up by enemy pillboxes he again headed rushes which succeeded in clearing them. In one case he himself destroyed the occupants of the post by throwing grenades into it. After several of his runners became casualties, he himself kept contact with his different positions. Although twice wounded, Lieutenant-Colonel Merritt continued to direct the unit's operations with great vigour and determination and while organizing the withdrawal he stalked a sniper with a Bren gun and silenced him. He then coolly gave orders for the departure and announced his intention to hold off and get even with the enemy. When last seen he was collecting Bren and Tommy guns and preparing a defensive position which successfully covered the withdrawal from the beach before being taken a prisoner of war. The success of his unit's operations and the safe re-embarkation of a large portion of it were chiefly due to Lieutenant-Colonel Merritt's personal daring.[xlviii]

CAPTAIN PAUL TRIQUET

Casa Berardi, Italy – December 14, 1943
Le Royal 22e Régiment

"Veterans Affairs Canada", For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/triquet

Biographical Information

Paul Triquet was born in Cabano, Que., on April 2, 1910. He attended Cabano Academy and later took six years of night school in Québec City. While at school he was a member of the Cabano Cadet Corps which his father organized and trained, so he was keenly interested in military training from an early age. He enlisted as a private in the Royal 22e Régiment on November 3, 1927 and received rapid promotion. The action which won him the Victoria Cross has been described as a "magnificent flash of greatness." He was also awarded a French decoration – Chevalier of the Legion of Honour – for the same action.

In 1947, he retired from the active army after 22 years and became a district sales manager for a forest products company in Quebec until 1951, when he joined the Reserve Army as Commanding Officer of the Régiment de Levis (R.F.). In 1954, he became Colonel Paul Triquet, commanding the 8th Militia Group.

Paul Triquet retired in Florida and died on August 8, 1980 and is buried in Québec City.[xlix]

Historical Information

Sicily was invaded on July 10, 1943. The strategic objectives were to regain control of the Mediterranean for shipping, to draw forces from the Eastern front and to begin to force Italy out of the war. In all these points it was successful, although the Germans managed to withdraw forty thousand men across the Straits of Messina. Mussolini was overthrown on July 25, 1943, and the new government proposed surrender terms; the Allies decided that it should coincide with a landing at Salerno on September 9, six days after a landing by the 8th Army at Reggio.

The German counterattack at Salerno was nearly successful on September 13, but was defeated by airdropping two regimental combat teams from the US 81st Airborne Division, and by lead elements of the 8th Army. The German response was to hold the Allies with a succession of defence lines, starting with the Viktor line and than the Gustav line. Every effort was made to make Allied progress as difficult and costly as possible.

Naples fell on October 1, and the Volturno was reached on the 5th, but met strong resistance, coupled with bad weather, and the river line was not secure until the 19th. On the Adriatic, the Canadians had crossed the Moro River on December 8, 1943, but took a week to fight through Ortona. On December 30, Montgomery left Italy

for Britain to prepare for the invasion of France. The Allied advance was then halfway between the Sangro and Pescara and facing the Gustav line.

The capture of the key road junction on the main Ortona-Orsogna lateral was entirely dependent on securing the hamlet of Casa Berardi. This and a gully in front of it had been turned by the Germans into formidable strong points defended by infantry and tanks.[l]

Victoria Cross Citation

On December 14, 1943, Captain Triquet's company of the Royal 22^{e} Régiment with the support of a squadron of a Canadian Armoured Regiment was given the task of crossing the gully and securing Casa Berardi. Difficulties were encountered from the outset. The gully was held in strength and on approaching it the force came under heavy fire from machineguns and mortars. All the company officers and 50 percent of the men were killed or wounded. Showing superb contempt for the enemy, Captain Triquet went around reorganizing the remainder and encouraging them with the words, "Never mind them, they can't shoot." Finally when enemy infiltration was observed on all sides shouting, "There are enemy in front of us, behind us and on our flanks, there is only one safe place – that is on the objective," he dashed forward and with his men following him broke through the enemy resistance. In this action four tanks were destroyed and several enemy machine gun posts silenced.

Against bitter and determined defence and under heavy fire, Captain Triquet and his company, in close co-operation with the tanks, forced their way on until a position was reached on the outskirts of Casa Berardi. By this time the strength of the company was reduced to two sergeants and 15 men. In expectation of a counterattack Captain Triquet at once set about organizing his handful of men into a defensive perimeter around the remaining tanks. A German counterattack supported by tanks developed almost immediately. Captain Triquet, ignoring the heavy fire, was everywhere encouraging his men and directing the defence. This and subsequent attacks were beaten off with heavy losses, and Captain Triquet and his small force held out against overwhelming odds until the remainder of the battalion took Casa Berardi and relieved them the next day.

Throughout this engagement, Captain Triquet showed the most magnificent courage and cheerfulness under heavy fire. Wherever the action was the hottest he was often seen shouting encouragement to his men and organizing the defence. His utter disregard of danger, his cheerfulness and tireless devotion to duty were a constant source of inspiration to them. His tactical skill and leadership enabled them, although reduced by casualties to a mere handful, to continue their advance against bitter resistance and to hold their gains against determined counterattacks. It was due to him that Casa Berardi was captured and opened for the attack on the vital road junction.[li]

MAJOR CHARLES FERGUSON HOEY

Maungdaw, Burma – February 16, 1944
1st Battalion, The Lincolnshire Regiment

"Veterans Affairs Canada", For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/hoey

Biographical Information

Charles Ferguson Hoey was born in Duncan, Vancouver Island, B.C., on March 29, 1914. He was educated at the Duncan Grammar School and at the Duncan High School. In April 1933, he went to England with the intention of making the army his career.

He first enlisted in the West Kent Regiment, won a cadetship to the Royal Military College at Sandhurst and went there in September 1935. He graduated from Sandhurst in December 1936 and, after a brief visit home to Duncan, joined the 2nd Battalion, the Lincolnshire Regiment, which is now the Royal Lincolnshires following distinguished service fighting in Burma. He transferred to the 1st Battalion of the Lincolnshires, then in India and sailed for there in September 1937. He went to Burma with the 1st Battalion in 1942 and served there until his death in February 1944. He was awarded the Military Cross in July 1943, for his outstanding service at Maungdaw during a raid on a Japanese position.

Major Hoey is buried in Taukkyan Cemetery, Rangoon, Burma. His Victoria Cross is on display at the Sabraon Barrack in Lincoln, England.[lii]

Historical Information

Strategy for the Burma theatre entailed a four pronged invasion. In the north, a Nationalist Chinese army led by the American Lieutenant-General Stillwell would take Myitkyina and establish a land supply route to replace the dangerous air route over the Himalayas. In the centre there would be a limited advance on the Chindwin River, the great natural barrier behind which the Allies had retreated in 1942. These two operations would be supported by an operation by a long range penetration force that had crossed the Chindwin into Japanese-held territory in the spring of 1943. In the south, there would be a second attempt to take Maungdaw-Buthidaung road in Arakan.

The 25-km (16-mile) road from Maungdaw to Buthidaung ran west–east across the peninsula, and was the only lateral road good enough for wheeled traffic, on which the Allies relied. It was heavily defended along its length and had three strongholds, at Razabil in the west and Letwedet in the east, and in the tunnels under the Mayu range. To attack Letwedet a new road over the mountains had to be made, and a footpath running through Ngakyedauk Pass was chosen. It was ready for use by the end of January 1944, but since it ran parallel to the front it was always vulnerable to Japanese attack. Maungdaw was taken on January 9 and Razabil by the end

of the month. The battle for the Maungdaw–Buthidaung road was not over until May, after very tough fighting against some of the best Japanese formations. [liii]

Victoria Cross Citation

In Burma, on February 16, 1944, Major Hoey's company formed a part of a force which was ordered to capture a position in the Ngakyedauk Pass at all costs. The capture of the key road junction on the main Ortona-Orsogna lateral was entirely dependent on securing the hamlet of Casa Berardi. Both this and a gully in front of it had been turned by the Japanese into formidable strong points defended by infantry and tanks. After a night march through enemy-held territory the force was met at the foot of the position by heavy machine-gun fire.

Major Hoey personally led his company under heavy machine-gun and rifle fire right up to the objective. Although wounded at least twice in the leg and head, he seized a Bren gun from one of his men and firing from the hip, led his company to the objective. In spite of his wounds the company had difficulty keeping up with him, and Major Hoey reached the enemy strong post first, where he killed all the occupants before being mortally wounded.

Major Hoey's outstanding gallantry and leadership, his total disregard of personal safety and his grim determination to reach the objective resulted in the capture of this vital position.[liv]

MAJOR JOHN KEEFER MAHONY

Melfa River, Italy – May 24, 1944
The Westminster Regiment

"Veterans Affairs Canada", For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/mahony

Biographical Information

John Keefer Mahony was born in New Westminster, B.C., on June 30, 1911. He received his education at the Duke of Connaught High School, New Westminster and then entered the world of journalism as a reporter with the Vancouver Province. Prior to the outbreak of war he had been an officer in the Westminster Regiment of the militia and he was among the first to enlist for active service.

On the cessation of hostilities he remained in the army until 1962 serving successively as Commandant Cadet Officer of the Western Command, Director of Publications for the Canadian Army and Assistant Adjutant and Quartermaster-General of the Western Ontario Area. On April 5, 1954, Lieutenant-Colonel Mahony went to Washington, D.C. as Canadian Army Liaison Officer.

He retired in London, Ont. where he engaged in youth work. At his own request, he was buried without a military funeral. He died on December 16, 1990.

Historical Information

On the May 24, 1944, A Company of the Westminster Regiment (Motor), under the command of Major Mahony, was ordered to establish the initial bridgehead across the River Melfa. The enemy still had strong forces of tanks, self-propelled guns and infantry holding defensive positions on the east side of the river.

Victoria Cross Citation

Despite this, Major Mahony personally led his company down to and across the river, being with the leading section. Although the crossing was made in full view of and under heavy fire from enemy machine-gun posts on the right rear and left front, he personally directed each section into its proper position on the west bank with the greatest coolness and confidence. The crossing was made and a small bridgehead was established on ground where it was only possible to dig shallow weapon pits. From 1530 hours the company maintained itself in the face of enemy fire and attack until 2030 hours, when the remaining companies and supporting weapons were able to cross the river and reinforce them.

The bridgehead was enclosed on three sides by an 88-mm self-propelled gun 450 yards to the right, a battery of four, 2-cm AA guns, 100 yards to the left, a Spandau 100 yards to the left of it. To the left of the Spandau a second 88-mm self-propelled gun, and a company of infantry with mortars and machine guns on the left of

the 88-mm gun. From all these weapons, Major Mahony's company was constantly under fire until it eventually succeeded in knocking out the self-propelled equipment and the infantry on the left flank.

Shortly after the bridgehead had been established, the enemy counterattacked with infantry supported by tanks and self-propelled guns. The counterattack was beaten off by the company with its Projector, Infantry, Anti Tank's (PIATs), 2-inch mortars and grenades, due to the skill with which Major Mahony had organized his defences. With absolute fearlessness and disregard for his own safety, Major Mahony personally directed the fire of his PIAT's throughout this action, encouraging and exhorting his men. By this time, the company strength had been reduced to 60 men, and all but one of the platoon officers had been wounded. Scarcely an hour later, enemy tanks formed up about 450 m (500 yards) in front of the bridgehead and in company with about a Company of infantry, launched a second counterattack. Major Mahony, determined to hold the position at all costs, went from section to section with words of encouragement, personally directing fire of mortars and other weapons. At one stage, a section was pinned down in the open by accurate and intense machine-gun fire. Major Mahony crawled forward to their position, and by throwing smoke grenades, succeeded in extricating the section from its position with the loss of only one man. This counterattack was finally beaten off with the destruction of three enemy self-propelled guns and one Panther tank.

Early in the action, Major Mahony was wounded in the head and twice in the leg, but he refused medical aid and continued to direct the defence of the bridgehead, despite the fact that movement of any kind caused him extreme pain. It was only when the remaining companies of the regiment had crossed the river to support him that he allowed his wounds to be dressed and even then refused to be evacuated, staying instead with his company.

The forming and holding of a bridgehead across the river was vital to the whole Canadian Corps action, and failure would have meant delay, a repetition of the attack, probably involving heavy losses in men, material and time, and would have given the enemy breathing space which might have broken the impetus of the Corps' advance. Major Mahony, knowing this, never allowed the thought of failure or withdrawal to enter his mind, and infused his spirit and determination into all his men. At the first sign of hesitation or faltering, Major Mahony was there to encourage, by his own example, those who were feeling the strain of battle. The enemy perceived that this officer was the soul of the defence and consequently fired at him constantly with all weapons, from rifle to 88-mm guns. Major Mahony completely ignored the enemy fire and with great courage and absolute disregard for personal danger, commanded his company with such great confidence, energy and skill that the enemy's efforts to destroy the bridgehead were all defeated.

The great courage shown by Major Mahony in this action will forever be an inspiration to his Regiment and to the Canadian Army.[lv]

MAJOR DAVID VIVIAN CURRIE

St. Lambert-sur-dives, France – August 18, 1944
The South Alberta Regiment

"Veterans Affairs Canada", For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/currie

Biographical Information

David Vivian Currie was born in Sutherland, Sask. on July 8, 1912. He attended King George Public School, the Central Collegiate and Moose Jaw Technical School where he learned his trade as an automobile mechanic and welder. In 1939, he joined the militia and in January 1940, he enlisted in the regular army with the rank of Lieutenant. He was promoted to Captain in 1941 and to Major in 1944.

After the war he spent eight years in Baie Comeau, Que., as equipment superintendent of a paper company. In 1953, he moved to Montréal and joined a manufacturing company where he became vice-president. In 1959, Prime Minister John Diefenbaker appointed him Sergeant-at-Arms of the House of Commons. He died in Ottawa, Ont. on June 20, 1986 and is buried in Owen Sound, Ont.[lvi]

Historical Information

Six days after the Allies landed on the beaches of Normandy, they had linked their beachheads – Utah, Omaha, Gold, Juno and Sword – and held an unbroken front of 96 km (60 miles) which was 24 km (15 miles) deep in some places. The Germans, however, contested every inch. On July 31, 1944, American tanks and infantry had broken through German lines and had reached Avranches. Hitler ordered what remained of ten Panzer divisions to attack through Mortain to Avranches to cut off the advancing Americans. North of Mortain the Royal Norfolks were holding the village of Sourdeval when it was attacked by the 10th Panzar Division. The Germans withdrew eastwards through the Falaise Gap but they were attacked by the Allies, and by August 16, 1944, Hitler reluctantly accepted Normandy was lost.[lvii]

Victoria Cross Citation

In Normandy on August 18, 1944, Major Currie was in command of a small mixed force of Canadian tanks, self-propelled anti-tank guns and infantry which was ordered to cut one of the main escape routes from the Falaise pocket. This force was held up by strong enemy resistance in the village of St. Lambert-sur-Dives, and two tanks were knocked out by 88-mm guns. Major Currie immediately entered the village alone on foot at last light through the enemy outposts to reconnoitre the German defences and extricate the crews of the disabled tanks, which he succeeded in doing in spite of heavy mortar fire. Early the following morning, without any previous artillery bombardment, Major Currie personally led an attack on the village in the face of fierce opposition from enemy tanks, guns and infantry, and by noon had succeeded in seizing and consolidating a position halfway inside of the village. During the next 36 hours the Germans hurled one counterattack after another against

the Canadian force, but so skilfully had Major Currie organized his defensive position that these attacks were repulsed with severe casualties to the enemy after heavy fighting.

At dusk on August 20, the Germans attempted to mount a final assault on the Canadian positions, but the attacking force was routed before it could even be deployed. Seven enemy tanks, 12 88-mm guns and 40 vehicles were destroyed, 300 Germans were killed, 500 wounded and 2 100 captured. Major Currie then promptly ordered an attack and completed the capture of the village, thus denying the Chambois-Trun escape route to the remnants of two German Armies cut off in the Falaise pocket.

Throughout three days and nights of fierce fighting, Major Currie's gallant conduct and contempt for danger set a magnificent example to all ranks of the force under his command. On one occasion he personally directed the fire of his command tank on to a Tiger tank which had been harassing his position and succeeded in knocking it out. During another attack, while the guns of his command tank were taking on other targets at longer ranges, he used a rifle from the turret to deal with individual snipers who had infiltrated to within 50 yards of his headquarters. The only time reinforcements were able to get through to his force, he himself led the 40 men forward to their positions and explained the importance of their task as part of the defence. When, during the next attack, these new reinforcements withdrew under the intense fire brought down by the enemy, he personally collected them and led them forward into position again, where, inspired by his leadership, they held for the remainder of the battle. His employment of the artillery support, which became available after his original attack went in, was typical of his cool calculation of the risks involved in every situation. At one time, despite the fact that short rounds were falling within fifteen yards of his own tank, he ordered fire from medium artillery to continue because of its devastating effect upon the attacking enemy in his immediate area.

Throughout the operations the casualties to Major Currie's force were heavy. He never considered the possibility of failure or allowed it to enter the minds of his men. In the words of one of his non-commissioned officers, "We knew at one stage that it was going to be a fight to the finish but he was so cool about it, it was impossible for us to get excited." Since all the officers under his command were either killed or wounded during the action, Major Currie virtually had no respite from his duties and in fact obtained only one hour's sleep during the entire period. Nevertheless he did not permit his fatigue to become apparent to his troops and throughout the action took every opportunity to visit weapon pits and other defensive posts to talk to his men, to advise them as to the best use of their weapons and to cheer them with words of encouragement. When his force was finally relieved and he was satisfied that the turnover was complete he fell asleep on his feet and collapsed.

There is no doubt that the success of the attack on and stand against the enemy at St. Lambert-sur-Dives can largely be attributed to this officer's coolness, inspired leadership and skilful use of the limited weapons at his disposal. The courage and devotion to duty shown by Major Currie during a prolonged period of heavy fighting were outstanding and had a far-reaching effect on the successful outcome of the battle.[lviii]

Pte. ERNEST ALVIA SMITH

Savio River, Italy – October 21-22, 1944
The Seaforth Highlanders of Canada

"Veterans Affairs Canada", For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/smith

Biographical Information

Ernest Alvia Smith was born in New Westminster, B.C., on May 3, 1914. He was educated at the Herbert Spencer Elementary School and the T.J. Trapp Technical High School. Before enlisting in the army, he engaged in contracting work.

He enlisted in the Seaforth Highlanders of Canada and served with that unit until April 13, 1945. For some time following demobilization Ernest Alvia "Smokey" Smith worked in a photographic studio in New Westminster. In 1951 he re-enlisted in the Permanent Force retiring in 1964 with the rank of sergeant as a member of the Tri-Service Recruiting Unit in Vancouver and served as a sergeant at Headquarters of the British Columbia Army Command in Vancouver.

Ernest Alvia "Smokey" Smith was appointed a member of the Order of Canada in November 1995. On August 3, 2005, Ernest Alvia "Smokey" Smith, died peacefully at his home in Vancouver, British Columbia, surrounded by family and friends at the age of 91. Many thousands paid their respects when he lay in state in Parliament Hill in Ottawa and at his military funeral in Vancouver. His ashes were committed to the sea on August 15, 2005, as a fulfilment of one of his last wishes.

Historical Information

In Italy on the night of October 21, 1944, a Canadian Infantry Brigade was ordered to establish a bridgehead across the Savio River. The Seaforth Highlanders of Canada were selected as the spearhead of the attack, and in weather most unfavorable to the operation, they crossed the river and captured their objective in spite of strong opposition from the enemy. Torrential rain had caused the Savio River to rise six feet in five hours, and as the soft vertical banks made it impossible to bridge the river no tanks or anti-tank guns could be taken across the raging stream to the support of the rifle companies. As the right forward company was consolidating its objective it was suddenly counterattacked by a troop of three Mark V Panther tanks supported by two self-propelled guns and about 30 infantry and the situation appeared hopeless.

Victoria Cross Citation

Under heavy fire from the approaching enemy tanks, Private Smith, showing great initiative and inspiring leadership, led his Projector, Infantry, Anti Tank (PIAT) Group of two men across an open field to a position from which the PIAT could best be employed. Leaving one man on the weapon, Private Smith crossed the

road with a comrade and obtained another PIAT. Almost immediately an enemy tank came down the road firing its machine guns along the line of the ditches. Private Smith's comrade was wounded. At a range of 9 m (30 feet) and having to expose himself to the full view of the enemy, Private Smith fired the PIAT and hit the tank, putting it out of action. Ten German infantry immediately jumped off the back of the tank and charged him with Schmeissers and grenades. Without hesitation Private Smith moved out on the road and with his Tommy gun at point-blank range, killed four Germans and drove the remainder back. Almost immediately another tank opened fire and more enemy infantry closed in on Smith's position. Obtaining some abandoned Tommy gun magazines from a ditch, he steadfastly held his position, protecting his comrade and fighting the enemy with his Tommy gun until they finally gave up and withdrew in disorder.

One tank and both self-propelled guns had been destroyed by this time, but yet another tank swept the area with fire from a longer range. Private Smith, still showing utter contempt for enemy fire, helped his wounded comrade to cover and obtained medical aid for him behind a nearby building. He then returned to his position beside the road to await the possibility of a further enemy attack.

No further immediate attack developed, and as a result the battalion was able to consolidate the bridgehead position vital to the success of the whole operation, which led to the capture of San Giorgio Di Cesena and a further advance to the Ronco River. Thus, by the dogged determination, outstanding devotion to duty and superb gallantry of this private soldier, his comrades were so inspired that the bridgehead was held firm against all enemy attacks, pending the arrival of tanks and anti-tank guns some hours later.[lix]

SERGEANT AUBREY COSENS

Mooshof, Holland – February 25-26, 1945
The Queen's Own Rifles of Canada

"Veterans Affairs Canada", For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/cozens

Biographical Information

Aubrey Cosens was born in Latchford, Ont., on May 21, 1921, the son of a First World War Veteran. Shortly after his birth his family moved to Porquis Junction, near Iroquois Falls, Ont. and he was educated in the Porquis Junction School. He left school in 1938 to work with his father on the railway as a section hand.

He left Porquis Junction in 1939 to join the Royal Canadian Air Force but his application was rejected. Finally, in 1940, he went to Hamilton, Ont., and was accepted by the Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders of Canada (Hamilton) Regiment. He served with them in Canada, Jamaica and England, then transferred to the Queen's Own Rifles of Canada in the summer of 1944 and was soon promoted to sergeant.

Sergeant Cosens is buried in Groesbeek Canadian War Cemetery, Nijmegan, The Netherlands. His Victoria Cross is displayed at the Queen's Own Rifles of Canada Regimental Museum in Toronto.[lx]

Historical Information

December and January of 1945 were spent in operations in Holland and Belgium up to and beyond the Meuse/ Maas. Once that was clear, Field Marshal Montgomery planned to move from Eindhoven as far as Wesel, about 48 km (30 miles) inside Germany, securing the area north of the Meuse. 1st Commando Brigade was under command of the 7th Armoured Division, engaged between the Maas and Roer. The German offensive in the Ardennes delayed the planned attack until February 8, but the Germans were thrown back by March 10; at that date there were no Germans left west of the Rhine.[lxi]

Victoria Cross Citation

In Holland on the night of February 25, 1945, the 1st Battalion, The Queen's Own Rifles of Canada launched an attack on the hamlet of Mooshof, to capture ground which was considered essential for the development of future operations.

Sergeant Cosens' platoon, with two tanks in support, attacked enemy strong points in three farm buildings, but were twice beaten back by fanatical enemy resistance and then fiercely counterattacked, during which time the platoon suffered heavy casualties and the platoon commander was killed.

Sergeant Cosens at once assumed command of the only other four survivors of his platoon, whom he placed in a position to give him covering fire, while he himself ran across open ground under heavy mortar and shell fire to the one remaining tank, where, regardless of the danger, he took up an exposed place in front of the turret and directed his fire. After a further enemy counterattack had been repulsed, Sergeant Cosens ordered the tank to attack the farm buildings, while the four survivors of his platoon followed in close support. After the tank had rammed the first building he entered it alone, killing several of the defenders and taking the rest prisoner. Single-handed he then entered the second and third buildings, and personally killed or captured all the occupants, although under intense machine-gun and small arms fire. Just after the successful reduction of these important enemy strong points, Sergeant Cosens was shot through the head by an enemy sniper and died almost instantly.

The outstanding gallantry, initiative and determined leadership of this brave NCO, who himself killed at least 20 of the enemy and took an equal number of prisoners, resulted in the capture of a position which was vital to the success of the future operations of the Brigade.[lxii]

MAJOR FREDERICK ALBERT TILSTON

The Hochwald, Germany – March 1, 1945
The Essex Scottish Regiment

"Veterans Affairs Canada", For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/tilston

Biographical Information

Frederick Albert Tilston was born in Toronto, Ont., on June 11, 1906. He was educated at De La Salle High School, the Ontario College of Pharmacy and the University of Toronto. Prior to his enlistment in 1940 he was sales manager of a drug manufacturing company.

He enlisted as a private but because of his age, education and experience, he was quickly promoted to sergeant and then to officer. The wounds received during the war necessitated the amputation of both legs, but exactly one year later from the date of his injuries he returned to work for his former company in the capacity of vice-president in charge of sales. He later became president and then chairman of the board for that company.

In 1963, he became Honorary Colonel of his old regiment which had been renamed the Essex and Kent Regiment. He resided in Toronto, Ont., until his death on September 23, 1992. His family presented his Victoria Cross to the Royal Canadian Military Institute in Toronto.[lxiii]

Historical Information

December and January of 1945 were spent in operations in Holland and Belgium up to and beyond the Meuse/ Maas. Once that was clear, Field Marshal Montgomery planned to move from Eindhoven as far as Wesel, about 48 km (30 miles) inside Germany, securing the area north of the Meuse. 1st Commando Brigade was under command of the 7th Armoured Division, engaged between the Maas and Roer. The German offensive in the Ardennes delayed the planned attack until February 8, but the Germans were thrown back by March 10; at that date there were no Germans left west of the Rhine.

Victoria Cross Citation

The 2nd Canadian Division had been given the task of breaking through the strongly fortified Hochwald Forest defence line which covered Zanten, the last German bastion west of the Rhine protecting the vital Wesel Bridge escape route.

The Essex Scottish Regiment was ordered to breach the defence line northeast of Udem and to clear the northern half of the forest, through which the balance of the brigade would pass. At 0715 hours on March 1, 1945, the attack was launched, but due to the softness of the ground it was found impossible to support the attack by tanks as had been planned. Across approximately 500 yards of flat open country, in the face of intense enemy fire, Major Tilston personally led his company in the attack, keeping dangerously close to

our own bursting shells in order to get the maximum cover from the barrage. Though wounded in the head he continued to lead his men forward, through a belt of wire 10 feet in depth to the enemy trenches shouting orders and encouragement and using his Sten gun with great effect. When the platoon on the left came under heavy fire from an enemy machine gun post, he dashed forward personally and silenced it with a grenade; he was first to reach the enemy position and took the first prisoner.

Determined to maintain the momentum of the attack he ordered the reserve platoon to map up these positions and with outstanding gallantry, pressed on with his main force to the second line of enemy defences which were on the edge of the woods. As he approached the woods he was severely wounded in the hip and fell to the ground. Shouting to his men to carry on without him and urging them to get into the woods, he struggled to his feet and rejoined them as they reached the trenches of their objective. Here an elaborate system of underground dugouts and trenches was manned in considerable strength and vicious hand-to-hand fighting followed. Despite his wounds, Major Tilston's unyielding will to close with the enemy was a magnificent inspiration to his men as he led them in systematically clearing the trenches of the fiercely resisting enemy. In this fighting, two German company headquarters were overrun and many casualties were inflicted on the fanatical defenders.

Such had been the grimness of the fighting and so savage the enemy resistance that the company was now reduced to only 26 men, one quarter of its original strength. Before consolidation could be completed the enemy counterattacked repeatedly, supported by a hail of mortar and machine-gun fire from the open flank. Major Tilston moved, in the open, from platoon to platoon quickly organizing their defence and directing fire against the advancing enemy. The enemy attacks penetrated so close to the positions that grenades were thrown into the trenches held by his troops, but this officer by personal contact, unshakable confidence and unquenchable enthusiasm inspired his men that they held firm against great odds.

When the supply of ammunition became a serious problem he repeatedly crossed the bullet-swept ground to the company on his right flank to carry grenades, rifle and Bren ammunition to his troops and replaced a damaged wireless set to re-establish communications with battalion headquarters. He made at least six of these hazardous trips, each time crossing a road which was dominated by intense fire from numerous, well-sited enemy machine-gun posts.

On his last trip he was wounded for the third time, this time in the leg. He was found in a shell crater beside the road. Although very seriously wounded and barely conscious, he would not submit to medical attention until he had given complete instructions as to the defence plan, had emphasized the absolute necessity of holding the position, and had ordered his one remaining officer to take over.

By his calm courage, gallant conduct and total disregard for his own safety, he fired his men with grim determination and their firm stand enabled the regiment to accomplish its objective of furnishing the brigade with a solid base through which to launch further successful attacks to clear the forest thus enabling the division to accomplish its task.[lxv]

CORPORAL FREDERICK GEORGE TOPHAM

East of The Rhine, Germany – March 24, 1945
1st Canadian Parachute Company

"Veterans Affairs Canada", For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/topham

Biographical Information

Frederick George Topham was born in Toronto, Ont., on August 10, 1917. He was educated at King George Public School and Runnymede High School. Prior to his enlistment he was employed in the mines at Kirkland Lake, Ont. In November 1945, he laid the cornerstone for Sunnybrook Memorial Hospital in Toronto.

After demobilization he worked at Toronto Hydro. He died on May 31, 1974 and is buried in Toronto, Ont.[lxvi]

Historical Information

The Rhine was crossed by the Americans on March 22 and 23, 1945, near Oppenheim and by the British and Canadians in three places near Wesel on March 23 and 24, 1945. In the morning of March 24, the 6th Airborne Division parachuted in ahead of the forward troops. Although there were pockets of fanatical resistance, Germany no longer had any capacity to fight a war. Hitler's order to create a desert in front of the Allied armies was not obeyed, and the Allies advanced as much as 80 km (50 miles) a day. Contact was made with the Soviet Army on April 18, and the unconditional surrender was signed on May 8, 1945.[lxvii]

Victoria Cross Citation

On March 24, 1945, Corporal Topham, a medical orderly, parachuted with his battalion onto a strongly defended area east of the Rhine. At about 1100 hours, while treating casualties sustained in the drop, a cry for help came from a wounded man in the open. Two medical orderlies from a field ambulance went out to this man in succession, but both were killed as they knelt beside the casualty.

Without hesitation and on his own initiative, Corporal Topham went forward through intense fire to replace the orderlies who had been killed before his eyes. As he worked on the wounded man he was himself shot through the nose. In spite of severe bleeding and intense pain, he never faltered in his task. Having completed immediate first aid, he carried the wounded man steadily and slowly back through continuous fire to the shelter of a wood.

During the next two hours Corporal Topham refused all offers of medical help for his own wound. He worked most devotedly throughout this period to bring in the wounded, showing complete disregard for the heavy and accurate enemy fire. It was only when all casualties had been cleared that he consented to his own wound being treated. His immediate evacuation was ordered, but he interceded so earnestly on his own behalf that he was eventually allowed to return to duty.

On his way back to his company he came across a carrier, which had received a direct hit. Enemy mortar bombs were still dropping around, the carrier itself was burning fiercely and its own mortar ammunition was exploding. An experienced officer on the spot had warned all not to approach the carrier. Corporal Topham, however, immediately went out alone in spite of the blasting ammunition and enemy fire, and rescued the three occupants of the carrier. He brought these men back across the open, and although one died almost immediately afterward, he arranged for the evacuation of the other two, who undoubtedly owe their lives to him.

This NCO showed sustained gallantry of the highest order. For six hours, most of the time in great pain, he performed a series of acts of outstanding bravery, and his magnificent and selfless courage inspired all those who witnessed it.[lxviii]

---

[i]From "The Great War, 1914–1919", *The Gallantry of Lance-Corporal Fisher of the 13th Canadian Battalion*, Copyright 1999–2008 by Joanna Legg & Graham Parker. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.greatwar.co.uk/westfront/ypsalient/secondypres/gravenstafel/fisher.htm.

[ii]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 173), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[iii]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 173), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[iv]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 173), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[v]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 324), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[vi]From *Bravest of the Brave: The Story of the Victoria Cross* (pgs. 104–106), by J. Glanfield, 2005, Gloucestershire, England: Sutton Publishing Limited, Copyright 2005 by John Glanfield.

[vii]From *Bravest of the Brave: The Story of the Victoria Cross* (pgs. 104–106), by J. Glanfield, 2005, Gloucestershire, England: Sutton Publishing Limited, Copyright 2005 by John Glanfield.

[viii]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 324), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[ix]From "Canadian War Museum", *Backgrounder: Francis Scrimger, V.C.*, Copyright 2005 by Canadian War Museum. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.civilization.ca/cwm/media/bg_scrimger_e.html.

[x]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *St. Julien Memorial*, Copyright 2008 by Government of Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=memorials/ww1mem/stjulien.

[xi]From "Canadian War Museum", *Backgrounder: Francis Scrimger, V.C.*, Copyright 2005 by Canadian War Museum. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.civilization.ca/cwm/media/bg_scrimger_e.html.

[xii]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 171), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[xiii]From "Chilliwack War Memorial, British Columbia", *World War One Roll of Honour: Private (Piper) James Cleland Richardson V.C.*, Copyright 2007 by Chilliwack Museum and Archives. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://Chilliwack.museum.bc.ca/WWI_R_names.html.

[xiv]From "Legion Magazine", *Valour on the Somme: Part 5 of 18*, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2004/09/valour-on-the-somme/.

[xv]From "Legion Magazine", *Valour on the Somme: Part 5 of 18*, Copyright 2004 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2004/09/valour-on-the-somme/.

[xvi]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 297), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[xvii]From "Legion Magazine", *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xviii]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xix]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xx]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 264), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[xxi]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxii]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxiii]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxiv]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 270), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[xxv]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxvi]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxvii]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxviii]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 272), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[xxix]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxx]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxxi]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxxii]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 269), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[xxxiii]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxxiv]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxxv]From “Legion Magazine”, *The Passchendaele Nine Plus One: Part 9 of 18*, Copyright 2005 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2005/05/the-passchendael-nine-plus-one/.

[xxxvi]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 266), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[xxxvii]From “Legion Magazine”, *Securing Victory: Part 13 of 18*, Copyright 2006 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2006/01/securing-victory/.

[xxxviii]From “Legion Magazine”, *Securing Victory: Part 13 of 18*, Copyright 2006 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2006/01/securing-victory/.

[xxxix]From “Legion Magazine”, *Securing Victory: Part 13 of 18*, Copyright 2006 by Canvet Publications Ltd. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.legionmagazine.com/en/index.php/2006/01/securing-victory/.

[xl]From *The V.C. and D.S.O. Book: The Victoria Cross 1856–1920* (p. 321), by O. Creagh & E. Humphries (Eds.), 1920, Paternoster House, Paternoster Row, England: The Standard Art Book Co. Ltd.

[xli]From *Symbol of Courage* (p. 411), by M. Arthur, 2004, London, England: Pan Books.

[xlii]From “Veterans Affairs Canada”, *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/osborn.

[xliii]From “Veterans Affairs Canada”, *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/foote.

[xliv]From *Symbol of Courage* (p. 430), by M. Arthur, 2004, London, England: Pan Books.

[xlv]From “Veterans Affairs Canada”, *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/foote.

[xlvi]From “Veterans Affairs Canada”, *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/merritt.

[xlvii]From *Symbol of Courage* (p. 430), by M. Arthur, 2004, London, England: Pan Books.

[xlviii]From “Veterans Affairs Canada”, *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/merritt.

[xlix]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/triquet.

[l]From *Symbol of Courage* (pgs. 456–457), by M. Arthur, 2004, London, England: Pan Books.

[li]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/triquet.

[lii]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/hoey.

[liii]From *Symbol of Courage* (p. 460), by M. Arthur, 2004, London, England: Pan Books.

[liv]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/hoey.

[lv]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/mahony.

[lvi]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/currie.

[lvii]From *Symbol of Courage* (p. 490), by M. Arthur, 2004, London, England: Pan Books.

[lviii]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–-1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/currie.

[lix]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/smith.

[lx]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/cosens.

[lxi]From *Symbol of Courage* (p. 507), by M. Arthur, 2004, London, England: Pan Books.

[lxii]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public

Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/cosens

[lxiii]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/tilston.

[lxiv]From *Symbol of Courage* (p. 507), by M. Arthur, 2004, London, England: Pan Books.

[lxv]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/tilston.

[lxvi]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/topham.

[lxvii]From *Symbol of Courage* (p. 512), by M. Arthur, 2004, London, England: Pan Books.

[lxviii]From "Veterans Affairs Canada", *For Valour: Commemorating the Sixteen Canadian Servicemen Awarded the Victoria Cross for Conspicuous Bravery During the Second World War 1939–1945*, Copyright 1996 by Public Works & Government Services Canada. Retrieved April 1, 2008, from http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/remembers/sub.cfm?source=history/secondwar/citations/topham.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (JOHN MCCRAE)*

John McCrae is the author of “In Flanders Fields”, the famous war poem which commemorates the dead of WW I. During the Battle of Ypres, McCrae, a doctor, wrote the poem describing the experiences he faced while tending to wounded soldiers in the trenches. The poem was first published in *Punch* magazine, December 8, 1915. Posthumously, the poem was published in 1918, as one of a collection of poems in the book, *In Flanders Fields and Other Poems*.

John McCrae was born in Guelph, Ont., on November 30, 1872. He received his education at the University of Toronto, and completed his fellowship in pathology at McGill University in Montreal, Que. Prior to the outbreak of the war, he worked at both the Alexandra and Royal Victoria hospitals in Montreal, Que. McCrae died January 28, 1918, of pneumonia while being the officer in charge of medicine at the Boulogne No. 3 General Hospital.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (VALOUR ROAD)*

WW I is also known as “The Great War,” because of its international scale; its massive mobilization of men, munitions and supplies and its huge impact on human life. Canadians fought and died in battles at Ypres, Mount Sorrel, Beaumont-Hamel, Courcelette, Vimy Ridge, Passchendaele and Amiens. More than 50 000 Canadians died in WW I.

Throughout WW I, Canadian soldiers earned 69 Victoria Crosses (VC) – awarded for the most conspicuous bravery, a daring or pre-eminent act of valour or self-sacrifice or extreme devotion to duty, in the presence of the enemy. Of those 69 men, three – Corporal Leo Clarke, Sergeant-Major Frederick William Hall and Lieutenant Robert Shankland – remarkably hailed from the same street in Winnipeg, Man. – Pine Street, which was later renamed Valour Road in their honour. The trio was nicknamed the “Pine Street Boys” and over an 18-month period from 1915–1917, their actions in battle resulted in each of them being awarded the Victoria Cross (VC). It is believed to be the only time that this military honour has been given to three men who lived on the same street.

Corporal Leo Clarke won his VC in the trenches during the Battle of the Somme. Clarke, despite being alone and under attack by 20 enemy soldiers, attacked the enemy emptying his revolver twice and then firing a German rifle he picked up from the ground. In the struggle that followed, a German officer bayoneted him in the knee before Clarke could shoot him. Wounded and bleeding, Clarke kept up the attack, and as enemy soldiers fled, Clarke followed, killing four more and taking a prisoner. Though he was ordered to hospital, Clarke returned to battle the next day. Leo Clarke died in action a month later.

Sergeant-Major Frederick William Hall was awarded the VC for giving his life to save a comrade at the Battle of Ypres. With his company pinned in the trenches by fierce enemy fire, Hall went out twice at night to rescue injured men. On the morning of February 21, 1915, men in the trenches heard groans of an injured soldier on the battlefield. Hall and two others volunteered to go after him, but as they went over the top of their trench they drew heavy fire. The two other men were injured, and all were forced back into their trench. After a few minutes, Hall went out alone in broad daylight, with enemy guns waiting for him. He crawled out and across the field under a hail of bullets. Reaching the fallen soldier, Hall managed to squirm himself under the wounded man and began to move him on his back towards his lines. However, when Hall raised his head to find his way back to the trench, he was struck with a bullet in the head and died instantly.

At the battle of Passchendaele, Lieutenant Robert Shankland led his men to a forward position which they held during a fierce counterattack by the Germans. Knowing that an accurate description of his company’s position was critical in the Allied battle plan, Shankland made his way alone through the battlefield to Battalion Headquarters, delivered the necessary information, and returned the way he came. Rejoining his men, Shankland carried on until the end of the battle. The citation of his VC commends his personal courage, gallantry and skill, and emphasizes the example he set for the men under his command. Of the three VC recipients from Valour Road, only Shankland survived the war.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (VIMY RIDGE)*

The WW I battle of Vimy Ridge is one of the greatest battles in Canadian history. On April 9, 1917, Canadian bravery and valour led to the tremendous victory for the entire Allied force and was considered the turning point in the war.

Vimy Ridge was a formidable stronghold to overcome as it was where the Germans' heavily fortified Hindenburg Line met with their main trench lines leading north from Hill 70 near Arras, France. The fortifications consisted of three layers of trenches, barbed wire and deep tunnels. Allied troops were offered little cover when attacking due to the natural slope of the hill. Both British and French forces had tried unsuccessfully to take the ridge throughout 1915 and 1916. In the spring of 1917 the Canadian Corps was given the task to break through the impenetrable German lines.

The Battle of Vimy Ridge, commanded by Sir Arthur William Currie, was to be the first time that all four Canadian divisions were to fight on the same battlefield. It was Currie who was determined to kept the Canadian divisions together rather than having them mixed in with various British units. The battle began in the early morning of April 9, with a heavy artillery bombardment, followed by the advance of 20 000 Canadians. Despite great numbers of casualties from heavy machine-gun fire, the advance continued and by April 12, the Canadians had taken Vimy Ridge. The Canadians, along with the British, captured more ground, prisoners and guns in the Battle of Vimy Ridge, than during any previous offensive of WW I. Canadian casualties numbered 10 602 with 3 598 of them being fatal. During this single campaign, four Canadians were awarded the VC and the entire Canadian contingent was commended for their bravery.

The victory at Vimy was a distinctly Canadian triumph which helped create a new and stronger sense of Canadian identity and pride. This victory, along with other Canadian military achievements during WW I, raised Canada's international reputation and helped earn a separate place at the peace conference which drew up the Treaty of Versailles, officially ending WW I.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (WARRANT OFFICER JOHN OSBORN)*

During WW II, Canadians did not just battle in the fields across Europe. They fought on land, in the air and on the seas in France, the Netherlands, North Africa and Hong Kong. When Japanese troops began to attack Hong Kong in 1941, the Canadian government sent two units – the Royal Rifles of Canada and the Winnipeg Grenadiers – to assist in the defense of the British colony.

During the morning of December 19, 1941, a company of the Winnipeg Grenadiers led by Warrant Officer John Osborn became divided during an attack on Mount Butler. The group led by Osborn, which was vastly outnumbered by the enemy, was able to capture the hill and hold it for over three hours until they were forced to withdraw. The Warrant Officer and a small group covered the retreat and when their turn came to fall back, Osborn single-handedly engaged the enemy, coming under heavy fire as he assisted his men to rejoin the company.

In the afternoon, the company was cut off from the battalion and completely surrounded by the enemy, who were able to approach to within grenade throwing distance of the slight depression which the company was holding. Several enemy grenades were thrown which Warrant Officer Osborn picked up and threw back. The enemy threw a grenade which landed in a position where it was impossible to pick it up and return it in time. Shouting a warning to his comrades this gallant Warrant Officer threw himself on the grenade which exploded, killing him instantly. His self-sacrifice undoubtedly saved the lives of many others. Warrant Officer Osborn for his act of bravery was posthumously awarded Hong Kong's only VC. At 42, he was the second oldest VC recipient in World War II.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (TOMMY PRINCE)*

Thomas George Prince was born October 25, 1915, in Petersfield, Man. He was one of 11 children born to Harry and Elizabeth Prince of the Brokenhead Band. Prince was accepted into the army in June 1940. He was initially employed as a field engineer and then with the Canadian Parachute Battalion. Prince was then chosen to train with the 1st Special Service Force, a specialized assault team. To the enemy they were known as the Devil's Brigade.

Sergeant Prince distinguished himself throughout the war. In 1944, while in Italy, Prince was tasked to spy on the Germans. He set up an observation post in an abandoned farmhouse and for days reported on activity in the German camp. When shelling severed his communication wire, Prince donned civilian clothing and, acting as a farmer, successfully repaired the break in the wire in full view of German soldiers. His actions resulted in the destruction of four enemy tanks that had been firing on the Allies. King George VI decorated Prince with both the Military Medal and the Silver Star, an American decoration for gallantry in action.

Following the war, Tommy Prince re-enlisted and served with the Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry through two tours of duty in Korea. For his service he was awarded the Korean, Canadian Volunteer Service and United Nations medals. After being wounded in the knee, he was honourably discharged on October 28, 1953.

Tommy Prince is Canada's most decorated Aboriginal war veteran. He dedicated himself to attaining increased educational and economic opportunities for Aboriginal people.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

BACKGROUND INFORMATION – *HISTORICA MINUTES (JUNO BEACH)*

After the mainland of Northwest Europe was lost to Germany in the summer of 1940, except for the large-scale raid on Dieppe in August of 1942, Allied forces did not return in strength until the invasion of Normandy on June 6, 1944. Now known in history as D-Day – Operation Overlord. The task was formidable, for the Germans had turned the coastline into a continuous fortress with guns, pillboxes, wire, mines and beach obstacles.

On June 6, 1944, British, American, Polish and Canadian forces poured across the English Channel under the cover of night and landed at Normandy to remove the German forces from France. Two armies carried out the operation. On the western half, extending from the base of the Cotentin Peninsula to a point northwest of Bayeux, the 1st United States Army attacked on the beaches “Utah” and “Omaha”. In a sector reaching eastward to the mouth of the River Orne, the 2nd British Army assaulted the beaches of “Gold”, “Juno” and “Sword”.

The Canadians, under Major-General R.F.L. Keller, were responsible for “Juno” in the centre of the British front. Their task was to establish a beachhead along the 8 km between Courseulles and St-Aubin-sur-Mer, push through the gap between Bayeux and Caen, then penetrate to Carpiquet airfield 18 km (11 miles) inland. It was hoped that by nightfall the two British divisions to their left and right flanks would have taken Caen and Bayeux and the Canadians would be across the road and railway linking the two towns.

By the end of the day, after facing fierce opposition, the 3rd Canadian Infantry Division was well established on its intermediate objectives, though short of the planned D-Day objectives. Progress was much the same on either Allied flank; it was a magnificent accomplishment. The strong Atlantic Wall had been breached and supplies and men were moving ashore on the day following D-Day to resume the advance. The Allies were back in Europe.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #1

THE ORDER OF MILITARY MERIT (OMM)

The Order of Military Merit was established in 1972 to provide a means of recognizing conspicuous merit and exceptional service by members of the CF, both Regular and Reserve. Her Majesty The Queen is the Sovereign of the Order, the Governor General is the Chancellor and the Chief of the Defence Staff is the Principle Commander. The motto of the Order is “OFFICIUM ANTE COMMODUM” which means “Service before self." There are three levels of membership in the Order of Military Merit: Member, Officer and Commander, the latter being the highest.

MEMBER **OFFICER** **COMMANDER**

“Directorate–Honours and Recognition”, Canadian Honours Chart. Retrieved April 10, 2008, from http://www.dnd.ca/dhh/honours_awards/chart/engraph/home_e.asp

Figure 11AK-1 Insignia of OMM

Members of the Order are appointed for exceptional service or performance of duty.	Officers of the Order are appointed for outstanding meritorious service while fulfilling duties of responsibility.	Commanders of the Order are appointed for outstanding meritorious service while fulfilling duties of great responsibility.

The badge of the order is a blue-enameled, straight-end cross pattee (four arms, narrow at the centre and expanding towards the ends). The badge is edged in gold (officer, commander) or silver (member). The maple leaf in the centre of the badge is red (commander), gold (officer), or silver (member). The circle is red with white lettering in gold (officer, commander) or silver (member), and is surmounted by a St. Edward’s Crown.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #2

MILITARY VALOUR DECORATIONS

MEDAL OF MILITARY VALOUR **STAR OF MILITARY VALOUR** **VICTORIA CROSS**

"Directorate–Honours and Recognition", Canadian Honours Chart. Retrieved April 10, 2008, from http://www.dnd.ca/dhh/honours_awards/chart/engraph/home_e.asp

Figure 11AL-1 Medals of Valour

The Medal of Military Valour (MMV) shall be awarded for an act of valour or devotion to duty in the presence of the enemy.	The Star of Military Valour (SMV) shall be awarded for distinguished and valiant service in the presence of the enemy.	The Victoria Cross (VC) shall be awarded for the most conspicuous bravery, a daring or pre-eminent act of valour or self-sacrifice or extreme devotion to duty, in the presence of the enemy.
The MMV consists of a gold medal showing a maple leaf surrounded by a wreath of laurel on its front and the Royal Cypher and Crown with the inscription "Pro Valore" on its back.	The SMV consists of a four-pointed gold star with a maple leaf in each of the angles and a gold maple leaf superimposed in the centre surrounded by a wreath of laurel. On the back is the Royal Cypher and Crown with the inscription "Pro Valore".	The VC consists of a bronze straight-armed cross pattee, 38 mm across with raised edges. In the middle of the cross, a lion guardant standing upon the Royal Crown, with the inscription "Pro Valore" below the crown. Engraved on the back is the date of the act.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #3

DECORATIONS FOR BRAVERY

The three decorations for bravery were created in 1972 to recognize people who have risked their lives to save or protect others. The three levels – the Medal of Bravery, the Star of Courage and the Cross of Valour – reflect the varying degrees of risk involved in any act of bravery. These decorations are awarded to civilians as well as to members of the CF. The Governor General personally presents the decorations in ceremonies held at Rideau Hall, Ottawa, Ont. or La Citadelle, Quebec City, Que. Nominations must be made within two years of the incident.

MEDAL OF BRAVERY

STAR OF COURAGE

CROSS OF VALOUR

"Directorate–Honours and Recognition", Canadian Honours Chart. Retrieved April 10, 2008, from http://www.dnd.ca/dhh/honours_awards/chart/engraph/home_e.asp

Figure 11AM-1 Decorations for Bravery

The Medal of Bravery is awarded only for acts of bravery in hazardous circumstances. All Canadian citizens, both civilian and military are eligible to receive the award.

The circular silver medal has a large maple leaf in the centre surrounded by a wreath of laurel. The Royal Cypher with the crown above it are on the reverse of the medal with the inscription "Bravery" and "Bravoure" along the edge.

The Star of Courage (SC) is awarded only for acts of conspicuous courage in circumstances of great peril. All Canadian citizens, both civilian and military are eligible to receive the award.

The medal is a silver star of four points with a maple leaf in each of the angles. In the centre, a gold maple leaf is surrounded by a gold laurel wreath. On the back is the Royal Cypher and Crown with the inscription "Courage" below.

The Cross of Valour (CV) is awarded for acts of conspicuous courage in circumstances of extreme peril. All Canadian citizens, both civilian and military are eligible to receive the award.

The medal is a gold cross of four equal limbs, enameled red and edged in gold. There is a gold maple leaf in the centre surrounded by a gold wreath of laurel. On the back is the Royal Cypher and Crown with the inscription "Valour Vaillance" below.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #4

MERITORIOUS SERVICE DECORATIONS

Meritorious service decorations honour either a single achievement or an activity over a specified period. Meritorious service decorations are separated into military and civilian divisions, with two levels in each category: a cross and a medal. The military division recognizes individuals for outstanding professionalism and for bringing honour to the CF. The Military Cross was created in 1984 with the Military Medal created in 1991.

MERITORIOUS SERVICE MEDAL

MERITORIOUS SERVICE CROSS

"Directorate–Honours and Recognition", Canadian Honours Chart. Retrieved April 10, 2008, from http://www.dnd.ca/dhh/honours_awards/chart/engraph/home_e.asp

Figure 11AN-1 Meritorious Service Decorations

The Meritorious Service Medal (MSM) recognizes a military deed or activity that has been performed in a highly professional manner or of a very high standard that brings benefit or honour to the CF.

The MSM is a silver medallion with a splayed armed Greek cross and maple leaf in its centre. Between the arms of the cross is a laurel wreath. The Royal Crown sits on top of the cross.

The Meritorious Service Cross (MSC) recognizes a military deed or activity that has been performed in an outstandingly professional manner, according to a rare high standard that brings considerable benefit or great honour to the CF.

The MSC consists of a silver splayed armed Greek cross with splayed arms and a maple leaf in the centre. Between the arms of the cross is a laurel wreath. The Royal Crown sits on top of the cross.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #5

CAMPAIGN MEDALS

Campaign medals have been awarded in their modern form since the middle of the 19th century and recognize participation in a particular campaign. A campaign medal is awarded only to those who serve inside a specified theatre of operation. Canadian campaign medals are only awarded for honourable service.

GULF AND KUWAIT MEDAL

SOMALIA MEDAL

"Directorate–Honours and Recognition", Canadian Honours Chart. Retrieved April 10, 2008, from http://www.dnd.ca/dhh/honours_awards/chart/engraph/home_e.asp

Figure 11AO-1 Campaign Medals

The Gulf and Kuwait Medal recognizes the service of persons deployed to or in direct support of the operations against Iraq during the Gulf war. The medal is awarded to persons who served a minimum of 30 cumulative days in theatre between August 2, 1990 and June 27, 1991, on operations to defend against aggression and to liberate Kuwait. Those who served for at least one day, in the theatre of operations, during the hostilities January 16, 1991 to March 3, 1991 are eligible for the Medal and bar.

The silver circular medal has the effigy of the Queen, circumscribed with the legend "Elizabeth II Dei Gratia Regina Canada" with "Canada" positioned at the bottom. The back, centred, "The Gulf, and Kuwait, 1990–1991, Le Golfe, et Kuwait" within a laurel wreath, with a maple leaf centred at the bottom.

The Somalia Medal recognizes the participation of CF members that have taken part in the coalition mission in Somalia to help stabilize the country from civil war, and to help deliver humanitarian aid. The medal is awarded for a minimum of 90 cumulative days of honourable service in the theatre of operations between November 16, 1992 and June 30, 1993, provided that this service has not been recognized by another medal.

The circular gold-plated bronze medal has three maple leaves, in line, overlapping in the centre, with "Canada" inscribed above and two sprigs of laurel leaves below. On the back is the Royal Cypher surrounded by the inscription "Somalia Somalie 1992–1993".

SERVICE MEDALS

Service medals have been awarded in their modern form since the middle of the 19th century and recognize participation in a particular campaign or operation. Service medals are awarded to those who serve in direct support of the operation from outside the theatre. Canadian service medals are only awarded for honourable service.

GENERAL CAMPAIGN SERVICE MEDAL

GENERAL SERVICE MEDAL

"Directorate–Honours and Recognition", Canadian Honours Chart. Retrieved April 10, 2008, from http://www.dnd.ca/dhh/honours_awards/chart/engraph/home_e.asp

Figure 11AO-2 Service Medals

The General Campaign Star (GCS) is awarded to members of the CF who deploy into a defined theatre of operations to take part in operations in the presence of an armed enemy. The star is always issued with a bar specifying the operations being recognized – Allied Force or International Security Assistance Force – and each bar has its own criteria.

The GCS is a gold-coloured four-pointed star representing the cardinal points of a compass with the tri-service emblem of the CF imposed on the front. The wreath represents honour, the maple leaves represent Canada, the anchor, crossed swords and eagle represent the three services, and the crown represents the Queen. The back includes the Royal Cypher and Crown along with three maple leaves on one stem.

The General Service Medal is awarded to CF members who deploy outside of Canada – but not necessarily into a theatre of operations – to provide direct support, on a full-time basis, to operations in the presence of an armed enemy. The medal is always issued with a bar identifying the operations being recognized and each bar has its own criteria.

The silver circular medal has the effigy of the Queen, surrounded by the inscriptions "Elizabeth II Dei Gratia Regina Canada" and "Canada". The back includes two crossed swords, an anchor and a flying eagle superimposed on each other, the whole surrounded by two branches of maple leaves which form the wreath and surmounted by the Royal Crown. The wreath represents honour, the maple leaves represent Canada, the anchor, crossed swords and eagle represent the three services, and the crown represents the Queen.

SERVICE MEDALS

SPECIAL SERVICE MEDAL

THE CANADIAN PEACEKEEPING SERVICE MEDAL

"Directorate–Honours and Recognition", Canadian Honours Chart. Retrieved April 10, 2008, from http://www.dnd.ca/dhh/honours_awards/chart/engraph/home_e.asp

Figure 11AO-3 Service Medals

The Special Service Medal (SSM) recognizes CF members who have performed a service under exceptional circumstances, in a clearly defined locality for a specified duration. The medal recognizes approved activities underway on June 11, 1984, or subsequently established. This medal is always issued with a bar that identifies the special service – Pakistan (1989–1990), Alert, Peace (November 1947–June 21, 2001), NATO, Humanitas (June 11, 1984–present) and Ranger (since 1947) – being recognized, each bar having its own criteria.

The medal is circular in form bearing a maple leaf surrounded by a laurel wreath on the front. The reverse contains the inscription "Special Service Special" with the Royal Cypher and Crown in the centre.

The Canadian Peacekeeping Service Medal (CPSM) is awarded for a minimum of 30 days of service in an approved UN or international peacekeeping mission since 1947. Peacekeeping missions that qualify for award of the CPSM will be carried out under the auspices of the UN, or with another international force, and the belligerents who agree to a peace-support deployment must also agree to participation by the CF. The types of missions included are support of preventive diplomacy, peacekeeping and post-conflict peace-building, and sanctions monitoring missions and monitoring no-fly zones.

In the centre of the CPSM is a image of three figures of unarmed observers. Above them flies a dove with the words "Peacekeeping" and "Service de la Paix" around the three figures. The back includes the Royal Cypher centred on a maple leaf, surrounded by two sprigs of laurel and the word "Canada".

SERVICE MEDALS

Service medals have been awarded in their modern form since the middle of the 19th century and recognize participation in a particular campaign or operation. Service medals are awarded to those who serve in direct support of the operation from outside the theatre. Canadian service medals are only awarded for honourable service.

SOUTH-WEST ASIA SERVICE MEDAL

CANADIAN FORCES DECORATION

"Directorate–Honours and Recognition", Canadian Honours Chart. Retrieved April 10, 2008, from http://www.dnd.ca/dhh/honours_awards/chart/engraph/home_e.asp

Figure 11AO-4 Service Medals

The South-West Asia Service Medal recognizes the participation of CF members deployed or in direct support of the operations against terrorism in South-West Asia. The medal is awarded to those employed in direct support, and a bar is added for those deployed into the theatre of operation.

The silver circular medal has the effigy of the Queen, with the legend "Elizabeth II Dei Gratia Regina Canada" and "Canada" positioned at the bottom. The back includes a representation of Hydra, a many-headed serpent of Greek mythology described as a multifarious evil not to be overcome by a single effort, symbolizing international terrorism. Each head is different, symbolizing the idea that evil is found in every part of the world and that its face is constantly changing. The Hydra is transfixed by a Canadian sword and over the design is the Latin phrase, "Adversus malum pugnamus" – "We are fighting evil".

The Canadian Forces Decoration (CD) is awarded to officers and non-commissioned members of the CF who have completed twelve years of service. The decoration is awarded to all ranks, who have a good record of conduct.

The CD is a gold plated decagonal (ten-sided, representing the ten provinces) medal which bears the effigy of Her Majesty the Queen wearing a wreath of laurel leaves in her hair and facing right, circumscribed with the legend " Elizabeth II Dei Gratia Regina–Canada". The back includes the CF tri-service emblem.

HONOURS AND AWARDS – LEARNING STATION #6

COMMEMORATIVE MEDALS

QUEEN'S GOLDEN JUBILEE

125th ANNIVERSARY OF THE CONFEDERATION OF CANADA

"Directorate–Honours and Recognition", Canadian Honours Chart. Retrieved April 10, 2008, from http://www.dnd.ca/dhh/honours_awards/chart/engraph/home_e.asp

Figure 11AP-1 Commemorative Medals

The Queen's Golden Jubilee medal commemorates the 50th anniversary of the accession of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth, the second to the throne.

The circular gold-plated bronze medal bears the effigy of the Queen wearing the King George IV State Diadem, circumscribed with the inscription "Queen of Canada", "Reine du Canada". The back includes the design of a maple leaf with "Canada" at the bottom and the years 1952 and 2002 on the left and right of the Royal Cypher and Crown.

The medal was awarded to those making significant contribution to their fellow citizens, their community, or to Canada. Persons deceased prior to January 1, 1992 were not eligible for consideration.

The circular medal consists of the Royal Cypher and Crown superimposed on a large single maple leaf, circumscribed with the legend "Confederation 1867–1992" at the bottom. The back includes the shield of arms of Canada encircled by the motto ribbon of the Order of Canada and a crowned lion holding a maple leaf.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #1

ORDER OF MILITARY MERIT

When was the Order of Military Merit established? _____

Why was the Order of Military Merit established? _____

_____

_____

What is the motto of the Order of Military Merit? _____

What are the three levels of membership in the Order of Military Merit? _____

_____

_____

Provide a general description of the badge of the Order of Military Merit. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #2

MILITARY VALOUR DECORATIONS

Match the military valour decoration with the context for which it is awarded.

		This decoration is awarded for the most conspicuous bravery, a daring or pre-eminent act of valour or self-sacrifice or extreme devotion to duty, in the presence of the enemy.
		This decoration shall be awarded for an act of valour or devotion to duty in the presence of the enemy.
		This decoration shall be awarded for distinguished and valiant service in the presence of the enemy.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #3

DECORATIONS FOR BRAVERY

When were the decorations for bravery created? _____

What are the three levels of decorations for bravery? _____

_____

_____

What inscription is inscribed on the back of each medal? _____

_____

_____

This medal is awarded only for acts of conspicuous courage on circumstances of great peril. _____

This medal is awarded only for acts of conspicuous courage in circumstances of extreme peril. _____

This medal is awarded only for acts of bravery in hazardous circumstances. _____

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #4

MERITORIOUS SERVICE DECORATIONS

What is honoured by meritorious service decorations? _____

_____

Meritorious service decorations are divided into civilian and military awards, with which two levels in each category? _____

_____

The military division recognizes CF members for what? _____

_____

This recognizes a military deed or activity that has been performed in a highly professional manner or of a very high standard that brings benefit or honour to the CF. _____

The Meritorious Service Cross recognizes what? _____

_____

_____

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #5

CAMPAIGN AND SERVICE MEDALS

What is the difference between Campaign and Service Medals? _____

_____

Match the medal with the context for which it is awarded or its description.

1.		This is awarded to members of the CF who are deployed into a defined theatre of operations to take part in operations in the presence of an armed enemy. It is always issued with a bar specifying the operations being recognized—Allied Force or International Security Assistance Force—and each bar has its own criteria.
2.	Somalia Medal	This medal is a gold-plated decagonal (ten-sided, representing the ten provinces) medal which bears the effigy of Her Majesty the Queen wearing a wreath of laurel leaves in her hair and facing right, circumscribed with the legend “Elizabeth II Dei Gratia Regina–Canada”. The back includes the CF tri-service emblem.
3.		This medal recognizes CF members who have performed a service under exceptional circumstances, in a clearly defined locality for a specified duration. The medal recognizes approved activities underway on June 11, 1984, or subsequently established. This medal is always issued with a bar that identifies the special service—Pakistan (1989–1990), Alert, Peace (November 1947–June 21, 2001), NATO, Humanitas (June 11, 1984–present) and Ranger (since 1947)—being recognized, each bar having its own criteria.
4.	General Service Medal	In the centre of this medal is an image of three figures of unarmed observers. Above them flies a dove with the words “Peacekeeping” and “Service de la Paix” around the three figures. The back includes the Royal Cypher centered on a maple leaf, surrounded by two sprigs of laurel and the word “Canada”.

5.		The silver circular medal has the effigy of the Queen, with the legend “Elizabeth II Dei Gratia Regina Canada” and “Canada” positioned at the bottom. The back includes a representation of Hydra, a many-headed serpent of Greek mythology described as a multifarious evil not to be overcome by a single effort, symbolizing international terrorism. Each head is different, symbolizing the idea that evil is found in every part of the world and that its face is constantly changing. The Hydra is transfixed by a Canadian sword and over the design is the Latin phrase, “Adversus malum pugnamus”—”We are fighting evil”.
6.	Canadian Peacekeeping Service Medal	The circular gold-plated bronze medal has three maple leaves, in line, overlapping in the centre, with “Canada” inscribed above and two sprigs of laurel leaves below. On the back is the Royal Cypher surrounded by the inscription “Somalia Somalie 1992–1993”.
7.		The silver circular medal has the effigy of the Queen, surrounded by the inscriptions “Elizabeth II Dei Gratia Regina Canada” and “Canada”. The back includes two crossed swords, an anchor and a flying eagle superimposed on each other, the whole surrounded by two branches of maple leaves which form the wreath and surmounted by the Royal Crown. The wreath represents honour, the maple leaves represent Canada, the anchor, crossed swords and eagle represent the three services, and the crown represents the Queen.
8.	South-West Asia Service Medal	This medal recognizes the persons deployed to or in direct support of the operations against Iraq during the Gulf war. The medal is awarded to persons who served a minimum of 30 cumulative days in theatre between August 2, 1990 and June 27, 1991, on operations to defend against aggression and to liberate Kuwait. Those who served for at least one day, in the theatre of operations, during the hostilities January 16, 1991 to March 3, 1991, are eligible for the medal and bar.

HONOURS AND AWARDS ACTIVITY SHEET – STATION #6

COMMEMORATIVE MEDALS

Identify the commemorative medal and provide a written description of the medal.

Context for Which Medal is Awarded	Medal	Description of Medal
The medal was awarded to those making significant contribution to their fellow citizens, their community, or to Canada. Persons deceased prior to January 1, 1992, were not eligible for consideration.		
This medal commemorates the 50th anniversary of the accession of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth the second to the throne.		

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HONOURS AND AWARDS ANSWER KEY

STATION #1 – ORDER OF MILITARY MERIT

When was the Order of Military Merit established?	**1972**
Why was the Order of Military Merit established?	**Means of recognizing conspicuous merit and exceptional service by members of the CF, both Regular and Reserve.**
What is the motto of the Order of Military Merit?	**"OFFICIUM ANTE COMMODUM"**
What are the three levels of membership in the Order of Military Merit?	**Member, Officer, Commander**
Provide a general description of the badge of the Order of Military Merit.	**The badge of the order is a blue-enameled, straight-end cross pattee (four arms, narrow at the centre and expanding towards the ends). The badge is edged in gold (officer, commander) or silver (member). The maple leaf in the centre of the badge is red (commander), gold (officer), or silver (member). The circle is red with white lettering in gold (officer, commander) or silver (member), and is surmounted by a St. Edward's Crown.**

STATION #2 – MILITARY VALOUR DECORATIONS

Match the military valour decoration with the context for which it is awarded.

		This decoration is awarded for the most conspicuous bravery, a daring or pre-eminent act of valour or self-sacrifice or extreme devotion to duty, in the presence of the enemy.
		This decoration shall be awarded for an act of valour or devotion to duty in the presence of the enemy.
		This decoration shall be awarded for distinguished and valiant service in the presence of the enemy.

STATION #3 – DECORATIONS FOR BRAVERY

When were the decorations for bravery created?	**1972**
What are the three levels of decorations for bravery?	**Medal of Bravery** **Star of Courage** **Cross of Valour**
What inscription is inscribed on the back of each medal?	**"Bravery Bravaoure"** **"Courage"** **"Valour Vaillance"**
This medal is awarded only for acts of conspicuous courage in circumstances of great peril.	**Star of Courage**
This medal is awarded only for acts of conspicuous courage in circumstances of extreme peril.	**Cross of Valour**
This medal is awarded only for acts of bravery in hazardous circumstances.	**Medal of Bravery**

STATION #4 – MERITORIOUS SERVICE DECORATIONS

What is honoured by meritorious service decorations?	**Meritorious service decorations honour either a single achievement or an activity over a specified period.**
Meritorious service decorations are divided into civilian and military awards, with which two levels in each category?	**Medal, and** **Cross**
The military division recognizes CF members for what?	**The military division recognizes individuals for outstanding professionalism and for bringing honour to the CF.**
This recognizes a military deed or activity that has been performed in a highly professional manner or of a very high standard that brings benefit or honour to the CF.	**Meritorious Service Medal**
The Meritorious Service Cross recognizes what?	**The Meritorious Service Cross (MSC) recognizes a military deed or activity that has been performed in an outstandingly professional manner, according to a rare high standard that brings considerable benefit or great honour to the CF.**

STATION #5 – CAMPAIGN AND SERVICE MEDALS

What is the difference between Campaign and Service Medals?

A campaign medal is awarded only to those who serve inside a specified theatre of operation.

Service medals are awarded to those who serve in direct support of the operation from outside the theatre.

Match the medal with the context for which it is awarded or its description.

1.		**3.** This is awarded to members of the CF who are deployed into a defined theatre of operations to take part in operations in the presence of an armed enemy. It is always issued with a bar specifying the operations being recognized—Allied Force or International Security Assistance Force—and each bar has its own criteria.
2.	Somalia Medal	**7.** This medal is a gold-plated decagonal (ten-sided, representing the ten provinces) medal which bears the effigy of Her Majesty the Queen wearing a wreath of laurel leaves in her hair and facing right, circumscribed with the legend “Elizabeth II Dei Gratia Regina–Canada”. The back includes the CF tri-service emblem.
3.		**5.** This medal recognizes CF members who have performed a service under exceptional circumstances, in a clearly defined locality for a specified duration. The medal recognizes approved activities underway on June 11, 1984, or subsequently established. This medal is always issued with a bar that identifies the special service—Pakistan (1989–1990), Alert, Peace (November 1947–June 21, 2001), NATO, Humanitas (June 11, 1984–present) and Ranger (since 1947)—being recognized, each bar having its own criteria.
4.	General Service Medal	**6.** In the centre of this medal is an image of three figures of unarmed observers. Above them flies a dove with the words “Peacekeeping” and “Service de la Paix” around the three figures. The back includes the Royal Cypher centered on a maple leaf, surrounded by two sprigs of laurel and the word “Canada”.

5.		**8.**	The silver circular medal has the effigy of the Queen, with the legend "Elizabeth II Dei Gratia Regina Canada" and "Canada" positioned at the bottom. The back includes a representation of Hydra, a many-headed serpent of Greek mythology described as a multifarious evil not to be overcome by a single effort, symbolizing international terrorism. Each head is different, symbolizing the idea that evil is found in every part of the world and that its face is constantly changing. The Hydra is transfixed by a Canadian sword and over the design is the Latin phrase, "Adversus malum pugnamus"—"We are fighting evil".
6.	Canadian Peacekeeping Service Medal	**2.**	The circular gold-plated bronze medal has three maple leaves, in line, overlapping in the centre, with "Canada" inscribed above and two sprigs of laurel leaves below. On the back is the Royal Cypher surrounded by the inscription "Somalia Somalie 1992–1993".
7.		**4.**	The silver circular medal has the effigy of the Queen, surrounded by the inscriptions "Elizabeth II Dei Gratia Regina Canada" and "Canada". The back includes two crossed swords, an anchor and a flying eagle superimposed on each other, the whole surrounded by two branches of maple leaves which form the wreath and surmounted by the Royal Crown. The wreath represents honour, the maple leaves represent Canada, the anchor, crossed swords and eagle represent the three services, and the crown represents the Queen.
8.	South-West Asia Service Medal	**1.**	This medal recognizes the persons deployed to or in direct support of the operations against Iraq during the Gulf war. The medal is awarded to persons who served a minimum of 30 cumulative days in theatre between August 2, 1990 and June 27, 1991, on operations to defend against aggression and to liberate Kuwait. Those who served for at least one day, in the theatre of operations, during the hostilities January 16, 1991 to March 3, 1991, are eligible for the medal and bar.

STATION #6 – COMMEMORATIVE MEDALS

Identify the commemorative medal and provide a written description of the medal.

Context for Which Medal is Awarded	Medal	Description of Medal
The medal was awarded to those making significant contribution to their fellow citizens, their community, or to Canada. Persons deceased prior to January 1, 1992, were not eligible for consideration.	**125th Anniversary of the Confederation of Canada**	**The circular medal consists of the Royal Cypher and Crown superimposed on a large single maple leaf, circumscribed with the legend "Confederation 1867–1992" at the bottom. The back includes the shield of arms of Canada encircled by the motto ribbon of the Order of Canada and a crowned lion holding a maple leaf.**
This medal commemorates the 50th anniversary of the accession of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth the second to the throne.	**Queen's Golden Jubilee**	**The circular gold-plated bronze medal bears the effigy of the Queen wearing the King George IV State Diadem, circumscribed with the inscription "Queen of Canada", "Reine du Canada". The back includes the design of a maple leaf with "Canada" at the bottom and the years 1952 and 2002 on the left and right of the Royal Cypher and Crown.**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 12

PO 321 – PERFORM THE DUTIES OF A TEAM LEADER ON A WEEKEND BIVOUAC EXERCISE

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 1

EO M321.01 – PERFORM THE DUTIES OF A TEAM LEADER IN THE FIELD

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for this lesson to introduce the cadets to the duties of a team leader in the field.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to perform the duties of a team leader in the field during a weekend bivouac field training exercise (FTX).

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to learn that being a team leader requires them to provide specific guidance to junior cadets and pass on the knowledge and skills experienced over their participation in the Cadet Program. Recognizing what a junior cadet finds challenging, defines the true meaning of a team leader who supervises their subordinates and identifies problems, offering guidance for a solution.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss the Duties of a Team Leader During a Weekend Bivouac FTX**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

As team leaders, Silver Star cadets are now expected to perform leadership roles, supervise, guide and provide assistance to junior cadets.

During this instruction, impress upon the cadets that their role as team leaders is not only to command but to assist, supervise, provide guidance and work together to aid training.

DUTIES OF A TEAM LEADER

Supervising

As team leaders, Silver Star cadets will be working with peers during field training activities. Their role will be to work as a team to supervise junior cadets during daily routine activities. To successfully supervise, they will have to share responsibility and aim toward accomplishing particular goals and outcomes.

At the beginning of an FTX, a group will typically require a lot of additional direction from the team leader as well as constant guidance and assistance. Team leaders will have to impart their knowledge and experiences to their subordinates to guide them through their challenges. As training progresses, the amount of supervision they provide can be scaled back. Through the guidance of the team leader, junior cadets will begin to understand what is required of them during an FTX. Daily routine becomes instinctive reducing the requirement for constant guidance and assistance.

Scenario: A new group of Green Star cadets are participating in their first FTX. They arrive at the bivouac site and are issued tents. Some senior cadets take their tents and locate the ideal tent site; perfect shelter, excellent view and situated with easy access to the rest of the site.

Upon returning to the group and their peers, they notice the cadets are still experiencing difficulty erecting their tents. There are few staff to help the cadets experiencing trouble, and the tents are finally erected well past the scheduled timing.

By looking after themselves first and neglecting their duties, the senior cadets failed to help their subordinates when the requirement to brief and help the junior cadets on the proper set-up of their tents was obvious. While the cadets work on their tents, senior cadets should be monitoring and assisting subordinates to speed up the task and finish on time with properly erected tents.

Note: By providing guidance to the subordinates before and during the set-up of the tents, subordinates are able to learn routine procedures on erecting their tents effectively the first time, therefore requiring less guidance and supervision the next time. It is important to meet the needs of junior cadets to prepare them for future challenges.

Team leaders should discuss and plan what actions they will take to encourage learning among cadets during an FTX. Junior cadets will face many challenges during daily routine activities and an agreed upon and unified approach to tasks will make these challenges easier. The following daily routine activities have to be supervised:

- meals,

- lights out and reveille,
- free time,
- personal hygiene routine,
- equipment use, and
- equipment maintenance.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. Who supervises junior cadets?

Q2. Is supervision an individual task?

Q3. What activities of daily routine have to be supervised?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

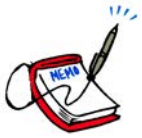
A1. The entire group of team leaders.

A2. No. Supervision of cadets should be planned and completed as a team.

A3. The activities of daily routine that have to be supervised are meals, lights out and reveille, free time, personal hygiene routine, equipment use, and equipment maintenance.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss Supervising the Preparation of Meals**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture



Team leaders will be responsible to oversee the preparation of meals. It is common for junior cadets to experience confusion and disorganization among the group. Assigning tasks and organizing a routine will help reduce confusion during meal preparation. Discuss types of tasks team leaders can assign when organizing the preparation of meals. Have the team leaders identify:

- what concerns they may have if they were supervising junior cadets preparing a meal;
- some of the difficulties junior cadets may face when they prepare a meal; and
- how they would, as a team establish a routine for the junior cadets during meal preparation.

The goal is to have the team leaders realize how they can help as a team and make preparation of meals safe and routine.

During meal preparation team leaders will be required to provide close supervision, and make and monitor a routine with specific tasks to coordinate the preparation of meals. The various aspects of meal preparation and the role of the team leader includes:

Lighting Stoves. Red Star cadets may be assigned to light stoves. A stove should be monitored at all times by one person. Team leaders will supervise the fuelling and approve the location for use. When lighting the stove, watch for improper lighting procedures and flare ups. Provide guidance when necessary.

Boiling Water. Assign cadets to collect water for boiling. Cadets should have a partner when going near a natural water source. Boiling water is used for drinking and heating IMPs. When boiling water, determine the purpose and adjust the water level per pot. Boiling water requires fuel – water that is boiled but unused wastes fuel.

Field Stripping (IMPs). Red Star cadets learned how to field strip IMPs. However, there will be occasions when cadets missed being briefed on how to field strip an IMP. Team leaders should gather cadets in a group and identify the appropriate method to field strip an IMP before consumption.

Preparing Food. Meal hours and the preparation of food can be simplified through planning. Team leaders shall assign personnel to specific tasks such as, cook, water gatherer, stove lighter and food distributor. The idea is to make food preparation as organized as possible.

Coordinating Clean-Up of Garbage. Follow the “Leave No Trace” principles any time cadets use a site. It is our responsibility to try to leave the site clean with no trace of our presence. Be proactive, identify garbage points for cadets to dispose refuse during meals. Organize a garbage sweep after every meal.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What tasks could be assigned when establishing a routine for meal preparation?

Q2. When lighting stoves, what will a team leader do?

Q3. What should be conducted after a meal has been consumed?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The components of meal preparation team leaders will supervise are:

- lighting stoves;
- boiling water;
- field stripping IMPs;
- preparing food; and
- coordinating clean-up of garbage.

A2. The team leader will approve the location for use, supervise fuelling and watch for improper lighting procedures.

A3. A garbage sweep should be conducted after a meal.

Teaching Point 3 **Discuss How a Team Leader Maintains the Bivouac Site**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Bivouac sites become very busy and it takes leadership and supervision from all personnel to ensure the routine runs smoothly. Remind team leaders how they must step forward and be proactive, planning and assigning tasks to establish a routine for the bivouac site.

Bivouac sites present specific challenges to a team leader. While personnel are using resources and creating waste around the site, team leaders have to constantly monitor the site. Team leaders will maintain the bivouac site by:

Completing Routine Shelter Inspections. Once shelters have been erected and cadets continue the daily routine, team leaders will have to inspect shelters. Shelters may appear to be erected properly. However, an inspection may reveal problems. Problems could range from strings not attached and tents not securely pegged down, to rips or holes in a tent. Identifying and correcting these problems will avoid bigger problems when they are least desired (at night with no light).

Tracking and Storing Equipment. The daily use of a bivouac site depends on the supplies and equipment the unit has brought to the site. Team leaders will be responsible to track the equipment and stores. To track equipment and stores, make a record of the individuals who are in possession of the supplies. Returned equipment will be entered as returned. Review the record daily to identify if any items have gone missing. Notify supervisors if equipment is identified as missing.

Replenishing Water Sources. Bivouac sites will either have a natural water source nearby or have a storage reservoir for personnel to use. Natural sources will always be plentiful and will not require replenishing however natural sources should be regularly monitored for contamination. Contamination can come in many forms however most notably are human waste or natural signs such as changes in water colour, dead fish or animals.

Bivouac sites that use a storage vessel for water, must have the water level monitored. If consumption is high, it will be necessary to schedule regular water refill runs. Restricting consumption to conserve water should be avoided unless in an emergency situation that requires water rationing.

Emptying Garbage Points. Personnel occupying a bivouac site use materials, consume resources and food rapidly. The waste generated from personnel is disposed of in designated refuse locations. Team leaders must regularly monitor designated refuse locations and empty the receptacles when they are full and replenish the collection points for further use.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. How does a team leader maintain a bivouac site?

Q2. How should team leaders track equipment in a bivouac site?

Q3. Why should a team leader conduct routine shelter inspections?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. A team leader maintains a bivouac site by completing routine shelter inspections, tracking and storing equipment and replenishing water sources.

A2. A team leader can track equipment in a bivouac site by recording issued equipment and reviewing logs of the present equipment status.

A3. A team leader should conduct routine shelter inspections to look for problems with the set-up or for damage to tents.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. What does being a team leader mean when you have to supervise cadets?

Q2. New cadets participating on a weekend FTX may experience difficulties with daily routine. What areas of daily routine would you expect cadets to experience the most difficulty? What can you as a team leader do to help the new cadets?

Q3. When meals are being prepared, what should team leaders do to organize and ensure the meal runs smoothly?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Being a team leader means that I will supervise cadets junior to me by working as a team with peers, providing guidance and knowledge to help junior cadets successfully complete challenges they are presented.

A2. Answers will vary.

A3. Team leaders should assign particular roles to cadets to ensure the meal preparation is organized.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Cadets who find themselves in a team leader role may experience power of position. This position of authority may lead them to believe they are not required to assist with certain tasks. It is exactly the opposite as they are encouraged to take this role as a position of experience to provide guidance and assistance to junior cadets with the challenges they face. Supervision is not only watching out for problems or concerns of danger but providing knowledge and demonstration skills to others who can learn from this and successfully face the challenges presented to them.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

The cadet shall participate in the activity and where possible perform the duties of a team leader.

The team leader(s) will be debriefed on their performance as part of PO 303 (Perform the Role of a Team Leader, Chapter 3).

REFERENCES

N/A.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 2

EO M321.02 – CONSTRUCT COMPONENTS OF A BIVOUAC SITE

Total Time: 90 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Photocopy Annex A for each cadet.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 to orient the cadets to the construction of a bivouac site.

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TPs 2 and 3 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate constructing components of a bivouac site while providing an opportunity for the cadet to practice the skill under supervision.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have constructed the components of a bivouac site.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to know as a team leader how to construct components of a bivouac site because on a weekend bivouac FTX, team leaders will be given small leadership roles to construct specific components of a bivouac site.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss the Components of a Bivouac Site**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Hand out with the sample bivouac site diagram and identify each feature as it is discussed. Cadets should already know components however may need some review.

COMPONENTS OF A BIVOUAC FEATURES

There are a variety of components which make up a bivouac site. Each component is characterized by its features, required building materials and location requirements.

Bivouac site components are listed below with a short description of the component followed by a list of required building materials and location requirements.

Headquarters (HQ). This feature acts as the central hub of the bivouac site. Most of the administration is conducted here. The HQ is the location of the Officer in Charge (OIC) and supporting staff. Communications and safety equipment may be located here as well.

The HQ can be a designated location or an actual shelter. Commonly the HQ is constructed with modular tentage. The size of the tent can range from one section to many sections depending on the field training exercise (FTX) requirements.

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• complete section of modular tentage including front and rear panels • grounding stakes • tables • chairs/benches • duty officer station • duty officer cot and sleeping area	• centrally located • flat ground • easily accessible

Supply. The supply is the point where all equipment not in use is held. This location has a designated Quartermaster (senior cadet, supply officer, etc). This feature is often situated close to the HQ or is located within the HQ. It is considered a secure location and is out of bounds to all except designated personnel.

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• complete section of modular tentage including front and rear panels • grounding stakes • table	• close to the HQ • flat ground

• chair(s)	

First Aid Point. The first aid point is always placed at the centre of the bivouac site. Depending on the size of the bivouac site it may be reasonable to set up many points to quickly provide access to first aid equipment.

A primary first aid station may be set up to deal with more serious injuries. This location can be inside erected modular tentage and may contain a field first aid kit, spinal board, neck brace, stretcher, wool blankets and a cot.

Materials that make up a first aid point are:

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• stretcher • emergency first aid kit • fire blanket x 2 • spinal board • neck brace • table • chairs	• centre of bivouac site

Fire Point. This feature is used to combat any fires that arise. The fire point, like the first aid point, is a first response point and must be centralized and accessible in an emergency. Fire points should be set up near the sleeping areas, cooking areas, and Petroleum, Oils and Liquids (POL) point. If the bivouac site is large and spread out, additional fire points shall be set up.

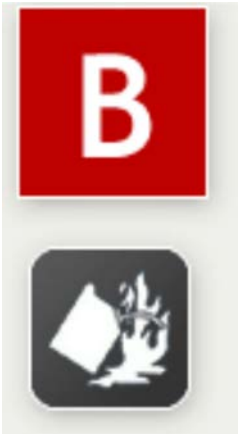
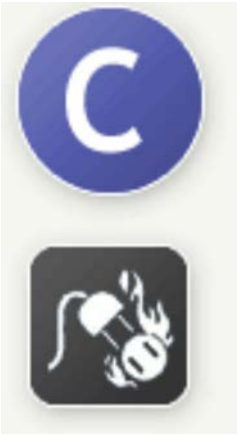
The fire point should contain Class A fire extinguishers, with the exception of the POL fire point where a Class B fire extinguisher should be available. Materials that make up a fire point are:

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• fire broom • shovel • 13.7 L (3 gallon) bucket filled with sand • fire extinguisher • fire point beacon • fire siren	• centralized and easily accessible • more than one may be required

It is not uncommon to be using areas that require a set amount of fire points with specific fire equipment. Be sure to check with the authority of the property being used.

There may be specific guidelines or regulations that must be followed with regards to fire safety equipment. These regulations are very common on Canadian Forces Bases.

Fire extinguishers labelled to the class of fire they can extinguish. The types of extinguishers are:

			
Class A, Ordinary Combustibles: • trash • wood • paper	Class B, Flammable Liquids: • oils • grease • tar • gasoline • paint thinners	Class C, Electricity: • live electrical equipment	Class D, Combustible Metals: • magnesium • titanium

POL Point. The POL point is a designated area for the storage of fuels, flammable and dangerous liquids. This area is to be clearly marked (white mine tape works well). A drip pan must be present to catch any spills during refuelling. Materials that make up a POL point are:

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• mine tape • drip pan • marker tape • spill kit • identifying beacon	• 100 m from bivouac site • flat ground • clear and open area • no overhanging branches • minimum 200 m from natural water source

In/Out Route for a Safety Vehicle. The feature is used to control vehicle traffic. It assists in keeping the site safe, and prevents undue wear and tear on the environment. An in/out route sign is all that is required for the materials for this feature.

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• signage	• route should not travel through active areas

Parking Area. This area is for parking exercise support vehicles and should be clearly identified. The parking area will be equipped with drip pans that are placed under the engine of every vehicle.

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• drip pans • mine tape • parking sign	• clear area • room for additional vehicles to park • room to turn a vehicle around

Form-Up Point. This point is a designated large area where personnel will gather when called to muster or during an emergency. Often times it is used for mass briefings. There are no materials required for this area, however it is a place that is verbally identified to the group during the safety briefing.

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• N/A	• sheltered/unsheltered clear open area

Water Point. This location is for the storage and drawing of drinking water. It is often placed in a centralized location. This can also be a natural water source. There are no materials required for this area. It is a place that is verbally identified to the group during the safety briefing.

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• water jerry cans	• centralized area • easily accessible if natural source is used

Ablutions Area. This area is the designated washroom. Bivouac sites will have portable chemical toilets or designated facilities to use. This area will be located downwind at least 60 m (200 feet) away from the sleeping, eating and water areas. There are no materials required for this area, however it is a place that is verbally identified to the entire group upon arriving at the bivouac site.

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• portable chemical toilets or designated facilities	• downwind at least 60 m (200 feet) away from sleeping, eating and water areas.

Cooking Area. This area is designated for the preparation of food. The best location is a durable surface such as a flat rock or sandy area. The cooking area should be located no more than 10 m away from the eating area to prevent people from milling around hot stoves and boiling water. This area has no specific required materials to make a cooking site however it is verbally identified to the entire group upon arriving at the bivouac site.

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• N/A	• durable surface (flat rock or sandy area) • open area, no significant overhanging trees or branches • close to the eating area

Eating Area. This is a central point for all foods to be consumed. This will assist in the control of waste and garbage that is a by-product of food consumption, especially in areas with high animal activity. There are no materials required for this area, however it is verbally identified to the group upon arriving at the bivouac site.

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• N/A	• sheltered area

Garbage Point. This is the central point for the collection and storage of garbage. It is located away from the main bivouac site and is animal proof (garbage is stored in garbage bins, tree hangs or vehicles). Materials and equipment that make up the garbage point are:

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• garbage cans • dumpster • garbage hang	• 100 m (328 feet) away from the bivouac site • animal proof

Sleeping Areas. The sleeping areas should be placed upwind of the cooking area, on flat ground. The areas for sleeping will be divided into male and female lines and spread out. Female and male markers can be placed to identify tent location. There are no specific materials required for this area. Sleeping areas are verbally identified to the group upon arriving at the bivouac site.

Required Building Materials	Location Requirements
• female and male zone identification markers	• flat ground • clear of major debris • female and male separation

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are five components of the bivouac site?

Q2. Where should a first aid point be set up?

Q3. What are the location requirements for a POL point?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Any of the following five components will suffice:

- headquarters,
- supply,
- first aid point,
- fire point,
- POL point,
- in/out route for a safety vehicle,
- parking area,
- form-up point,

- water point,
- ablutions area,
- cooking area,
- eating area,
- garbage point, and
- sleeping areas (male and female).

A2. The first aid point is always placed at the centre of the bivouac site.

A3. Location requirements for a POL point are:

- 100 m from bivouac site,
- on a flat surface,
- in a clear and open area,
- no overhanging branches, and
- 200 m from natural water source.

Teaching Point 2 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadets Establish Components of a Bivouac Site**

Time: 15 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

Cadets will be expected to establish specific components of a bivouac site in this lesson.

Explanations and demonstrations may be limited as most cadets will have a working knowledge of each component through their previous experiences on FTXs and from the descriptions in TP1.

Explain and demonstrate where necessary how to establish a component of a bivouac site.

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets establish and mark components of a bivouac site.

RESOURCES

- Sample bivouac site diagram,
- Mine tape,
- White bristol board,
- Markers,
- Twine, and
- Pocket knife (one per group).

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

Cadets will be responsible to lay out the components of a bivouac site.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into groups of no more than five.
2. Assign each group an equal number of bivouac components to establish from the following list:
    a. headquarters,
    b. supply,
    c. first aid point,
    d. fire point,
    e. POL point,
    f. in/out route for a safety vehicle,
    g. parking area,
    h. form-up point,
    i. water point,
    j. ablutions area,
    k. cooking area,
    l. eating area,
    m. garbage point, and
    n. sleeping areas (male and female).
3. To establish a component of bivouac site, have the cadets label each point using the bristol board and markers.
4. Give the groups a tour of the identified locations.
5. Five minutes will be used for a group tour of the identified locations.
6. Debrief the group about each component.

SAFETY

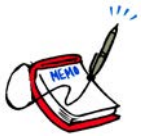
Cadets will be exploring the area that is expected to be the bivouac site. Set boundaries for the cadets to use as the bivouac site.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 3 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadets Construct Components of a Bivouac Site**

Time: 60 min Method: Demonstration and Performance



Cadets will be expected to construct specific components of a bivouac site in this lesson.

Most cadets will have a working knowledge of each component through their previous experiences on FTXs.

Explain and demonstrate how to construct each component where necessary.

The set-up of a modular section may be the most difficult task to the cadets.

Take 20 minutes and demonstrate how to set up a modular section.

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets construct specific components of a bivouac site.

RESOURCES

Resources for the following bivouac site components are listed in TP1:

- headquarters,
- supply,
- first aid point,
- fire point, and
- POL point.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

Cadets will be required to physically construct the following components:

- headquarters,
- supply,
- first aid point,
- fire point, and
- POL point.

In the last activity, each component should have been previously assigned a position within the bivouac site. Cadets will position their component at its designated location.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into equal groups of no more than five.
2. Give a 20 minute demonstration on how to set up a section of modular tent.

3. Assign each group one component to construct.
4. Give each group 30 minutes to construct their component.
5. Ten minutes will be used for a group tour of the constructed compnents.
6. Debrief the group about each component.

SAFETY

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets participation in constructing components of a bivouac site will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Team leaders who have been assigned to construct components of a bivouac site will be expected to have knowledge of a bivouac site layout and its components. Practicing how to situate the appropriate bivouac site component will prepare team leaders to lead a group of junior cadets in a similar task.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Additional instructors may be required to assist the construction of each bivouac component in TP 3.

The cadet shall participate in the activity and where possible perform the duties of a team leader.

The team leader(s) will be debriefed on their performance where applicable as part of PO 303 (Perform the Role of a Team Leader, Chapter 3).

REFERENCES

A2-036 A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001 Director Cadets 3. (2000). *Royal Canadian Army Cadet Reference Book*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 3

EO C321.01 – IDENTIFY METHODS OF WASTE DISPOSAL IN THE FIELD

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Make slides or handouts of Figures 12-3-6 to 12-3-8.

Choose an area in which each pair of cadets can find alternative sources of toilet paper.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 1 and 2 as it allows the instructor to present background information about field hygiene and environmentally conscious waste disposal.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 3 as it is an interactive way to introduce the cadets to natural materials in the field that can be used in place of toilet paper.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have identifed methods of waste disposal in the field.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to understand how to safely dispose of waste in the field as wilderness areas are increasingly more populated and traditional waste disposal methods are being regarded as detrimental to the environment.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss Field Hygiene**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

By emphasizing these points, the cadets will understand the importance of individual hygiene in the field. Human waste is the most frequent conveyor of intestinal diseases.

PRACTICING THE BASIC RULES OF HYGIENE

Change Clothes Regularly

It is important to keep all clothing, especially undergarments and socks, as clean and dry as possible. Clothing, as well as the body, must stay clean and dry. Keeping clothes clean will lessen the chances of developing rashes and infections. Change clothes, especially socks and undergarments, regularly. Use foot powder when available.

Properly Dispose of Waste Water

There will always be a quantity of waste water from personal bathing and cooking in the field. Proper disposal of waste water will assist in preventing insect infestation.

Follow these steps to properly dispose of waste water:

1. Collect all large particles with a food strainer or cloth and place in the garbage.
2. Place the remaining waste water in a container.
3. Dig a small hole at least 60 m away from any water source.
4. Pour the waste water in the hole.
5. Fill in the hole with natural materials.

Wash Regularly

In order to minimize the spread of diseases, hand washing should be enforced when in the field. There are two common approaches to hand washing – soap and water and hand sanitizers.

It is important to always keep the hands clean. Although hand washing is preferred, having hand sanitizer is convenient when soap and water are not available. Dispose of all waste water.

Washing the body is very important and should be done daily. Pay special attention to areas of the body that are susceptible to rash and fungus infection (the scalp, the crotch, and between the toes).

All waste disposal (including human waste) should be a minimum of 60 m (200 feet) from water sources.

DIARRHEA

There are many ways one can develop diarrhea: viral or bacterial infection, contaminated food, food allergies, and soap in food.

While in the field, the major concern is how quickly diarrhea increases water loss.

Diarrhea Which Requires Evacuation

Conditions that will require evacuation include:

- fever,
- presence of blood,
- shock,
- diarrhea or vomiting lasting longer than 24 hours,
- pain lasting longer than 24 hours, and
- any abdominal pain.

Treatment for Diarrhea

The simplest treatment for diarrhea is:

1. Replace lost fluids orally with clear liquids. Encourage patient to drink slowly in small sips. If fluids are not replenished in this way, further dehydration will occur.
2. Once clear liquids are accepted, move the patient to simple carbohydrates: bread, rice and toast (BRAT).
3. Continue giving fluids. Tea may be included.
4. Slowly move back to normal diet, and continue giving fluids.

WATER PATHOGENS

Water pathogens are micro-organisms living in water that are capable of causing human disease. They can be classified into three types: bacteria, viruses, and protozoan parasites.

Although bacteria are a natural part of life, some bacteria (particularly in water) lead to serious illness such as giardiasis or cryptosporidiosis.

Viruses and protozoa are found in surface water that has been contaminated by animal or human feces.

It is crucial to filter and/or purify all water in the wilderness.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the basic rules of hygiene?

Q2. How is diarrhea contracted?

Q3. What are water pathogens?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The basic rules of hygiene are:

- change clothes regularly;
- properly dispose of waste water; and
- wash regularly.

A2. Diarrhea may develop through viral or bacterial infection, contaminated food, food allergies, and soap in food.

A3. Water pathogens are micro-organisms that can cause human disease.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss Latrine Selection**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

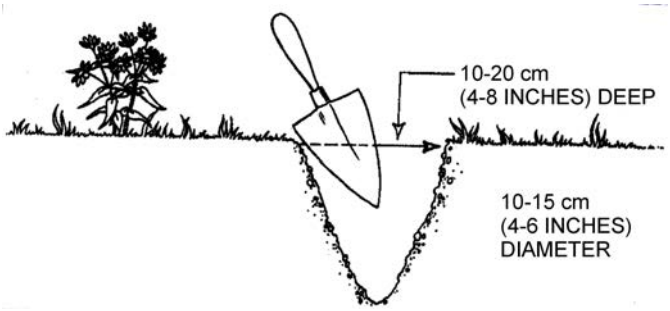
This TP is intended to familiarize cadets with the topic of outdoor toilets, and generate interest in using accepted forms.

SURFACE DISPOSAL

Surface disposal is the least accepted form of waste disposal in the wilderness. Surface disposal should be avoided at all costs. When training, cadets will be informed of the acceptable form of disposal.

CATHOLES

Catholes are the most acceptable form of waste disposal other than packing the waste out. Catholes should be located at least 60 m (200 feet) away from any water source, campsite or trail. The cathole should be 10–20 cm (4–8 inches) deep and approximately 10–15 cm (4–6 inches) in diameter. The most suitable area for a cathole would be in organic soil rich in micro-organisms in a moist area that still receives a fair amount of sunlight.



A. McGivney, Leave No Trace: A Guide to the New Wilderness Etiquette, Mountaineer Books. (p. 64)

Figure 12-3-1 Cathole

Demonstrate cathole digging.

LATRINES

Considered a multi-person cathole, latrines should only be built when occupying a site longer than two nights or when there are more than 10 people in a group.

Latrines should be a minimum of 60 m (200 feet) away from a water source, campsite, or trail. They should be wider than long and a minimum of 30 cm (1 foot) deep. Latrines should be filled in when the waste is 10–15 cm (4–6 inches) from the surface.

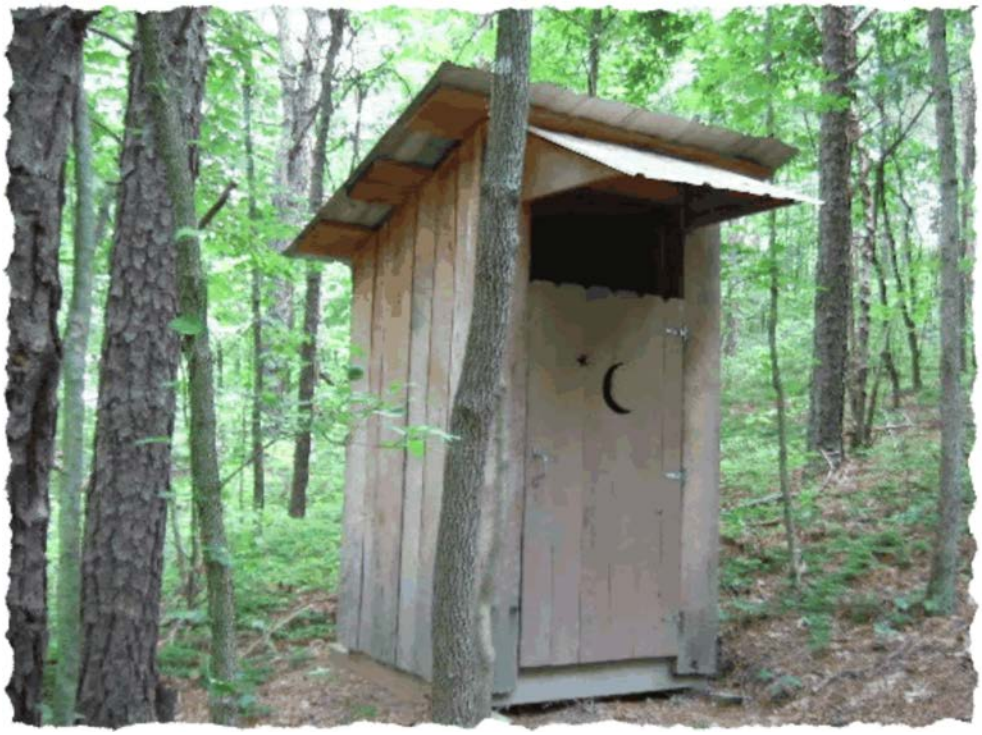
Human waste can take 1–3 years to decompose. Be aware of where waste is deposited.

Human urine may cause leaf damage and browning on some plants. In addition, certain animals are attracted to the salt in human urine, often eating covered plants.

WILDERNESS TOILETS

Outhouses

In order to prevent the spread of disease, many provincial and national parks are building new outhouses with sustainable technology. Older outhouses in parks should be used whenever available, despite their sometimes undesirable appearance.



http://blogs.redding.com/redding/mbeauchamp/archives.gif. Retrieved March 18, 2008, from http://blogs.redding.com/redding/mbeauchamp/archives.gif

Figure 12-3-2 Outhouse

Thunder Boxes

Often simply a box with a hole and seat, thunder boxes can be found in wilderness areas. Thunder boxes are built by earth-conscious hikers and area users to prevent human waste from littering the ground.

barkingspace.wordpress.com. Retrieved March 18, 2008, from http://www.figtography.com/Blog/thunderbox.jpg

Figure 12-3-3 Thunder Box

Ammo Cans

Traditionally used by paddlers and river guides in wilderness where regulations require the removal of human waste, ammo cans, sometimes called groovers, are water tight and sealed. Ammo cans are particularly useful on water as the can is very durable and floats.

Surplus & Outdoors. Retrieved March 18, 2007, from http://www.surplusandoutdoors.com/shop/877/shopscr89.html

Figure 12-3-4 Ammo Can

Buckets

In areas above the tree line, mountaineers often use large plastic buckets as toilets. The buckets are sometimes lined with a garbage bag while in use. When the trip is done, or when the bucket is full, the bag is tied off and the bucket is carried back down, and subsequently dumped in the proper facilities.

COMMERCIAL WASTE UNITS

Composting Toilets

The most popular commercial unit on the market, a composting toilet, comes in various models and can be seen in most provincial and national parks within Canada. The simplest forms of composting toilets use sawdust or mulch which is then placed over a deposit.

Pack-It Toilet

Marketed as an ultra light personal toilet kit, the Pack-it Toilet was developed as a way to try to help the wilderness. People invariably do not want to waste time with packing out waste. With the Pack-it Toilet, people can take responsibility for their waste in a comfortable way.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is the most acceptable form of waste disposal?

Q2. When are latrines used?

Q3. What is a composting toilet?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Catholes.

A2. Latrines should only be built when occupying a site longer than two nights or when there are more than 10 people in a group.

A3. Composting toilets use sawdust or mulch which is then placed over a deposit.

Teaching Point 3 **Select Natural Toilet Paper**

Time: 10 min Method: Practical Activity

This TP is designed to give cadets the opportunity to select alternatives to toilet paper.

Cadets should be reminded that they do not need to remove sources from live trees or bushes.

There was once a time when there was no toilet paper. During this time, and in today's world during times of potty emergencies, natural toilet paper can be used.

With all the choices for substitute toilet paper, the choice of living plants should be a last resort. Pick a leaf here, a leaf there; do not pick clumps.

Do not pick vegetation or leaves in parks or restricted areas.

LEAVES

Large, soft leaves are the best. If needed, small leaves can be used. Use sparingly.

Inspect the leaves before using. Leaves can sometimes hold sap or other sticky substances, be covered in bristles or barbs, or more seriously be covered in hispid (short stiff hairs) which can penetrate the skin.

Autumn foliage, in many colours, offers a selection of leaves, some of which will stay pliable through the winter months.

The most common trees and source of leaves in Canada are:

- alder,
- beech,
- birch,
- chestnut,
- elm,
- hickory,
- maple, and
- oak.

Natural Resources Canada, 2002, Round Leaves. Retrieved March 22, 2007, from http://www.cfi.scf.rncan.gc.ca/imfec-idecf/hosttrees/deciduous/leaves_round.html

Figure 12-3-5 Round Leaf

Review photos of poison ivy, poison oak, and poison sumac with cadets.

Poison ivy, poison oak, and poison sumac are not to be used for alternative sources for toilet paper.

Canadian Weed Science Society. Retrieved March 18, 2008, from www.cwss-scm.ca/weeds/images/F22_centralPoidonIvy.jpg

Figure 12-3-6 Poison Ivy

Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada. Retrieved March 18, 2008, from http://res2.agr.gc.ca/ecorc/poison/vernix_e.htm

Figure 12-3-7 Poison Sumac

The Coloma Valley: Where the Gold Rush Bega: Coloma Valley Nature Reference. Retrieved March 18, 2008, from www.coloma.com/reference/401-1-18-poisonoak.jpg

Figure 12-3-8 Poison Oak

MOSS

Using moss has both advantages and disadvantages. The advantage with moss is the softness, but the disadvantage is that removing a small amount of moss will affect a large area of moss.

GRASSES

Grasses will work well, but can be a hazard due to slicing leaves. Grasses can cut skin similar to a paper cut. If using bamboo, be extra careful to avoid such injuries.

EVERGREENS

These have leaves that look like needles. Coniferous trees generally have persistent foliage (leaves) consisting of needles or scales. Found in certain areas, evergreens are often the only choice. Be sure to inspect the greens for sap before using.

The most common coniferous trees in Canada are:

- cedar,
- fir,
- hemlock,
- larch,
- pine,
- spruce, and
- tamarack.

The Canadian Encyclopedia, 2007, Conifers, Copyright 2007 by Alberta Forest Service. Retrieved March 22, 2007, from http://www.thecanadianencyclopedia.com/index.cfm?PgNm=TCE&Params=A1SEC818695

Figure 12-3-9 Coniferous Needles

WATER

Regarded by some as the cleanest, water wiping has been practiced for years.

The Water Wipe. Using a small container, fill it with water. Bring the container to the chosen spot. When finished, simply trickle water into the free hand, never contaminating the fresh water, and use it to splash or wipe.

Snow is also an excellent alternative to toilet paper. There is an initial shock towards the feeling of the snow on the area, but will leave the area clean.

In certain countries, it is customary to wipe only with the left hand and eat with the right hand.

ACTIVITY

Time: 5 min

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to allow cadets to identify what natural materials may be used as a substitute for toilet paper.

RESOURCES

N/A.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

Choose an area in which each pair of cadets can find alternative sources of toilet paper.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into pairs (same gender).
2. Inform cadets of the boundaries.
3. Have cadets identify natural sources of toilet paper.
4. Cadets should check the source to ensure:
    a. there are no sticky substances attached to the source;
    b. there are no insects; and
    c. the source is appropriate.

SAFETY

- Cadets will respect boundaries for the activity.
- Cadets will remain within eyesight of their partner at all times.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets participation in the activity in TP 3 will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadet's participation in identifying natural sources of toilet paper will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Properly disposing of waste in the field is essential to personal hygiene, preventing illness and protecting the wilderness setting we all enjoy.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

A2-063 A-CR-CCP-107/PT-001 Director Cadets 3. (1978). *Royal Canadian Army Cadet Course Training Plan: Corps Training Program Adventure Training*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C0-111 (ISBN 0-9740820-2-3) Tawrell, P. (2006). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book* (2nd ed.). Lebanon, NH: Paul Tawrell.

C2-011 (ISBN 0-89886-910-2) McGiveny, A. (2003). *Leave No Trace: A Guide to the New Wilderness Etiquette* (2nd ed.). Seattle, WA: Mountaineer Books.

C2-016 (ISBN 1-4000-5309-9) Curtis, R. (2005). *The Backpacker's Field Manual: A Comprehensive Guide to Mastering Backcountry Skills*. New York, NY: Three Rivers Press.

C2-156 (ISBN 0-89815-627-0) Meyer, K. (1994). *How to Shit in the Woods*. Berkeley, CA: Ten Speed Press.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 4

EO C321.02 – IDENTIFY SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS WHEN TRAVELLING OVER SNOW AND ICE

Total Time: 60 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for this lesson, as it introduces travelling over snow and ice and generates interest in being outside in the winter.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have identified safety considerations when travelling over snow and ice.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to understand the safety implications when travelling over snow and ice in order to remain safe when on a winter FTX or while enjoying winter sports.

Teaching Point 1 **Describe Types of Snow and Ice**

Time: 20 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Snow and ice change with heating and cooling, and are largely affected by weather. This TP is intended to introduce cadets to the different types of snow and ice.

SNOW

Snow. A type of precipitation in the form of crystalline water ice (snowflake). Snow is granular with an open soft structure and will remain on the ground until it melts into water.

Snow Pack. The accumulation of snow in an area.

TYPES OF SNOW

New Fallen Snow. Very loose and light. The snowflakes still have their multiple branches. This type of snow is excellent insulation.

Powder Snow. New, untouched freshly fallen soft snow. It can give the feeling of floating in a weightless environment. Powder can be packed in thick layers that form a natural pillow. Powder snow has low moisture content almost 97 percent of it being air and is favoured among skiers to perfect skills. In coastal regions, where there is higher humidity, the snow is heavier than in a continental region.

Wind-Packed Snow. Snow blown from one direction, compacted by the force of the wind. Wind packed snow is caused by the pressure exerted by wind causing a form of cold-heat hardening. In some areas, the snow surface is strong enough to hold weight and snowshoes are particularly useful.

Wind-packed snow is great for cutting blocks for igloos and other snow structures.

Sun Crust. Snow that had the upper layer melted and then refrozen. Usually on top of powder snow, sun crust snow is stronger than the powder snow below it due to the refreezing.

Sun crust is not very stable on a slope and can be dangerous when weighted.

Corn Snow. After thawing, corn snow occurs. The structure of the snow is very grainy at this point. Corn snow usually occurs in the spring, and can be strong enough to carry weight. Corn snow is produced during the cycle of melting and refreezing in the accumulated snow.

A layer of snow that has been sun crusted will become corn snow.

Rotten Snow. Caused by repeat melting and freezing and is found mostly on the south side of hills, or in lower levels of snow. Water will seep to the lower layers and will not freeze because it is insulated from the weather by the covering snow layer. Rotten snow can resemble very small icicles, or candle ice. This snow is dangerous due to a risk of falling through.

Slush Snow. When the air temperature becomes warmer than the freezing point, the snow begins to melt and the water content becomes high. Slush snow absorbs water from melting snow. Slush snow is recognizable by depressions in the snow with darker or bluish snow areas. These areas show holes in the ice or an accumulation of water on the surface of the ice.

ICE

As water cools, it contracts in volume, reaching greatest density at 4 degrees Celsius (39 degrees Fahrenheit) where it begins the freezing process. Ice is a densely packed material formed from snow without air bubbles, or a crystalline solid which is brittle and transparent.

Ice can be frozen water or cold-heat packed snow like that of glaciers and icebergs.

TYPES OF ICE

Surface Ice. Found on land, over different surfaces, including man-made materials.

Candle Ice. Suspended vertical needles of ice that do not have a solid structure. Stepping on candle ice is like stepping on slush.

Lake Ice. The layer of frozen water that forms on the surface of the lake. Often the ice strength is dependent upon the conditions under which it was formed.

Lake ice 10 cm (4 inches) in thickness is generally considered safe to walk on. However, caution should always be used, as this is still dependent on the type of ice, how it was formed and how many layers there are. Ice thickness can also change depending on where one is on the lake, this is especially true where water is running into the lake, eg, from a stream, river, or man made discharge.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is rotten snow?

Q2. What is the best snow for building snow structures?

Q3. What are the three kinds of ice?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Rotten snow is snow found on the south side of hills, or lower levels of snow. It is caused by repeated melting and freezing.

A2. Wind packed snow.

A3. Surface ice, candle ice and lake ice.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss Characteristics of Snow and Ice**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

CHARACTERISTICS OF SNOW AND ICE

Weight-Carrying Capacity

Weight-carrying capacity is defined as the capacity of weight that can be supported by the snow. When the snow is packed hard, weight-carrying capacity is greater and movement is easier. Ice is often stronger, but movement is more difficult due to the slippery surface.

Sliding Characteristics

Important to skiers and snowboarders, sliding characteristics are how a material glides over the snow. The sliding characteristic varies greatly due to the type of snow.

Holding Capacity

Holding capacity is the ability to act upon ski wax to avoid backslapping. Backslapping is when the ski does not slide on the snow, but lifts from the snow causing a slapping noise. Holding capacity changes greatly with different types of snow, making different versions of wax a necessity.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is weight-carrying capacity?

Q2. Explain sliding characteristics.

Q3. Define holding capacity.

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Weight-carrying capacity is defined as the capacity of weight that can be supported by the snow.

A2. Sliding characteristics are how a material glides over snow.

A3. Holding capacity is the ability to act upon ski wax to avoid backslapping.

Teaching Point 3 **Discuss Water Dangers**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to introduce cadets to the dangers of travelling over ice and snow in winter. This introduction does not provide cadets with skills or training to effectively select a route for a group.

WATER DANGERS

In the winter, hiking can be enjoyable, but like all outdoor activities there are dangers that need to be considered.

Frozen Waterway Travel

Frozen bodies of water including lakes, rivers and creeks are the most suitable routes for trails. Frozen waterway travel is an advantage as they are relatively flat and have little snow accumulation due to blowing wind.

The primary disadvantage of travelling on waterways is that the route can become unstable with sudden temperature changes.

Ice Route Selection

When travelling on ice, the most experienced person in the group should select the travel route.

Ice conditions can change quickly and should always be treated with suspicion, as there may be water under the snow surface (rotten snow). Areas where rotten snow is found should be bypassed.

Rivers with a stronger current will continue to flow below the ice cover even through the coldest temperatures.

Weak Ice

The strength of the ice varies with its structure and temperature. Snow cover or a warm period will weaken the ice. A sudden thaw can create cracks in the ice and weaken it more.

Weak ice should be avoided at all times.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is the primary disadvantage when travelling over frozen waterways?

Q2. What should be remembered when travelling on an ice route?

Q3. When should weak ice be avoided?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The route may become unstable.

A2. There could be flowing water under the surface.

A3. Weak ice should be avoided at all times.

Teaching Point 4 **Discuss Winter Travel**

Time: 20 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to introduce cadets to the dangers to consider when travelling in winter conditions.

Instructors should present the information emphasizing the importance of safe travel.

WINTER TRAVEL

Winter travel is more complicated and more difficult than summer travel. Snow pack affects mobility in a variety of ways, and winter requires cold weather equipment.

Planning for the cold and preparing for a winter trip does not just mean planning for what will happen. It is important to pack extra equipment (eg, an extra pair of socks, emergency blanket, or fire starter) that will be beneficial should something unexpected arise.

Heavy snow cover impedes movement, both cross-country and on road. A route which was passable during the day may become impassable at night due to falling temperatures re-freezing the surroundings.

Basic Rules for Winter Travel

There are some basic rules everyone travelling outdoors in the winter should follow:

- Plot the route on a map and highlight key landmarks.
- Ensure all members of the group are fully prepared and aware of the route and possible difficulties.
- Have a trail breaking rotation so the lead person does not get tired.
- Travel in single file.
- Ensure equipment is checked and evenly distributed.
- Dress consistent with the weather to reduce sweating.
- Stop 15 minutes into the hike to adjust equipment.
- Use the buddy system in northern climates.
- Watch carefully for signs of frostbite.

Use of Snowshoes or Skis

Snowshoes and skis both provide floatation (ability to stay on the top layer) on snow. They are often useful for cross-country travel and have gained popularity with those travelling in winter. Depth and type of snow will determine the level of support and the speed of movement.

Snowshoes are particularly useful in confined areas. Carrying and transporting snowshoes is simple due to their size and weight. On steep slopes however, snowshoes have limited traction and the snowshoe will often slide, causing the wearer to lose their footing.

Skiing is often harder in deeper snow, and the trail breaker must be switched often. Skiing is versatile in most terrains, particularly in areas with hills as skiers are able to gain speed on the downward slope.

WINTER TRAVEL TIME

	Unbroken Trail	Broken Trail
On Foot:		
• Up to 1 foot of snow	1–2 mph	1.5–2 mph
• Over 1 foot of snow	0.24–0.75 mph	1.25–2 mph
Snowshoeing	1–2 mph	2–2.5 mph
Skiing	1–3.5 mph	3–3.5 mph

Tripping and Falling in the Snow

Snow cover blankets many terrain features and hides obstacles, such as stumps, brush, rocks, and ditches, that may cause tripping and falling.

A long pole or hiking stick should be carried and used to find obstacles. Any obstacles, including the smallest ones, should be avoided to prevent injury.

Best Time to Travel

In winter, travel time will vary from hour to hour. Generally the best time to travel is early in the morning after a cold night. This is when snow and ice are most stable.

Some travel guidelines include:

- Travel in shaded areas to avoid disturbing the stability of the snow in sunny spots.
- Days are shorter in winter, so timings should be adjusted to avoid overnight stays in dangerous areas.
- Avoid travel in snow higher than calf deep. Travelling in deep snow wastes energy and it is very difficult to see potential obstacles.
- Travelling in late winter should be given special consideration as the snow pack may be more unstable because of the warmer temperatures.

Trail Selection

Forest travel provides protection from wind. It is particularly important to plan routes in the winter to ensure a safe and protected route is followed. Special attention should be given to trail markings and signs.

Dangers of Winter Travel

Winter travel is more difficult than summer travel, and snow conditions will dictate when and how far a group moves.

Deep snow could hide trail markers and be prone to avalanches and ice patches.

If travelling in mountain areas, an avalanche course should be completed and the necessary equipment, such as an avalanche beacon, should be taken on all trips.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 4

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is the purpose of snowshoes?

Q2. When is the best time of day to travel in winter?

Q3. What are the basic rules for winter travel?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Snowshoes provide floatation (ability to stay on the top layer of snow) in the snow.

A2. Early in the morning after a cold night is the best time to travel.

A3. The basic rules of winter travel are:

- Plot the route on a map and highlight key landmarks.
- Ensure all members of the group are fully prepared and aware of the route and possible difficulties.
- Have a trail breaking rotation so the lead person does not get overly tired.
- Travel in single file.
- Ensure equipment is checked and evenly distributed.
- Dress consistent with the weather to reduce sweating.
- Stop 15 minutes into hike to adjust equipment.
- Use the buddy system in northern climates.
- Watch carefully for signs of frostbite.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is powder snow?

Q2. What are the considerations for ice route selection?

Q3. What causes falling or tripping in the snow?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Powder is new, untouched freshly fallen soft snow.

A2. Ice conditions can change easily and should always be treated with suspicion, as there may be water under the snow surface. Areas where rotten snow is found should be bypassed.

A3. Snow cover blankets many terrain features and hides obstacles to movement. Stumps, brush, rocks, ditches are all covered, obscuring potential obstacles.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Travelling on snow and ice can be hazardous to both personnel and equipment. Knowing the different types of snow and ice as well as the dangers inherent with winter travel, will assist cadets in making decisions on winter travel.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

C2-004 (ISBN 1-896713-00-9) Tawrell, P. (1996). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*. Green Valley, ON: Paul Tawrell.

C2-012 (ISBN 0-89886-643-X) Weiss, H. (1988). *Secrets of Warmth for Comfort or Survival*. Seattle, WA: The Mountaineers.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 5

EO C321.03 – CONSTRUCT FIELD AMENITIES

Total Time: 180 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

Photocopy handouts of field amenities located at Annex B. Each cadet should have a copy of each field amenity.

A selection of sticks, boughs and logs in different sizes should be gathered in order to aid cadets in construction and to prevent using live boughs.

APPROACH

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TP 1 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate knots and lashings while providing an opportunity for the cadets to practice tying knots and lashings under supervision.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 2 as it is an interactive way to allow the cadet to experience building field amenities in a safe, controlled environment. This activity contributes to the development of building skills in a fun and challenging setting.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet, as a member of a group of four, shall have constructed two field amenities.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to understand the value of field amenities. Constructing field amenities is a fun way to incorporate knot tying in the field training site and make the site more comfortable. If ever in a survival situation, field amenities are also a way to combat boredom which is one of the seven enemies of survival.

Teaching Point 1 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadets Practice Tying Lashings**

Time: 45 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

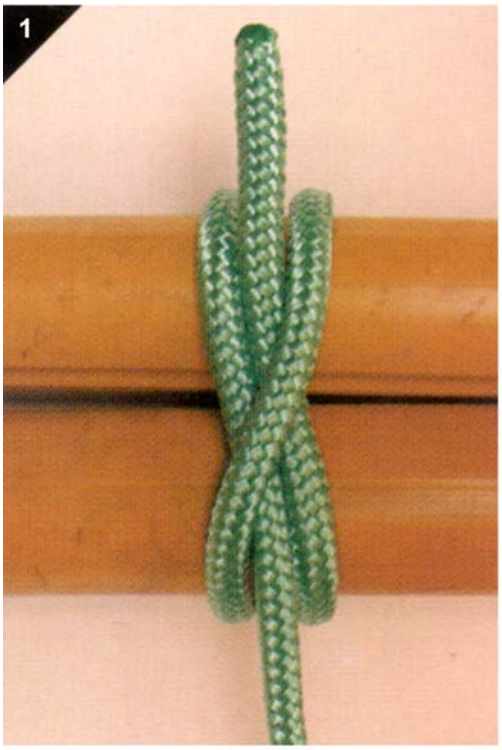
For this skill lesson it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate the complete skill while cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step required to complete the skill. Monitor cadets as they imitate each step.
3. Monitor the cadets' performance as they practice the complete skill.

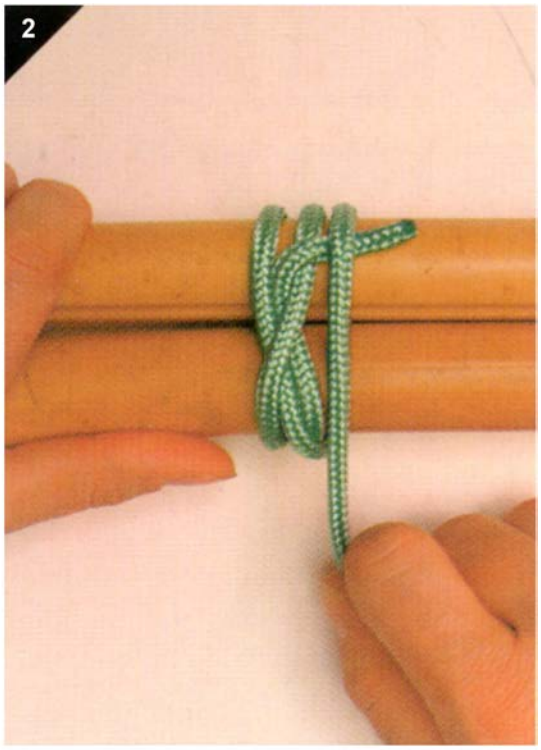
Note: Assistant instructors may be employed to monitor cadet performance.

ROUND LASHING

Also called a sheer lashing, the round lashing has two distinct uses. First, it creates an A-frame or set of sheer legs. Second, two or three round lashings can be used to bind poles together to make a longer horizontal pole.



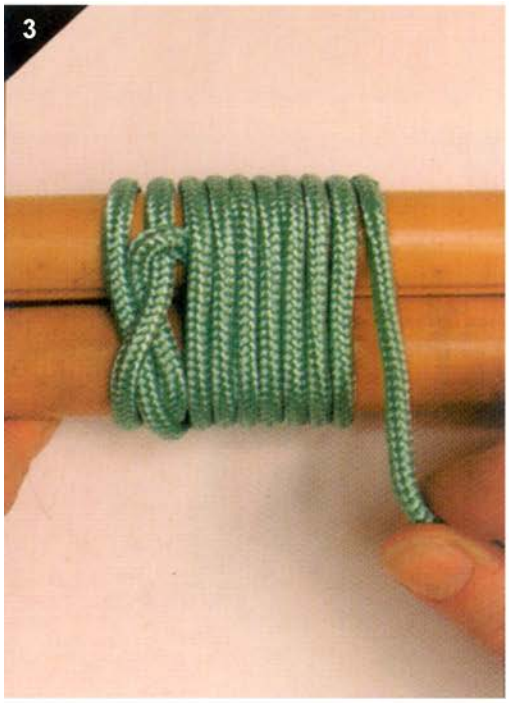
STEP ONE. MAKE A CLOVE HITCH AROUND BOTH POLES.



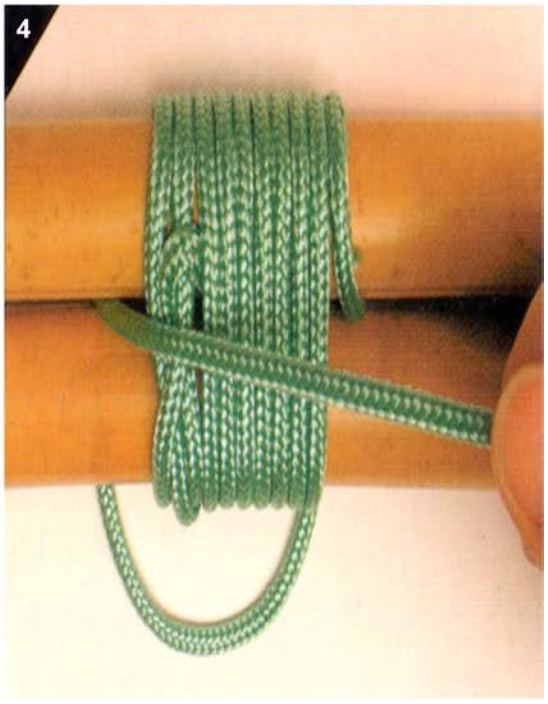
STEP TWO. WRAP THE STANDING END AROUND BOTH POLES, TRAPPING THE WORKING END OF THE CLOVE HITCH UNDERNEATH.

Figure 12-5-1 (Sheet 1 of 3) Round Lashing

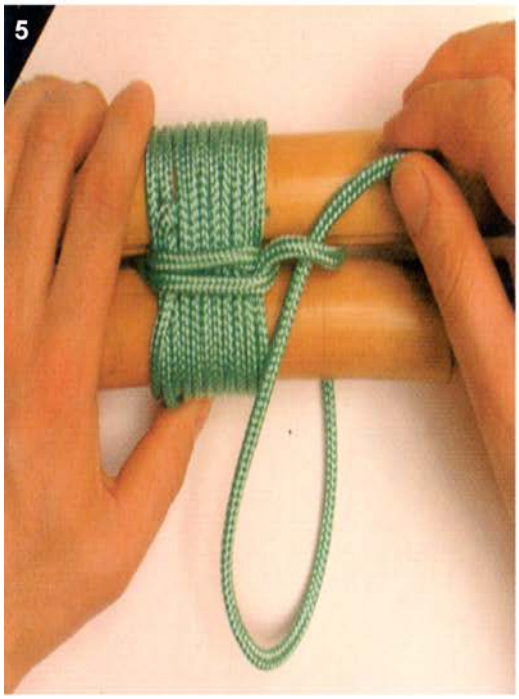
D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 184–185)



STEP THREE. MAKE EIGHT TO TEN MORE WRAPS AROUND THE POLES.



STEP FOUR. BRING THE ROPE UP BETWEEN THE POLES AND MAKE TWO TIGHT TURNS PARALLEL TO THE POLES.



STEP FIVE. MAKE A CLOVE HITCH AROUND ONE OF THE POLES.

STEP SIX. ENSURE THE LASHING IS TIGHT AND SECURE.

Figure 12-5-1 (Sheet 2 of 3) Round Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 184–185)

STEP SEVEN. OPEN THE LASHING TO CREATE AN A-FRAME.

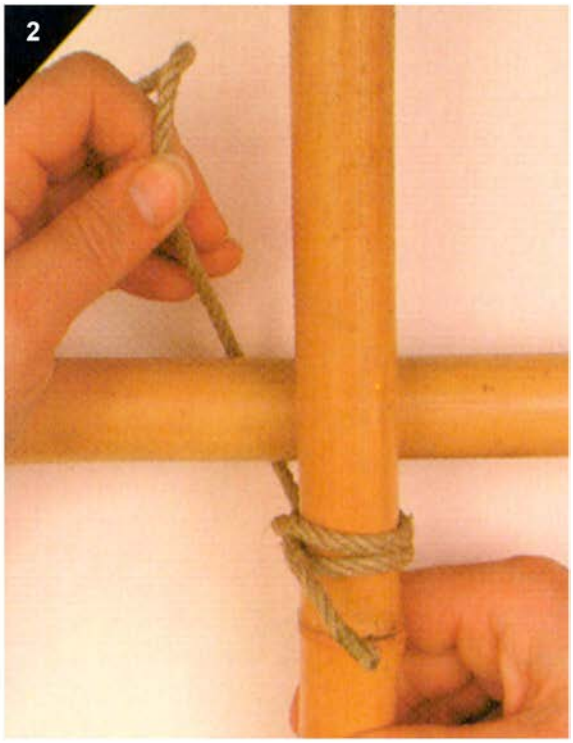
Figure 12-5-1 (Sheet 3 of 3) Round Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 184–185)

SQUARE LASHING

A square lashing secures two poles together at 90 degrees. The rope used to make the lashing should be considerably smaller than the size of the poles. For the lashing to be effective, each turn must be pulled as tight as possible as it is made.

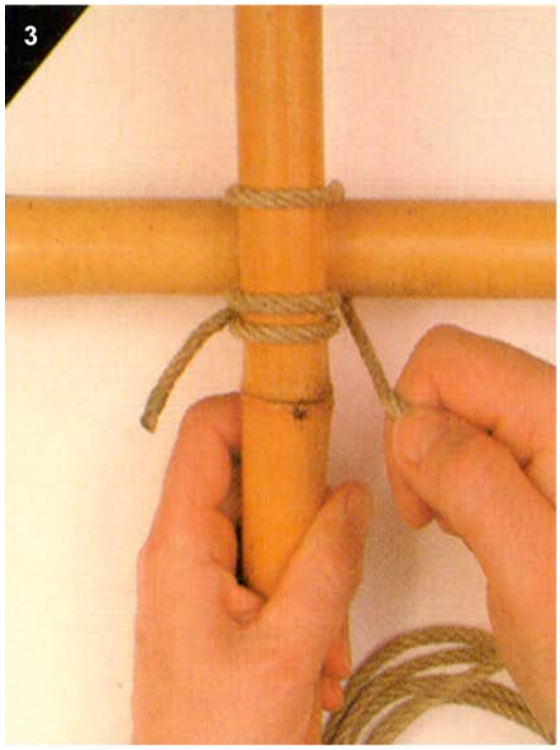
STEP ONE. WITH THE VERTICAL POLE ON TOP OF THE HORIZONTAL POLE, MAKE A CLOVE HITCH. THE VERTICAL POLE RUNS UP AND DOWN, AND THE HORIZONTAL POLE LEFT TO RIGHT.



STEP TWO. BRING ALL OF THE ROPE AROUND AND BEHIND THE HORIZONTAL POLE.

Figure 12-5-2 (Sheet 1 of 4) Square Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 180-181)



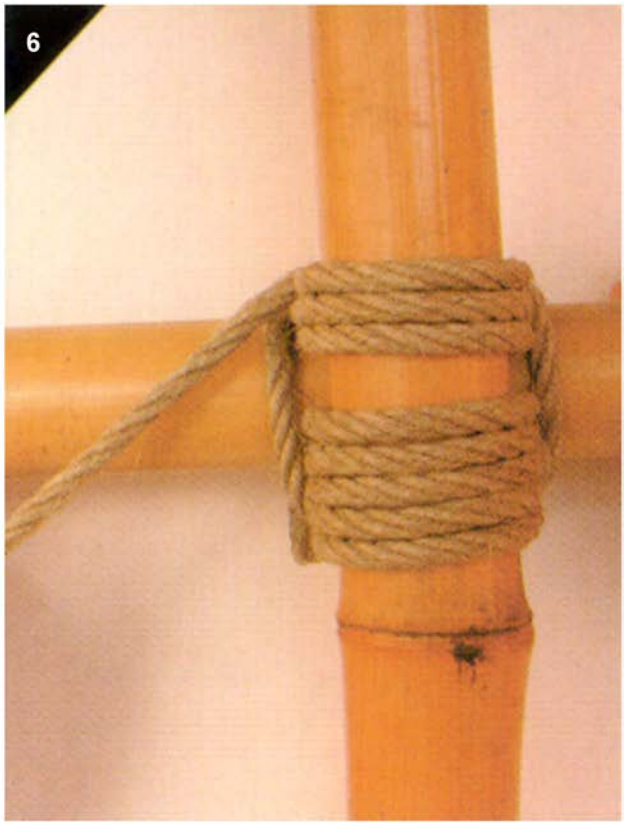
STEP THREE. TIGHTLY BRING THE ROPE OVER THE VERTICAL POLE AND BACK BEHIND THE HORIZONTAL POLE, BACK TO THE CLOVE HITCH.

STEP FOUR. CONTINUE TO MAKE THREE COMPLETE TURNS AROUND THE POLES, PULLING THE ROPE TIGHT AFTER EACH TURN.

Figure 12-5-2 (Sheet 2 of 4) Square Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 180-181)

STEP FIVE. AFTER PASSING THE CLOVE HITCH, TIGHTLY BRING THE ROPE TO THE HORIZONTAL POLE FROM BEHIND AND START WRAPPING AROUND THE TWO SIDES OF THE POLE. THESE WRAPS ARE CALLED FRAPPING TURNS.



STEP SIX. MAKE TWO COMPLETE SETS OF FRAPPING TURNS.

Figure 12-5-2 (Sheet 3 of 4) Square Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 180-181)

STEP SEVEN. MAKE A CLOVE HITCH AROUND THE HORIZONTAL POLE.

STEP EIGHT. PULL TIGHT AND SECURE.

Figure 12-5-2 (Sheet 4 of 4) Square Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 180-181)

TIMBER HITCH

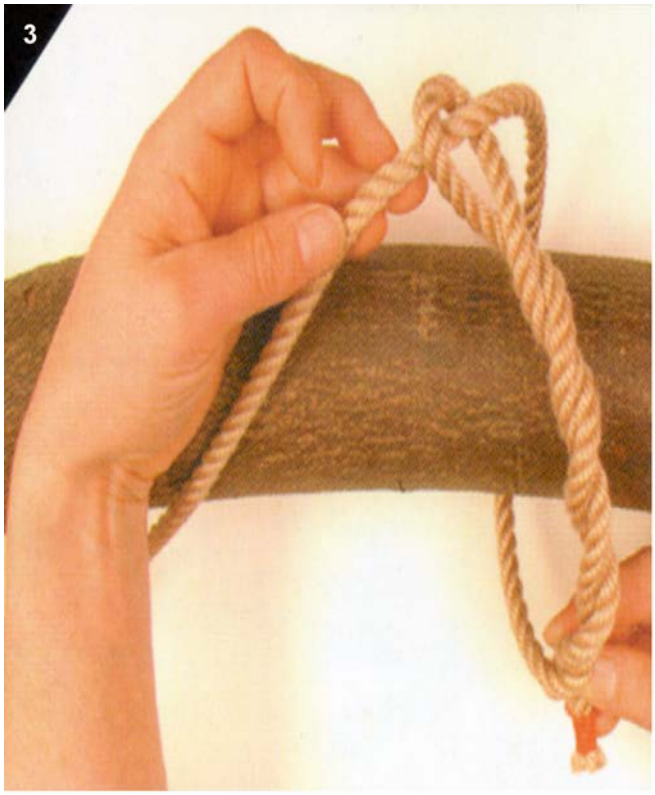
The timber hitch is included because it is required for the diagonal lashing. It should not take a great amount of time to complete.

STEP ONE. TAKE THE STANDING END AND WRAP IT AROUND THE OBJECT, THEN AROUND THE STANDING PART OF THE ROPE.

STEP TWO. TWIST THE WORKING PART AROUND ITSELF BY WRAPPING IT AROUND THE WORKING END.

Figure 12-5-3 (Sheet 1 of 2) Timber Hitch

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 139)



STEP THREE. CONTINUE MAKING TWISTS UNTIL THE TWISTED ROPE IS LONG ENOUGH TO GO AROND THE OBJECT. PULL ON THE STANDING PART TO TIGHTEN THE HITCH.

Figure 12-5-3 (Sheet 2 of 2) Timber Hitch

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 139)

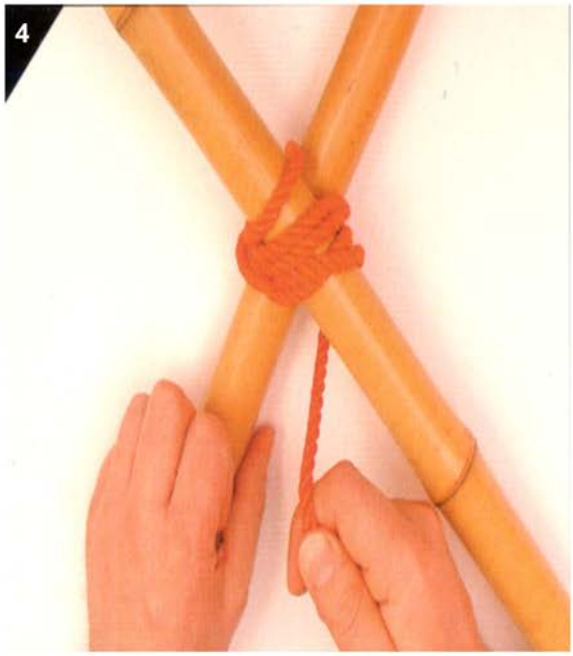
DIAGONAL LASHING

A diagonal lashing is used at a crossing point, to prevent poles from springing apart.

STEP ONE. MAKE A TIMBER HITCH AROUND THE TWO CROSSED POLES.

STEP TWO. MAKE A TURN AROUND THE TWO CROSSED POLES, PULLING THE TIMBER HITCH TIGHT.

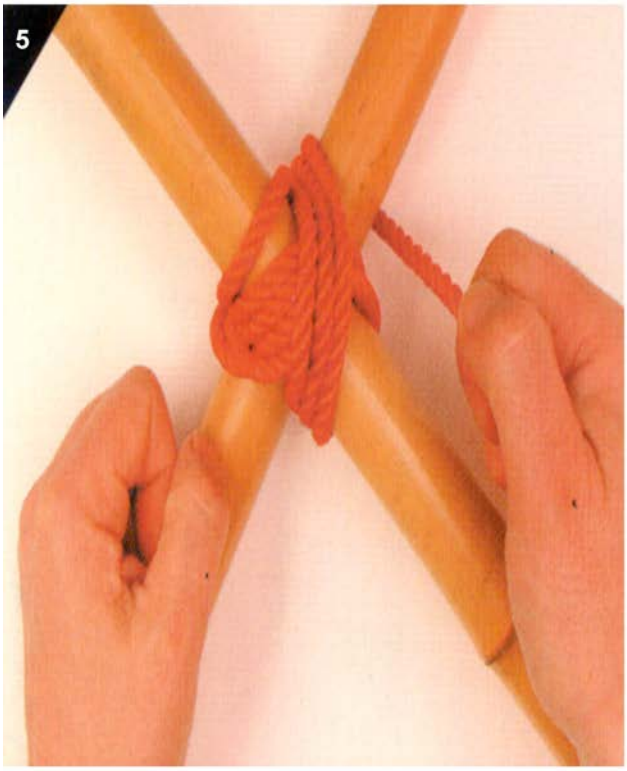
STEP THREE. MAKE THREE MORE COMPLETE TURNS IN THE SAME DIRECTION, PULLING THEM TIGHT.



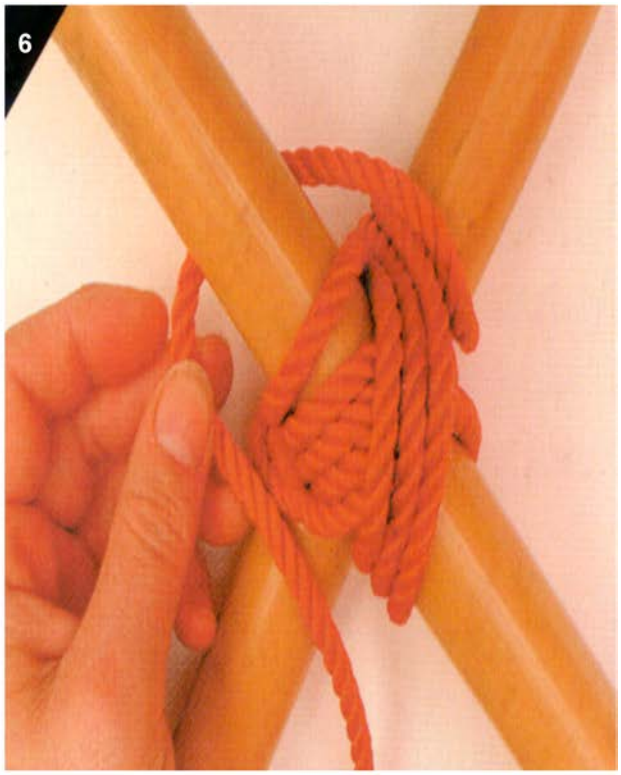
STEP FOUR. CHANGE DIRECTION BY COMING AROUND ONE OF THE POLES.

Figure 12-5-4 (Sheet 1 of 4) Diagonal Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 182-183)



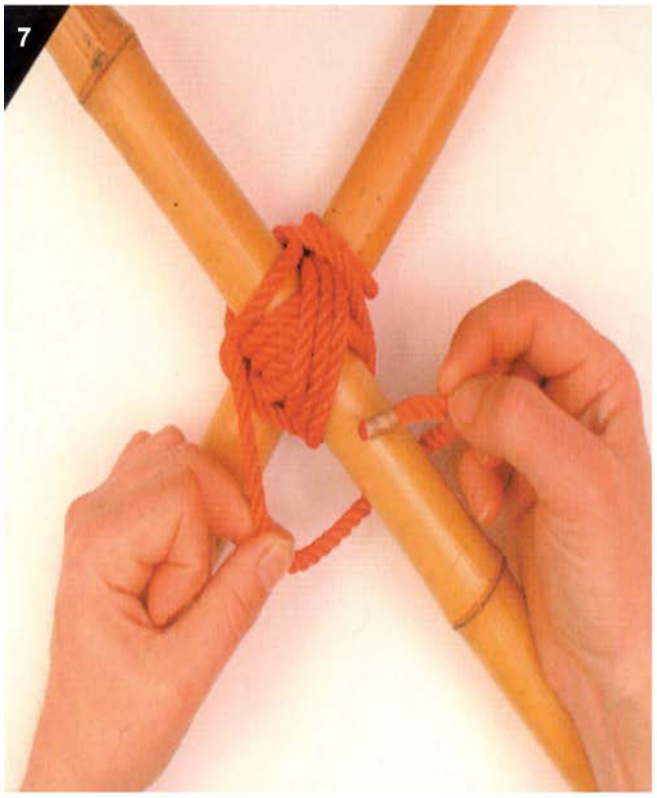
STEP FIVE. MAKE FOUR FULL TURNS AROUND THE TWO POLES AT RIGHT ANGLES TO THE ORIGINAL TURNS, PULLING THEM TIGHT.



STEP SIX. TAKE THE WORKING END OF THE ROPE AROUND ONE OF THE POLES, MAKING A FRAPPING TURN.

Figure 12-5-4 (Sheet 2 of 4) Diagonal Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 182-183)

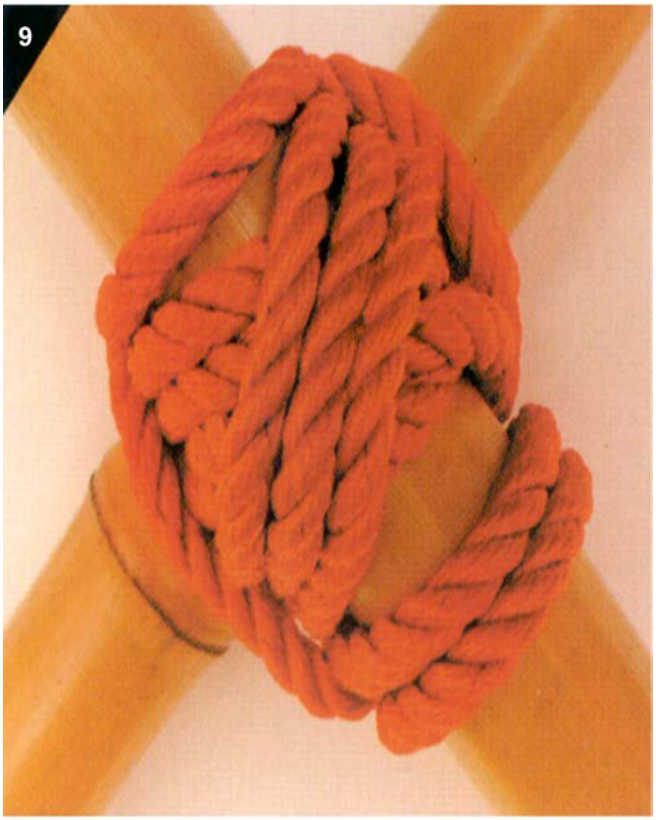


STEP SEVEN. MAKE TWO COMPLETE FRAPPING TURNS.

STEP EIGHT. MAKE A CLOVE HITCH.

Figure 12-5-4 (Sheet 3 of 4) Diagonal Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 182-183)



STEP NINE. PULL THE LASHING TIGHT AND SECURE.

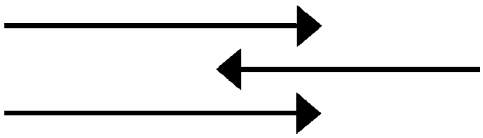
Figure 12-5-4 (Sheet 4 of 4) Diagonal Lashing

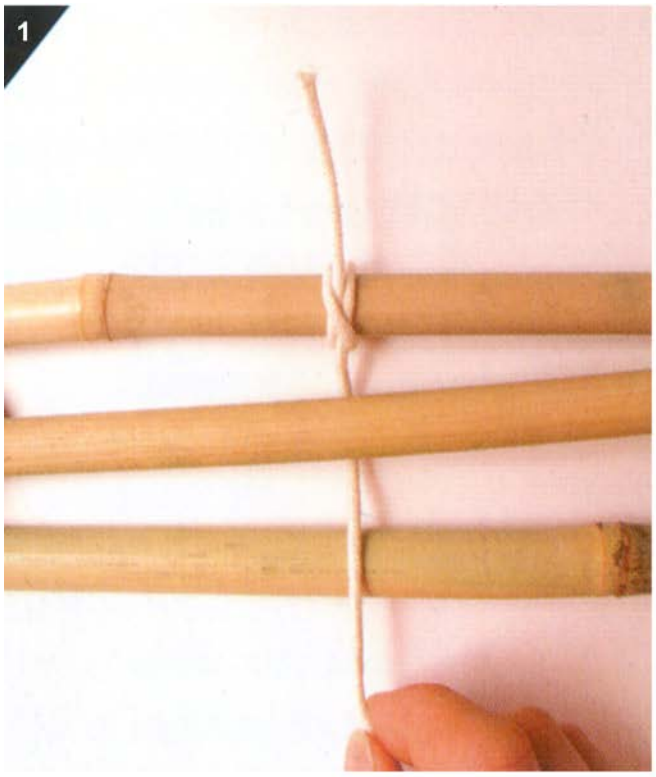
D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 182-183)

FIGURE-OF-EIGHT LASHING

The figure-of-eight lashing is used to join three poles together, to create a tripod.

When making a figure-of-eight lashing, the poles shall be placed staggered.



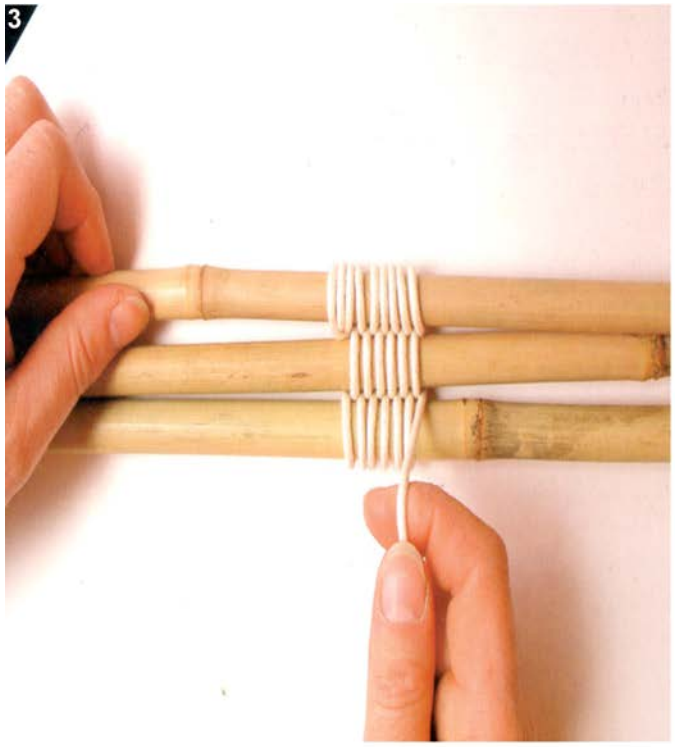


STEP ONE. MAKE A CLOVE HITCH AROUND ONE OF THE OUTSIDE POLES. BRING THE ROPE UNDER AND OVER THE OTHER POLES.

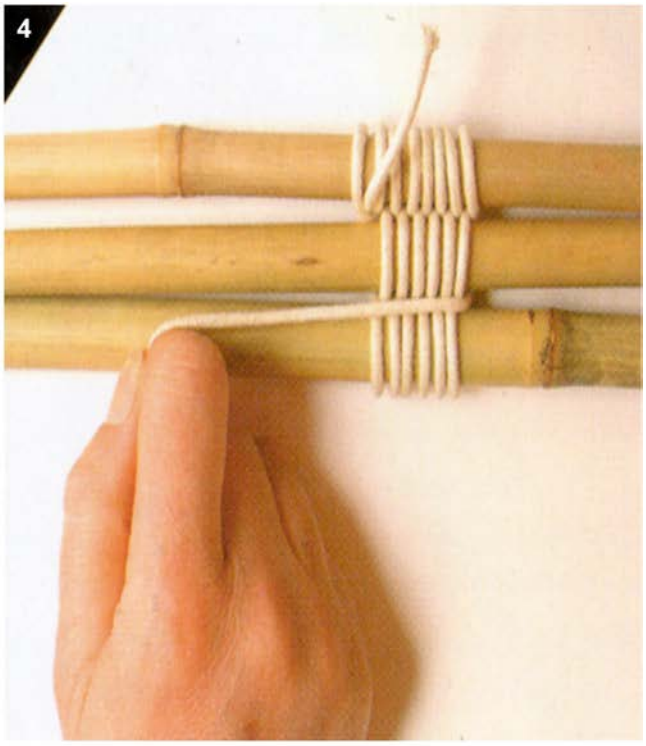
STEP TWO. GO AROUND THE POLE FURTHEST AWAY FROM THE START AND WEAVE THE ROPE BACK OVER AND UNDER.

Figure 12-5-5 (Sheet 1 of 4) Figure-of-Eight Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 187–188)



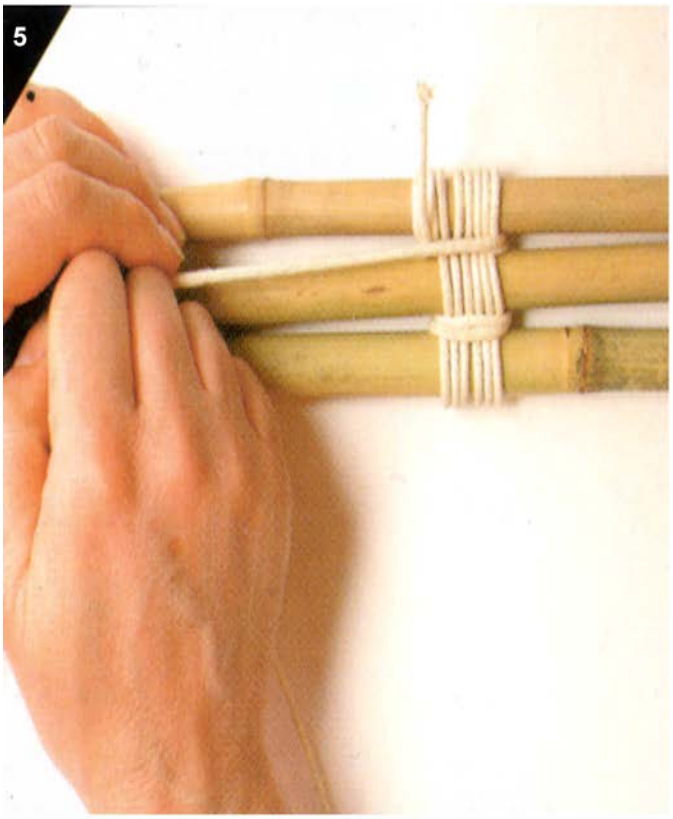
STEP THREE. CONTINUE TO WEAVE THE ROPE UNDER AND OVER EIGHT TIMES. BRING THE ROPE UP IN BETWEEN ANY TWO POLES.



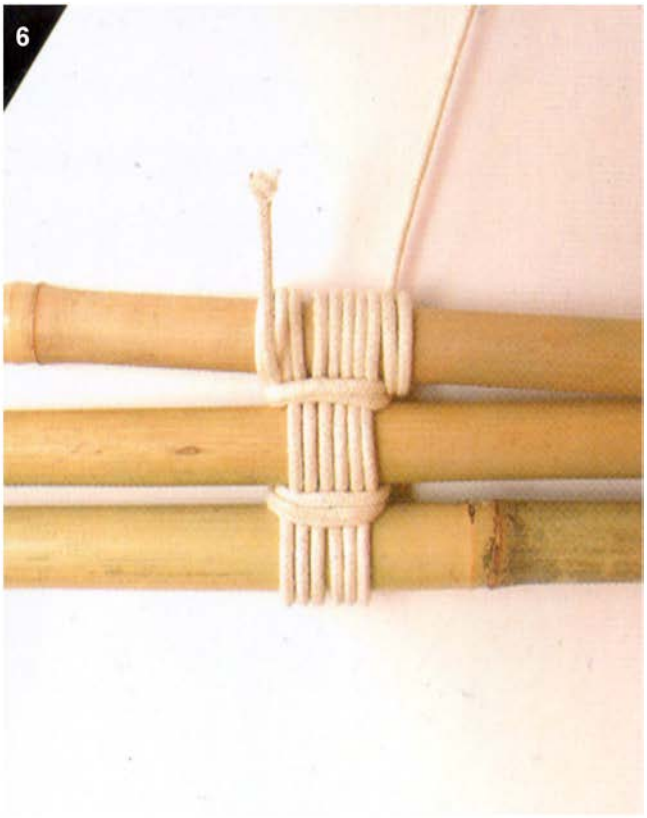
STEP FOUR. PULL THE ROPE PARALLEL TO THE POLES AND PUT IN TWO FRAPPING TURNS.

Figure 12-5-5 (Sheet 2 of 4) Figure-of-Eight Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 187–188)



STEP FIVE. MAKE THREE FRAPPING TURNS IN BETWEEN THE REMAINING POLES.



STEP SIX. MAKE A CLOVE HITCH AROUND THE POLE THAT ALREADY HAS A CLOVE HITCH (FROM THE BEGINNING) AT THE OPPOSITE END.

Figure 12-5-5 (Sheet 3 of 4) Figure-of-Eight Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 187–188)

STEP SEVEN. OPEN THE POLES.

Figure 12-5-5 (Sheet 4 of 4) Figure-of-Eight Lashing

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots & Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p. 187–188)

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadets' participation in tying the lashings will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 2 **Have the Cadets Construct Two Field Amenities**

Time: 130 min Method: Practical Activity

FIELD AMENITIES

Field amenities will be chosen from the following:

- a swamp bed,
- a pack frame,
- a meat-drying rack,
- a raft, and
- a tool rack.

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to construct field amenities for a bivouac site, using the knots and lashings previously taught.

RESOURCES

- nylon rope,
- twine,
- utility cord,
- natural resources, found in the field,
- 1.8–kg (4-lb) axe with a .91–m (36-inch handle),
- .60–m (24-inch) bow saw, and
- diagrams detailing field amenities.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide cadets into groups of no more than four.
2. Depending on need and availability of resources, have the cadets choose two field amenities to construct.
3. Distribute instructions located at Annex B. Have the cadets select and use the most effective knots and lashings to make their field amenity.
4. When amenities are completed, view all constructed amenities.
5. Additional resources for field amenities are listed in the Instructions.
6. Depending on local regulations, have the cadets redistribute all material used in the construction.

SAFETY

- Ensure cadets are employing safe tool use at all times.
- The wood chosen for the field amenities must be strong enough to hold 50 kg of weight.
- Established boundaries shall be respected at all times.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the construction of field amenities in TP 2 will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Field amenities will enhance any base camp. They are relatively easy to construct and are a fun way to reinforce usage of knots. They can make cadets comfortable in the field when it is a home away from home.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Natural resources found in the field such as fallen or dead wood, are to be used for construction.

Instructors are to confirm with local authorities that natural resources may be used for this activity.

Each cadet must gather three sticks or poles approximately 2.54 cm (one inch) in diameter prior to this lesson.

Field amenities will be disassembled, following construction.

The content of this EO is similar to content in C221.02 (Construct Field Amenities, A-CR-CCP-702/PF-001, Chapter 10, Section 11) and C121.01 (Construct Field Amenities, A-CR-CCP-701/PF-001, Chapter 10, Section 10). It is recommended that these lessons be conducted concurrently.

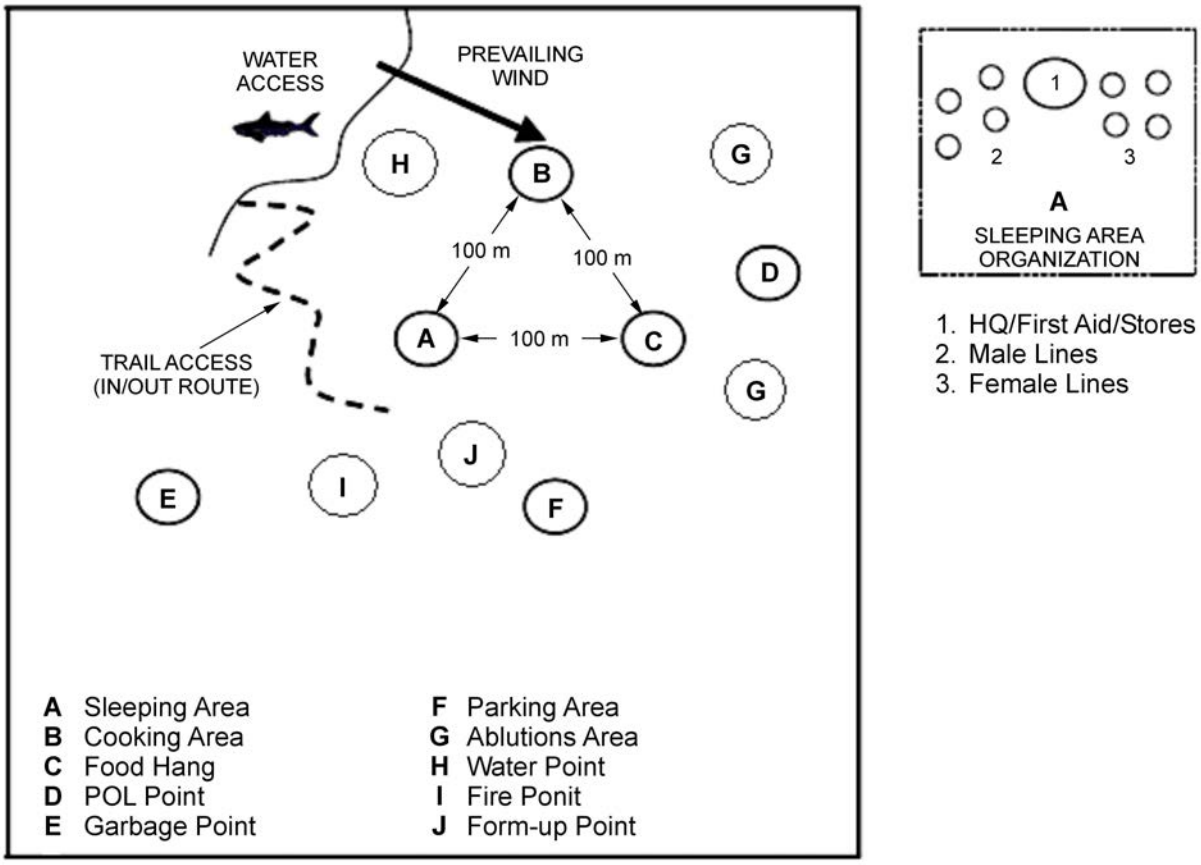
REFERENCES

C2-007 (ISBN 0-7858-1446-9) Pawson, D. (2001). *Pocket Guide to Knots and Splices*. Edison, NJ: Chartwell Books Inc.

C2-008 (ISBN 0-00-265314-7) Wiseman, J. (1999). *The SAS Survival Handbook*. Hammersmith, London: HarperCollins Publishers.

C2-046 PioneeringProjects.org. (2004). *PioneeringProjects.org*. Retrieved February 20, 2008, from http://www.pioneeringprojects.org/projects/index.htm.

SAMPLE BIVOUAC SITE DIAGRAM HANDOUT



Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 12A-1 Sample Bivouac Site

Areas that will be used after dark should be lit using Glow Sticks, lanterns or flashlights.

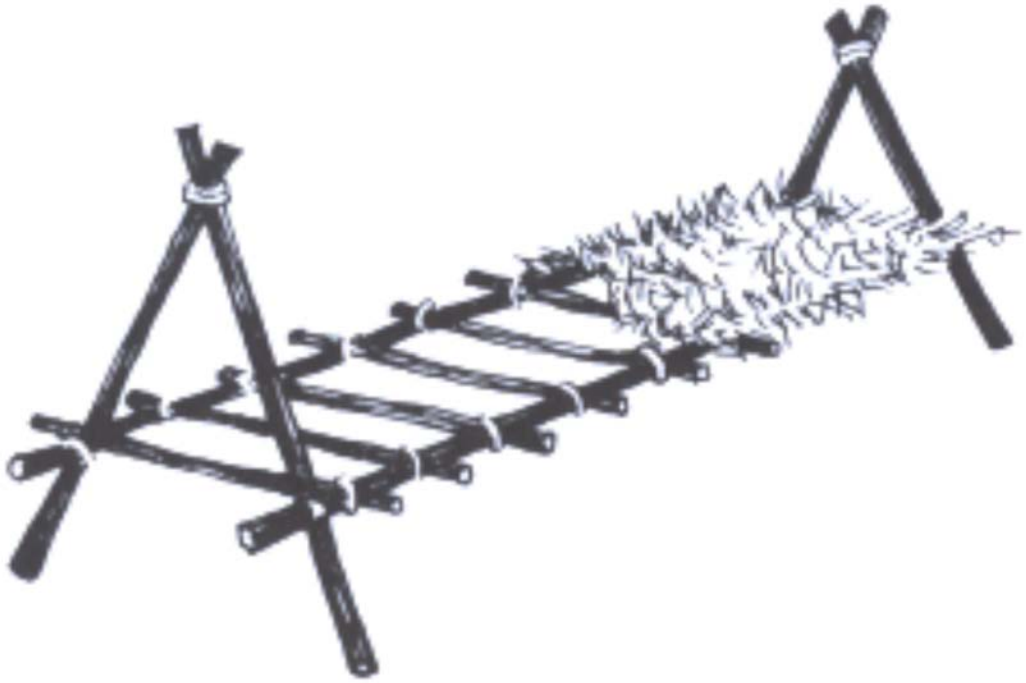
THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

FIELD AMENITIES

SWAMP BED

Using natural resources and cord, a ladder bed can be constructed. Steps to constructing a ladder bed are:

1. Collect natural resources, to include:
   a. four poles 75–100 cm long to construct the A-frames,
   b. two sturdy poles approximately 180 cm long to make the frame. Length will depend on the height of the person, and
   c. several cross pieces 50–60 cm long, the more flexible the better; number will depend on the size of the person.
2. Construct two A-frame supports using round lashings.
3. Attach the two frame poles to the A-frames, ensuring that the knots and wood are strong and will hold the weight of the individual.
4. Tie the cross pieces making a ladder along the frame.
5. Lay a bedding of boughs, leaves or moss, as desired. Ensure there is enough material to prevent heat being transferred away from the body during the night.



J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 309)

Figure 12B-1 Swamp Bed

PACK FRAME

Using natural resources, cord and two straps, a pack frame can be constructed. Steps to constructing a pack frame:

1. Collect natural resources, including:
    a. two poles to make the frame 75–100 cm long, (length will depend on the height of the person),
    b. several cross pieces 50–60 cm long, (length and number will depend on the size of the person), and
    c. five pieces (two 15–20 cm long , two 50 cm long and one 50–60 cm long) to construct the right angle projection at the bottom.
2. Construct the ladder frame to the size of the individual.
3. Construct the right angle projection at the bottom and ensure the knots and wood are strong and will not break with a load.
4. Attach straps made from cord or from improvisation and adjust it to a comfortable position.

J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 372)

Figure 12B-2 Pack Frame

MEAT-DRYING RACK

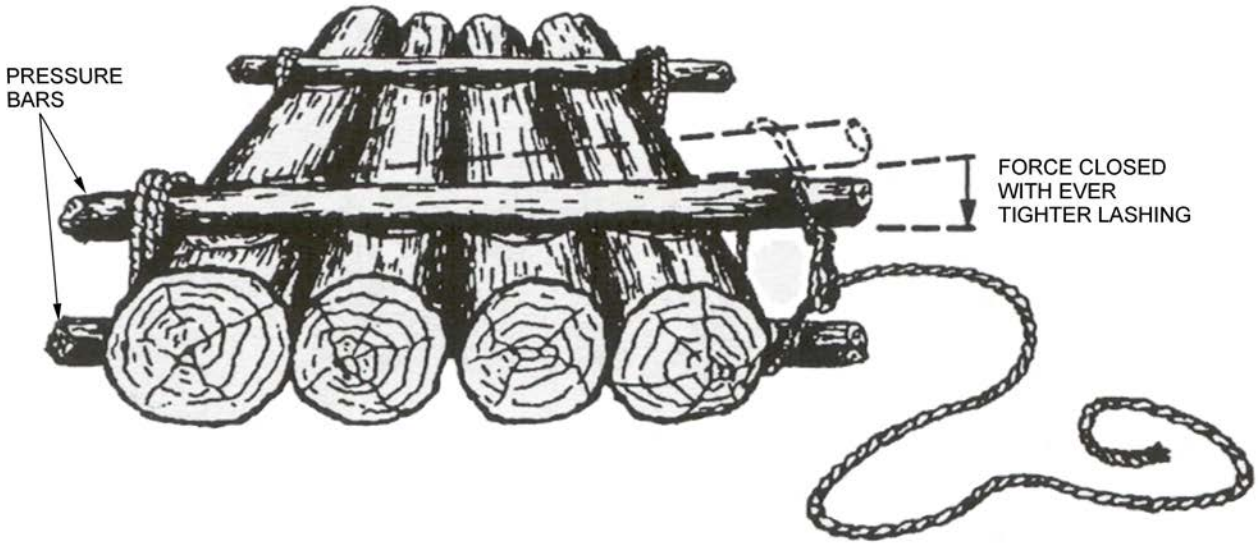
J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 372)

Figure 12B-3 Meat-Drying Rack

Using natural materials and cord a meat-drying rack can be constructed (as illustrated in Figure 12B-3).

1. Collect natural resources, to include:
    a. three poles approximately 3 m long,
    b. three poles approximately 2 m long,
    c. two poles approximately 1.5 m long, and
    d. fourteen poles approximately 0.5 m long.
2. Construct a figure-of-eight lashing around the three long pieces of wood, to make a tripod.
3. Construct the drying rack, using square lashings.
4. Attach the drying rack portion to the long poles, using square lashings.

RAFT



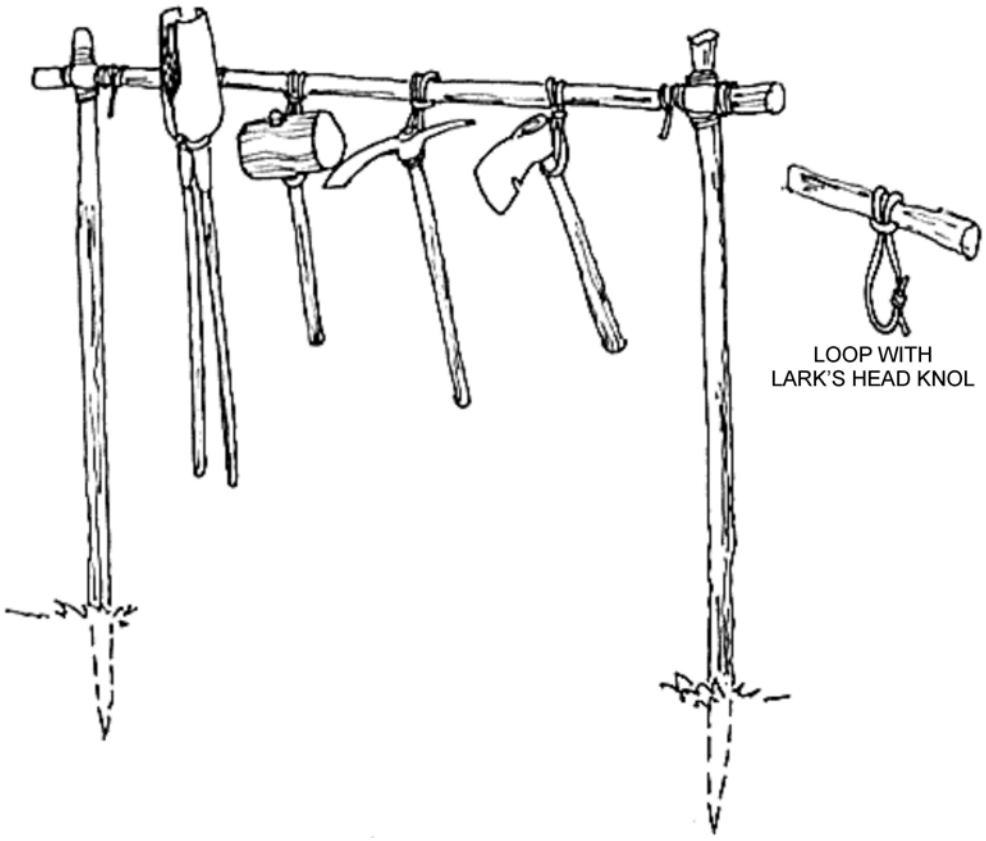
The Department of the Army, U.S. Army Survival Handbook, The Lyons Press (p. 278)

Figure 12B-4 Raft

1. Find a large area.
2. Obtain the following resources:
   a. three to six 3 m (9.84 feet) dry logs,
   b. two smaller logs 1.5 m (7–8 feet), and
   c. large quantity of twine.
3. Begin by placing three to five logs parallel to each other.
4. Lash the logs together using a figure-of-eight lashing.
5. Place smaller logs at each end of the logs perpendicular to the logs. Lash the pressure bars to the raft body.

Dry, dead, standing trees are the best logs for making rafts.

TOOL RACK



Pioneering Projects.org by A. Miller, 2004, Projects, Copyright 2001 from PioneeringProjects.org. Retrieved March 5, 2008, from http://www.pioneeringprojects.org/projects/index.htm

Figure 12B-5 Tool Rack

A tool rack will keep tools off of the ground and prevent them from rusting or becoming dull too quickly. By having tools kept in one place they are less likely to go missing and site safety is increased.

Using natural resources and cord, a tool rack can be constructed. Steps to constructing a tool rack:

1. Collect the three poles 180 cm (5.9 feet) long from natural resources.
2. Start by driving two uprights into the ground or use two trees.
3. Lash a ridge pole between the two uprights to hang the tools from.
4. Tie pieces of cord into a loop using a reef knot and then loop it over the ridge pole (as illustrated in Figure 12B-5).

Another example (as illustrated in Figure 12B-6) has two crosspieces of wood for increased stability.

Scoutmaster, Knots and Pioneering, Copyright 2007 by Amazon.com, Inc. Retrieved November 18, 2007, from http://scoutmaster.typepad.com/.shared/image.html?/photos/uncategorized/chip5_copy_copy.jpg

Figure 12B-6 Tool Rack 2

CHAPTER 13

PO 322 – PLOT LOCATION ON A TOPOGRAPHICAL MAP USING A GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM RECEIVER

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 1

EO M322.01 – REVIEW RED STAR NAVIGATION

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

Mark off 100 m for pacing.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for this lesson to review the basic and background material covered during Red Star navigation.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have reviewed Red Star navigation, to include:

- describing bearings;
- identifying compass parts;
- setting declination;
- determining distance on a map;
- determining individual pace;
- orienting a map using a compass; and
- taking a magnetic bearing using a compass.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to participate in a review of Red Star navigation as it is a foundation for building subsequent navigation skills. The review will clarify any areas in question, providing an opportunity for cadets to work on their skills and retard progressive skill decay. Red Star navigation is an important aspect of expedition training and before learning new skills, the skills already taught should be reviewed. All cadets should take every opportunity to practice and refine these skills.

Teaching Point 1 **Conduct a Review of Red Star Navigation**

Time: 25 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Briefly review Red Star navigation without spending too much time on any one point.

POINTS OF THE COMPASS ROSE

Four Cardinal Points. Measured at right angles clockwise, they are:

1. north (N),
2. east (E),
3. south (S), and
4. west (W).

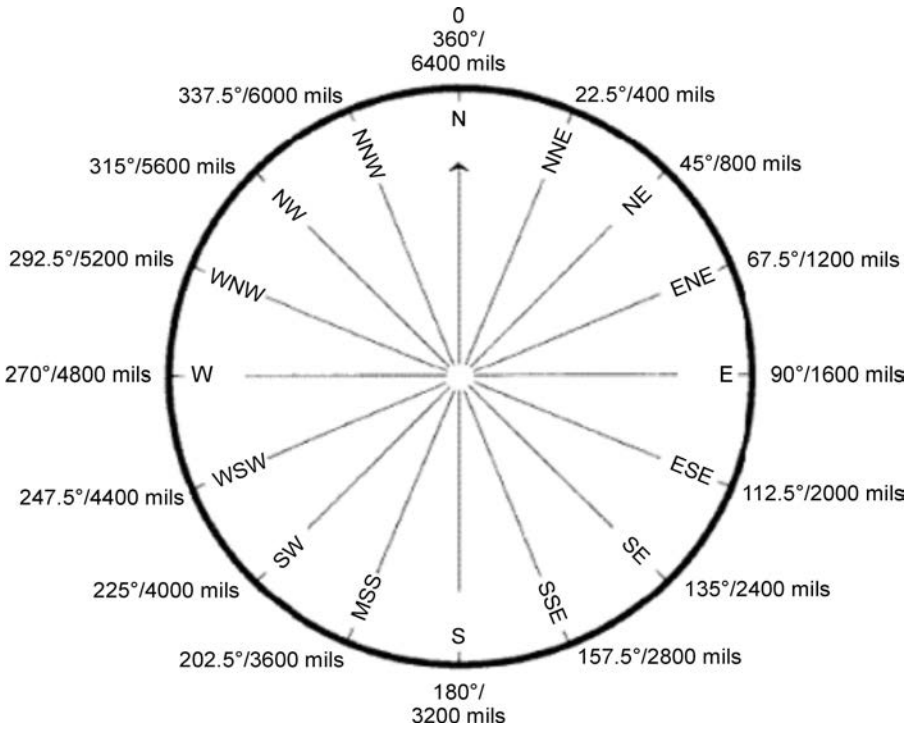
Four Inter-Cardinal Points. Located halfway between each of the cardinal points. Measured clockwise, they are:

1. northeast (NE),
2. southeast (SE),
3. southwest (SW), and
4. northwest (NW).

Eight Intermediate Points. Located halfway between each cardinal point and inter-cardinal point. Measured clockwise, they are:

1. north-northeast (NNE),
2. east-northeast (ENE),
3. east-southeast (ESE),
4. south-southeast (SSE),
5. south-southwest (SSW),

6. west-southwest (WSW),
7. west-northwest (WNW), and
8. north-northwest (NNW).



Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-1-1 Compass Rose

SCALES ON A COMPASS

To express direction in an accurate and precise method, the full circle of the compass rose is divided into equal measures of angle. This measurement starts and ends at north (top) and always moves in a clockwise rotation. There are two main scales used to measure a circle – degrees and metric milli-radian (mils).

Degrees. The most common method of dividing a circle. There are 360 equal angles in a complete circle and they are represented by the degree symbol (eg, 360°). On the compass rose, north is located at 0 and 360 degrees, east is located at 90 degrees, south is located at 180 degrees and west is located at 270 degrees.

Mils. When a more accurate division of the same circle is required, the mils method is used. The mils method has a military background and is based on the metric system with 6400 equal angles in a complete circle. On the compass rose, north is located at 0 and 6400 mils, east is located at 1600 mils, south is located at 3200 mils and west is located at 4800 mils.

There are 22.5 degrees or 400 mils between each point on a compass rose.

DEFINITION OF A BEARING

Bearing. An angle that is measured clockwise, from a fixed zero line; north is always this zero line. Simply, a bearing is just another name for an angle.

TYPES OF BEARINGS

Bearings are divided into three different types:

Grid Bearing. A bearing that is measured between two points on a map. The ability to measure a bearing from a map allows a map user to plan routes or activities before going into the field, and provides an easy method of communicating location or movement.

Magnetic Bearing. A bearing that is measured between two points using a compass. A magnetic bearing is a quick and efficient method of describing a route to take. The bearing alone is usually not enough information to navigate with and must also have distance or a target object.

Back Bearing. A bearing that is in the exact opposite direction of the bearing that has been measured. A back bearing can be useful for different reasons; to return to the start location after a hike, or to calculate the bearing from an object to one's current location. Depending on the compass being used, the steps to calculate a back bearing are:

1. When the bearing is less than 3200 mils or 180 degrees, add 3200 mils or 180 degrees.
2. When the bearing is greater than 3200 mils or 180 degrees, subtract 3200 mils or 180 degrees.

COMPASS PARTS

Refer to Figure 13-1-2 or an actual compass to identify the parts of a compass with the cadets.

A - Sight. Located at the top of the compass cover, used to align an objective or bearing.

B - Compass Cover. Protects the compass dial and houses the sighting mirror.

C - Sighting Mirror. Used to see the compass dial while setting a bearing.

D - Sighting Line. Used when aligning the objective or bearing.

E - Luminous Index Point. Located at the top of the compass dial and is where a bearing is set and read from.

F - Compass Dial. Houses the magnetic needle, the orienting arrow and the declination scale on the inside and the dial graduations on the outside.

G - Dial Graduations. The compass dial is graduated in 50 mil divisions from 0 to 6400 mils, or two degree divisions from 0 to 360 degrees. The dial is rotated by hand.

H - Orienting Arrow. The red orienting arrow is located inside the compass dial and is used to line up the magnetic needle. The orienting arrow is always set at 00 mils/degrees.

I - Romer 1 : 25 000. Used to measure a grid reference (GR) on a map with a 1 : 25 000 scale.

J - Compass Base Plate. Clear piece of flat plastic, to which the cover, dial and lanyard are attached.

K - Declination Scale. Used to compensate for the variation of magnetic declination between the compass and the map being used.

L - Compass Meridian Lines. Black or red lines inside the compass dial and are used to line up the compass dial with the grid lines on a map.

M - Magnetic Needle. Spins freely and points to magnetic north. The south end of the compass needle is black and the north end, with a luminous patch, is red. When the magnetic needle is lined up with the red orienting arrows, the mnemonic “Red in the Bed” is used to remember which end of the needle belongs between the arrows.

N - Luminous Orienting Points. There are two luminous orienting points located on either side of the orienting arrow.

O - Luminous Index Point. The luminous orienting point at the bottom of the compass dial, where a back bearing is read from.

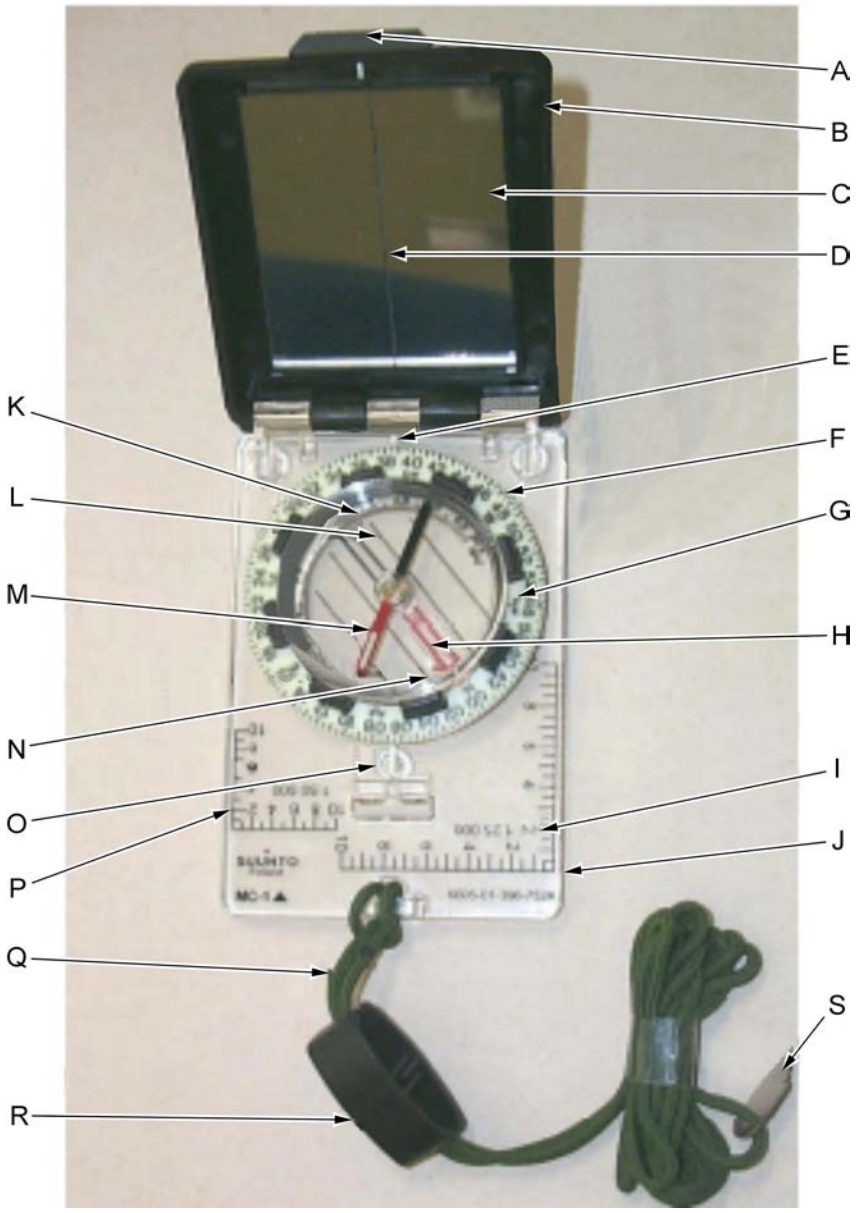
P - Romer 1 : 50 000. Used to measure a GR on a map with a 1 : 50 000 scale.

Q - Safety Cord or Lanyard. Used to fasten the compass to the body.

R - Adjustable Wrist Lock. Used to attach the compass to the wrist.

S - Screwdriver. The tiny screwdriver at the end of the safety cord is used to turn the screw to adjust the declination scale.

T - Declination Adjustment Screw. Located on the back side of the compass dial and is used to adjust the declination scale (not shown).



A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001, Royal Canadian Army Cadet Reference Book (p. 5-33)

Figure 13-1-2 Compass

SET DECLINATION ON A COMPASS

The compass's declination scale must be set to compensate for the difference between true north and magnetic north. To set declination on a compass the amount of declination adjustment in degrees east or west is needed. Turn the compass over and look at the back of the dial.

From the zero point, use the screwdriver on the end of the safety cord and turn the declination screw to the right for west and to the left for east declination. Each small black line is two degrees.

When setting declination on a compass, it is easier to hold the screwdriver and turn the compass, especially in cold weather. The declination shall never be turned past 90 degrees on the declination scale.

Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-1-3 Declination Screw

DETERMINE DISTANCE

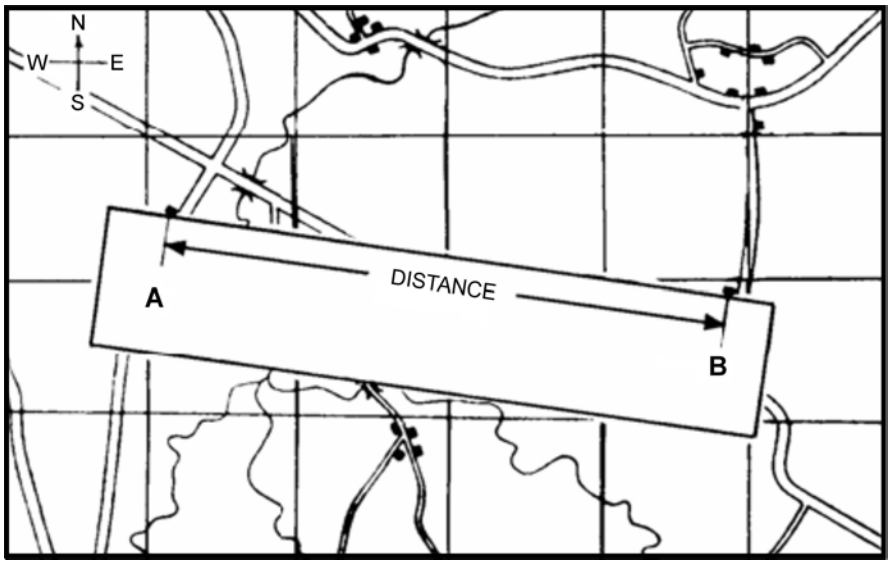
Determining Distance on a Map

Cadets can use their maps to measure the distance between two points on the ground. All maps are drawn to scale; therefore, a specified distance on a map equals a specified distance on the ground. The scale of a map is printed at the top and bottom of each map (eg, Scale 1 : 50 000). This means that 1 cm on the map equals 50 000 cm (500 m) on the ground.

There are two ways to determine distance on a topographical map – point-to-point and along a route.

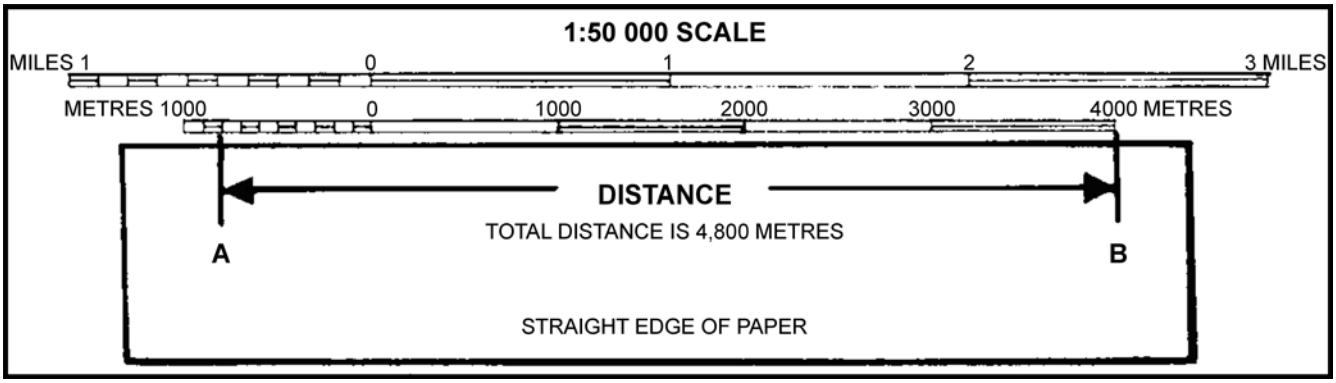
Measuring Point-to-Point. To measure a distance point-to-point:

1. Lay the straight edge of a piece of paper against the two points.
2. With a sharp pencil, mark the paper at the A (start) and B (finish) points.
3. Lay the paper just under the scale bar (metres) and move the B mark backwards to each thousands mark until the A mark falls within the subdivided thousands (hundreds) to the left of the zero.
4. To calculate the total distance, add the number of thousands where the B mark is, plus the number of subdivided thousands where the A mark is to the left of the zero.



A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001 (p. 5-24)

Figure 13-1-4 Measuring Distance Point-to-Point



A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001 (p. 5-25)

Figure 13-1-5 Calculating Distance

For a distance that is longer than 5 000 m, measure the first 5 000 m and mark the paper with a new line and label it ‘5 000 m’. Place the new mark at the zero or thousands mark until the A mark fits within the subdivided thousands bar. Add the total of that distance to the 5 000 m and that will be the total distance.

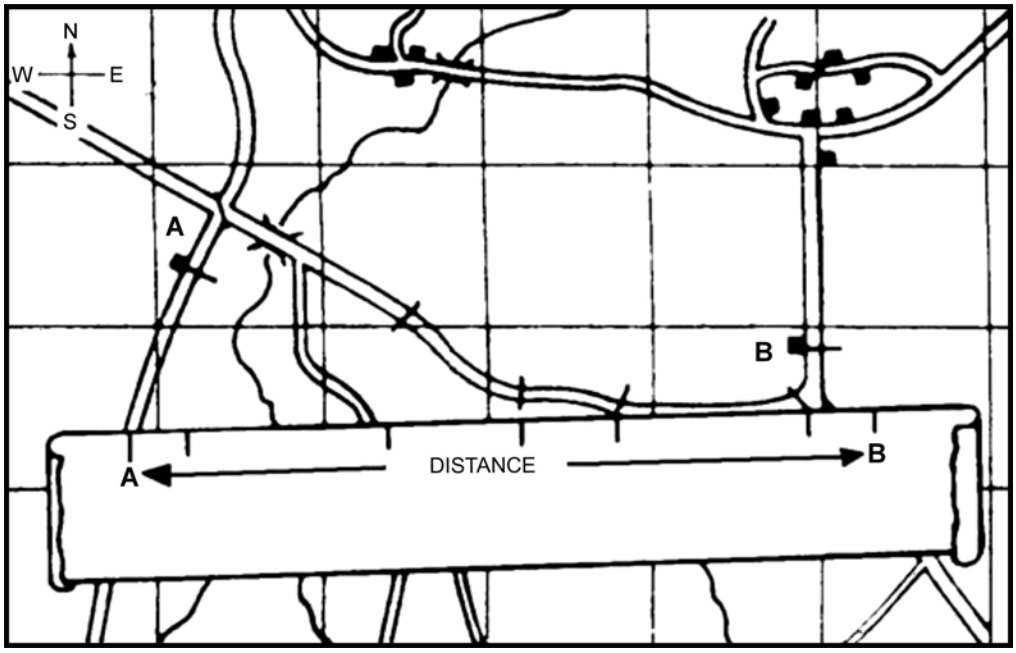
Measuring Along a Route. Sometimes the cadets need to find the distance between A and B around curves in a road or along a planned route. To measure a distance along a route between two points:

1. Lay the straight edge of a piece of paper against point A.
2. With a sharp pencil, mark point A on the paper and the map.
3. Line up the paper with the edge of the road until you come to a curve and make another mark on the paper and on the map.
4. Pivot the paper so that it continues to follow the road edge. Repeat until you reach point B.

5. Mark your paper and the map at point B.

6. Lay the paper just under the scale bar (metres) and move the B mark backwards to each thousands mark until the A mark falls within the subdivided thousands to the left of the zero.

7. Adding the number of thousands where the B mark is, plus the number of subdivided thousands where the A mark is to the left of the zero, will determine the total distance.



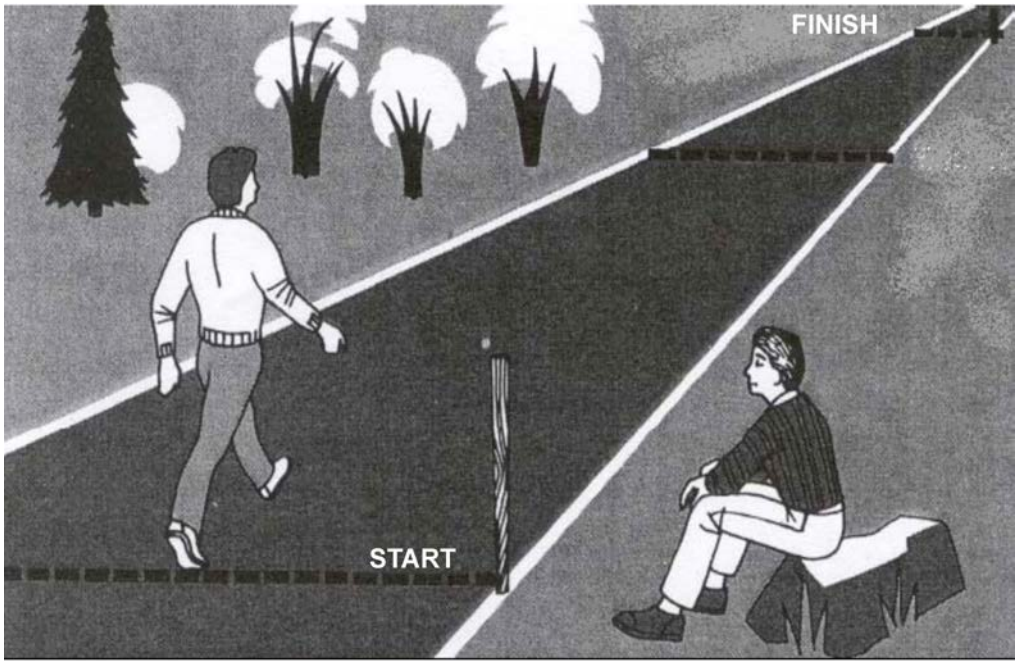
A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001 (p. 5-25)

Figure 13-1-6 Measuring Distance Along a Route

Determining Individual Pace

Pace Counting Method (Pacing). Used for measuring a given distance by counting every other step. Two steps equal one pace. Pacing is a very important skill in navigation, as each person has a different pace and needs to establish their pace before it can become a useful measurement tool. Pacing varies between individuals as it uses a natural stride – an average adult will pace about 60–70 paces in 100 m.

To determine an individual pace, practice taking uniform, comfortable steps over a measured distance (100 m) counting every second step of the dominant foot. Do this three to five times to get an average. This will be the individual's pace number and should be remembered.



B. Kjellstrom, Be Expert with Map & Compass, Hungry Minds, Inc. (p. 53)

Figure 13-1-7 Determining Distance Using Pacing

Remember, pacing is an approximation. A margin of error of 1–2 percent is considered reasonable (eg, 10–20 m for every 1 km walked).

Factors That Affect Pacing

Pacing can be affected by different factors and the count may vary. Some of the factors and the affect on individual pacing are:

- **Topography.** This is the most common factor. Walking through mud, thick bush and tall vegetation can shorten the paces.
- **Slopes.** Walking uphill will shorten paces, while walking downhill can lengthen paces.
- **Fatigue.** Pacing may change from natural in the morning, when cadets are rested, to shorter in the afternoon as they start to get tired.
- **Equipment.** Equipment could affect pacing, such as the wrong type of footwear. Too much or too little clothing and the amount of equipment being carried can shorten the paces.
- **Weather.** Heavy rain, wind velocity, temperature and snow can shorten the paces.

Pacing beads can be used to keep track of the distance walked. One bead is moved for every 100 m walked. If pacing beads are not available, stones can be used by moving them from one pocket to another to count every 100 m.

ORIENT A MAP USING A COMPASS

To orient a map using a compass:

1. set the current declination on the compass;
2. set the compass dial to read 00 (zero) mils or 0 degrees (north);
3. lay the compass flat on the map with the cover open;
4. point the mirror to north (top of the map);
5. align one side of the base plate with an easting line; and
6. turn the map and compass together until the red end of the magnetic needle is over the orienting arrow.

> The mnemonic used to remember putting the magnetic needle over the orienting arrow is "Red in the Bed".

Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-1-8 Set Declination

Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-1-9 Set Compass to 00

Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-1-10 Turn Until Red is in the Bed

TAKE A MAGNETIC BEARING

A compass can be used to identify the cardinal points such as north and south, the direction of travel and the bearing from one's current location to a prominent object. However, the ability to take a magnetic bearing of a prominent object and to use that information to help identifying one's general location can save hours when trekking. A magnetic bearing is a quick method for determining the direction of travel.

There are two ways to determine a magnetic bearing.

To determine the magnetic bearing of a prominent object:

1. Check and set the predetermined declination on the compass.
2. Hold the compass at eye level, at arms length, and face the prominent object.
3. Aim at the object using the compass sight, ensuring the sighting line is in line with the index pointer.
4. Adjust the compass cover so the compass dial is seen in the sighting mirror.
5. Look in the mirror and turn the compass dial until the magnetic needle is over the orienting arrow (red in the bed).
6. Read the number on the compass dial at the luminous index pointer. The magnetic bearing of the prominent object is read at the luminous index pointer.

A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001 (p. 5-42)

Figure 13-1-11 Taking a Magnetic Bearing

To determine a magnetic bearing on a map:

1. Set the predetermined declination on the compass.
2. Identify and mark the start (point A) and finish (point B) points on a map.
3. Draw a plotting line from point A to point B.
4. Lay the fully opened compass with the edge of the compass base plate along the plotting ray, in the direction of travel (point A to point B).
5. Hold the compass in place, rotate the compass dial so that the compass meridian lines align with the easting lines on the map, ensuring north on the dial indicates north on the map.
6. Read the number on the compass dial at the luminous index pointer.

Prior to determining a magnetic bearing on a map, it is good practice to first estimate the bearing by drawing a quick compass rose and looking at where the bearing would be on the compass rose. This serves as a good check to ensure the cadet has not accidentally measured the back bearing.

If the bearing is taken from point B to point A, the compass will be pointing 180 degrees or 3200 mils in the exact opposite direction of travel wanted. This is also called a back bearing.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadets' participation in the review will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the review will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Map-reading skills take a great deal of practice in order for a person to become efficient using them in the field. Throughout expeditions, cadets will always be required to navigate routes. Take each and every opportunity to practice map and compass skills, whether it is navigating a route or even riding a bike. The skills learned in Green and Red Star navigation are building blocks. There are still many more navigation skills to acquire.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Assistant instructors may be required for this lesson.

REFERENCES

A2-041 B-GL-382-005/PT-001 Canadian Forces. (2006). *Maps, Field Sketching, Compasses and the Global Positioning System*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C0-011 Canadian Orienteering Federation. (1985). *Orienteering Level Two Coaching Certification*. Ottawa, ON: Canadian Orienteering Federation.

C2-041 (ISBN 0-07-136110-3) Seidman, D., & Cleveland, P. (1995). *The Essential Wilderness Navigator*. Camden, ME: Ragged Mountain Press.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 2

EO M322.02 – CALCULATE MAGNETIC DECLINATION

Total Time: 60 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Photocopy the handout located at Annex A for each cadet.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 to orient the cadet to calculating magnetic declination and to present basic material.

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TP 2 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate calculating magnetic declination while providing an opportunity for the cadets to practice calculating magnetic declination under supervision.

An in-class activity was chosen for TP 3 as it is an interactive way to reinforce calculating magnetic declination.

INTRODUCTION

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have calculated magnetic declination.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to know how to calculate magnetic declination and set it on a compass as it provides the cadet with confidence that they will arrive at their destination when navigating on a bearing. Not accounting for declination may affect navigation, as the cadet may travel off route. For every one degree of error in declination setting, a person would be approximately 52 m off of for every km travelled.

Teaching Point 1 **IAW M222.02 (Describe Bearings) Review Magnetic Declination and the Three Norths**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Magnetic declination was identified in M222.03 (Identify Compass Parts, A-CR-CCP-702/PF-001, Chapter 12, Section 3) however, it must be discussed again to support calculating magnetic declination.

Magnetic Declination

Magnetic declination is the difference between true north (map) and magnetic north (compass). It is caused by the different locations of the geographic north pole and the magnetic north pole plus any local anomalies such as iron deposits.

Map users will identify the declination in the marginal information through a declination diagram depicting the true, grid, and magnetic bearing of any line within the area of the map sheet.

Declination will change annually due to the shifting magnetic pole. There are only two lines in the northern hemisphere where magnetic and true north line up equalling declination of zero degrees. One line runs through central Canada and the other through Russia.

Grid Magnetic Angle

Grid magnetic angle is the horizontal angular difference between grid north and magnetic north. This is the number that is applied when converting from magnetic to grid bearings.

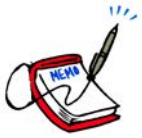
Annual Magnetic Change

Due to the dynamic forces on the earth, magnetic north continually migrates. Subsequently an annual adjustment/calculation must be made to obtain the correct grid angle at the date of use. The amount of adjustment, to be made, is provided in the declination diagram.

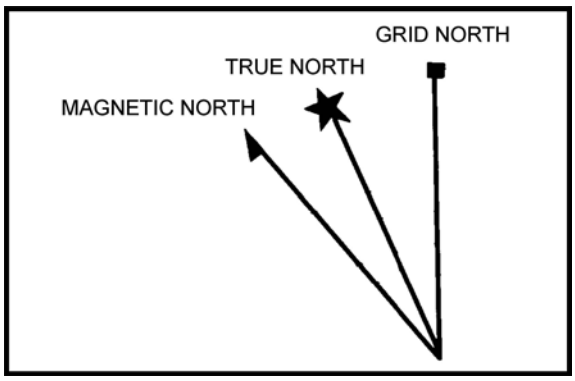
This change is significant as adjustments to a compass may be required. This is known as “setting the declination.” Bearings and directions taken from the map would not be accurate if the magnetic change is not taken into account. All maps have the required information to calculate the declination and this information is found in the margin of the map.

Review the three norths. This material was covered in M222.02 (Describe Bearings, A-CR-CCP-702/PF-001, Chapter 12, Section 2).

In navigation, there are three different norths – true north, grid north and magnetic north. Each north varies from each other and must be known for navigation. A diagram representing the three norths can be found in the margin of the map being used.



Draw Figure 13-2-1 on a visual aid and draw the symbol for each north as it is explained to the cadets.



B-GL-382-005/PT-001, Canadian Forces, Maps, Field Sketching, Compasses and the Global Positioning System (p. 51)

Figure 13-2-1 Three Norths

True North. True north is located at the top of the earth where the geographic North Pole is found. It is the point at which the earth rotates on its axis and is where all lines of longitude meet. In the diagram on the map, true north is represented by a star (Polaris).

Grid North. Grid north is the north indicated by the grid lines (eastings) on a topographical map. Eastings are lines that run parallel to each other and will never meet at the North Pole; because of this, grid north points off slightly from true north. Grid north is symbolized by a square on the declination diagram.

Magnetic North. Magnetic north is the direction in which the compass needle points. This direction is to the magnetic pole which is located in the Canadian arctic and is slightly different from true north (North Pole). Magnetic north is symbolized by an arrow or half arrow head on the declination diagram.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. Explain true north.

Q2. What symbol on a declination diagram represents magnetic north?

Q3. What is annual magnetic change?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. It is the point at which the earth rotates on its axis. The geographic north pole or true north is located at the top of the earth where the lines of longitude converge. On a map, the direction of true north is shown by the lines of longitude. True north is symbolized by a star on the declination diagram.

A2. Magnetic north is represented by an arrow.

A3. Due to the dynamic forces on the Earth magnetic north continually migrates. Subsequently an annual adjustment/calculation must be made to obtain the correct grid angle at the date of use.

Teaching Point 2 **Demonstrate, Explain and Have the Cadet Practice Calculating Magnetic Declination**

Time: 20 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Provide guidance to the cadets when learning to calculate magnetic declination. Use the provided steps and follow the sample calculations provided below.

CALCULATE THE MAGNETIC DECLINATION

Locate the Declination Diagram and Information

Calculating current declination uses the information provided by the declination diagram on a map and the information printed directly underneath. This diagram is most often found, on the right side of the map in the marginal information.

Calculate Declination

To calculate declination use the angle between magnetic north and grid north – ignoring true north. This is because bearings taken from a map use grid north as their point of reference. The annual change noted under the diagram will be either “increasing” (the declination is getting larger), or “decreasing” (getting smaller). The total annual change will then be added or subtracted from the declination printed on the map, to get the current declination.

The degree system of bearings shares some structure and terminology with units of time. There are:

- 360 degrees in a circle, written as **360°**,
- 60 minutes in a degree, written as **60'**, and
- 60 seconds in a minute, written as **60"**.

It is common to divide degrees into minutes, instead of seconds (eg, 1.5' instead of 1'30").

The steps to calculate magnetic declination are:

Step 1. Identify how long it has been since the map information was current by:

1. **Identifying the Current Year**. This is the actual current calendar year.
2. **Identifying Year of Declination Information**. This date is found under the declination diagram defined as the “approximate mean declination”.
3. **Recording the Difference in Years**. Subtract the approximate mean declination year from the current year.

Step 2. Determine how much declination has changed since the map was current by:

4. **Multiplying the Difference in Years by the Annual Change**. Take the difference in years and multiply it by the annual change.

Step 3. Update the map declination with the amount of change calculated by:

5. **Determining if the Annual Change is Increasing or Decreasing**. The annual change found under the declination diagram also indicates whether the annual change is increasing or decreasing in degrees and minutes.

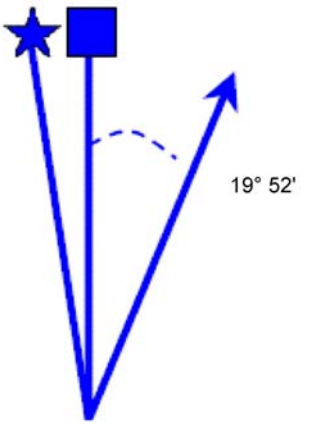
6. **Adding or Subtracting the Annual Change from the Original Declination**. The original declination is found on the declination diagram. It is the numbers represented in minutes and degrees between grid north and magnetic north. Were the change is increasing add to the map declination, if the change is decreasing subtract from the map declination.

Step 4. Set the current declination on the compass by:

7. **Determining if Declination is East or West**. This determines what direction the declination must be set on a compass. East or west is determined by looking at the declination diagram and identifying true north and magnetic north. The side magnetic north falls on represents east or west declination. Right side is east, left side is west.

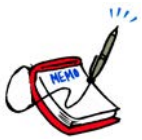
8. **Setting the Calculated Declination on a Compass**. On the back side of the compass there is a declination adjusting screw, adjust the declination adjusting screw to the calculated declination east or west.

The zero declination line (agonic line) runs west of Hudson Bay, near Churchill, Manitoba. Therefore, maps east of here can assume a declination to the west and maps west will assume a declination to the east.



Department of National Defence, Instructional Guide (IG) DP1–Cadet Instructors Cadre (CIC) Environmental Performance Requirements–Land, Department of National Defence (p. 84)

Figure 13-2-2 Declination Diagram Sample



When the declination is recorded in writing, it is written in degrees and minutes. Degrees is represented by a number followed by a small circular symbol (eg, 19°) The same is true for minutes as the number is followed by an apostrophe (eg, 52').

Example With East Declination (Figure 13-2-2). The declination as of 1991 is 19° 52' East and the annual change is decreasing 7.0'. The magnetic declination is calculated as:

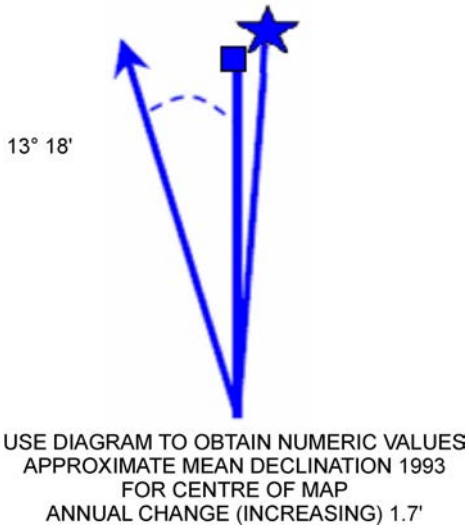
Current year:	2010
Year of declination information:	- 1991
Difference in years:	19
Difference in years:	19
Annual change:	x 7.0'
Total change:	133' or 2°13'

The total change is converted from 133' minutes to 2°13' because there are 60' in a degree.

Annual change is decreasing so it is subtracted from the original declination:

Original declination:	E 19° 52'
Total change:	- 2° 13'
Current declination:	E 17° 39'

This tells us that the magnetic needle on a compass will point to the east of grid north by 17 degrees and 39 minutes, for the area depicted on this map in 2010.



Department of National Defence, Instructional Guide (IG) DP1–Cadet Instructors Cadre (CIC) Environmental Performance Requirements–Land, Department of National Defence (p. 84)

Figure 13-2-3 Declination Diagram Sample

Convert to degrees and minutes when there are 60' (minutes) or more.

Example With West Declination (Figure 13-2-3). The declination as of 1993 is 13° 18' West and the annual change increasing 1.7'. The magnetic declination is calculated as:

Current year:	2010
Year of declination information:	- 1993
Difference in years:	17
Difference in years:	17
Annual change:	x 1.7'
Total change:	28.9'

Annual change is increasing so it is added to the original declination:

Original declination:	W 13° 18'
Total change:	+ 28.9'
Current declination:	W 13° 46.9'(rounded to 47)

Round minutes up or down as required during calculations. (eg, at or over 0.5 minutes round up, under 0.5 minutes round down).

This tells us that the magnetic needle on a compass will point to the west of grid north by 13 degrees and 47 minutes, for the area depicted by this map in 2010.

It is possible to have a very small original declination and a larger total annual change, so that when calculated the current declination actually changed from what was originally a West declination to an East declination, or vice versa.

When subtracting, there are times when the equation cannot be completed without borrowing from the next figure in the line.

13° 12'
- 45'

To complete this equation, one degree (sixty minutes) must be borrowed from 13° to allow subtraction from 12'. When borrowing a degree (1° equals 60') reduce the degree portion by one and add 60' to the minute numbers.

12° 72'
- 45'
= 12° 27'

The equation can now be completed as seen above.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. Where is the declination diagram found on a topographical map?

Q2. How many minutes are in a degree?

Q3. When the annual change is decreasing what difference will this make to your calculations?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The declination diagram is located on the right side of the map in the marginal information.

A2. There are 60 minutes.

A3. When the annual change is decreasing it is subtracted from the original declination.

Teaching Point 3 — **Have the Cadet Calculate Magnetic Declination Using East and West Declination Examples**

Time: 30 min — Method: In-Class Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets practice calculating magnetic declination.

RESOURCES

Declination problem worksheet located at Annex A.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Distribute a worksheet to each cadet.
2. Have the cadets individually complete as many problems on the worksheet as possible in 20 minutes.
3. Correct the declination worksheet with the cadets using the answer key located at Annex B.
4. Answer questions, and calculate declination on a visual aid to clarify questions.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets' participation in the in-class activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' calculation of magnetic declination will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

Cadets are encouraged to complete or retry any problems that they have experienced trouble with.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO will be assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 5 (322 PC).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Knowing how to calculate magnetic declination adds to basic map and compass skills and will allow cadets to plan route marches and navigate confidently during field training exercises. Calculating magnetic declination builds on the essential navigation skills required of a cadet in the expedition stream.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Cadets may use a calculator for calculating declination.

REFERENCES

A2-041 B-GL-382-005/PT-001 Canadian Forces. (2006). *Maps, Field Sketching, Compasses and the Global Positioning System*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 3

EO M322.03 – IDENTIFY COMPONENTS OF THE GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS)

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for this lesson to orient the cadets to the components of the GPS and to present background material.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have identified the components of the GPS.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to be able to identify the components of the GPS so they have the background knowledge and information required to effectively operate a GPS receiver when navigating.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss the GPS**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

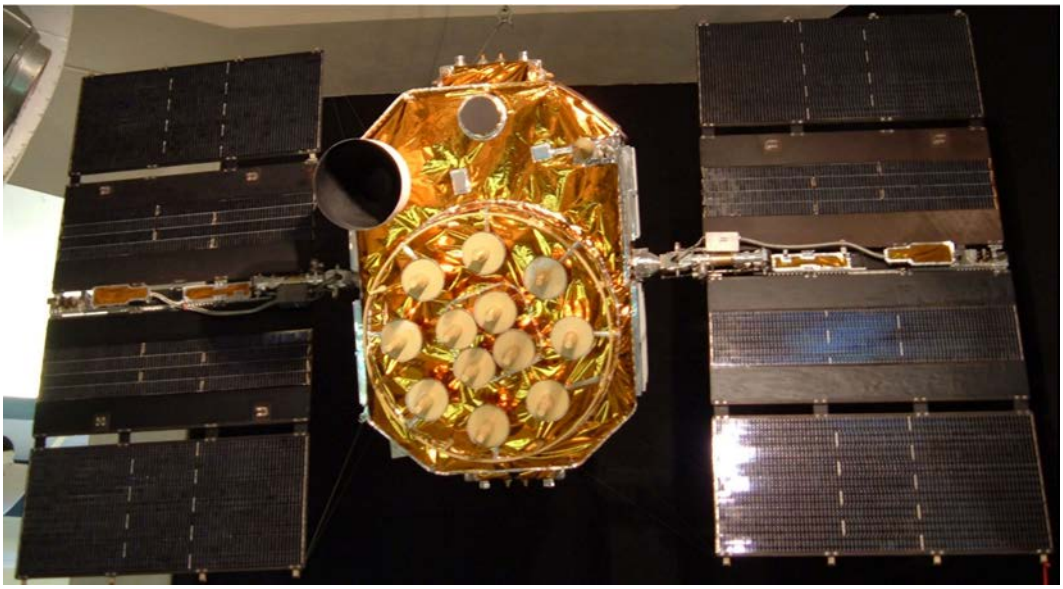
Determine the level of understanding cadets have of the GPS by carrying out a short discussion.

It is expected that most cadets will assume the GPS is the unit a person looks at to determine position. Prior to moving to TP 2 ensure cadets understand that the GPS is a constellation of satellites and is comprised of many components.

WHAT THE GPS IS

Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) is the generic term for satellite navigation systems that provide autonomous geo-spatial positioning with global coverage. The Global Positioning System (GPS) is a constellation of satellites, ground stations and receivers created, owned and operated by the United States. This system is used to navigate and enables anyone with a GPS receiver to know where they are 24 hours a day in any kind of weather.

The GPS is a group of 21 satellites (and three spares) that orbits the Earth and sends radio signals from their positions above the Earth back to Earth's surface. A GPS receiver is an electronic device that detects the radio signals from the satellites and calculates the receiver's position on the Earth. It is capable of giving location, speed, time and altitude.



"Wikipedia", Global Positioning System Satellite. Retrieved March 27, 2008, from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Global_Positioning_System_satellite.jpg

Figure 13-3-1 GPS Satellite

The United States GPS is not the only satellite navigation system currently deployed in space. Other nations that have begun or have established a similar satellite navigation system are:

- European Union – GALILEO Satellite System,
- Russian – GLONASS System, and

- Chinese – Beidou System.

HOW THE GPS WORKS

The system is divided into three parts or segments: space, ground control and users. The space segment consists of 24 satellites that orbit 20 200 km above the Earth and send radio signals toward Earth. The radio signals broadcast the position of each satellite in the sky with an electronic code.

Each satellite performs a relatively simple primary task: it transmits a timing signal using its built-in atomic clock. When a device on the ground receives that signal, it can determine its distance from the satellite.

That single measurement alone does not accomplish much, but when a GPS receiver collects timing signals from three different satellites the receiver can determine two precise coordinates: latitude and longitude. With four satellite signals, the GPS receiver is able to determine altitude as well.

A GPS receiver is also capable of determining more than latitude, longitude, and altitude. It can also determine other variables such as speed and heading.

COMPONENTS OF THE GPS

Satellites

The GPS and its satellites have the following characteristics:

- The minimum number of satellites that are required to cover the entire Earth is 18, however the number of satellites in orbit fluctuates between 24 and 29 satellites due to spares and upgrading.
- Satellites orbit in a semi-synchronous orbit (orbits are coordinated, but not identical).
- Each satellite completes an orbit every 12 hours.
- Satellites orbit the Earth at 20 200 km (12 552 miles) (airplanes routinely fly at 11–13 km [37 000–43 000 feet], the shuttle orbits at 370 km [230 miles]).
- Each satellite has three key pieces of hardware:
    - **Computer.** Controls its flight and order functions.
    - **Atomic Clock.** Keeps accurate time within three nanoseconds (approximately three-billionths of a second).
    - **Radio Transmitter.** Sends signals to Earth.

Ground Stations

The ground control segment of the GPS is comprised of five ground stations that track the satellites, monitor their condition and make any necessary adjustments to keep the system accurate. The entire system functions and is monitored by the US Department of Defence. Information from the stations are sent to a master control station – the Consolidated Space Operations Centre (CSOC) at Schriever Air Force Base in Colorado where the data is processed and adjustments are made. The five ground stations are in Hawaii, Colorado, Diego Garcia, Ascension Island and Kwajalein.

Receivers

GPS receivers make up the user segment. It is the GPS receiver, whether it is in an airplane, a truck, a boat or in a hiker's hand, that detects the radio signals from the satellites and calculates the receiver's position.

When a receiver is turned on, it interprets the radio signals and extracts the satellite location information. The GPS signal broadcasts information that tells the receiver the location of each satellite in the system. The receiver then interprets the radio signal to determine the exact time. This is required to calculate position.

The orbits of the GPS satellites ensure that there will be a minimum of four satellites covering any spot on the globe at all times. The receiver uses the signal from one satellite to continuously monitor and be synchronized with the time maintained by the other satellites. The receiver collects the signals from the other satellites and calculates the difference between them. This calculation positions the receiver from each satellite and triangulates its location. Based on a four satellite fix, the receiver will identify location giving the user latitude, longitude and altitude (altitude is only possible with a four satellite fix).

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What does GPS stand for?

Q2. What are ground stations responsible for?

Q3. How does a receiver calculate your position?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. GPS stands for Global Positioning System.

A2. Ground stations are responsible for tracking the satellites, monitoring their condition and making any necessary adjustments to keep the system accurate.

A3. The receiver uses the signal from one satellite to continuously monitor and be synchronized with the time maintained by the satellites. The receiver collects the signals from the other satellites and calculates the difference between them. This calculation positions the receiver from each satellite and triangulates its location. This location gives the user latitude, longitude and altitude.

Teaching Point 2 **Explain GPS Terminology**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

As cadets are introduced to and continue to use GPS receivers they may encounter the following terms. Explain the terms to the cadets and give examples where possible.

GPS. Global Positioning System, a constellation of 21 satellites (and three spares) used to determine location, speed, time and altitude.

Three-Dimensional (3D) Coordinate. Requires a four satellite signal lock, giving a position as determined by latitude, longitude, and altitude.

Assisted GPS (A-GPS). GPS with assistance from cellular technology. Found mostly in new GPS-equipped phones. A-GPS relies on cellular networks to help do some of the tracking because GPS signals will not penetrate indoors.

Differential GPS (DGPS). A stationary receiver working in conjunction with the satellites to correct errors in the timing signals, resulting in a more precise measurement of location.

Latitude. Imaginary parallel horizontal lines encircling the Earth, measuring 90 degrees north and 90 degrees south from the equator. The line at the equator represents zero degrees of latitude.

Longitude. Imaginary vertical lines running from the North Pole to the South Pole. The prime meridian (zero degrees longitude) runs through Greenwich, England, and serves as the reference line from which longitude is measured. Latitude and longitude create a grid covering the planet from which one can extrapolate coordinates.

Triangulation. What GPS receivers do to determine position based on data received from three or more GPS satellites.

Wide Area Augmentation Service (WAAS). Improves GPS accuracy and availability. WAAS was designed with aviation in mind as it improves a GPS receiver's accuracy to within three metres.

Waypoint. An intermediate position between the starting and destination points along a navigational route. If one makes three stops along the route to the final destination, the GPS receiver will consider each one of these stops a waypoint.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is a 3D coordinate?

Q2. What is triangulation?

Q3. What is a waypoint?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. A 3D coordinate is one's position as determined by latitude, longitude, and altitude.

A2. Triangulation is what a GPS receiver does to determine position based on data received from three or more GPS satellites.

A3. A waypoint is an intermediate position between the starting and destination points along a navigational route.

Teaching Point 3 **Discuss GPS Receivers and the Information They Provide**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

The GPS receiver is a piece of equipment that processes the signals sent from satellites. The information the receiver calculates from the signals can be used in many ways.

ACCURACY

The accuracy of a GPS receiver depends on the number of satellites from which signals are being recieved, and the use of augmentation systems. A GPS receiver without WAAS measures to an accuracy of 5 m (16.4 feet) 95 percent of the time, and with WAAS to an accuracy of 3 m (9.8 feet).

WAAS is most often found on GPS receivers for aircraft. Landing safely in fog is difficult without an accurate location of the runway.

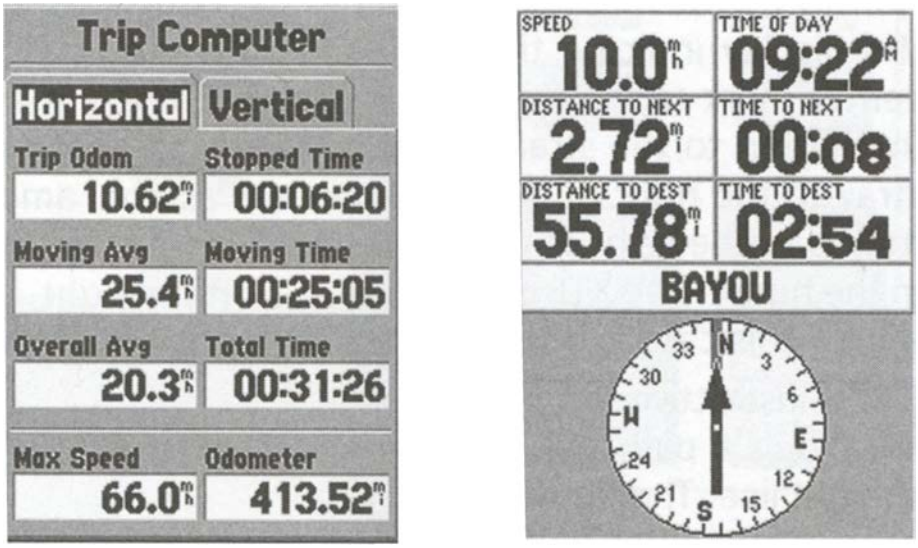
TIME

A GPS receiver receives time information from atomic clocks, so it is more accurate than a wristwatch. Receivers report a variety of times as navigation statistics, to include:

- **Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA).** The ETA is the time of day one will arrive at the destination (eg, 1230 hrs).
- **Estimated Time Enroute (ETE).** ETE tells how much longer one must travel before arriving at the destination and is measured in minutes or hours.

ETA and ETE are only useful when travelling in a straight line like in a boat or on a plane. However if a route is planned with waypoints to guide the route, the ETA and ETE timings will be accurate to follow.

- **Trip Time.** Also known as elapsed time, the trip timer measures time from the last time it was reset. This can be used to calculate average speed because it continues counting time regardless if a person is moving or not.
- **Time Moving.** The amount of time that speed is not zero. When you come to a stop, the timer stops counting. The time moving is used to calculate the average moving speed.
- **Time Not Moving.** The time not moving timer counts only when you are standing still. It represents the time you sit motionless. If the times on the time moving and the time not moving timers are added together, they should equal the trip timer.
- **Time of the Day.** All receivers provide the time of the day. The GPS satellites keep what is known as GPS time.



L. Letham, GPS Made Easy (4th ed.), The Mountaineers (p. 54–55)

Figure 13-3-2 Time Screens

LOCATION

GPS provides location in three dimensions:

- latitude (X-coordinate),
- longitude (Y-coordinate), and
- altitude.

The location can be displayed in a number of coordinate systems (eg, latitude/longitude, Universal Transverse Mercator [UTM]).

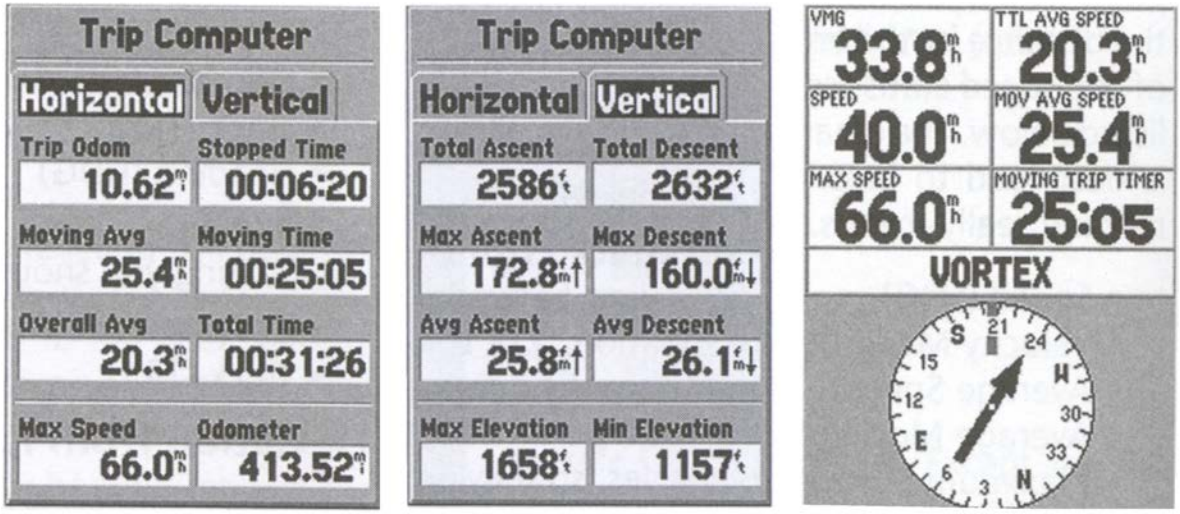
The altitude calculation of a consumer GPS receiver is not very accurate (+/- 15 m [49.2 feet]).

SPEED

A receiver measures the time and distance between the point where a person is and the point where the person was a short time ago, then divides the distance by the time it takes to travel there (speed = distance/time). Some of the speed statistics are:

- **Speed Over Ground (SOG).** The SOG (also known as ground speed) is just like the speed displayed by the speedometer in a car. It measures how fast you are going at that moment. Speed does not take into consideration if you are on course. It is a measurement of speed regardless of direction.
- **Velocity Made Good (VMG).** The speed at which the destination is approached. VMG takes into account the present course and destination.
- **Average Speed.** Divides the distance by the amount of time it took to travel that distance.
- **Average Moving Speed.** The average speed excluding the time the receiver stands still.

- **Maximum Speed.** The fastest speed travelled during the trip.
- **Vertical Speed.** The instantaneous speed measured for up and down movements only.
- **Average Ascent and Descent.** Much like average speed, the average ascent and descent is the distance of vertical movement divided by the amount of time to make the movement. It is the average rate of change in altitude.
- **Maximum Ascent and Descent.** The maximum rate of a vertical change in position.



L. Letham, GPS Made Easy (4th ed.), The Mountaineers (p. 54–55)

Figure 13-3-3 Speed Screens

DIRECTION OF TRAVEL

A GPS receiver can display the direction of travel if the receiver is moving. If the unit is stationary, it can not use satellite signals to determine which direction a person is facing.

Some GPS units have a electronic compass that shows the direction the receiver is pointed, whether moving or standing still. All directions calculated by a receiver can be expressed as a bearing or in degrees.

STORED LOCATION

Locations can be stored in the GPS receiver. It can store where a person has been and where a person wants to go. These location positions are waypoints. A GPS receiver can provide a person with directions and information on how to get to a waypoint.

CUMULATIVE DATA

A GPS receiver can keep track of information such as the route travelled, total distance travelled, average speed, minimum speed, elapsed time, and time to arrival at a specific location.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is the accuracy of a GPS receiver without WAAS?

Q2. What three dimensions will a GPS receiver report location in?

Q3. How does a GPS receiver calculate speed?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. A GPS receiver without WAAS measures to an accuracy of 5 m, 95 percent of the time.

A2. A GPS receiver provides location in the following three dimensions:

- latitude (X-coordinate),
- longitude (Y-coordinate), and
- altitude.

A3. A GPS receiver measures the time and distance between the point where a person is and the point where the person was a short time ago then divides the distance by the time it takes to travel there (speed = distance/time).

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is the GPS?

Q2. What is triangulation?

Q3. What is a waypoint?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The GPS is a constellation of 24 satellites orbiting the Earth, receivers and ground stations. They are used to determine location, speed and time.

A2. Triangulation is what GPS receivers do to determine their position based on data received from three or more GPS satellites.

A3. A waypoint is an intermediate position between the starting and destination points along a navigational route. If one makes three stops along the route to the final destination, the GPS receiver will consider each one of these stops a waypoint.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

GPS training will introduce cadets to a new tool to use while navigating. The GPS is a technological advancement that is continuously evolving to present new ways and methods of navigating. As these advances become available for the Cadet Program, cadets will be challenged to learn and apply them while navigating.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

It is recommended that this EO be instructed outside.

REFERENCES

C2-142 (ISBN 0-7645-6933-3) McNamara, J. (2004). *GPS for Dummies*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley Publishing, Inc.

C2-143 (ISBN 1-58923-145-7) Featherstone, S. (2004). *Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS*. Chanhassen, MN: Creative Publishing International, Inc.

C2-144 (ISBN 0-07-223171-8) Broida, R. (2004). *How to Do Everything With Your GPS*. Emerville, CA: McGraw-Hill.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 4

EO M322.04 – IDENTIFY FEATURES OF A GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS) RECEIVER

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Ensure GPS receivers are available and ready to use (eg, batteries charged).

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 to orient the cadets to components of a GPS receiver and to present background material.

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TP 2 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate how to scroll through the different screen pages of a GPS receiver while providing an opportunity for the cadets to practice under supervision.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

Choose three to five of the questions provided to review the material covered in EO M322.03 (Identify Components of the Global Positioning System [GPS], Section 3). If additional review is required to confirm understanding, continue with questions. Be mindful of the time remaining to complete this lesson.

QUESTIONS

Q1. What does the acronym GPS stand for?

Q2. What are ground stations responsible for?

Q3. How does a receiver calculate your position?

Q4. What is a 3D coordinate?

Q5. What is triangulation?

Q6. What is a waypoint?

Q7. What is the accuracy of a GPS receiver without WAAS?

Q8. What three dimensions will a GPS receiver provide location in?

Q9. How does a GPS receiver calculate speed?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. GPS stands for Global Positioning System.

A2. Ground stations are responsible for tracking the satellites, monitoring their condition and making any necessary adjustments to keep the system accurate.

A3. The receiver uses the signal from one satellite to continuously monitor, and be synchronized with, the time maintained by the satellites. The receiver collects signals from the other satellites and calculates the difference between them. This calculation positions the receiver from each satellite and triangulates its location. This location gives the user latitude, longitude and altitude.

A4. A 3D coordinate is one's position as determined by latitude, longitude, and altitude.

A5. Triangulation is what a GPS receiver does to determine position based on data received from three or more GPS satellites.

A6. A waypoint is an intermediate position(s) between the starting and destination points along a navigational route.

A7. A GPS receiver without WAAS measures to an accuracy of 5 m, 95 percent of the time.

A8. A GPS receiver provides location in the following three dimensions:

- latitude (X coordinate),
- longitude (Y coordinate), and
- altitude.

A9. To calculate speed a GPS receiver measures the time and distance between the point where a person was and the point where the person is and then divides the distance by the time to get to that speed (speed = distance/time).

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have identified features of a GPS receiver.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to know the features of a GPS receiver because GPS receivers will be used during expeditions for navigation and planning. The GPS is a navigational aid that will be used regularly.

Teaching Point 1 **Identify and Briefly Describe Components of a GPS Receiver**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Distribute GPS receivers. If there is not a receiver for each cadet, divide the cadets into groups so they may share.

Allow cadets to practice locating the information and pages being discussed.

The two terms “Point of Interest” and “Waypoints” mean the same thing – an intermediate position on a navigation map. In this lesson, the term “Point of Interest” will be used.

COMPONENTS OF A GPS RECEIVER

Antenna. Allows the GPS receiver to receive satellite signals.

Screen. Displays information.

Some GPS receivers use an arrow joystick that acts as a mouse, providing a simple to use interface with the GPS receiver.

Battery Compartment. Stores the receiver power supply.

The buttons in the following list are found on the Magellan eXplorist 200 GPS receiver. Other makes and models of GPS receivers may have different function buttons. Consult user manual for GPS receiver button functions.

BUTTONS

On/Off. Turns the receiver on and off.

Backlight. Turns the display backlight on and off and changes intensity.

Enter. Used to access highlighted menu items or highlighted page menu options.

Escape. Cancels, data inputs. Closes the accessed function and goes back to the previous screen and moves backward through the navigation screens.

Zoom In. Used on the map screen to zoom in on the map displayed. The map display can be zoomed in to 35 m (100 feet). Also used to move through the list of waypoints when using an alphabetical search.

Zoom Out. Used on the map screen to zoom out on the map displayed. The map display can be zoomed out to 2736 km (1700 miles). Also used to move through the list of waypoints when using an alphabetical search.

Menu. Displays a menu with available options. Options may be selected by using the arrow joystick to highlight the option and pressing “enter” to access it.

NAV. Moves through the navigation screens (Map screen, Compass screen, Position screen, Satellite screen).

Mark. Used to save present position as a waypoint. Waypoints are saved and stored in “My Points of Interest”.

GOTO. Creates a one-leg route from the present position to a destination selected from the POI database or by using the cursor on the background map and pressing GOTO on a point.

Arrow Joystick. Moves the cursor on the map screen. It also moves the highlighted bar to select menu options and data-entry fields.

Thales Navigation, Inc. Magellan eXplorist 200 Reference Manual, Thales Nav, Inc. (p. 1)

Figure 13-4-1 eXplorist 200 GPS Receiver

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. Name three components of a GPS receiver.

Q2. What is the purpose of the NAV button on the GPS receiver?

Q3. What is the GOTO button used for on the GPS receiver?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Three components of a GPS receiver may be any of the following:

- antenna,
- screen,
- battery compartment, and
- buttons, to include:
  - on/off,
  - backlight,
  - enter,
  - escape,
  - zoom in,
  - zoom out,
  - menu,
  - NAV,
  - mark,
  - GOTO, and
  - arrow joystick.

A2. The NAV button moves through the navigation screens (Map screen, Compass screen, Position screen, Satellite screen).

A3. The GOTO button creates a one-leg route from the present position to a destination selected from the POI database or by using the cursor on the background map.

Teaching Point 2 **Explain and Have the Cadets Scroll Through the Screen Pages on a GPS Receiver**

Time: 15 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

GPS receivers may differ in the way they present information, from unit to unit. Identify the screens that are similar to those contained in this TP, and have the cadets practice finding the different pages and the information they display.

Allow the cadets time to become familiar with the GPS receiver and its functions.

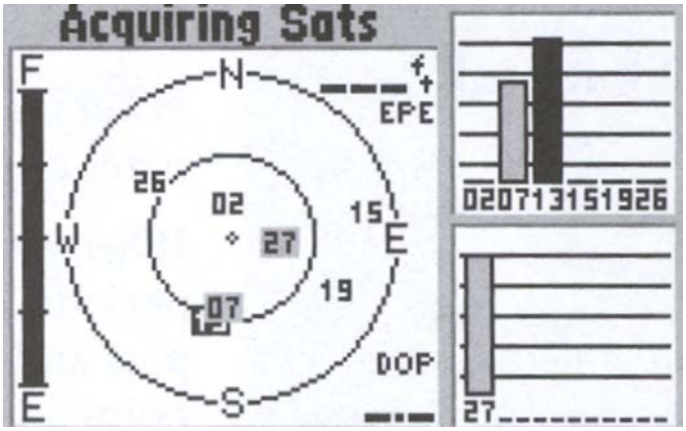
Note: The term “Page” refers to the different screens an operator can scroll through to locate different information in a GPS receiver.

SATELLITE STATUS

The satellite status screen displays the acquisition of satellites (satellite signal strength and satellite geometry) and the progress of the collection of satellite data. The receiver is constantly monitoring satellites. The display on the satellite status page graphically depicts the activity.

As new satellites come into view, a new bar appears in the graph. Bars that were solid minutes ago disappear as satellites pass over the horizon. If a satellite is being monitored but not used, the bar will appear hollow. On Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) enabled GPS receivers, the WAAS satellite signal strength is indicated on its own bar on the graph. On this page it is common for GPS receivers to display the following information:

- satellite signal strengths,
- battery strength, and
- estimated position error (EPE).



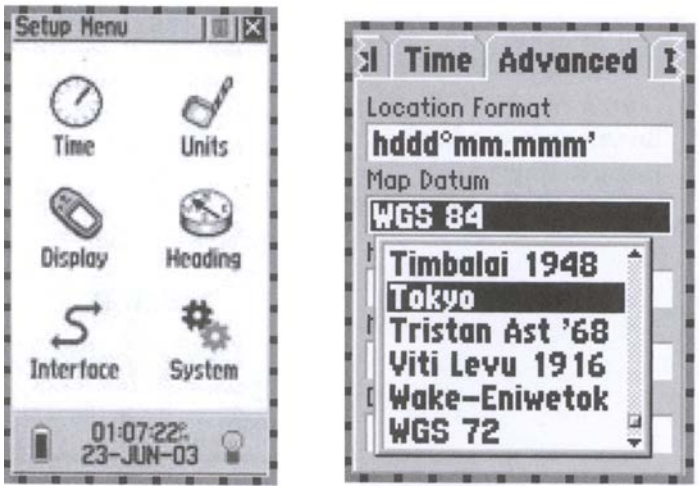
S. Featherstone, Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS, Creative Publishing International, Inc. (p. 45)

Figure 13-4-2 Satellite Status Page

MENU

This page is used for customizing the GPS receiver. All data fields can be changed to give a person the information they require including waypoints, routes, time and speed, etc. On this page it is common for GPS receivers to display the following information:

- customization options for the GPS receiver,
- waypoints and routes, and
- map datum.



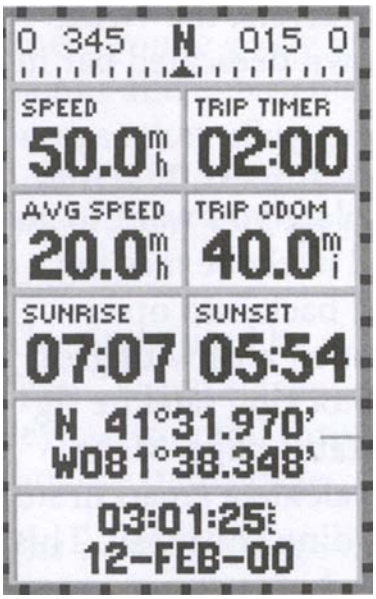
S. Featherstone, Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS, Creative Publishing International, Inc. (p. 54)

Figure 13-4-3 Menu Page

POSITION

The position page is used for confirming coordinates, datum, time, date, and the EPE. This page is used infrequently, for brief periods, mostly in planning and after marking a waypoint. No easy-to-understand graphics, like a compass rose, are displayed. This page is not ideally laid out for user-friendly navigation.

After acquiring enough satellites to begin navigating, many GPS receivers automatically go to the position page or the map page. In addition to the information mentioned above, an operator may find current speed, heading and a trip odometer. On some GPS receivers the information displayed can be changed.



S. Featherstone, Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS, Creative Publishing International, Inc. (p. 46)

Figure 13-4-4 Position Page

COMPASS NAVIGATION

This page shows the direction of travel (track) as it relates to the direction of the destination (bearing). It will show the distance from the destination and time to the destination. This page is used frequently when navigating from point to point and for navigating around obstacles.

The digital compass graphic should not be confused with a real compass. Although they look the same, it can give a very different reading because without movement GPS receivers cannot display direction. Read the owners manual and determine if the compass is an electronic compass capable of identifying a compass heading while the operator is standing still.

S. Featherstone, Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS, Creative Publishing international, Inc. (p. 47)

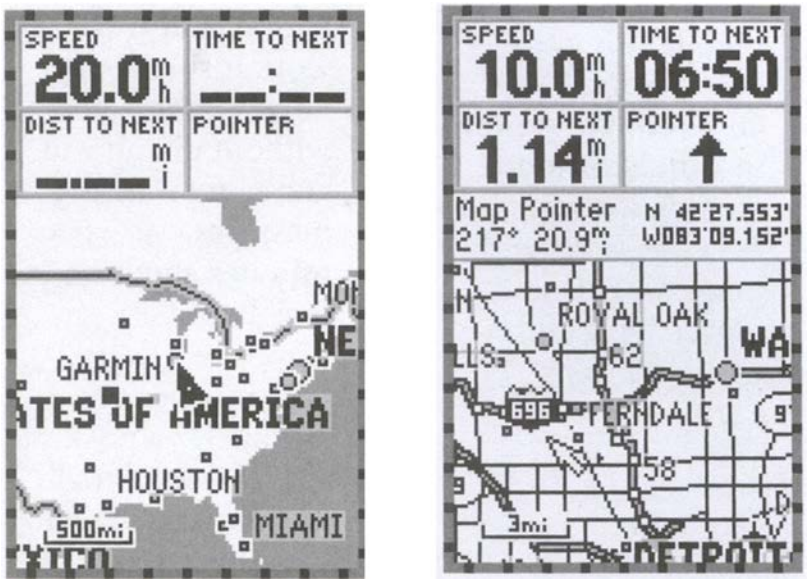
Figure 13-4-5 Compass Navigation Page

MAP

This page identifies position. A GPS without a built-in map will identify where a person is in relation to another waypoint. A GPS receiver with a built-in map will identify where a person is in relation to landmarks, such as roads, cities and bodies of water. A GPS receiver with downloadable maps will identify where a person is in relation to city streets and topographical features.

The advantage of this screen is its ability to identify the current position by looking at the features on a map rather than just the coordinates. Depending on the zoom level – which is shown at the bottom of the page – these features could be roads or cities or entire continents.

The map page allows an operator to pinpoint where one is and create a waypoint on the map the cursor over a feature and pressing “enter” or “mark”, making route building easier. The map page can also serve as an address book. By moving the cursor over a certain waypoint and pressing “enter”, information is displayed, such as phone numbers, addresses, and navigation information.



S. Featherstone, Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS, Creative Publishing International, Inc. (p. 50)

Figure 13-4-6 Map Page

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. Where is the battery strength information located?

Q2. What is the possible problem of using a GPS digital compass for navigating?

Q3. Which screen identifies the coordinates and datum of the GPS?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The satellite status page identifies the battery strength information.

A2. The possible problem of using a GPS digital compass for navigating is if the navigator is standing still some GPS receivers cannot display direction. It only knows how to identify direction when moving.

A3. The position page identifies the coordinates and datum.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. What does the menu button display on the GPS receiver?

Q2. On a GPS receiver's compass navigation page what information can you expect to find?

Q3. On a GPS receiver's satellite status page what information can you expect to find?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The menu button displays a menu with available options. Options can be selected by using the arrow joystick to highlight the option and pressing "enter" to access it.

A2. On the compass navigation page, a person can expect to find the following information:

- direction of travel,
- bearing,
- distance from destination,
- CDI, and
- time to destination.

A3. On the satellite status page a person can expect to find the following information:

- satellite signal strengths,
- battery strength, and
- EPE.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 5 (322 PC).

CLOSING STATEMENT

GPS receivers have become a very common tool for navigating. Receivers vary from make to model, each offering its own method of use. By identifying the common features offered on a GPS receiver, cadets will be familiar with the information a GPS receiver can provide. Cadets who have an understanding of this information should be able to retrieve the required information from any make or model of GPS receiver.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

C2-142 (ISBN 0-7645-6933-3) McNamara, J. (2004). *GPS for Dummies*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley Publishing, Inc.

C2-143 (ISBN 1-58923-145-7) Featherstone, S. (2004). *Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS*. Chanhassen, MN: Creative Publishing International, Inc.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 5

EO M322.05 – SET A MAP DATUM ON A GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS) RECEIVER

Total Time: 60 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Photocopy and create OHP slides of Annexes C and D.

Photocopy Annex E and distribute to each cadet.

Ensure there is a GPS receiver and topographical map of the area for each group in TP 2.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 1–3 to orient the cadets to map datums.

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TP 2 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate how to set a map datum while providing an opportunity for the cadets to practice under supervision.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have identified map datum on a topographical map and set it on a GPS receiver.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to know how to set a map datum because if an incorrect datum is set on the GPS receiver and the user identifies the coordinates from a GPS receiver on a map, an incorrect location will be given.

Teaching Point 1 **Explain Map Datum**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

MODEL PROJECTION OF THE EARTH

The Earth is represented in many different forms including models, globes, maps, atlases, etc. When these items are designed they are drawn using a reference point called datum.

Map Datum. The reference point used to draw a map.

All maps are drawn using a reference point. A grid is a series of lines on a map that helps describe a location in reference to the datum point. A map can have several grids, but only one datum. If one were to consider a map to be a two-dimensional picture of the ground covered by a grid, the datum tells where to line up the grid on the map – the grid represents the lines of latitude and longitude used to define a location on a map.

Most datums only cover a portion of the earth. The North American Datum of 1927 (NAD-27), covers only the continent of North America. There are many different kinds of datum in the world and each country may use a different datum to draw maps. Countries often issue maps that have been created using a different datum to describe their own land area.

Depending on the datum used, the coordinates you read can differ by almost 200 m.

Datums are important to the user because if the datum in the GPS receiver does not match the map's datum, the coordinates will look the same but be describing two different places on the map.

When using a GPS receiver, any time a coordinate is plotted using a map or manually inputted from some other source, change the GPS receiver datum to match the map's datum. The map's datum can be found in the legend area.

Ellipsoid. Is a solid of which all the plane sections normal to one axis are circles and all the other plane sections are ellipses.

NAD-27

NAD-27 is a datum based on the Clarke ellipsoid of 1866. The reference is located at Meads Ranch in Kansas. There are over 50 000 survey monuments used as starting points for more local surveying and mapping. Use of this datum is gradually being replaced by the North American Datum 1983 (NAD-83).

NAD-83

NAD-83 is an earth-centred datum based on the Geodetic Reference System of 1980. It was created to meet requirements for better accuracy and precision. The size and shape of the earth was determined through

measurements made by satellites and other sophisticated electronic equipment. The measurements accurately represent the earth within 2 m.

WORLD GEODETIC SYSTEM 1984 (WGS-84)

WGS-84 is the standard physical model of the Earth used for GPS applications. The unified system became essential in the 1950s for several reasons:

- the beginning of international space science and of astronautics;
- the lack of intercontinental geodetic information;
- the inability of the large geodetic systems to provide a worldwide geo-data basis; and
- a need for a global map for navigation, aviation and geography.

Geodetic is a branch of earth sciences. It is the scientific discipline that deals with the measurement and representation of the earth including its gravitational field in a three-dimensional time varying space.

Previous World Geodetic Systems have been in place; WGS-60, WGS-66 and WGS-72 and the current WGS-84. A new model is now being created to replace WGS-84 tentatively called Earth Gravity Model 06.

Use Annex C (Simulated Map Datum) and Annex D (Grid Overlay), to illustrate a datum.

- Place the two slides on an OHP, laying the grid over the map.
- Identify a fictitious fixed point (mountain, lake, boulder) as the map datum (reference point, eg, NAD-27).
- Discuss how the reference point determines the grid's base point.
- Make another fictitious map datum (reference point, eg, WGS-84).
- Show how the uses of different datums relate to different positions dependant on the datum used as a reference point. This will reinforce the importance of setting the appropriate datum before identifying position on a GPS receiver.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is a map datum?

Q2. What is the NAD-27?

Q3. What is the WGS-84?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. A map datum is the reference point used to draw maps.

A2. The NAD-27 is the North American Datum 1927 based on the Clarke ellipsoid of 1866. The reference is located at Meads Ranch in Kansas.

A3. The WGS-84 is the standard physical model of the Earth used for GPS applications. The unified system became essential in the 1950s.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss the Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) Grid System**

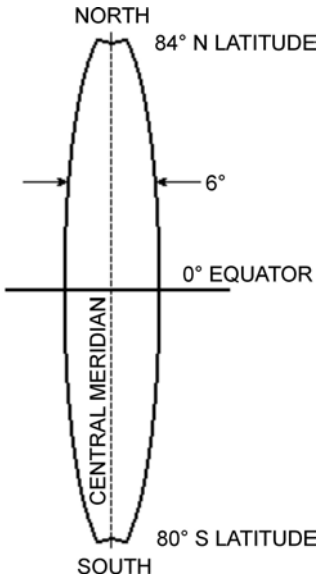
Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Because the world is round, any type of representation of its surface on a flat piece of paper will have distortions. These are relatively insignificant on maps that show only small parts of the earth, like city maps or 1 : 50 000 scale maps, but quite considerable for maps of countries or continents.

UTM GRID

Map Projection

Map projection is a geometrical method of reducing the amount of distortion on a flat map. In very large countries such as Canada, mapmakers divide the country into strips from north to south, called zones, and project each zone. One system of strip projection is the UTM projection. All National Topographical System (NTS) maps use this system.



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-5-1 Shape of a UTM Zone – Six Minutes of Longitude Wide

UTM Zone

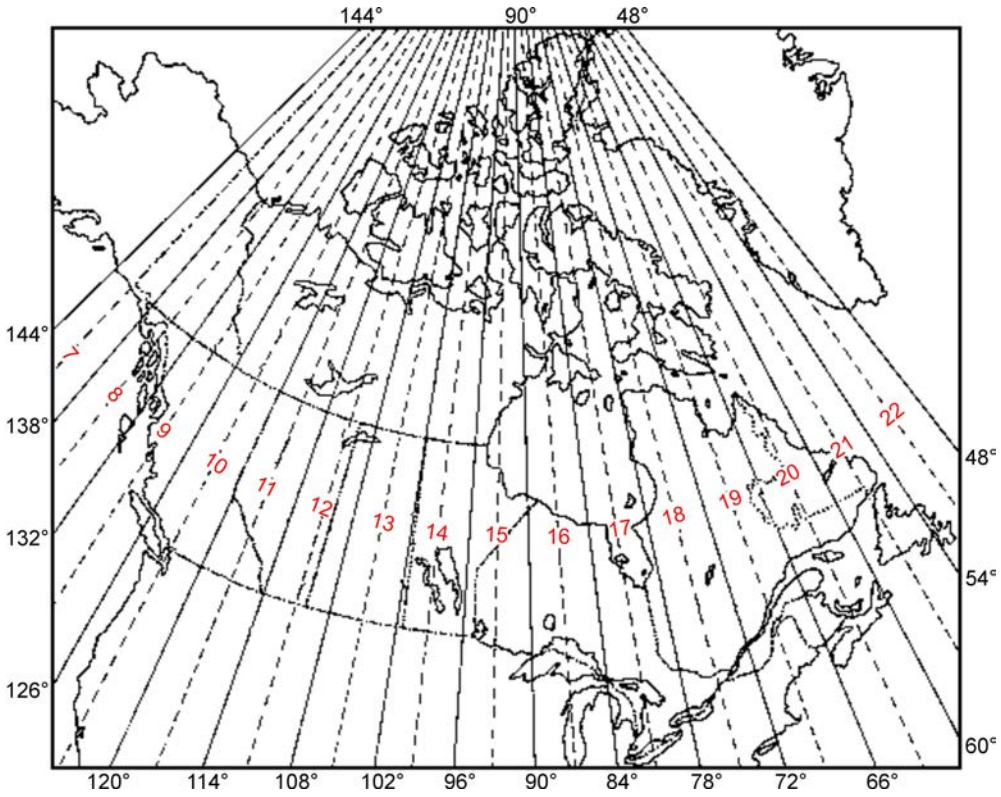
To picture a UTM zone, imagine the earth as an orange. All the geographical features are drawn on the peel. Take a knife and after slicing small circles at each pole, cut the peel into many narrow strips from pole to pole. Then take the strip of peel and press it flat against a smooth surface. Even though the details in the middle of the peel might become a little distorted, the strip is narrow enough for the details to remain accurate enough for regular map users.

UTM Projection

For the UTM Projection, the Earth's surface has been divided into 60 zones. Sixteen of these zones, numbered 7 through 22, cover Canada from west to east. Shown below are the numbered zones with their centre meridian

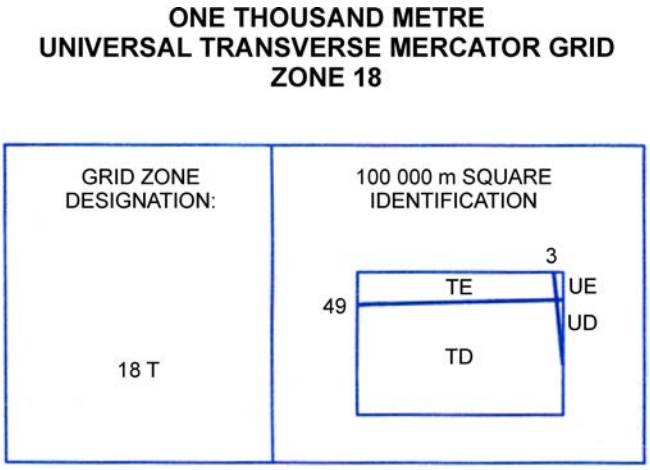
marked with a dotted line. Each zone is divided into sections, and these sections are published as 1 : 250 000 scale maps by the NTS. Each 1 : 250 000 scale map can then be divided into smaller areas, like 1 : 50 000 scale maps. The location of the topographical map zone number can be found in the marginal information, in the grid zone designator box as seen in Figure 13-5-3.

Have cadets identify their location in Canada from the handout in Annex E and identify what zone they would be located in.



"Natural Resources Canada", The Universal Transverse Mercator Grid, Copyright 1969 by Department of Energy, Mines and Resource Canada, Surveys and Mapping Branch. Retrieved April 4, 2008, from http://maps.nrcan.gc.ca/topo101/utm2_e.php

Figure 13-5-2 Canadian UTM Zones



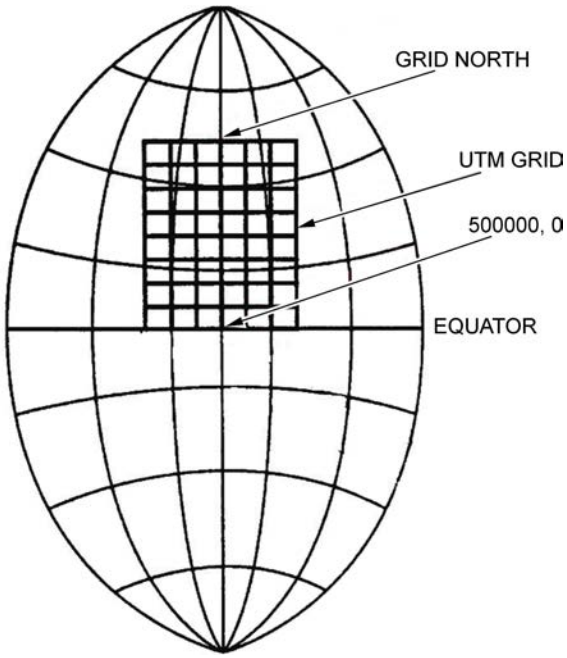
Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-5-3 Grid Zone Identifier

GRID REFERENCE SYSTEMS

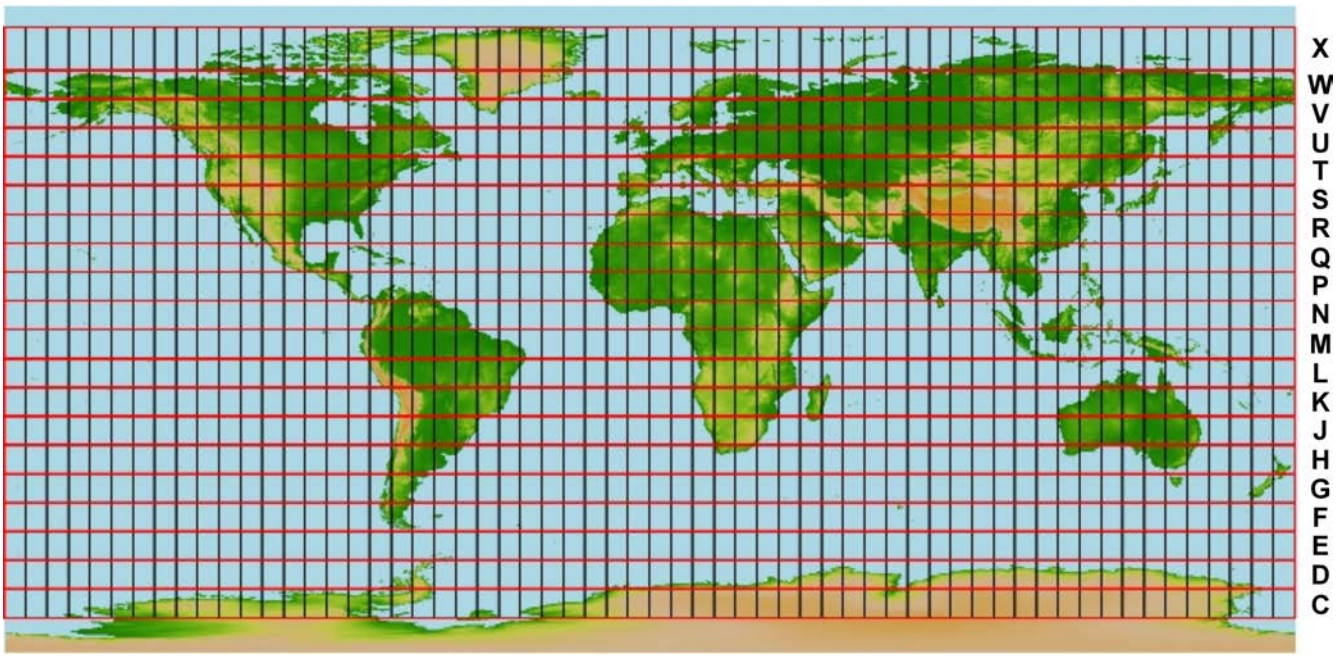
When a map-maker has projected a zone, and divided it into sections, a rectangular grid is laid over top of the projection as seen in Figure 13-5-4. These grid lines are shown in blue on a topographical map. The grid lines are exactly parallel to each other. The vertical grid lines are printed parallel to the meridian of the zone, and the horizontal grid lines are parallel to the equator. These horizontal parallel lines to the equator make up the sub UTM grid zones as seen in Figure 13-5-4.

The largest of the grids are squares 100 km by 100 km. Each of these 100-km squares is identified by a letter which is stated after the UTM zone number. In Figure 13-5-3, the Grid Zone Designation is 18 T. Each large square is further divided into smaller squares of 10 km, and then again into 1 km. It is these 1 km by 1 km (1 000 m by 1 000 m) squares that is depicted on a 1 : 50 000 scale topographical map.



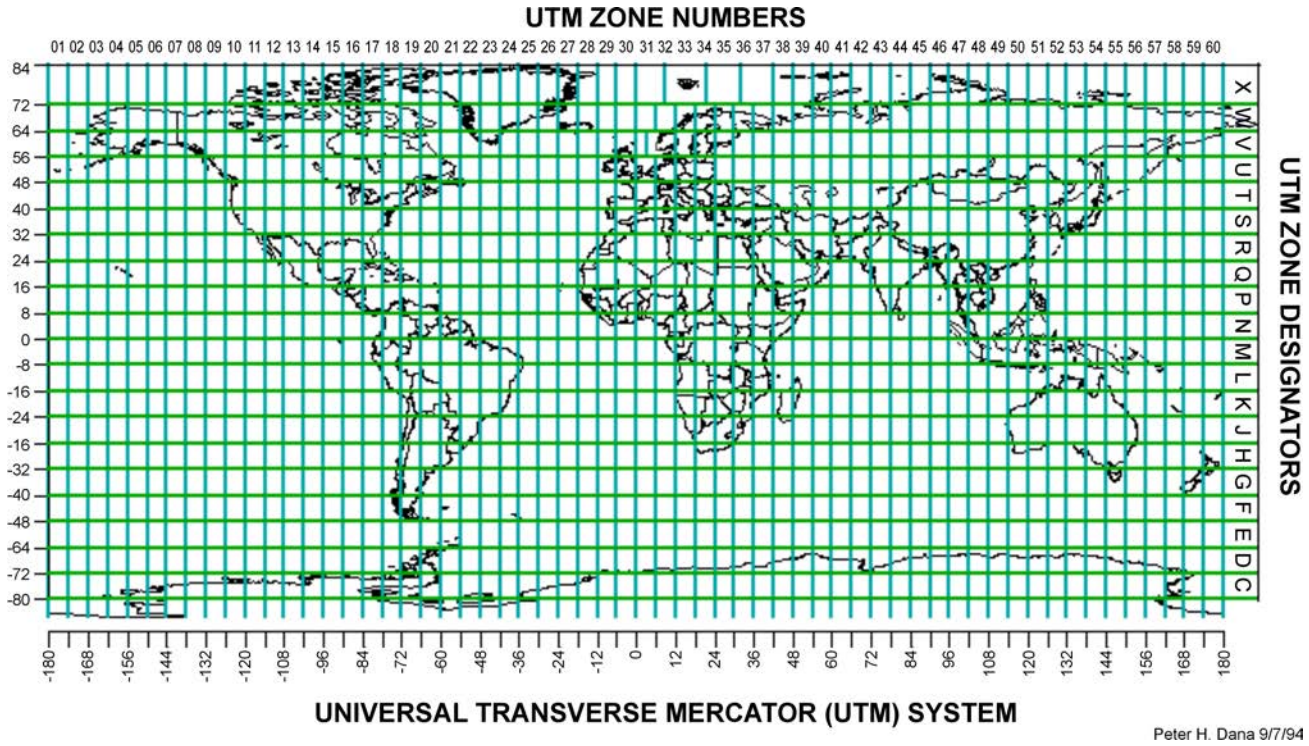
"Geology 350y – Field Studies", Geological Mapping. Retrieved May 1, 2008, from http://instruct.uwo.ca/earth-sci/350y-001/acadimages/utm2.jpg

Figure 13-5-4 Grid Overlay



"Warner College of Natural Resources", UTM Sub Zones, Copyright 2007 Colorado State University. Retrieved May 2, 2008, from http://welcome.warnercnr.colostate.edu/class_info/nr502/lg3/datums_coordinates/utm.html

Figure 13-5-5 UTM Sub Zones



"Department of Geography, The University of Colorado at Boulder", The Geographer's Craft Project, Copyright 1999 by Peter H. Dana. Retrieved May 1, 2008, from http://w3.impa.br/~pcezar/cursos/GIS/mapproj.htm

Figure 13-5-6 UTM Zone Numbers

Each grid line in the 1 000 m grid is numbered.

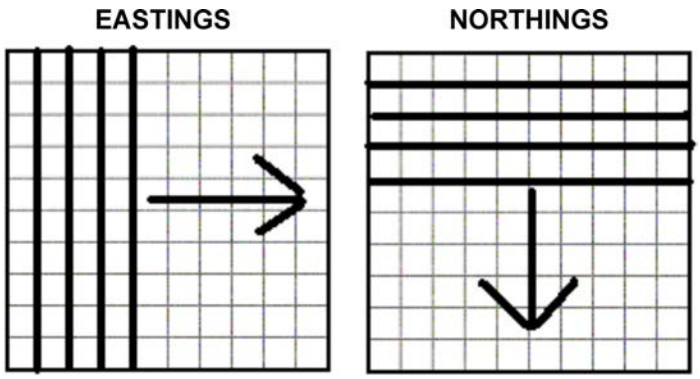
Have a topographical map available for viewing purposes when presenting information about eastings and northings.

Eastings

The vertical lines are numbered from an imaginary line 500 000 m west of the zone's centre meridian. Each zone then starts at zero in the west and each 1 000-m line is numbered going toward the east. Each vertical grid line's number, usually a two-digit number at the top and bottom ends of the line, is located in the bottom and top margins. The full number, represented with an E printed behind it, is located in the bottom left corner. This number explains how many metres east the grid line is from the start point. These lines are called eastings because they are numbered from west towards the east.

Northings

The horizontal line is numbered starting with zero at the equator. In the left and right margins there are two-digit numbers at the ends of each horizontal line. The full number of metres from the equator with the letter N printed behind it can be found in the bottom left. These lines are called northings because they are numbered from the equator towards the north.

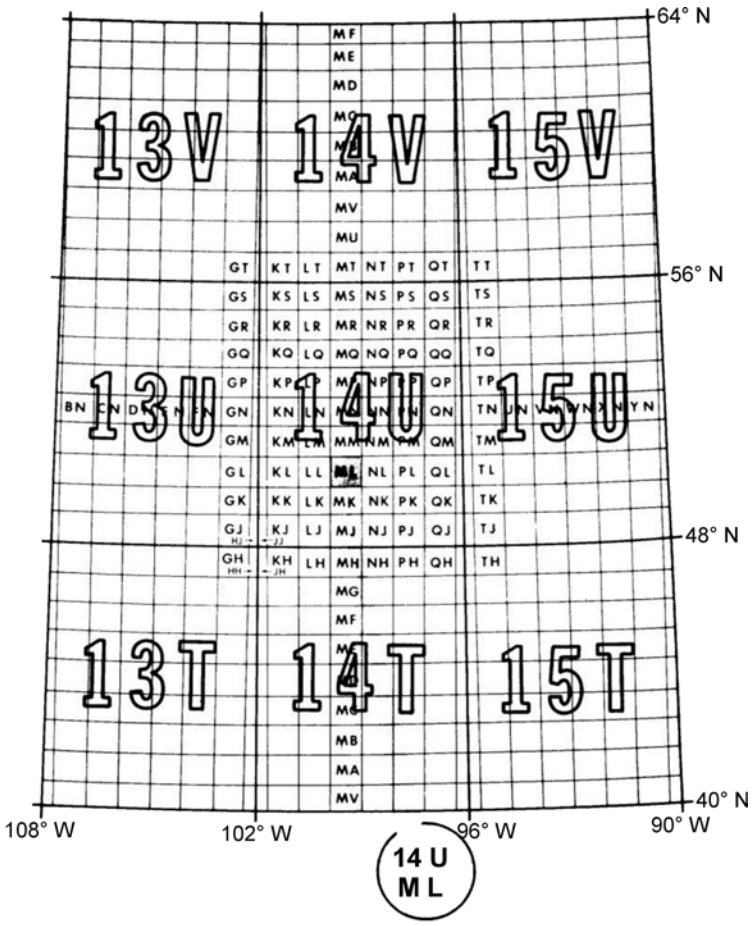


Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-5-7 Eastings and Northings

Military Grid Reference System (MRGS). The military traditionally identifies grid lines by stating the two-digit short form of the grid line numbers. These two-digit numbers repeat over a large area (every 100 km) so the military has established a letter code for each 100 km by 100 km square. The military grid codes come from the UTM projection that is broken down into smaller 100 000 m square identification (as per Figure 13-5-8). The military grid code is found in the right margin underneath the UTM zone number.

Have cadets identify the MGRS code on the topographical map.



Department of National Defence, Military Training Volume 8, Map Field Sketching and Compasses, Department of National Defence, 1976, Department of National Defence (p. 75)

Figure 13-5-8 Layout of MGRS

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. UTM projection divides Canada into strips from north to south. What do these strips represent?

Q2. How many UTM zones is the Earth's surface divided into?

Q3. Where is the 100 000 m square identifier found on a topographical map?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The UTM projection that divides Canada into strips from north to south, represent UTM zones.

A2. The Earth's surface is divided into 60 zones.

A3. The 100 000 m square identifier is found in the marginal information.

Teaching Point 3 **Discuss Using a GPS Receiver in Conjunction With a Topographical Map**

Time: 15 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP will provide cadets with the knowledge on how to use a GPS receiver in conjunction with a topographical map.

The provided examples correspond to the Trenton, Ont., 1:50 000 map, # 31 C/4. The map datum for this map is NAD-27.

These examples should be reproduced using a GPS receiver and a local topographical map of the area. This will provide cadets with realistic examples and hands-on experience.

Ensure that the GPS receiver coordinate system is set to MGRS.

IDENTIFYING MGRS GRID SYSTEM ON A GPS RECEIVER

GPS receivers will identify the UTM coordinates when reading location, to include:

- grid zone designator,
- 100 000 m square identifier, and
- grid reference (GR).

GPS receivers, depending on the make and model, are capable of selecting a MGRS accuracy of four-, six-, eight-, and ten-figure GR. If the GPS receiver being used for this TP is enabled with this capability, it is suggested that it be set to a 6-figure GR.

Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-5-9 GPS Receiver Coordinates

The coordinates displayed on the GPS receivers in Figure 13-5-9, are set to MRGS. Each GPS receiver is set with a different datum for the same location.

GPS Receiver Datum set to NAD-27	GPS Receiver Datum set to NAD-83
The coordinates are identified as: • Grid Zone Designator – 18 T, • 100 000 m square identifier – TD, and • 10-figure GR as –96785 86748	The coordinates are identified as: • Grid Zone Designator – 18 T, • 100 000 m square identifier – TP, and • 10-figure GR as – 96830 86973

Note the difference between the coordinates of the same location using a different datum.

PROCESS FOR CONFIRMING CORRECT MGRS COORDINATES

MGRS coordinates allow a GPS receiver to work in conjunction with a topographical map. To confirm the MGRS coordinates correspond with the topographical map the user will have to:

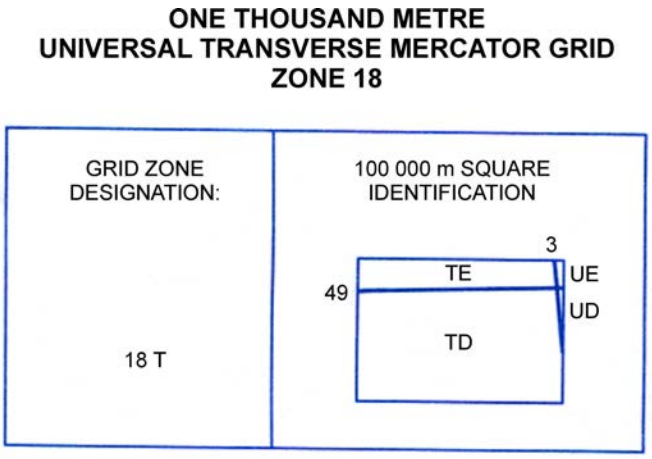
1. Identify the MGRS grid system on the topographical map.
2. Locate the grid zone designator.
3. Confirm the 100 000 m square identifier.

Identifying MGRS Grid System on a Topographical Map

Locating the MGRS grid system on topographical maps provides the navigator with another method to confirm the GPS receiver is reporting coordinates that correspond with the map being used. If the coordinates are different, the navigator will know that the GPS receiver is set to another datum and will have to be adjusted to provide the correct coordinates.

Locating the Grid Zone Designator

The location of the grid zone designator is found in the marginal information. The zone for the example in Figure 13-5-10, is 18 T.

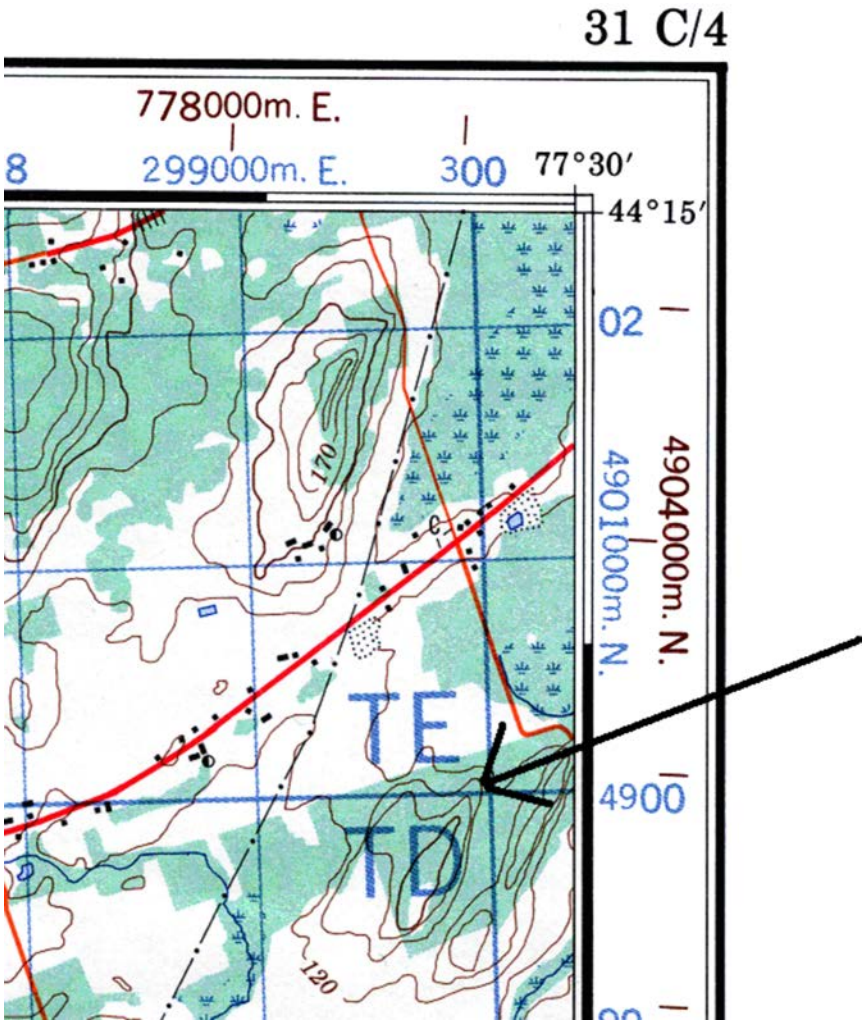


Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-5-10 Grid Zone Designator

Confirming the 100 000 m Square Identifier

The 100 000 m square identifier is located in the same marginal information area as the grid zone designator. The example in Figure 13-5-10 states that the map is adjacent to the 100 000 m square identifications UE and UD. Additionally when the 100 000 m square identifier on a topographical map joins an adjacent grid zone, the identifier will be noted on the map in the 00 00 grid square. This is illustrated in Figure 13-5-11.



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-5-11 Topographical Map 100 000 m Square Identifier

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. What MGRS coordinates are identified by a GPS receiver?

Q2. What is the process for confirming correct MGRS coordinates?

Q3. Where is the 100 000 m square identifier located on a topographical map?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The GPS receiver will identify:

- grid zone designator,
- 100 000 m square identifier, and
- GR.

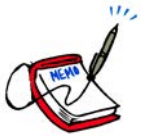
A2. The process for confirming correct MGRS coordinates is to:

- Identify the MGRS grid system on the topographical map.
- Locate the grid zone designator.
- Confirm the 100 000 m square identifier.

A3. The 100 000 m square identifier is located in the marginal information on the topographical map.

Teaching Point 4 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadets Practice Setting the Map Datum on the GPS Receiver**

Time: 15 min Method: Demonstration and Performance



For this TP, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

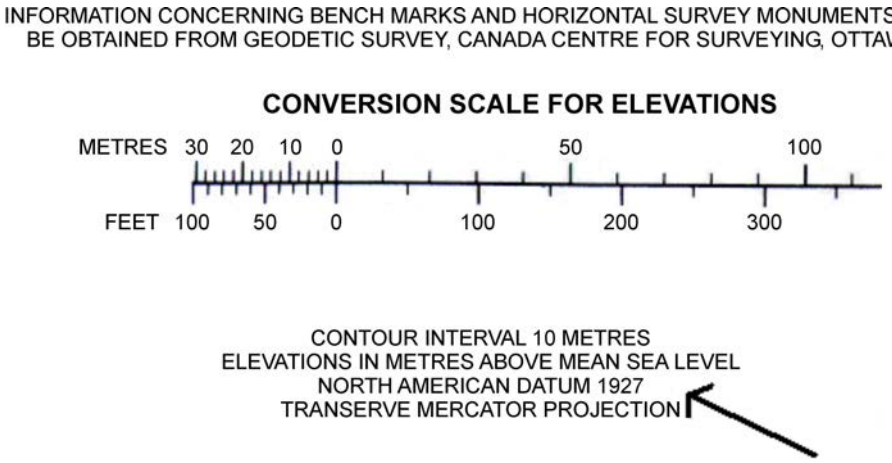
1. Explain and demonstrate the complete skill while cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step required to complete the skill. Monitor cadets as they imitate each step.
3. Monitor the cadets' performance as they practice the complete skill.

Note: Assistant instructors may be employed to monitor the cadets' performance.

Divide cadets into groups based on the number of GPS receivers and topographical maps available. Distribute a GPS receiver and a topographical map to each group.

IDENTIFING THE MAP DATUM FROM A TOPOGRAPHICAL MAP

The map datum of a topographical map is located in the lower right side of the marginal information, under the conversion scale for elevations.



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-5-12 Map Datum

Have the cadets locate the map datum on the topographical map.

SETTING A DATUM ON A GPS

To set a datum on a GPS:

1. Identify the map datum of the topographical map being used as the reference.
2. With the GPS, go to the set-up menu then, “navigation”, then “system” or “units”.
3. Highlight the map datum’s box.
4. Scroll through the list of datums and find the map datum being used.
5. Set the correct datum.

To set the datum of the eXplorist 200 GPS receiver:

1. Power up the receiver.
2. Press the ENTER button.
3. Press MENU button.
4. Highlight the preferences and press ENTER.
5. Highlight the map units and press ENTER.
6. Highlight the map datum and press ENTER.
7. Highlight the correct datum and press ENTER.

ACTIVITY

Time: 10 min

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is have the cadets practice setting the map datum on a GPS receiver.

RESOURCES

- Topographical map (one per group), and
- GPS receiver (one per group).

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide cadets into groups, based on the amount of GPS receivers and topographical maps available.

2. Provide one GPS receiver and topographical map to each group.
3. Have cadets identify the map datum on the topographical map.
4. Have each cadet in the group power up the GPS receiver and set the map datum.
5. Choose a random map datum in the list provided within the GPS receiver and have each cadet in the group set a different datum.
6. If outside and the map is of the area, have the cadets set the correct datum of the map and identify their position on the map using the coordinates provided by the GPS receiver.
7. Once the location is identified, have the cadets set a different datum and note the difference in their position.
8. Discuss the importance of having the correct datum set on the GPS receiver when using maps.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 4

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' setting the datum on a GPS receiver will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001 Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 5 (322 PC).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Setting the correct datum on a GPS receiver ensures the position identified on the GPS will correspond with the map being used. The simple mistake of using a different datum when identifying position on a GPS will result in errors when trying to identify position on a map.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

A2-036 A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001 Director Cadets 3. (2003). *Royal Canadian Army Cadet Reference Book*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C2-143 (ISBN 1-58923-145-7) Featherstone, S. (2004). *Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS*. Chanhassen, MN: Creative Publishing International, Inc.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 6

EO M322.06 – IDENTIFY LOCATION USING A GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS) RECEIVER

Total Time: 120 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Ensure GPS receivers have fully-charged batteries.

Prepare a navigational route of six legs.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

A practical activity was chosen for this lesson as it is an interactive way to allow the cadets to identify location using a GPS receiver.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

The review for this lesson is from EO M322.05 (Set a Map Datum on a Global Positioning System [GPS] Receiver, Section 5). Review how to use the GPS receiver to identify position by:

1. confirming the correct map datum is set on the GPS receiver;
2. locating the geographical position page on the GPS receiver;
3. reading the current 10-figure grid reference (GR), extract the six-figure GR from the 10-figure GR shown; and
4. plotting the six-figure GR on the topographical map of the area.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have identified their location using a GPS receiver.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to be able to identify location using a GPS receiver because it provides a more accurate position. Being able to identify the position on a GPS receiver and translate and plot that position onto a topographical map will support one's location and provide a backup in the case of a GPS receiver failure.

Teaching Point 1 **Have the Cadets Navigate Along a Predetermined Route Using a Topographical Map**

Time: 110 min Method: Practical Activity

BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Cadets have covered the following material in EOs M322.03 (Identify Components Of The Global Positioning System [GPS], Section 3), M322.04 (Identify Features Of A Global Positioning System [GPS] Receiver, Section 4) and M322.05 (Set A Map Datum On A Global Positioning System [GPS] Receiver, Section 5).

If required, complete a quick review on:

- the components of a GPS receiver,
- GPS screen pages,
- identifying the map datum from a topographical map, and
- setting a map datum on a GPS receiver.

COMPONENTS OF A GPS RECEIVER

Antenna. Allows the GPS receiver to receive satellite signals.

Screen. Location where all information is displayed.

Some GPS receivers use an arrow joystick that acts as a mouse, providing a simple to use interface with the GPS receiver.

Battery Compartment. Stores the receiver power supply.

The buttons in the following list are found on the Magellan eXplorist 200 GPS receiver. Other makes and models of GPS receivers may have different function buttons. Consult the owner's manual for GPS receiver button functions.

On/Off. Turns the receiver on and off.

Backlight. Turns the display backlight on and off and changes intensity.

Enter. Used to access highlighted menu items or highlighted page menu options.

Escape. Cancels data inputs. Closes the accessed function and goes back to the previous screen and moves backward through the navigation screens.

Zoom In. Used on the map screen to zoom in on the map displayed. The map display can be zoomed in to 35 m (100 feet). Also used to move through the list of waypoints when using an alphabetical search.

Zoom Out. Used on the map screen to zoom out on the map displayed. The map display can be zoomed out to 2736 km (1700 miles). It is also used to move through the list of waypoints when using an alphabetical search.

Menu. Displays a menu with available options. Options may be selected by using the arrow joystick to highlight the option and pressing “enter” to access it.

NAV. Moves through the navigation screens (Map screen, Compass screen, Position screen, Satellite screen).

Mark. Used to save present position as a waypoint. Waypoints are saved and stored in “My Points of Interest” (POI).

GOTO. Creates a one-leg route from the present position to a destination selected from the POI database or by using the cursor on the background map and pressing GOTO on a point.

Arrow Joystick. Moves the cursor on the map screen. It also moves the highlighted bar to select menu options and data-entry fields.

Thales Navigation, Inc., Magellan eXplorist 200 Reference Manual, Thales Nav, Inc. (p. 1)

Figure 13-6-1 eXplorist 200 GPS Receiver

GPS SCREEN PAGES

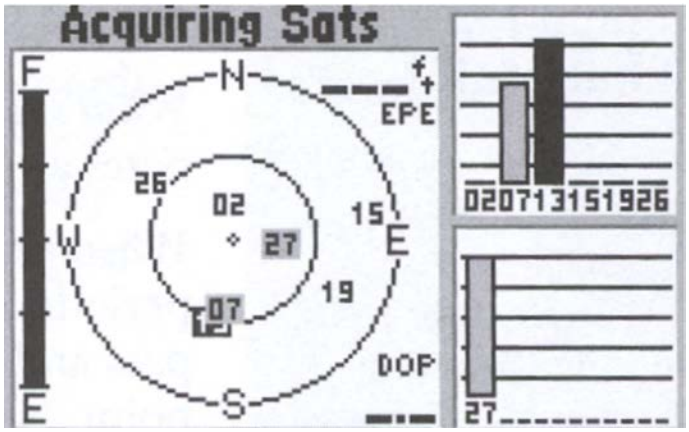
GPS receivers may differ in the way they present information, from unit to unit. Identify the screens that are similar to those contained in this TP.

Note: The term “Page” refers to the different screens an operator can scroll through to locate different information in a GPS receiver.

Satellite Status. The satellite status screen displays the acquisition of satellites (satellite signal strength and satellite geometry) and the progress of the collection of satellite data. The receiver is constantly monitoring satellites. The display on the satellite status page graphically depicts the activity.

As new satellites come into view, a new bar appears in the graph. Bars that were solid minutes ago disappear as satellites pass over the horizon. If a satellite is being monitored but not used, the bar will appear hollow. On Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) enabled GPS receivers, the WAAS satellite signal strength is indicated on its own bar on the graph. On this page it is common for GPS receivers to display the following information:

- satellite signal strengths,
- battery strength, and
- estimated position error (EPE).

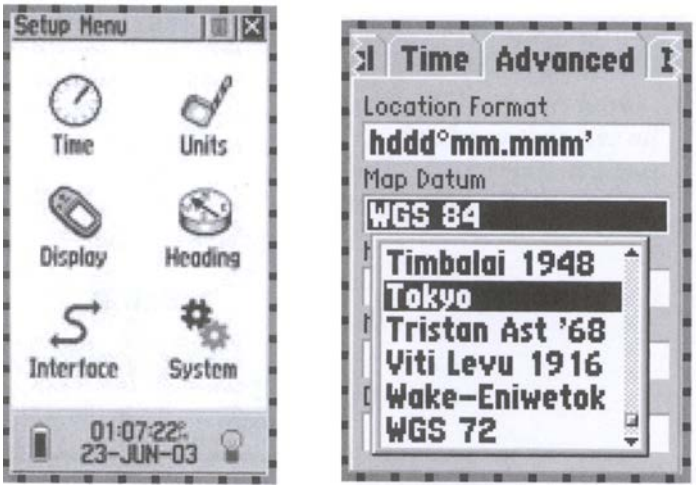


S. Featherstone, Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS, Creative Publishing International, Inc. (p. 45)

Figure 13-6-2 Satellite Status Page

Menu. This page is used for customizing the GPS receiver. All data fields can be changed to give a person the information they require including waypoints, routes, time and speed, etc. On this page it is common for GPS receivers to display the following information:

- customization options for the GPS receiver,
- waypoints and routes, and
- map datum.

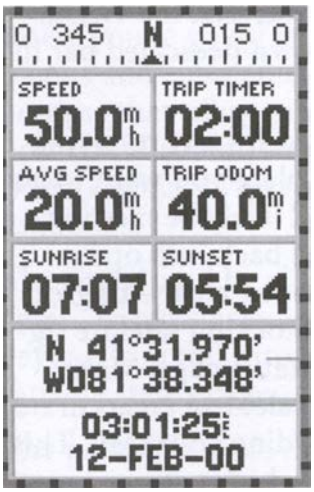


S. Featherstone, Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS, Creative Publishing International, Inc. (p. 54)

Figure 13-6-3 Menu Page

Position. The position page is used for confirming coordinates, datum, time, date, and the EPE. This page is used infrequently, for brief periods, mostly in planning and after marking a waypoint. No easy-to-understand graphics, like a compass rose, are displayed.

After acquiring enough satellites to begin navigating, many GPS receivers automatically go to the position page or the map page. In addition to the information mentioned above, an operator may find current speed, heading and a trip odometer. On some GPS receivers the information displayed can be changed.



S. Featherstone, Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS, Creative Publishing International, Inc. (p. 46)

Figure 13-6-4 Position Page

Compass Navigation. This page shows the direction of travel (track) as it relates to the direction of the destination (bearing). It will show the distance from the destination and time to the destination. This page is used frequently when navigating from point-to-point and for navigating around obstacles.

The digital compass graphic should not be confused with a real compass. Although they look the same it can give a very different reading because without movement GPS receivers cannot display direction. Read the owner's manual and determine if the compass is an electronic compass capable of identifying compass heading while standing still.

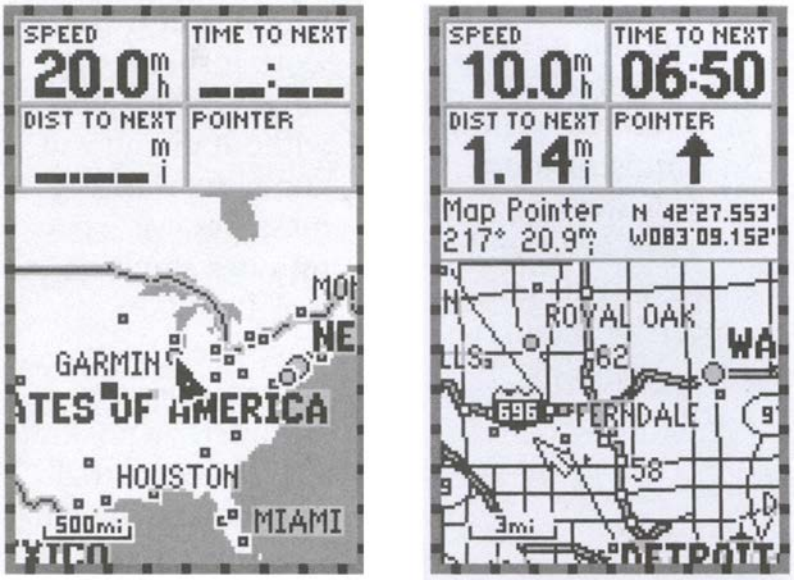
S. Featherstone, Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS, Creative Publishing International, Inc. (p. 47)

Figure 13-6-5 Compass Navigation Page

Map. This page identifies position. A GPS without a built-in map will identify where a person is in relation to another waypoint. A GPS receiver with a built-in map will identify where a person is in relation to landmarks, such as roads, cities and bodies of water. A GPS receiver with downloadable maps will identify where a person is in relation to city streets and topographical features.

The advantage of this screen is its ability to identify the current position by looking at the features on a map rather than just the coordinates. Depending on the zoom level – which is shown at the bottom of the page – these features might be roads or cities or entire continents.

The map page allows an operator to pinpoint where one is and create a waypoint over a feature by pressing “enter” or “mark”, making route building easier. The map page can also serve as an address book. By moving the cursor over a certain waypoint and pressing “enter”, information is displayed such as phone numbers, addresses, and navigation information.

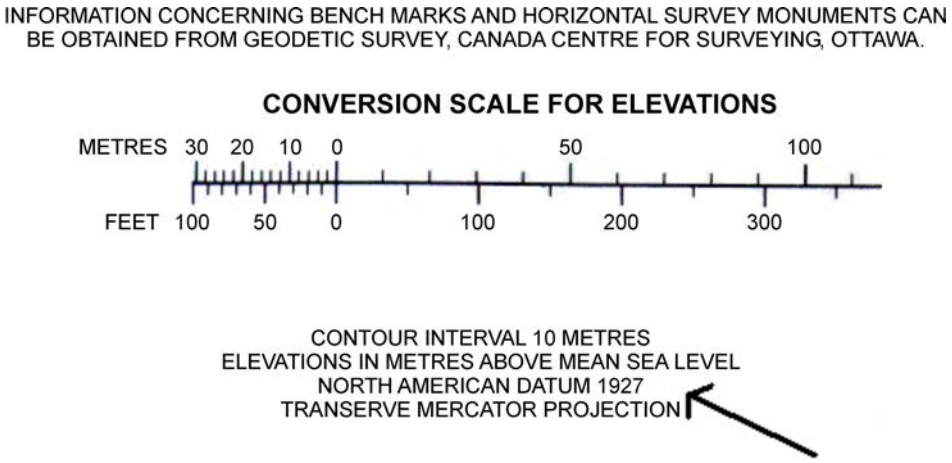


S. Featherstone, Outdoor Guide to Using Your GPS, Creative Publishing International, Inc. (p. 50)

Figure 13-6-6 Map Page

IDENTIFY THE MAP DATUM FROM A TOPOGRAPHICAL MAP

The map datum of a topographical map is located in the lower right side of the marginal information, under the conversion scale for elevations.



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-6-7 Map Datum

Have the cadets locate the map datum on the topographical map.

SETTING A DATUM ON A GPS

To set a datum on a GPS:

1. Identify the map datum of the topographical map being used as the reference.
2. With the GPS, go to the set-up menu then “navigation” then “system” or “units”.
3. Highlight the map datum’s box.
4. Scroll through the list of datums and find the map datum being used.
5. Set the correct datum.

To set the datum of the eXplorist 200 GPS receiver:

1. Power up the receiver.
2. Press the ENTER button.
3. Press MENU button.
4. Highlight preferences and press ENTER.
5. Highlight map units and press ENTER.
6. Highlight map datum and press ENTER.
7. Highlight correct datum and press ENTER.

EXTRACTING A 6-FIGURE GR FROM A 10-FIGURE GR

A 10-figure grid reference given from a GPS receiver has 10 digits and is accurate to 1 m. To extract the 6-figure GR from the 10-figure GR one must understand how the figures work.

GRID REFERENCE WRITTEN FIGURES		
Definition	**Easting**	**Northing**
A 10-figure GR accurate to 1 m is written as	96779	86744
A 8-figure GR accurate to 10 m is written as	9677	8674
A 6-figure GR accurate to 100 m of the same coordinates is written as	967	867
A 4-figure GR accurate to 1 000 m of the same coordinates is written as	96	86

As illustrated in the above chart the 10-figure GR has two sets of numbers. The first five digits are eastings and the last five digits are the northing coordinates. When taking a GR from a GPS receiver is important to identify the 10 digits and extract the first three numbers from the easting portion and the first three numbers from the northing portion (eg, **967**79 **867**44). The 6-figure grid reference can then be plotted on a map as GR 967 867.

IDENTIFYING MGRS GRID SYSTEM ON A GPS RECEIVER

The provided examples correspond to the Trenton, Ont., 1 : 50 000 map, # 31 C/4. The map datum for this map is NAD-27.

These examples should be reproduced using a GPS receiver and a local topographical map of the area. This will provide cadets with realistic examples and hands on experience.

Ensure that the GPS receiver coordinate system is set to Military Grid Reference System (MGRS).

GPS receivers will identify the MGRS coordinates when reading location, to include:

- grid zone designator,
- 100 000 m square identifier, and
- GR.

GPS receivers, depending on the make and model, are capable of selecting a MGRS accuracy of four-, six-, eight-, and ten-figure GRs. If the GPS receiver being used for this TP is enabled with this capability, it is suggested that it be set to a six-figure GR.

Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-6-8 GPS Receiver Coordinates

The coordinates displayed on the GPS receivers in Figure 13-6-8, are set to MRGS. Each GPS receiver is set with a different datum for the same location.

GPS Receiver Datum Set to NAD-27	GPS Receiver Datum Set to NAD-83
The coordinates are identified as: • grid zone designator – 18 T, • 100 000 m square identifier – TD, and • 10-figure GR as – 96785 86748	The coordinates are identified as: • grid zone designator – 18 T, • 100 000 m square identifier – TP, and • 10-figure GR as – 96830 86973

Note the difference between the coordinates of the same location using a different datum.

PROCESS FOR CONFIRMING CORRECT MGRS COORDINATES

MGRS coordinates allow a GPS receiver to work in conjunction with a topographical map. To confirm the MGRS coordinates correspond with the topographical map the user will have to:

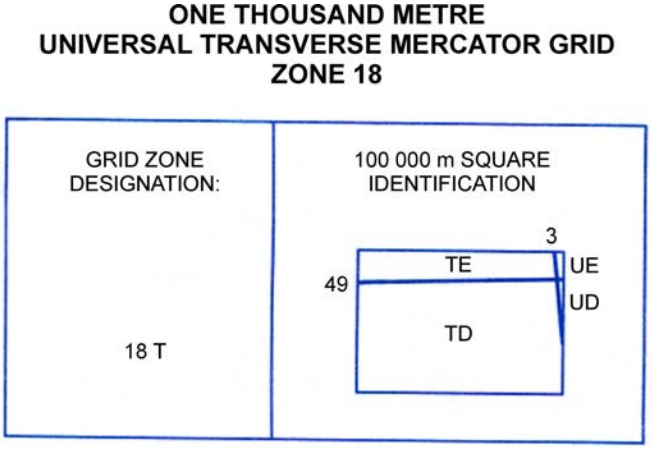
1. Identify the MGRS grid system on the topographical map.
2. Locate the grid zone designator.
3. Confirm the 100 000 m square identifier.

Identifying MGRS Grid System on a Topographical Map

Locating the MGRS grid system on topographical maps provides the navigator with another method to confirm the GPS receiver is reporting coordinates that correspond with the map being used. If the coordinates are different, the navigator will know that the GPS receiver is set to another datum and will have to be adjusted to provide the correct coordinates.

Locating the Grid Zone Designator

The location of the grid zone designator is found in the marginal information. The zone for the example in Figure 13-6-10, is 18 T.

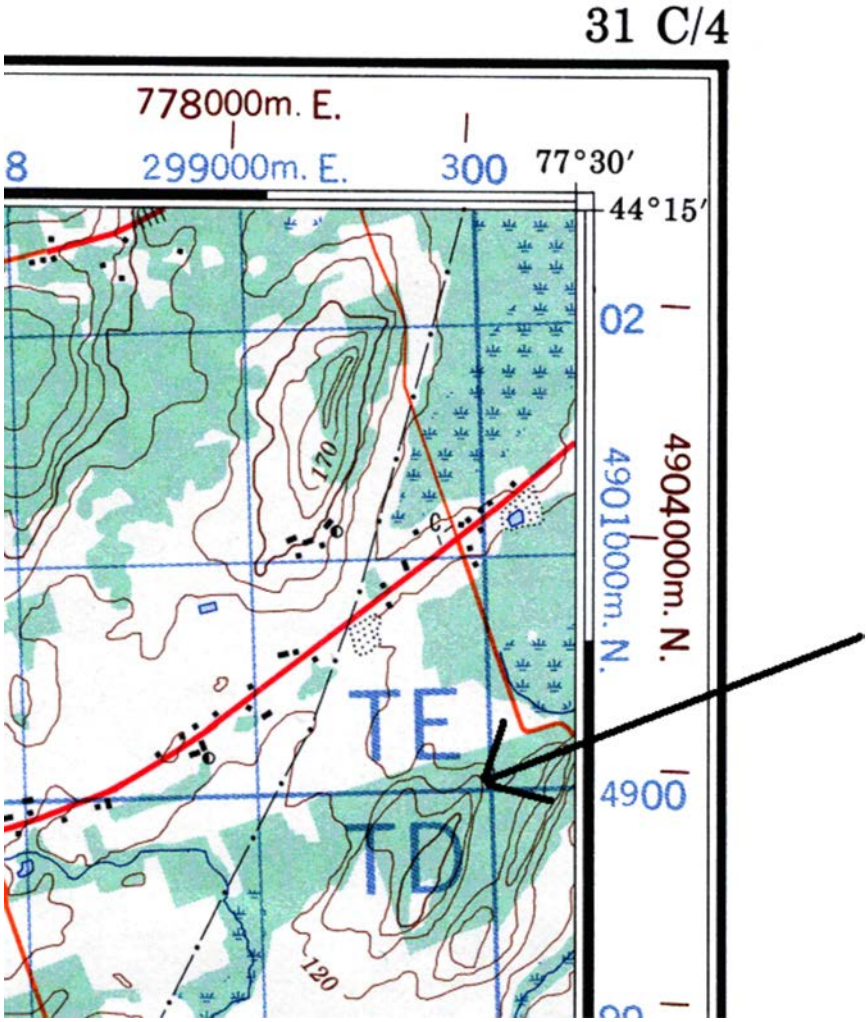


Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-6-9 Grid Zone Designator

Confirming the 100 000 m Square Identifier

The 100 000 m square identifier is located in the same marginal information area as the grid zone designator. The example in Figure 13-6-9 states that the map is adjacent to the 100 000 m square identifications UE and UD. Additionally, the 100 000 m square identifier on a topographical map joins an adjacent grid zone, the identifier will be noted on the map in the 00 00 grid square. This is illustrated in Figure 13-6-10.



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-6-10 Topographical Map 100 000 m Square Identifier

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets identify location using a GPS receiver and plot that position on a topographical map.

RESOURCES

- GPS receiver,
- Topographical map of the area,
- Compass,
- Pen/pencil,
- First aid kit, and
- Communication equipment.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

1. Prepare a route along Class 1 or 2 terrain that does not exceed 6 km (3.7 miles).
2. Along the route mark off six specific checkpoints. Record the six-figure GR off of the topographical map and the 10-figure GR from the GPS for every point.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into groups of no more than six.
2. Assign each cadet in the group one of the six checkpoints.
3. Have each cadet lead the group to their designated checkpoint navigating with a topographical map.
4. Before moving to the next sequential checkpoint, have the designated cadet identify their current location using a topographical map through a six-figure GR.
5. At the checkpoint have the cadet identify position using a GPS receiver, to include:
   a. confirming the correct map datum is set on the GPS receiver,
   b. locating the geographical position page on the GPS receiver and confirm:
      (1) grid zone is the same as printed on the topographical map,
      (2) the 100 000 m square identifiers are the same; and
   c. reading the current 10-figure GR and extracting the 6-figure GR; and
   d. plotting the 6-figure GR on the topographical map of the area.
6. Confirm the plotted six-figure GR corresponds with the assigned checkpoint.

Remember that a 6-figure GR is accurate to 100 m. The plotted GR should be within 100 m of the actual group location.

SAFETY

Communications and emergency first aid equipment shall be carried with each group in case of emergency.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 5 (322 PC).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Being able to use a GPS receiver to identify position and plot that position on a map provides the the cadet a secondary means to confirm position and backs up the location of the cadet in the case of a GPS receiver failure.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

322 PC shall be scheduled on the weekend bivouac/survival FTX.

The route will consist of Class 1 or 2 terrain and will not exceed 4 km (2.5 miles).

REFERENCES

A2-036 A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001 Director Cadets 3. (2003). *Royal Canadian Army Cadet Reference Book*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C2-143 (ISBN 1-58923-145-7) Featherstone, S. (2004). *Outdoor Guide to Using your GPS*. Chanhassen, MN: Creative Publishing International, Inc.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 7

EO C322.01 – PRACTICE NAVIGATION AS A MEMBER OF A SMALL GROUP

Total Time: 90 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Review the activities in TP 2 to confirm local resources required and prepare the route to be used to include grid references and bearings.

Prepare a route based on the area and activity.

If assistant instructors are not available, determine a safety bearing to a known location.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 to give direction on procedures and to illustrate the application of rules for the navigation exercise.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 2 as it is an interactive way to allow cadets to experience navigation in a safe, controlled environment. This activity contributes to physical fitness and to the development of navigation skills and knowledge in a fun and challenging setting.

A group discussion was chosen for TP 3 as it allows the cadets to interact with their peers and share their knowledge, experiences, opinions, and feelings about navigation training.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have practiced navigation as a member of a small group.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to practice navigation skills taught in Silver Star using a map, compass and a GPS receiver. Participation in these activities contributes to the development of navigation skills and knowledge in a fun and challenging setting. Cadets will rely on this skill set throughout navigation and expedition training.

Teaching Point 1 **Attend a Safety Briefing**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This briefing is being conducted to pass on vital information and to answer any questions regarding the safe conduct of a navigation activity, to include:

- actions that can be taken if they become lost, may include:
  - returning to the previous checkpoint;
  - using a radio, if available; or
  - following a safety bearing to a known location;
- a time limit for the activity of 55 minutes;
- boundaries set for the conduct of the activity;
- rules and safety procedures for the activity; and
- a narrative of the activity being conducted.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What actions shall be taken if a group becomes lost?

Q2. What is the time limit for this activity?

Q3. What are the boundaries for this activity?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. If a group becomes lost, they should return to the previous checkpoint, use a radio, if available or follow a safety bearing to a known location.

A2. This activity will last no more than 55 minutes.

A3. The answers to this question will vary based on the local area used.

Teaching Point 2 **Have the Cadets Participate in a Navigation Activity**

Time: 55 min Method: Practical Activity

Conduct one of the following activities in the time allocated. If time permits, conduct both activities. Prepare for each activity in advance using available resources.

NAVIGATION TRAIL

Cadets will be given a map, compass and GPS receiver. Upon arrival at each point, cadets will be given directions by a staff member travelling with the group or at a checkpoint. (magnetic or grid bearing and distance in metres or paces) to follow from one checkpoint to the next. The course will consist of a minimum of six legs, approximately 100–200 m in length. When each group arrives at the checkpoint, they will compare the grid reference (GR) on the map with that on the GPS receiver, determine the distance between each checkpoint and be given directions to the next checkpoint. The group with the most accurate GRs and distance between each checkpoint and the fastest time is the winning group.

NAVIGATION BRAIN TEASER

Using a map, compass and GPS receiver, cadets will navigate to predetermined points on the map. The course will consist of a minimum of six legs, approximately 100–200 m in length. Following the clues provided, when each group arrives at the checkpoint, they will record the GR on the GPS receiver (to ensure they were at each checkpoint) and be given clues (magnetic bearing, GR, or distance) directing them to another checkpoint. The clues should make the cadets think about and use their navigations skills to find the next checkpoint. The group that locates the most checkpoints and has the fastest time is the winning group.

PHOTO FINISH

Create a sheet of 12 - 20 prominent but relatively small landmarks within the immediate area of the cadet training area. Each landmark should be given a point value based on the difficulty to locate the object. Instructions must include the Datum (NAD 83) and the reference system (MGRS) to set on the GPS. Groups of cadets will then seek out the landmark and upon finding one record the 10 figure MGRS grid reference of the object. The group that gives the correct GR of landmarks to achieve the highest point score in the time allocated wins.

Depending on terrain selected and complexity of the navigation instructions, a navigation trail can be as easy or as challenging as you wish to make it.

ACTIVITY 1 – NAVIGATION TRAIL

OBJECTIVE

The objective of the Navigation Trail activity is to have the cadets, as a member of a small group, use navigation training taught during Silver Star.

RESOURCES

- GPS receiver (one per group),

- Topographical map of the area (one per group),
- Compass (one per group), and
- A predetermined navigation route.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

Clearly mark the start and finish lines.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

To keep things interesting, interchange the type of bearing and distance directions for each checkpoint (eg, magnetic or grid, paces or metres).

1. Divide the cadets into groups by the number of GPS receivers available.
2. Issue each group a map, compass and GPS receiver.
3. Have the cadet leading the group plot the bearing and distance onto the map.
4. Start groups at two-minute intervals and record start times.
5. Have cadets record GRs and distance for each leg.
6. Have cadets alternate turns leading the group at least once.
7. Record the finish time for each group.
8. Compare the results of each group.
9. The group with the most accurate GRs and distances between each checkpoint and the fastest time is the winning group.

If available, use an assistant instructor at each checkpoint to answer questions and to prevent groups from following each other or sharing answers.

SAFETY

N/A.

ACTIVITY 2 – NAVIGATION BRAIN TEASER

OBJECTIVE

The objective of the Navigation Brain Teaser activity is to have the cadets, as members of a small group, use their navigations skills to find as many checkpoints as possible.

RESOURCES

- GPS receiver (one per group),

- Topographical map (one per group),
- Compass (one per group), and
- A predetermined navigation route.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

- Clearly mark the start and finish lines.
- Position a clue at each point to direct the groups to the next point.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

To keep things interesting, the clues should not be too easy or too hard for the cadets to find each checkpoint. Stagger the clues to prevent groups from following each other or sharing answers.

1. Divide the cadets into groups by the number of GPS receivers available.
2. Issue each group a map, compass and GPS receiver.
3. Give the clue for the first checkpoint to the cadet leading the group.
4. Start groups at two-minute intervals and record start times.
5. On a piece of paper, have cadets record clues in the order they complete the checkpoints.
6. Have cadets alternate turns leading the group at least once.
7. Collect sheets and record the finish time for each group.
8. The group that locates the most checkpoints and has the fastest time is the winning group.

If available, use an assistant instructor at each checkpoint to give cadets the next clue and answer questions.

SAFETY

N/A.

ACTIVITY 3 – PHOTO FINISH

OBJECTIVE

The objective of the Photo Finish activity is to have the cadets, as members of a small group, use a GPS to locate a series of ten figure GRs.

RESOURCES

- GPS receiver (one per group),
- Photo Hunt activity sheet including 12 to 20 landmark photos and GPS setup information (one per group),

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

- Create a photo hunt activity sheet to include 12 to 20 photos of prominent landmarks in the area of the training location. Landmarks should be small enough that an accurate grid reference can be obtained for the location (+/- 15 m), eg, an intersection street sign, legion cenotaph, advertising sign, etc. Landmarks must not be on private property without the express permission of the landowner. The sheet must also include the applicable GPS setup information, eg, Datum (NAD 83) and grid system (MGRS).
- Create an answer sheet using a GPS with the same setup information as prescribed on the photo hunt activity sheet.
- Establish a finish time for the activity, which may include a point score penalty system for late arrivals.
- Ensure GPS units are not set to the same setup information as listed on the photo hunt activity sheet.
- Establish a finish location.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

To keep things interesting, the difficulty of finding the landmarks should vary and point values should be based on difficulty, eg, distance and/or obscurity of the landmark.

1. Divide the cadets into groups by the number of GPS receivers available.
2. Issue each group a photo hunt activity sheet and GPS receiver.
3. Have the cadets assign a peer leader for the group.
4. Groups may start at the same time or at intervals depending on the number of groups.
5. On a piece of paper, have cadets record the GR of each landmark as they find it.
6. Have cadets alternate using the GPS to identify the GR.
7. Collect sheets and record the point score less any time penalty for each group.
8. The group that has the highest point score is the winning group.

SAFETY

Cadets shall be briefed on boundaries which must take into account any dangerous obstacles or crossings. If radios are available each group should be given a radio.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets' participation in the navigation activities will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 3 **Conduct a Debriefing**

Time: 15 min Method: Group Discussion

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

GROUP DISCUSSION

TIPS FOR ANSWERING/FACILITATING DISCUSSION

- Establish ground rules for discussion, eg, everyone should listen respectfully; don't interrupt; only one person speaks at a time; no one's ideas should be made fun of; you can disagree with ideas but not with the person; try to understand others as much as you hope they understand you; etc.
- Sit the group in a circle, making sure all cadets can be seen by everyone else.
- Ask questions that will provoke thought; in other words avoid questions with yes or no answers.
- Manage time by ensuring the cadets stay on topic.
- Listen and respond in a way that indicates you have heard and understood the cadet. This can be done by paraphrasing their ideas.
- Give the cadets time to respond to your questions.
- Ensure every cadet has an opportunity to participate. One option is to go around the group and have each cadet answer the question with a short answer. Cadets must also have the option to pass if they wish.
- Additional questions should be prepared ahead of time.

SUGGESTED QUESTIONS

Q1. What navigation skills were required to complete the activity?

Q2. What was the hardest part of the activity to complete?

Q3. What was the most exciting part of the activity?

Q4. How will the activity help you with navigation in the future?

Other questions and answers will develop throughout the group discussion. The group discussion should not be limited to only those suggested.

Reinforce those answers given and comments made during the group discussion, ensuring the teaching point has been covered.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets' participation in the group discussion will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the navigation activities and the group discussion will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Navigating using a GPS receiver or a map and compass are skills that can also be used in situations outside the Cadet Program. True proficiency in the skills used during these activities can only be achieved by practicing. These activities allow the cadets the opportunity to develop their navigation skills and knowledge in a fun and challenging setting.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

The intent of this activity is to give the cadet experience navigating with a map and compass, determine distance and follow a bearing from point-to-point.

This activity may be conducted using any available map appropriate for this activity.

This complementary activity can be conducted up to three times during supported complementary days or sessions. Participation is limited to a maximum of nine periods.

REFERENCES

A2-041 B-GL-382-005/PT-001 Canadian Forces. (2006). *Maps, Field Sketching, Compasses and the Global Positioning System*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 8

EO C322.02 – IDENTIFY FACTORS THAT IMPACT NAVIGATION IN THE WINTER

Total Time: 120 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An in-class activity was chosen for TP 1 as an interactive way to provoke thought and stimulate an interest on how terrain features are affected in the winter.

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 2 and 3 to present background information to the cadet on the factors that affect visibility and weather conditions which can impact navigation in the winter.

A group discussion was chosen for TP 4 as it allows the cadet to interact with their peers and share their knowledge, experiences, opinions and feelings about navigating in the winter.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 5 as it is an interactive way to allow the cadet to experience navigating in the winter. This activity contributes to the development of winter navigational skills in a fun and challenging setting under supervision.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to identify factors that impact navigation in the winter.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to understand the impact of weather on winter navigation skills. Navigating in the winter can become very confusing when the surroundings and weather conditions change unexpectedly. Applying

some simple routine navigation techniques will ensure the cadets stay on course while enroute to their desired destination.

Teaching Point 1 **Conduct a Brainstorming Activity Where the Cadet Will Discuss How Terrain Features Are Affected in the Winter**

Time: 15 min Method: In-Class Activity

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

Winter weather conditions have a direct impact on how people travel during the winter months. When participating in a winter hiking activity, there are some key factors which must be considered.

TRAILS/FOOTPATHS

Popular trails are easier to follow in winter than little-used trails, because staying on an unbroken trail can be extremely challenging. Just a few inches of snow can obscure the footpath and can be as bewildering as scanning a forest or open meadow; despite thinking or knowing that the trail is there somewhere, it all looks the same.

TRAIL MARKERS

A trail has specific details about it that tell the hiker they are on the trail. The trail will show signs of previous travel, a corridor through the trees, blazes, cairns and other markers. When following a trail in the winter, whether on a track that previous hikers have broken in the snow or on a trail you are breaking, remain vigilant to watch for signs of the trail.

Cairns. Cairns are piles of rocks. They vary in size from a small grouping of three or four rocks to large piles that can be seen in thick fog. During the winter with snow covering the ground, trails marked with cairns may require more concentration to locate than a marking at eye level. They are easy to miss.

K. Berger, Backpacking and Hiking, DK Publishing Inc. (p. 158)

Figure 13-8-1 Sample Cairn

Paint Blazes. Paint blazes are markings on trees, pieces of wood, rocks, etc. The markings will differ from trail to trail. A trail may have its own specific logo, which could be something as simple as a rectangle, a circle or a triangle. Paint blazes are the most common type of trail marking and during winter, windblown snow may stick to the trees covering the markers.

Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-8-2 Sample Trail Blaze

PROMINENT LANDMARKS

Winter conditions change the way features may have looked in summer. Snow masks and covers the normal route features by covering worn down paths, masking slight elevation changes and covering streams, marshes and valleys. Navigators will have to resort to using more prominent and sometimes distant features to orient the map, locate their position and follow a desired route. The prominent features can be ridges, peaks and communication towers.

Ridges. A long narrow hilltop, mountain range, or watershed can easily be identified on a map and also be easily visible during wither conditions.

Peaks. Mountaintops that form a point. Peaks of mountains are defined and easily seen during trekking and can be good prominent landmarks for orienting the map during winter travel.

Communication Towers. Cellular and radio communications towers are found on most current topographical maps and are good aids when orienting a map during winter navigation.

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets in a group discuss how terrain features are affected in the winter.

RESOURCES

- Flip chart paper, and
- Markers.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into groups of no more than four.
2. Provide each group with a sheet of flip chart paper and a marker.
3. Read the scenario in the note box to the cadets.

Scenario

Your cadet unit decided to conduct a three-day expedition in late fall. Prior to departure the weather and temperature was forecasted to be cool and partly sunny for most of the time but above the freezing point.

Starting out on the trek, the group travels for the first day. Camp is set up for the night and before lights out, some precipitation begins to fall. It is a cool night and all members decide to call it an early night and go to ground.

Waking up in the morning, the group is surprised to find 20 cm of snow on the ground. Luckily all members are prepared for the cool weather, and clothing and equipment will not be a problem. It is decided to continue the trek.

Before departing on the second day from base camp, it is noticeable that the snow is hanging in the trees and makes a solid layer of cover on the ground. While navigating, some members are finding it difficult, to identify features to orient the map.

4. Ask the cadets the following question and have them record their answers in point form on the flip chart paper, large enough to read from a distance.
   a. When navigating, a person uses specific features to orient and guide their route of travel. If you were on the trek in the scenario, what navigation catching features would you expect to be difficult, if not impossible, to use because of the layer of snowfall?
   b. Have the cadets brainstorm for 10 minutes then have each group post their flip chart paper on the wall and present the work to the group. Have one cadet from each group explain how they think snow will affect each of their answers.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss the Three Most Common Factors That Can Reduce Visibility**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

VISIBILITY

Visibility is the range or possibility of vision as determined by the conditions of light and atmosphere. In winter, people will experience a loss of visibility in blizzard conditions and at night.

Darkness. Typically most people will not be navigating after dark, but may choose to in the event they need to make up time. On nights when the moon is not visible, surroundings become shadowless, the horizon and distant features blend into the darkness and the snow absorbs light. Navigating on an overcast night is very difficult – if not impossible.

Blowing Snow. During this condition the wind picks up snow and whirls it about. The strength of the wind combined with snow creates a thick barrier that limits visibility.

Falling Snow. Falling snow can be so heavy at times that the milky colour of the air blends seamlessly into the equally milky and featureless snow-covered ground. If this occurs on terrain lacking trees or other vegetation, conditions of zero visibility occur. This condition is amplified with wind, creating a whiteout condition. During a whiteout in mountainous regions, a person may not be able to see sudden drop-offs.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are three common factors which reduce visibility ?

Q2. How does blowing snow affect visibility?

Q3. What can create a whiteout condition?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Three common factors that reduce visibility are darkness, blowing snow, and falling snow.

A2. Blowing snow affects visibility when the wind picks up snow and whirls it about. The strength of the wind combined with snow, creates a thick barrier that limits visibility.

A3. A whiteout condition can be caused by falling snow that is so heavy at times that the milky colour of the air blends seamlessly into the equally milky and featureless snow-covered ground.

Teaching Point 3 **Identify Weather Conditions and Discuss Their Impacts on Navigation in the Winter**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Wind. Wind combined with cold temperatures is a marriage of harsh elements that can make a navigation exercise uncomfortable. Wind transports moisture into a storm at the surface and aloft which allows the storm to intensify and continue unabated. As a result, wind impacts navigation by contributing to the development of ground blizzards, falling snow blizzards and whiteouts.

Fog. Fog occurs when the air is unable to hold any more moisture and is caused when the temperature reaches the dew point. During this weather condition, a milky white mist forms above the surface of the ground. Fog is common during early mornings as the sun rises and will not dissipate until the sun heats the surface of the earth, causing an increase in air temperature. Fog will affect navigation by restricting visibility and obscuring navigational features.

Snow. Snow is a type of precipitation in the form of crystalline water that falls from clouds. As snow falls, it accumulates on the ground. This accumulation over time will affect navigation by:

- covering well-defined paths and routes; and
- reducing visibility during snowfall.

Ground Blizzards. Ground blizzards occur when the wind is strong enough to pick up snow from open surfaces and whirl it through the air causing blinding conditions. Typically, such ground blizzards occupy the air to a height of 9–12 m (30–40 feet). It is actually possible to look straight up and see perfectly clear, blue sky overhead.

Ground blizzards can negatively affect navigation by:

- reducing visibility to the point that you may be able to see only from 100 metres ahead.
- reducing the visibility of prominent landmarks or features visible to effectively determine position and direction through map orientation; and
- forcing the navigator to be more cautious and vigilant when map reading. The concentration required because of these conditions reduces speed and increases travel time.

Falling Snow Blizzards. Falling snow blizzards occur when a considerable amount of snow is falling. It can be so heavy at times that the milky colour of the air blends seamlessly into the equally milky and featureless snow-covered ground. This condition is amplified with wind and creates whiteout conditions.

Falling snow blizzards can negatively affect navigation by:

- creating dangerous situations of very poor visibility, to the point that one may be able to see only metres ahead of oneself;
- making it impossible to see surrounding prominent landmarks or features for navigation. A GPS or compass is all that can be relied upon; and
- forcing the navigator to be more cautious and vigilant when map reading. The concentration required because of these conditions reduces speed and increases travel time exponentially.

Whiteouts. Whiteouts are weather conditions of heavy, wind-driven snowstorms that obliterate all natural landmarks and are not uncommon in the mountains. Visibility and vegetation contrasts are severely reduced by snow and diffused lighting caused from an overcast cloud layer.

Whiteouts can negatively affect navigation by:

- creating dangerous situations of very poor visibility, to the point that one may be able to see only metres ahead of oneself;
- making it impossible to see surrounding prominent landmarks or features for navigation. A GPS or compass is all that can be relied upon; and
- forcing the navigator to be more cautious and vigilant when map reading. The concentration required because of these conditions reduces speed and increases travel time exponentially.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is a ground blizzard and how will it impact navigation?

Q2. What causes a whiteout?

Q3. How will wind impact navigation?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. A ground blizzard is wind that is strong enough to pick up snow from open surfaces and whirl it through the air causing blinding conditions. Typically, such ground blizzards occupy the air to a height of 9–12 m (30–40 feet). Ground blizzards can negatively affect navigation by:

- reducing visibility to the point that one may be able to see only 100 m ahead of oneself;
- reducing the visibility of prominent landmarks or features that are used to determine position and direction through map orientation; and
- forcing the navigator to be more cautious and vigilant when map reading. The concentration required because of these conditions reduces speed and increases travel time.

A2. A whiteout is caused by weather conditions of heavy, wind-driven snowstorms, obliterating all natural landmarks. Visibility and contrast are severely reduced by snow and diffused lighting from an overcast cloud layer.

A3. Wind impacts navigation by contributing to the development of blizzards, falling snow blizzards and whiteouts.

Teaching Point 4 **Discuss the Application of Individual Navigation Skills in the Winter**

Time: 20 min Method: Group Discussion

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

USING A TOPOGRAPHICAL MAP

Winter conditions mask, distort and blend together many prominent features a navigator would use to orient a map. When navigating during winter conditions, a navigator will have to look beyond the simple easy to find features such as the trail ahead, a stream running nearby, or the cluster of boulders up ahead. All of these features are either covered by snow or have blended in with their surroundings making them indistinguishable. The features that can be used are:

- the mountains in the distance (contour lines),
- large bodies of water (open areas that are covered in ice),
- ridge lines,
- visible archways of known paths, and
- definable vegetation changes (open fields that change into forest).

When orienting the map, the navigator will now have to look beyond the immediate surroundings and view the distant landscape for identifiable features.

IDENTIFYING OBJECTS ON THE GROUND WITH OBJECTS ON THE MAP

Winter conditions distort navigation features. A well-defined island in a lake in the summer may blend into the background and look like the mainland in the winter. Seen from a distance, a bunch of small islands blend together and look like part of the mainland or like a big island that does not appear on the map.

In such situations where features become tricky to identify, good habits will help. For complicated areas full of bewildering features, keep checking position and progress by lining up, isolating, and checking ground features with the map. Predict what should come next; if the predictions are wrong stop and locate position.

TAKING BEARINGS

Before heading across a large body of frozen water, an open field, a valley or thick brush, take a bearing to the next checkpoint or destination from the current known position. Do this even in clear weather, whenever it is possible to support the direction of travel. If the winds build while crossing an open area or the weather changes, a group may become disoriented.

Taking a bearing before making the journey across a valley will ensure the person reaches their desired destination. If a person becomes disoriented because of a sudden change in weather conditions, attempting to take a bearing on something they almost see will not work if they cannot identify where they are.

Aiming Off. Aiming off is a method to ensure the navigator will not get disoriented or lost by planning a deliberate error in direction.

When taking a bearing, the navigator identifies the desired destination (eg, a path at the end of a wide open field) and selects a point to shoot the bearing a few degrees left or right of the path. If a navigator shoots a bearing directly to the desired destination (the path at the end of a wide open field) and follows the bearing under conditions of poor visibility and the navigator travels off course just slightly, the navigator upon arrival at the end of the field will be in a position that is unknown. Trying to identify what side of the path they are on will be impossible and a guess will have to be made.

If the navigator follows the bearing directly to a point left of the desired destination, the navigator knows where the location of the path is (to the right of the current location). Aiming off is used when the navigator will lose site of the final destination or sudden loss of visibility is expected because of weather. The navigator, even if some error is made during travel, can be assured to travel one direction to find the desired destination (path, trail, road way etc).

PACING

The pace counting method (pacing) is used for measuring a given distance by counting every other step. Two steps equal one pace. Pacing is a very important skill in navigation as each person has a different pace and needs to establish their pace before it can become a useful measurement tool. Pacing varies between individuals as it uses a natural stride – an average adult will pace about 60 to 70 paces in 100 m.

While navigating over snow-covered terrain, use pacing to help track distances covered. To determine an individual pace similar to summer treks, practice taking uniform, comfortable steps over a measured snow-covered distance (100 m) counting every second step of the dominant foot. Do this three to five times to get an average. This will be the individual's pace number and should be remembered.

PLANNING A ROUTE

To plan a route during the winter, the navigator must consider the changes winter brings. Speed of travel, prominent features, and desired shelter all change. Routes will change; even arriving at the starting point may change. Consider the following:

- Where is the destination?
- How much snow has fallen and accumulated on the route?
- What are the snow conditions?

- Is it a defined well-travelled path?
- Is the path groomed?
- Will the route have readily identifiable navigational features (lakes, mountains, valleys, etc)?
- What is the weather forecast?
- Is the distance to the destination a possible goal considering the conditions?
- What is the skill level of the group?
- What is the mode of travel (foot, skis or snowshoe)?
- What will be the anticipated travelling speed of the group?
- Are there shelter options along the route in case of a storm?

ENFORCING GROUP TRAVEL TECHNIQUES

Travelling on a clear day, maintaining direction and staying within sight of party members is simple. However, consider walking across a 5-km (3-mile) stretch of an open lake in a blizzard with only a few metres of vibisility, and trying to maintain direction without getting lost or losing sight of party members. This can be very difficult; however, the following practices can make such a trek a little easier:

- **Staying Within Sight of Each Other.** In a well-led, considerate group, members will adjust their pace to the slowest member. If caught in a storm, it is best to put the slowest person first in line. This way, normal stride and pacing will keep the group bunched up.

  Each person in line must be responsible to keep in sight, one person behind and one person ahead of them. No one should move until the last, or sweep, person is within sight of the second to last, and so on up the line. When each person is in sight of the next, the whole line can continue to move. Following this rule, the line functions even when visibility is so poor that each person can see only one person in each direction.

- **Assigning Numbers.** Groups travelling may find it more comforting to use numbers to identify each member in a group. Once the order is established, the person in the rear of the party is assigned the first number. This is sequentially followed to the lead person. At any time, any member of the group can call out for numbers and the group will number off starting with the rear person. Any numbers that are not accounted for indicates a missing person. The group can then stop and sort out the problem.

- **Taking Breaks as Required.** While trekking along a route, the leader can schedule routine rest stops. During these stops count the group members. This ensures all members are accounted for and provides time to address any issues.

GROUP DISCUSSION

TIPS FOR ANSWERING/FACILITATING DISCUSSION

- Establish ground rules for discussion, eg, everyone should listen respectfully; don't interrupt; only one person speaks at a time; no one's ideas should be made fun of; you can disagree with ideas but not with the person; try to understand others as much as you hope they understand you; etc.
- Sit the group in a circle, making sure all cadets can be seen by everyone else.
- Ask questions that will provoke thought; in other words avoid questions with yes or no answers.
- Manage time by ensuring the cadets stay on topic.
- Listen and respond in a way that indicates you have heard and understood the cadet. This can be done by paraphrasing their ideas.
- Give the cadets time to respond to your questions.
- Ensure every cadet has an opportunity to participate. One option is to go around the group and have each cadet answer the question with a short answer. Cadets must also have the option to pass if they wish.
- Additional questions should be prepared ahead of time.

SUGGESTED QUESTIONS

Q1. How would using a topographical map in the winter be different than in the summer?

Q2. What features are more noticeable during winter months?

Q3. You come upon a open field that stretches 5 km (3 miles) long. Your destination is a small inlet along the vegetation line directly across the field. There are definable mountains all around that make orienting the map easy. There is light snow falling; visibility at the moment is good. If you were handed the map and asked to lead the group across the field to the inlet, how would you proceed across the field safely, to arrive at your destination?

Q4. How would pace be affected in the winter? How would you test your pace prior to leaving on a trek in the winter?

Q5. What are some techniques a group could use when in a storm to ensure members do not get separated from the group? What are some other methods you may have used?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Using a topographical map in the winter would be different because when orienting the map the navigator will now have to look beyond the immediate surroundings and view the distant landscape for identifiable features.

A2. The features that are more noticeable during winter months are:

- the mountains in the distance (contour lines),
- large bodies of water (open areas that are covered in ice),
- ridge lines,
- visible archways of known paths, and

- definable vegetation changes (open fields that change into forest).

A3. The safest method to navigate across the field would be to shoot a bearing aiming off to one side of the destination. Once arriving at the vegetation line, follow the edge opposite the direction you aimed off (left or right) to the destination. At any time, the winds could pick up and without a bearing you would not know what direction to travel.

A4. Pacing would be affected in winter by the different conditions of the terrain being covered. Snow conditions, depth and the personal equipment you are using will all affect pace.

To determine an individual pace similar to summer treks, practice taking uniform, comfortable steps over a measured snow-covered distance (100 m) counting every second step of the dominant foot. Do this three to five times to get an average. This will be the individual's pace number and should be remembered.

A5. The techniques that can be used to ensure no members get separated from the group are making sure members stay in sight of each other, assigning numbers and taking scheduled breaks.

Other questions and answers will develop throughout the group discussion. The group discussion should not be limited to only those suggested.

Reinforce those answers given and comments made during the group discussion, ensuring the teaching points have been covered.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 4

The cadets' participation in the group discussion will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 5 — **Conduct an Activity Where the Cadet Will Practice Navigating in the Winter**

Time: 60 min — Method: Practical Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets practice navigating in the winter.

RESOURCES

- Topographical map (one per cadet),
- Magnetic compass (one per cadet), and
- Prepared navigation route.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

The navigational activity must take place in an area with snow-covered surroundings away from most man-made features.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Provide each cadet with a topographical map and a compass.
2. Have cadets navigate a short predetermined route that crosses open terrain.
3. Have cadets practice aiming off of their destinations when trekking across the open area.
4. Have cadets practice group travel techniques.
5. Periodically stop cadets and have them orient their maps. Point out conflicting features and discrepancies between visual features compared to map based features. Identify the prominent features that will identify position.

SAFETY

First aid equipment and a device for communicating with base camp are to be carried in case of emergency.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the navigation activity will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Cadets who a participating in a trek in the winter may suddenly experience a rapid deterioration in weather conditions. Using winter navigational skills can ensure the group remains on course and arrives safely at their destination.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Corps may choose to schedule and instruct only TPs 1–4.

REFERENCES

C2-158 (ISBN 0-07-136417-X) Conover, G., & Conover, A. (2001). *The Winter Wilderness Companion: Traditional and Native AMERICAN Skills for the Undiscovered Season*. Camden, ME: Ragged Mountain Press.

C2-160 (ISBN 0-89886-947-1) Lanza, M. (2003). *Winter Hiking and Camping: Managing for Comfort and Safety*. Emmaus, PA: The Mountaineers Books.

C2-161 (ISBN 1-878239-09-0) Gorman, S. (1991). *AMC Guide to Winter Camping: Wilderness Travel and Adventure in the Cold-Weather Months*. Boston, MA: Appalachian Mountain Club Books.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 9

EO C322.03 – IDENTIFY THE PRINCIPLES OF MAP-MAKING

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Collect examples of different types of maps.

If available, photocopy an early explorer's map of the local area as a handout.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for this lesson to present background information on maps and map-making.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have identified the principles of map-making.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to be able to identify the principles of map-making because using maps is an integral component of expedition activities. Cadets will be required to use a variety of maps throughout their cadet career. Knowing how maps are made will provide the cadets with additional background information that they can use to assist them in navigating. As well, maps are something used in everyday life, whether travelling from home to a relative's house or hiking in a provincial park. Maps show a user where they are going and how they are going to get there.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss Maps**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is a review of material presented in previous star levels. Cadets should already have a clear understanding of what a map is. Guide the cadets, through leading questions, to ensure that they understand the main concepts.

Once a person understands the “language” of a map, they will be able to go anywhere.

WHAT IS A MAP

A map is a scale, or proportionately smaller, representation of the ground that uses universally accepted symbols to represent both natural and man-made features found on the ground.

TYPES, CHARACTERISTICS AND FEATURES OF MAPS

There are many types of maps, each determined by the purpose for which it is designed.

Topographical Map. A topographical map is the most common map used by the military. The purpose of a topographical map is to present a picture of the ground as it really exists. Topographical maps show as much detail as the scale allows, generally 1 : 25 000, 1 : 50 000, or 1 : 250 000. Features on a topographical map include physical features of the ground – rivers, woods, contours, roads, buildings, etc – as well as names of specific features – towns, villages, rivers, etc.

Orienteering Map. Through the International Orienteering Federation (IOF), specific rules and standards have been set for the production of an orienteering map, including colour, symbols, and scales. It is more detailed than a topographical map, both with reference to vegetation and landforms. They are usually produced in a scale smaller than 1 : 10 000.

Street and Road Map. A street and road map is designed to assist commuters and tourists to locate key sites such as roads and highways, police stations, fire halls, hospitals, schools and parks.

Relief Map. A relief map is a three-dimensional representation, usually of terrain. The terrain elevation is usually exaggerated by a factor between five and ten. This helps to recognize the terrain features.

Digital Map. A digital map, such as those found on computer programs and when using a GPS receiver, is useful as a reference tool as it is updated regularly. This allows a digital map to be a more accurate reference than other types of maps.

Political Map. A political map shows countries, provinces or other political borders–eg, globes and atlases.

Statistical Map. A statistical map shows statistical information such as the population, and production levels of crops or minerals across a country.

Outline Map. An outline map shows only borders, rivers, coastlines, etc.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is a map?

Q2. What type of map is most commonly used by the military?

Q3. What type of map provides a three dimensional representation of terrain?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. A map is a scale, or proportionately smaller, representation of the ground that uses universally accepted symbols to represent both natural and man-made features.

A2. A topographical map is the most common map used by the military.

A3. A relief map is a three-dimensional representation, usually of terrain.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss Cartography**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Cartography will be a new concept for most cadets. Have a flip chart detailing the main headings of the TP as a visual aid for cadets.

CARTOGRPAHY

Cartography, as defined by the International Cartographic Association, is a discipline which deals with the conception, production, dissemination and study of maps. In essence, cartography is the entire process of mapping. Cartography is also an academic discipline, which deals not only with the people who make maps, but also with the people who teach about, and complete research on maps. It is an ever-changing, complex field, which has the process of map-making at its centre and all functions related to map-making surrounding it.

TWO ESSENTIAL CHARACTERISTICS OF CARTOGRAPHY

Level of Importance to Society

The Canadian Cartographic Society states that maps perform a fundamental and indispensable role as one of the key elements of civilization. Few, if any, activities related to the earth's surface – property ownership, road construction, emergency response, and navigation – would be possible without maps.

Dynamic Nature

The discipline of cartography is continuously changing. Map-making has always been impacted by technological change; however, the speed with which technology is advancing has enormous implications. While there are still some who use pen and ink techniques for map-making, the majority of maps have been developed using the very latest computer hardware and graphic software. Today images are being generated faster and with less cost, and this will continue to improve with further advances in technology.

ROLE OF A CARTOGRAPHER

Most cartographers are employed in map-making occupations, although, that does not mean they do the same job. A cartographer's job depends on individual specialties and areas of interest.

The following are basic tasks that are generally performed, in some capacity, by all cartographers:

Liaising. Cartographers do not work in isolation. There is a requirement for them to work with outside agencies. It is their responsibility to discuss and set guidelines for the project with the client.

Editing. Editing encompasses a number of tasks, including the evaluation and processing of data; selecting scales and projections; making design decisions; drawing up flow charts and specifications; preparing compilations; and checking the final product.

Drafting. This is the process of constructing the map image. It is completed using a combination of hand – pen and ink work, scribing, etc – and computer methods.

Researching. A cartographer will have to complete research: search out suitable data for a specific map; analyze output from Global Information Systems (GIS); scientifically study maps and map-making and map-reading processes; and develop new techniques for map-making.

Teaching. Many cartographers work as teachers in colleges and universities.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is the definition of cartography?

Q2. What activities would be impossible without maps?

Q3. The process of constructing the map image is what job of a cartographer?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Cartography, as defined by International Cartographic Association, is a discipline which deals with the conception, production, dissemination and study of maps.

A2. Any activities related to the earth's surface – property ownership, road construction, emergency response and navigation – would be impracticable without maps.

A3. Drafting is the process of constructing the map image.

Teaching Point 3 **Identify the Principles of Map-Making**

Time: 15 min Method: Practical Activity

Map-making has become a technologically based skill. Understanding the principles of making a map by hand is still very important. Cadets will be introduced to the four-step process used to develop a map during this TP.

Before people took pictures from airplanes, maps were drawn by someone travelling over the terrain and drawing by hand. With aerial photography, map-making has become much easier–but still requires a great deal of work from the map-maker (cartographer).

Much of Canada was mapped by hand by European explorers like Champlain, Tyrell, MacKenzie and Thompson.

If available, distribute a copy of an early explorer's map of the local area.

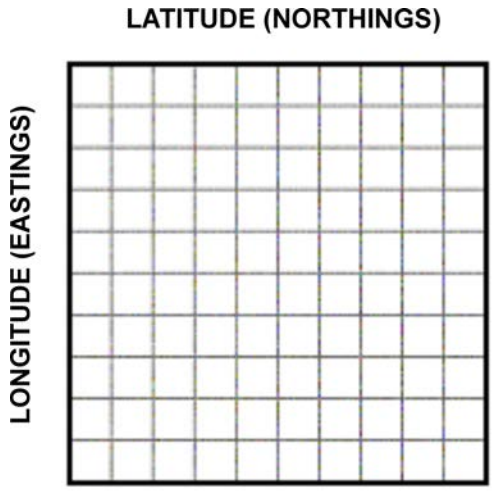
STEP 1 – DETERMINING LOCATION

The first step in preparing a map is for the individual to determine their current location. The location of any point or place on the earth's surface can only be understood with reference to its distance from another point or place.

The easiest way to do this is to use landmarks. Landmarks are features that are man-made – houses, buildings, railroads, churches – or natural – a river, lakes, forested areas.

Have the cadets list 'landmarks' which could be in a classroom. These may include desks, chairs, windows, chalkboard, door, tables, OHP, etc.

The exact location of an object must be determined, to ensure that the map-user can easily find the site depicted without depending on another person for guidance. To make this possible, the earth's surface has been divided into a grid system of imaginary lines – lines of longitude (eastings) and lines of latitude (northings) – which provide map-makers with the ability to place and locate landmarks with precision.



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-9-1 Representation of Lines of Longitude and Latitude

STEP 2 – DETERMING PROJECTION AND SCALE

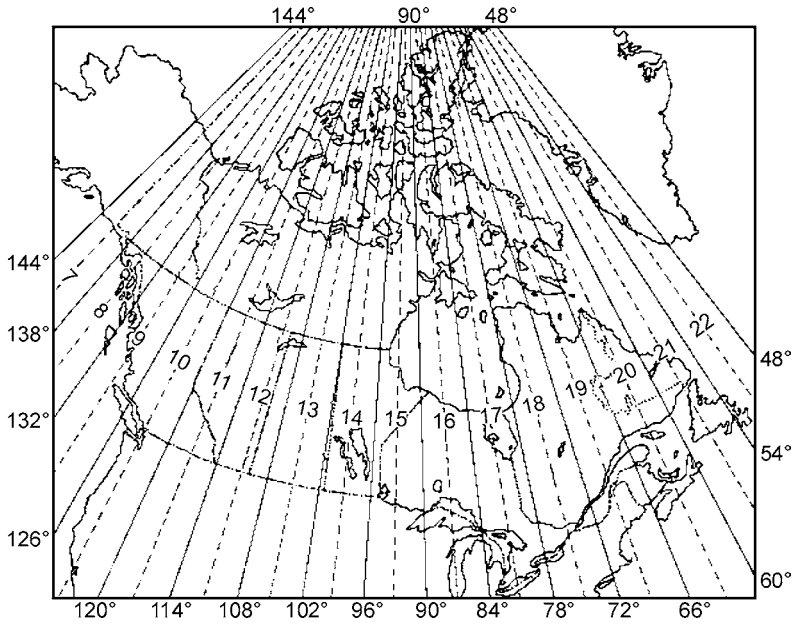
Any type of representation of the earth's surface on a flat piece of paper will have distortions because the world is round. These are relatively insignificant on maps that show only small parts of the earth, like street and road maps or 1 : 50 000 scale maps, but are quite considerable for maps of countries and continents.

Cadets will not be required to determine projection when developing a map. It is important that they are familiar with the concept, particularly Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM).

Map Projection

Map projection is a geometrical method of reducing the amount of distortion on a flat map. In very large countries such as Canada, map-makers divide the country into strips from north to south, called zones, and project each zone.

UTM. UTM is a system of strip projection which is used by all National Topographical System maps. For UTM Projection, the earth's surface has been divided into 60 zones. Sixteen of these zones, numbered 7–22, cover Canada from west to east.



"Natural Resources Canada", The Universal Transverse Mercator Grid, Copyright 1969 by Department of Energy, Mines and Resource Canada, Surveys and Mapping Branch, Ottawa, ON. Retrieved April 4, 2008, from http://maps.nrcan.gc.ca/topo101/utm2_e.php

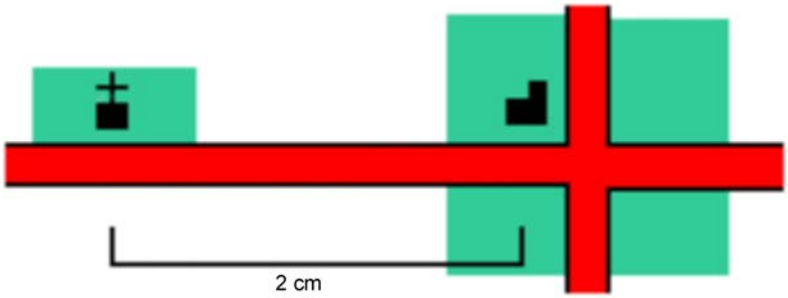
Figure 13-9-2 UTM Zones – Canada

Scale

Modern maps share one thing in common, they are all drawn to scale – meaning they are exact representations of the area they illustrate. The scale of a map is an expression of the ratio between one unit on the map and the distance it covers, in the same units, on the ground.

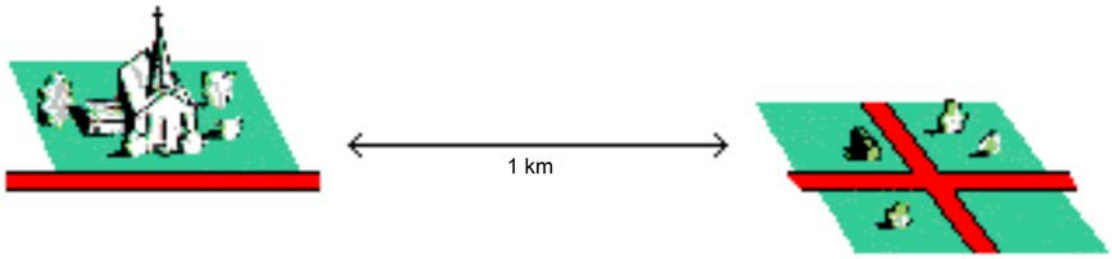
For example:

If 2 cm on a map, represents 1 km on the ground, the scale is 2 cm = 1 km.



"Natural Resources Canada", Map Scale, Copyright 1969 by Department of Energy, Mines and Resource Canada, Surveys and Mapping Branch, Ottawa, ON. Retrieved April 4, 2008, from http://maps.nrcan.gc.ca/topo101/scale_e.php

Figure 13-9-3 Scale – Map



"Natural Resources Canada", Map Scale, Copyright 1969 by Department of Energy, Mines and Resource Canada, Surveys and Mapping Branch, Ottawa, ON. Retrieved April 4, 2008, from http://maps.nrcan.gc.ca/topo101/scale_e.php

Figure 13-9-4 Scale – Real Distance

Another way to represent scale would be:

$$\frac{\text{DISTANCE ON THE MAP}}{\text{DISTANCE ON THE GROUND}} = \frac{2\text{ cm}}{1\text{ km}} = \frac{2\text{ cm}}{100\,000\text{ cm}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{50\,000}$$

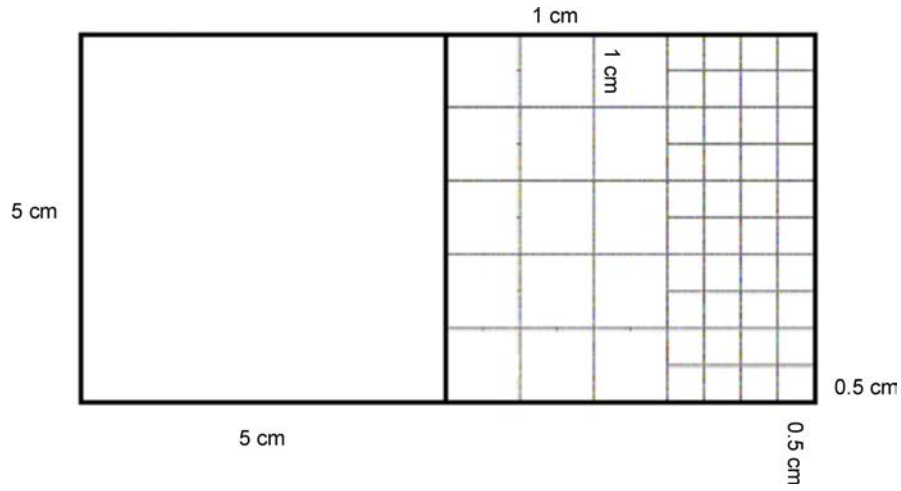
$$= \textbf{1: 50 000 SCALE}$$

"Natural Resources Canada", Map Scale, Copyright 1969 by Department of Energy, Mines and Resource Canada, Surveys and Mapping Branch, Ottawa, ON. Retrieved April 4, 2008, from http://maps.nrcan.gc.ca/topo101/scale_e.php

Figure 13-9-5 Scale Representation

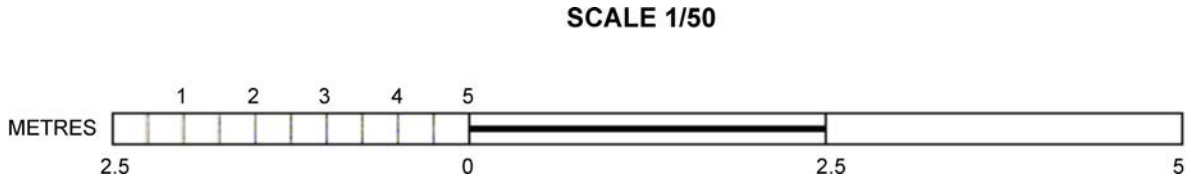
Ask cadets what scale should be used when drawing a map of the classroom. The scale should be in cm, given the size of a classroom. The scale ratio will be very small, as the map will show great detail. Figures 13-9-6 and 13-9-7 are examples of the scale.

For the map of the classroom the scale will be 1 : 50. This means that 1 cm on the map is equal to 0.5 m (50 cm) on the ground.



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-9-6 Grid Square



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-9-7 Map Scale

STEP 3 – IDENTIFYING FEATURES AND ADDING SYMBOLS

Once the map's projection and scale are determined, the next step is to add features of the physical landscapes that will most accurately and vividly represent the area being mapped. This is done by simplifying the features using symbols and colours.

Map Symbols. Map symbols are graphic images that represent something else. They may be depicted by pictorial images, abstract combinations of points and lines, or tonal shading and colour tints.

Have a selection of maps available so cadets can see the types of symbols used.

Map-makers use a key or legend to indicate what symbols represent. On topographical maps, this legend is included on the back of the map and sometimes in the map margin.

Have the cadets brainstorm symbols which correspond to the features they previously identified in the classroom. An example is an "x" to symbolize a chair.

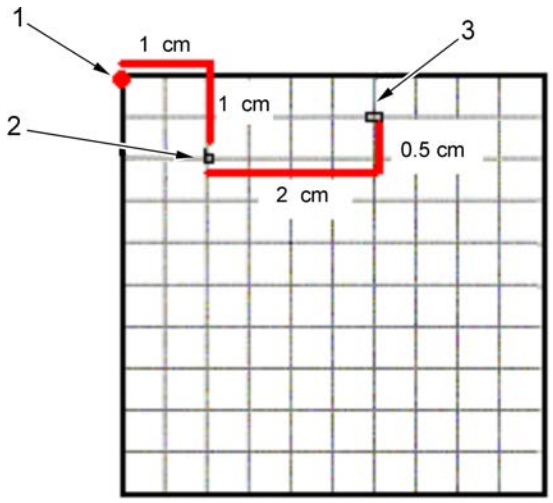
Placing Symbols on the Map

Once the appropriate symbols have been identified, the map-maker must place them on the map. This is done by:

1. measuring the distance of the area/location which is to be mapped and marking this on the graph paper;
2. selecting a reference point. This could be the centre of the area being mapped, one of the four corners, etc;
3. selecting and plotting the first feature by placing the symbol on the map. This initial feature should be something that is known and easily transferred from the ground to the map;

> All maps are drawn from a reference point. The reference point is called the datum. Most map datum only cover a portion of the earth, like the North American Datum of 1927 (NAD–27), which only covers the continent of North America.

4. selecting the next feature, measuring the distance and direction between it and the initial feature, and then placing the symbol on the map; and



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13-9-8 Adding Symbols to the Map

> In the example in Figure 13-9-8, the map-maker:
>
> 1. selected the reference point – the northeast corner of the classroom;
> 2. measured the actual position (0.5 m across, 0.5 m down), then plotted the symbol in the correct location using the scale (1 cm across, 1 cm down); and
> 3. selected the next feature, the desk, and measured the actual distance across from the chair and then up to the desk (1 m [2 cm] by 0.25 m [0.5 cm]).

5. for each new feature added to the map, measuring its position in relation to those already added.

The map-maker should add symbols one grid square at a time.

Step 4 – APPLYING GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES TO FEATURES

The final step in the making of a map is selecting and applying geographical names that identify relevant features, landmarks, and places. Geographical names are fundamental elements of maps.

At this point most natural landmarks have already been named.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. Determining location is the first step in making a map. What is the easiest way to do this?

Q2. What is map projection?

Q3. The scale of a map is an expression of what type of ratio?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The easiest way to determine location is to use landmarks. Landmarks are features that are man-made – houses, buildings, railroads, churches – or natural – a river, lakes, forested areas.

A2. Map projection is a geometrical method of reducing the amount of distortion on a flat map. In very large countries such as Canada, map-makers divide the country into strips from north to south, called zones, and project each zone.

A3. The scale of a map is an expression of the ratio between one unit on the map and the distance it covers, in the same units, on the real ground.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is a map?

Q2. What are the five basic functions that are generally performed, in some capacity, by all cartographers?

Q3. What is the UTM?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. A map is a scale, or proportionately smaller, representation of the ground that uses internationally accepted symbols to represent both natural and man-made features.

A2. The five basic functions that are generally performed, in some capacity by all cartographers are liaising, editing, drafting, researching and teaching.

A3. The UTM is a system of strip projection which is used by all National Topographical System maps. For UTM projection, the earth's surface has been divided into 60 zones. Sixteen of these zones, numbered 7–22, cover Canada from west to east.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Being able to identify the principles of map-making is an important concept to understand because using maps is an integral component to the army cadet training program. Knowing how a map is made and developed will assist cadets in reading a map.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Cadets will be given the opportunity to create their own maps in EO C322.04 (Draw a Map of an Area in the Local Training Facility, Section 10).

REFERENCES

C2-166 Geomatics Yukon Kids. (2002). *Cartography*. Retrieved February 21, 2008, from http://www.geomaticsyukpn.ca/kids/cartography1.html.

C2-168 EdGate. (2006). *Cartography Concepts: A Student's Guide to Mapmaking*. Retrieved February 21, 2008, from http://www.edgate.com/lewisandclark/cartography.html.

C2-170 Gorman, J., & Morris, M. (Eds.). (1998, April). *You Are Here*. The Backpacker, April, 74–81.

C2-190 The Canadian Cartographic Association. (2008). *Digital Pamphlet: Careers in Cartography*. Retrieved April 3, 2008, from http://www.cca-acc.org/careers.asp.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 10

EO C322.04 – DRAW A MAP OF AN AREA IN THE LOCAL TRAINING FACILITY

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Photocopy Annex F for each cadet.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

A practical activity was chosen for this lesson as it is an interactive way to allow the cadet to experience map-making in a safe, controlled environment. This activity contributes to the development of map-making skills in a fun and challenging setting.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

The following review is from EO C322.03 (Identify the Principles of Map-Making, Section 9):

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the four principles of map-making?

Q2. Determine location is the first step in making a map. What is the easiest way to do this?

Q3. The scale of a map is an expression of what type of ratio?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The four principles of map-making are:

- determine location;
- determine projection and scale;

- identify features and add symbols; and
- apply geographical names to features.

A2. The easiest way to determine location is to use landmarks. Landmarks can be in the form of manmade features – houses, buildings, railroads, churches—or natural features – rivers, lakes, forested areas.

A3. The scale of a map is an expression of the ratio between one unit on the map and the distance one unit covers on the ground.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have drawn a map of an area in the local training facility using the principles of map-making.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to be able to draw a map of an area in the local training facility because understanding the concept of map-making will enhance the cadets' ability to read a map. Using maps is an integral component to the army cadet training program and it is critical that a cadet is able to use them effectively. Drawing a map, using the principles of map-making, will provide the cadet the opportunity to see a map as more than simply lines and symbols.

Teaching Point 1 **Have the Cadets Draw a Map of an Area in the Local Training Facility**

Time: 25 min Method: Practical Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for the cadet to draw a map of an area in the unit's local training facility.

RESOURCES

- Graph paper located at Annex F,
- Paper (letter size),
- Measuring tape (one per group),
- Ruler (one per group),
- Pen/pencil,
- Markers/pencil crayons, and
- Notebook.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into groups of no more than three.

2. Assign each group an area in the local training facility to map.
3. Have each group draw a map, which includes:
   a. the name of the map,
   b. the scale of the map, and
   c. a legend of symbols.
4. Have each group present their map to the rest of the class.
5. Debrief the cadets discussing the practicality of making a map by hand, the difficulties they experienced, and what they learned from the activity.

SAFETY

If cadets are mapping outside, there must be an adult supervisor with the group at all times.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadets' participation in the practical activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the practical map-making activity will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Map reading is more than just looking at symbols and lines on a map. Participating in making a map will provide the cadet the opportunity to further understand how each symbol and line represents real features on the ground.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

This EO is to be scheduled after EO C322.03 (Identify the Principles of Map-Making, Section 9).

REFERENCES

C2-168 EdGate. (2006). *Cartography Concepts: A Student's Guide to Mapmaking*. Retrieved February 21, 2008, from http://www.edgate.com/lewisandclark/cartography.html.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

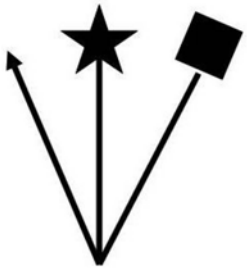
DECLINATION PROBLEM WORKSHEET

1. What is the declination for the following map where:

   a. the current year is 2010, 12°22'

   b. the approximate mean declination is for 1998, and

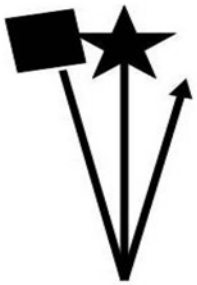
   c. the annual change is increasing 10.0'?



Answer: _____ East/West (circle one).

2. What is the declination for the following map where:

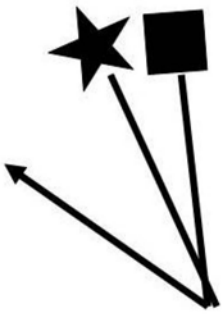
   - the current year is 2011, 7°17'
   - the approximate mean declination is for 2001, and
   - the annual change is decreasing 7.0'?



Answer: _____ East/West (circle one).

3. What is the declination for the following map:

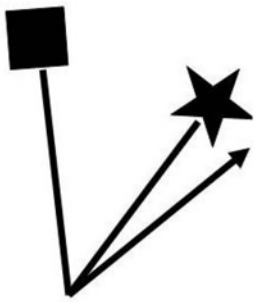
   - the current year is 2015, 5°53'
   - the approximate mean declination is for 2004, and
   - the annual change is increasing 8.32'?



Answer: _____ East/West (circle one).

4. What is the declination for the following map:

   - the current year is 2012, 10°24'
   - the approximate mean declination is for 1998, and
   - the annual change is increasing 9.57'?

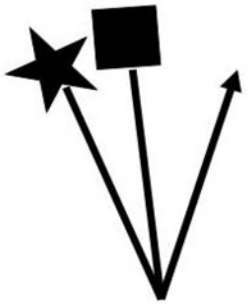


Answer: _____ East/West (circle one).

5. What is the declination for the following map:
   - the current year is 2014,
   - the approximate mean declination is for 2001, and
   - the annual change is decreasing 18'.0?

Answer: _____ East/West (circle one).

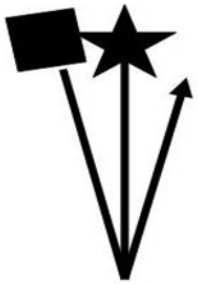
9°30'



6. What is the declination for the following map:
   - the current year is 2015,
   - the approximate mean declination is for 2003, and
   - the annual change increasing 2.0'?

Answer: _____ East/West (circle one).

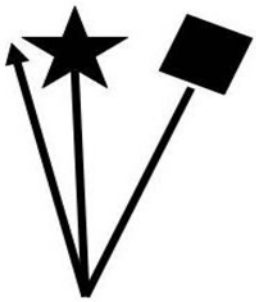
17°45'



7. What is the declination for the following map:
   - the current year is 2015,
   - the approximate mean declination is for 2003, and
   - the annual change is decreasing 11.0'?

Answer: _____ East/West (circle one).

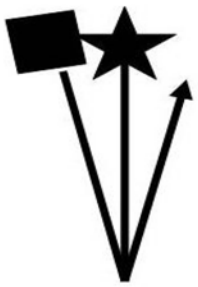
14°12'



8. What is the declination for the following map:
   - the current year is 2016,
   - the approximate mean declination is for 2009, and
   - the annual change is decreasing 2.7'?

Answer: _____ East/West (circle one).

7°39'

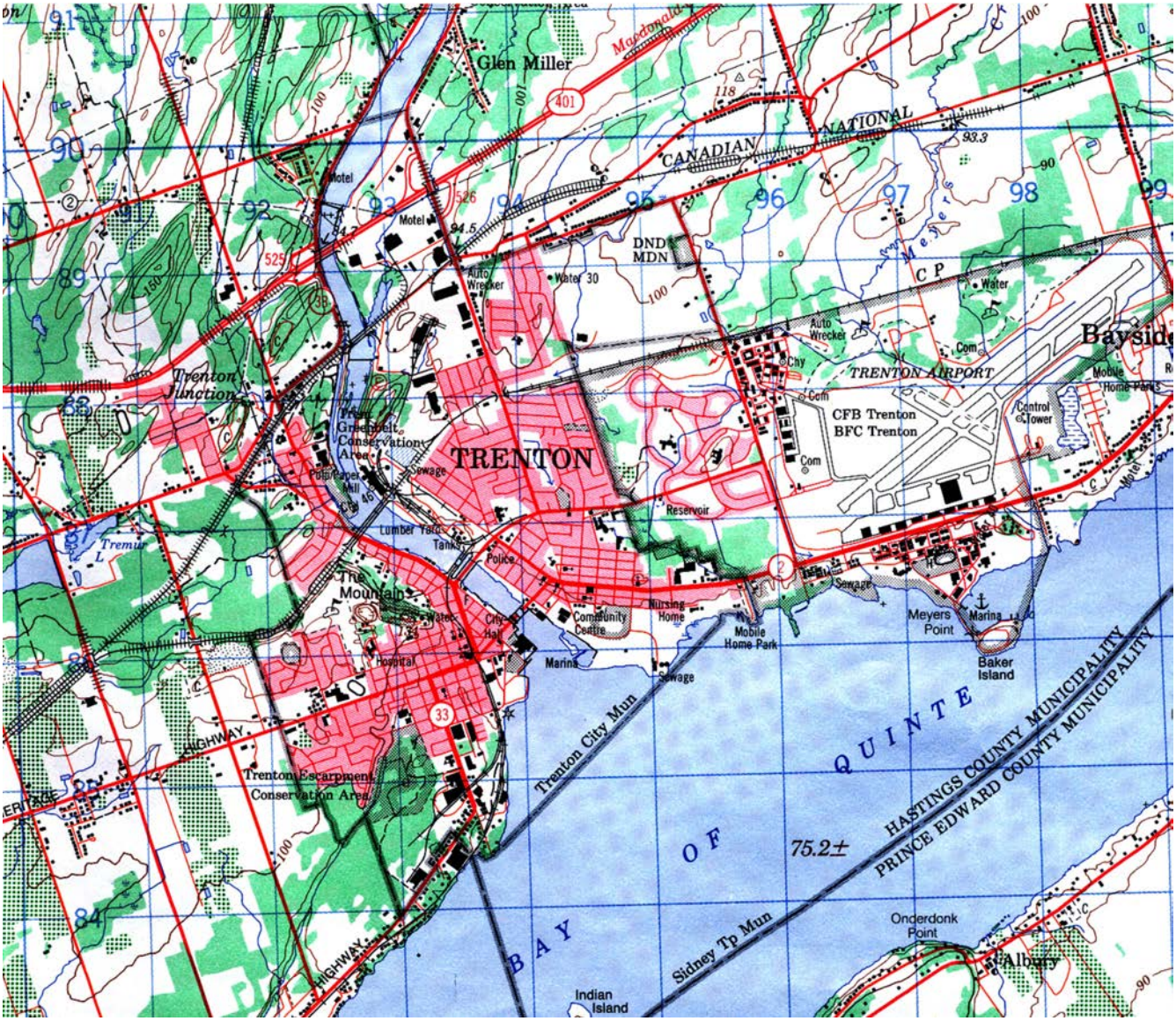


ANSWER KEY TO DECLINATION PROBLEM WORKSHEET

DECLINATION WORKINGS				ANSWER
1.	2010 - 1998 = 12	12 x 10 = 120° 120 ÷ 60 = 2°	12°22' + 2° = 14° 22'	**14°22' W**
2.	2011 - 2001 = 10	7° x 10 = 70' 70 ÷ 60 = 1°10'	7°17' - 1°10' = 6°07'	**6°07' E**
3.	2015 - 2004 = 11	11 x 8.32 = 91.52	5° 53' + 91'52" = 5°144'52" 5°144'.52" = 7°24'52" = 7°25'	**7°25' W**
4.	2012 - 1998 = 14	14 x 9.57' = 133.98 133.98 ÷ 60=2°13'98"	10°24' + 2°13.98' = 12°37.98"	**12°38' E**
5.	2014 - 2001 = 13	13 x 18' = 234 234 ÷ 60 = 3° 54'	9°30' - 3°54' = 5°36'	**5°36' E**
6.	2015 - 2003 = 12	12 x 2' = 24'	17°45' + 24' = 18°09'	**18°09' E**
7.	2015 - 2003 = 12	12 x 11' = 132' 132' ÷ 60 = 2°12'	14°12' - 2°12' = 12°	**12° W**
8.	2016 - 2009 = 7	7 x 2.7' = 18.9'	7°39' - 18.9' = 7°20'	**7°20' W**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SIMULATED MAP DATUM

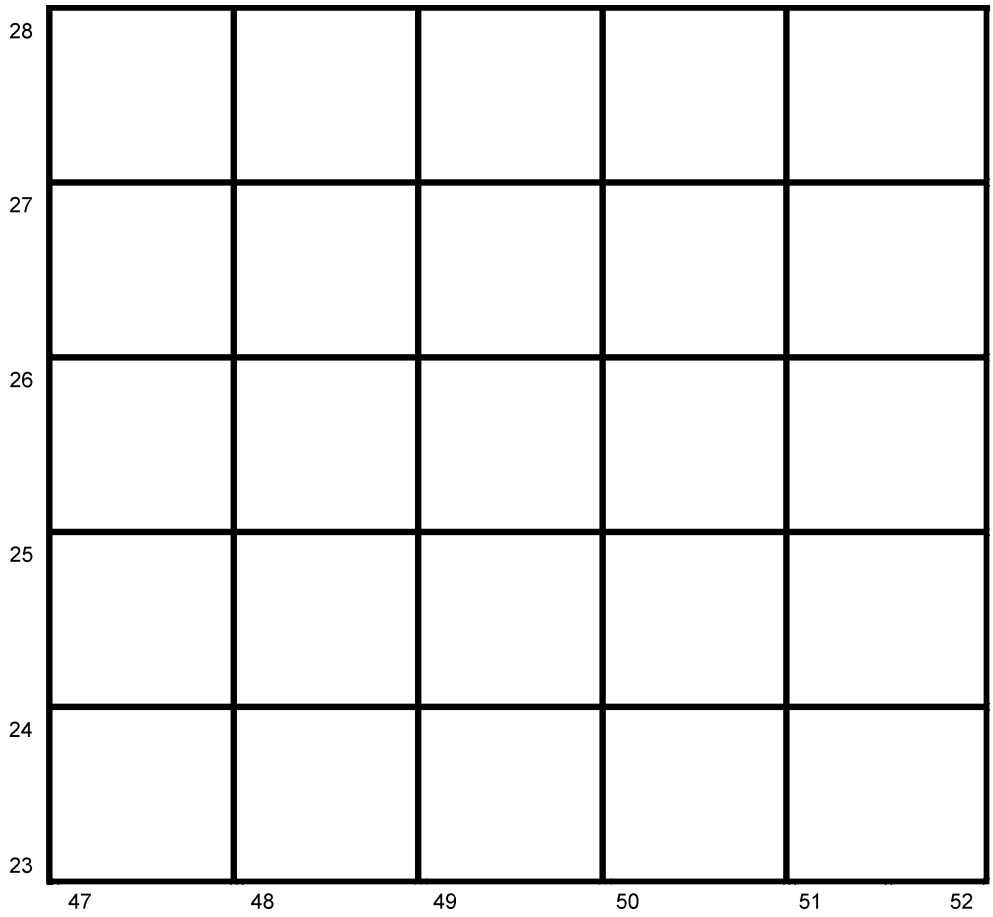


Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13C-1 Simulated Map for Making a Datum

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

GRID OVERLAY

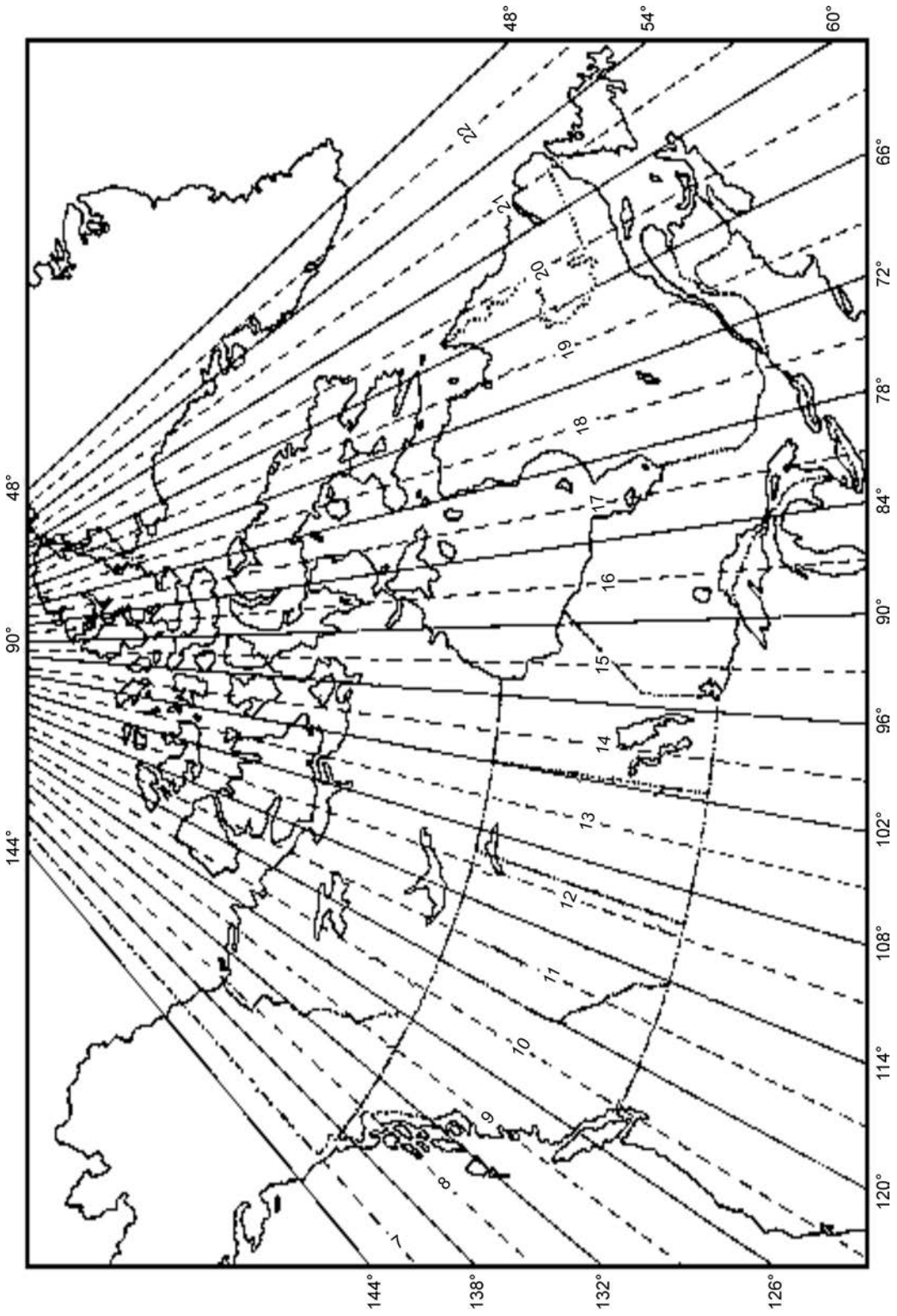


Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13D-1 Grid Overlay

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CANADIAN UTM ZONES



"Natural Resources Canada", The Universal Transverse Mercator Grid, Copyright 1969 by Department of Energy, Mines and Resource Canada, Surveys and Mapping Branch. Retrieved April 4, 2008, from http://maps.nrcan.gc.ca/topo101/utm2_e.php

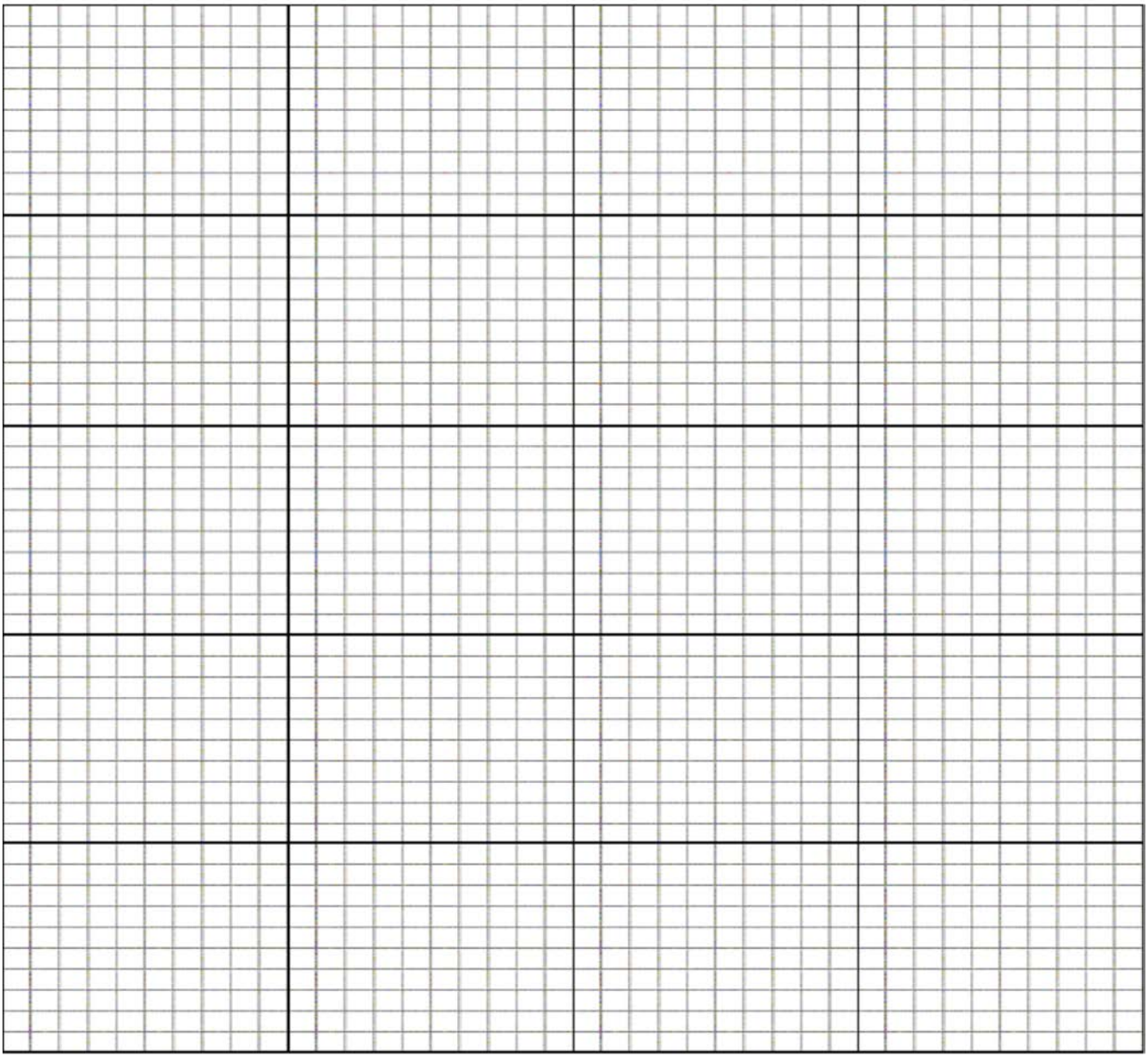
Figure 13E-1 Canadian UTM Zones

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

GRAPH PAPER

Map of _____

Scale _____



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 13F-1 Graph Paper

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 14
PO 324 – SURVIVE WHEN LOST

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 1

EO M324.01 – CONSTRUCT AN IMPROVISED SHELTER

Total Time: 90 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Construct an example of each type of shelter. If adequate materials are unavailable, use a picture to illustrate the shelter.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 to introduce factors to consider when selecting a site for an improvised shelter and present background information.

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TP 2 as it is allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate constructing survival shelters while providing an opportunity for the cadets to practice under supervision.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

The review for this lesson will be from EO M224.01 (Identify Immediate Actions To Take When Lost, A-CR-CCP-702/PF-001, Chapter 14, Section 1).

FIVE ELEMENTS OF SURVIVAL

After successfully completing the S.T.O.P. (Sit, Think, Observe, Plan) action and recognizing a survival situation, the lost individual shall take inventory of all the food and equipment on hand and proceed to procure the five elements of survival. These are listed in order of priority:

1. **Attitude.** Maintaining a positive attitude is essential. One can survive by staying calm, using all available resources, and prioritizing personal needs.

2. **Shelter.** A shelter is designed to provide protection from the weather and, depending on the conditions, protect a person from either hot or cold temperatures. Hypothermia and hyperthermia are two of the greatest dangers in a survival situation. A proper shelter can help prevent these from occurring. In a desert

scenario, for example, the goal is to stay under a shelter, shaded from the effects of the sun. In cold weather situations, the shelter will provide insulation.

3. **Water.** Water is the most essential nutrient for the human body. Even when thirst is not extreme it can dull the mind. Lack of water will slowly degrade the ability to survive. With adequate shelter and water one can survive for weeks.

4. **Fire.** In a survival situation, fire provides heat and light, and signals for rescuers. Cold weather not only lowers the ability to think, but it also lowers one's will to do anything. Even a few degrees drop in body temperature can affect the ability to make reasonable decisions.

5. **Food.** Individuals in good physical condition can go for many days or even weeks without food. The goal in a wilderness survival situation is to be located in the shortest time possible, so in most cases one will be located long before food becomes a survival issue. However, it is always important to prepare for the worst and find ways to supply the body with substance, through berries, fish, animals, birds, etc.

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the five elements of survival?

Q2. What is the one essential nutrient the body requires to function?

Q3. What does a shelter provide?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Attitude, shelter, water, fire and food.

A2. Water.

A3. Shelter provides protection from the weather and depending on the conditions, protects you from either hot or cold temperatures.

OBJECTIVES

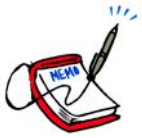
By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to construct an improvised shelter.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to know how to construct improvised shelters as a method of preventing boredom, as well as helping to combat the seven enemies of survival. Having a shelter that provides protection from the elements and is a source of motivation will increase chances of survival.

Teaching Point 1 **Select a Shelter Site**

Time: 25 min Method: Interactive Lecture



The instruction area for this lesson should match the factors of site selection as detailed in TP 1 under terrain and location considerations.

By the end of this lesson cadets will be expected to construct an improvised shelter. Introduce this TP by presenting the cadets with a scenario where they have become lost in the field and they have only a few hours of daylight left.

Shelter is the first concern. The location chosen to demonstrate the selection of a site should meet most if not all considerations. Ask the cadets what they think about the location. These questions should get them thinking about considerations when choosing a site.

Continue this lesson by identifying the rest of the factors and considerations described in TP 1.

During the summer months the need for shelter is not thought of as a great concern. It should be, as the weather could change drastically, especially in hilly or mountainous areas. In winter, a survivor may be tempted to set up a fire first rather than tackle the job of building or finding a shelter. When discussing the five elements of survival, shelter is the second survival element. A shelter provides protection from the elements, particularly wind and precipitation. Shelters improve morale by providing comfort, security and a sense of accomplishment.

TERRAIN CONSIDERATIONS

There are several factors that must be considered when selecting a site. Locations to construct a shelter should meet certain criteria, to avoid being awoken during the night due to an overlooked problem.

Select an Area Large Enough for the Shelter. Possible sites that are perfect in their natural form may be too small to accommodate one person. Ensure that the site can comfortably, considering the situation, fit oneself for the duration of the survival situation.

Select an Area That is Elevated and Provides Drainage. A site should provide dry footing and drainage in the case of rain. Keep back from rivers or lakes which may flood after a rain fall.

Identify Sheltered Areas That Protect From Wind, Rain and Sun. Shelter from wind, rain and sun can be sought from boulders, hillsides, trees or other available sources. In the summer, a little breeze will reduce the number of insects and can keep one cool during hot summer days. During winter, a shelter will separate the body from wind and snow and provide warmth. If the entrance of the shelter faces leeward (away from the wind), rain or snow will swirl over and drop inside. If the entrance faces windward, smoke and ashes from the fire will blow into the shelter. Place the back of the shelter into the wind.

LOCATION CONSIDERATIONS

Proximity to a Water Source. The availability of a nearby water source will reduce the amount of energy expended while collecting water. A source of water may also provide fishing grounds that may supply food.

Proximity to a Fuel Source. Situating a shelter near a fuel source will reduce the amount of energy required to gather fuel for the fire.

Proximity to Building Materials. Although the shelter is an emergency shelter there is always the need to make what is natural more livable. Situating the shelter near building supplies will reduce the amount of energy required to build and secure the shelter.

Proximity to Animal Trails or Holes. In the wild, the food chain is active. Beware of locating your shelter near the natural paths animals create. Where there are animals, there may be danger.

An Area That Can be Seen From the Air. When lost in a wilderness area it is important to establish contact with or attract the attention of searchers and rescuers. Staying in a site that is easily seen from the air will increase the chance of being rescued.

An Entrance That is Sheltered From the Wind and Preferably South Facing. Situating the shelter so the prevailing wind is blowing against the rear will help ensure the occupant will be able to maintain some heat inside. Face the entrance, if possible, into the sun allowing sunshine into the shelter. This provides heat to the occupant.

TIME REQUIRED TO BUILD THE SHELTER

Depending on the amount of time available, one may choose to construct a simple emergency shelter for the night. Estimate the amount of daylight left when constructing a shelter by looking at the horizon. If the sun is near the horizon, there is not much daylight left. One technique is to measure the number of hand widths between the sun and the horizon. Each hand will represent approximately one hour.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the terrain considerations one should take into account when selecting a shelter site?

Q2. What are three location considerations that one should take into account?

Q3. Which way should the entrance of a shelter face?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Select an area that is large enough for the shelter, elevated and provides drainage, and helps protect from the wind, rain and sun.

A2. The location should be in close proximity to a water source, a fuel source, building materials, and in an area that can be seen from the air. It should also be far from animal trails or holes.

A3. The entrance should face the leeward side (away from the wind).

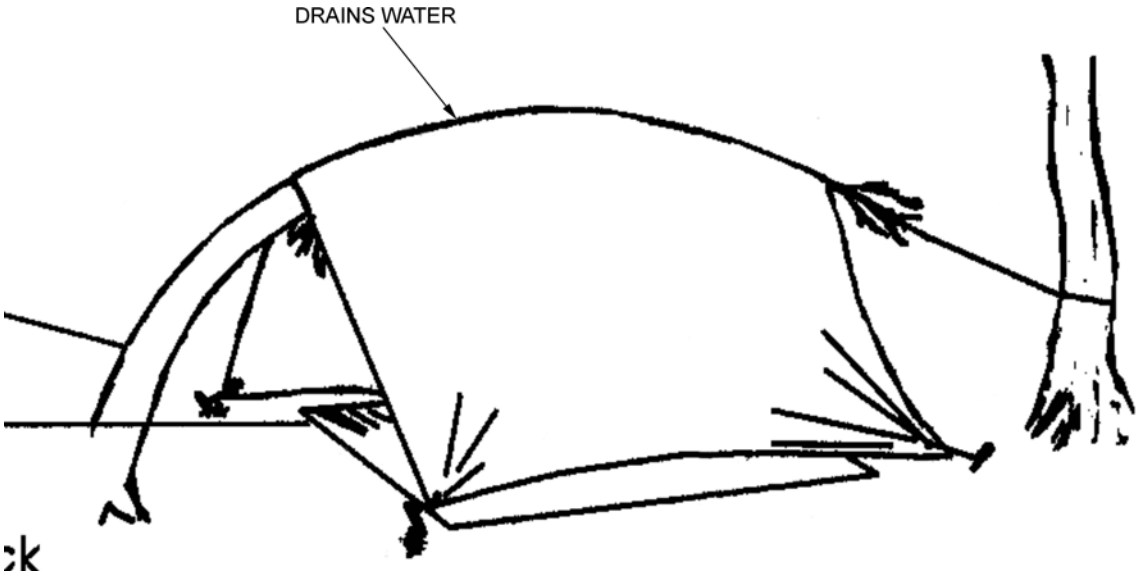
Teaching Point 2 **Demonstrate and Have the Cadet and a Partner Construct a Two Person Survival Shelter**

Time: 60 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

Cadets will construct the selected shelter using a groundsheet in place of a bough roof.

BENT TREE SHELTER

A bent tree shelter is prepared using a young sapling with a natural bend. Bend the tree and attach it to a second tree or secure to the ground with pegs. Place a groundsheet over the tree to protect the area from the weather. The curve of the sapling will drain water away from the shelter.

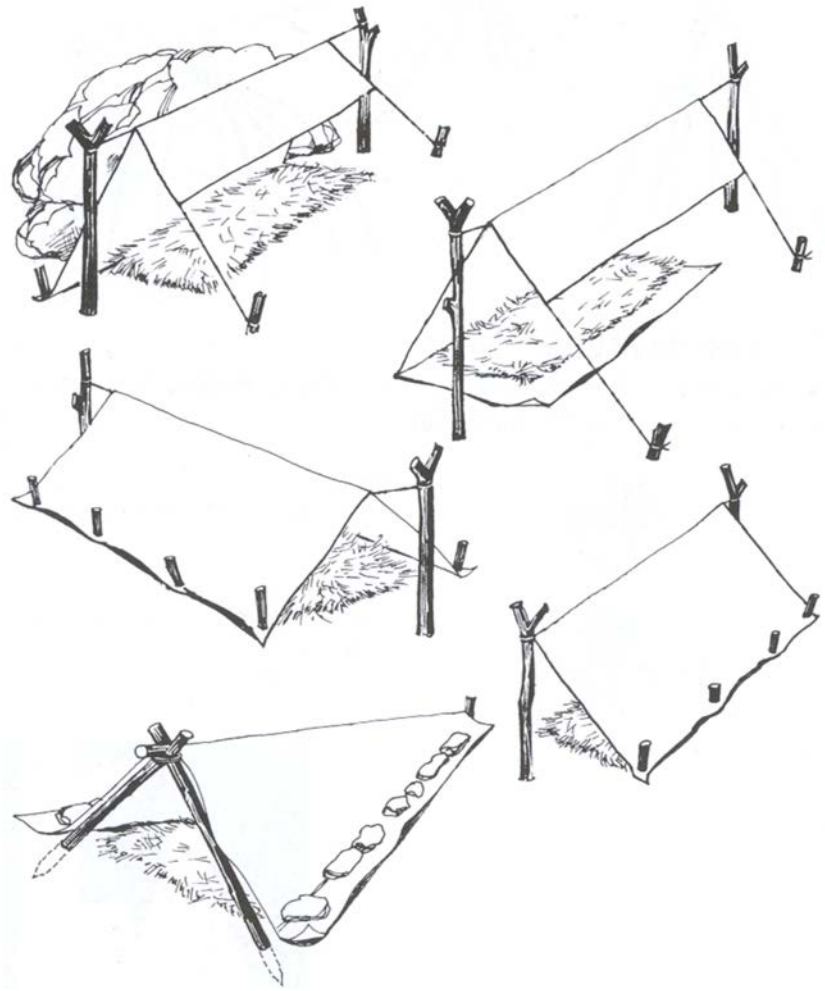


P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book, Paul Tawrell (p. 98)

Figure 14-1-1 Bent Tree Shelter

LEAN-TO WITH PONCHO

A poncho or groundsheet is perfect for constructing a lean-to. There are different variations on this shelter. The simplest form of a lean-to is secured to the ground and raised to allow enough head room for the tallest occupant to sit up. The groundsheet should be pulled tight between two trees or between two supports.

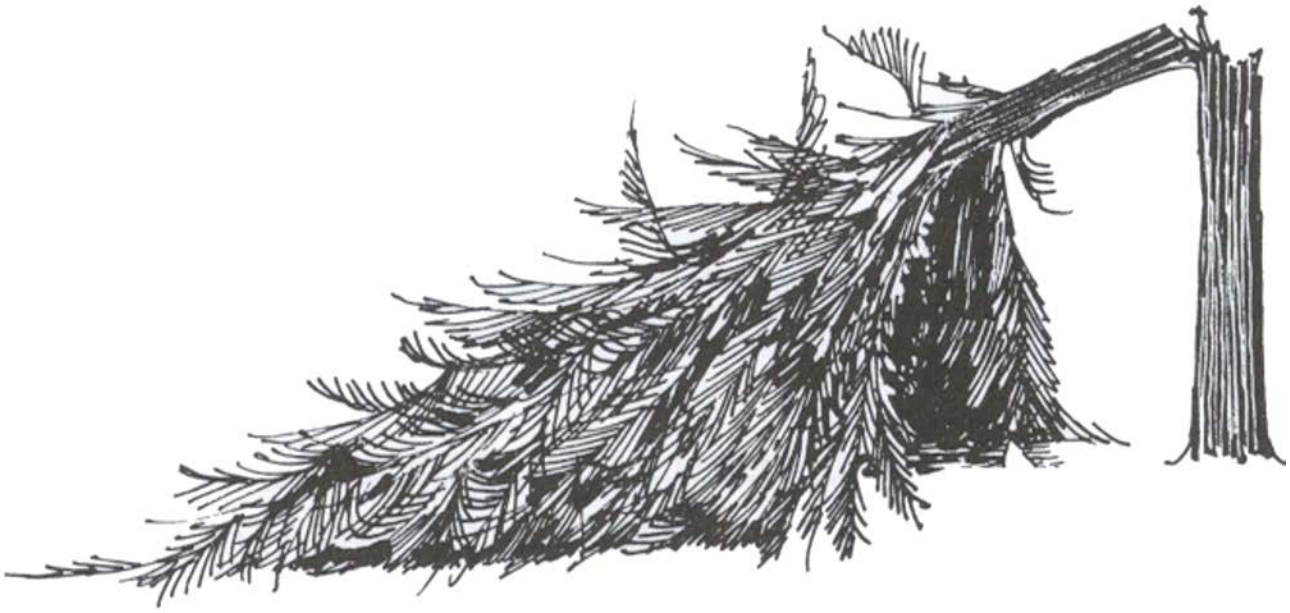


J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 245)

Figure 14-1-2 Lean-To With Poncho

BOUGH SHELTER

A bough shelter, also known as a lopped tree shelter, makes use of a fallen tree. With some preparation this shelter provides good cover from the elements. The fallen tree branches are cut from the centre of the tree, creating a hollow for shelter. The excess branches are woven through the remaining tree branches, making the shelter weatherproof.



J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 245)

Figure 14-1-3 Bough Shelter

ROOT SHELTER

Protruding roots act as the frame for the shelter. Spreading roots and earth act as a wind barrier. Ideally a root shelter should be at a right angle to the wind. Digging into the remaining root system, or filling in the sides between the roots will make the shelter more effective.

P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book, Paul Tawrell (p. 98)

Figure 14-1-4 Root Shelter

ACTIVITY

Time: 40 min

Take time at the beginning of this activity to show the cadets the pre-constructed improvised shelters.

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for the cadets to construct an improvised shelter.

RESOURCES

- Groundsheet (one per cadet),
- Twine,
- Pocket knife (one per two cadets), and
- Sticks for pegging.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

An area in which each pair of cadets can build an improvised shelter.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide cadets into pairs (same gender).
2. Assign each pair the required resources.
3. Have cadets gather materials for building a shelter.
4. Have cadets construct a shelter. Cadets will check their shelters to ensure:
    a. there is room for two people to sleep and sit upright;
    b. the lines are secure; and
    c. it is waterproof.
5. Inspect the cadets' shelter to ensure it is well constructed and safe to sleep in.
6. Tear down shelters and distribute any materials back into the area.

SAFETY

- Cadets will respect boundaries for the activity.
- Cadets will ensure safe tool use at all times.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' construction of an improvised shelter will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 6 (324 EC-01).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Knowing how to construct an improvised shelter in a survival situation will assist in maintaining the cadet's self-confidence and help in preventing the seven enemies of survival.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Prior to conducting this lesson the instructor shall locate an example of each type of shelter.

It is understood that seasonal differences and location may restrict the ability to construct all shelters; however cadets should be provided with as many visual examples as possible.

REFERENCES

C2-004 (ISBN 1-896713-00-9) Tawrell, P. (1996). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*. Green Valley, ON: Paul Tawrell.

C2-008 (ISBN 0-00-653140-7) Wiseman, J. (1999). *SAS Survival Handbook*. Hammersmith, London: HarperCollins Publishers.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 2

EO M324.02 – COLLECT DRINKING WATER

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 1 and 3 to give background information and introduce the cadets to methods of collecting water.

Demonstration was chosen for TP 2 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate collecting water while providing an opportunity for the cadets to practice the skill under supervision.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to collect water using precipitation, dew or plant condensation.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for the cadets to understand the importance of collecting water in a survival situation, as thirst is one of the seven enemies of survival. As fresh water may not be readily available, cadets will have to use other sources to find water.

Teaching Point 1 **Identify Methods of Finding Water**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to give cadets an introduction to different methods of finding water.

Water is the one thing that almost everyone takes for granted. People are used to turning on the tap and having an endless supply of water. Until water shortages or drought occur it is scarcely thought about. Water is universally important and should be respected. It is essential to life and all life contain it.

In survival situations, it is important to conserve potable water and seek a freshwater source.

Potable Water. Water of higher quality, suitable for drinking.

OBSERVING INSECTS, AMPHIBIANS, MAMMALS, AND BIRDS

When in a survival situation, observing the behavior of mammals is the best indicator of the location of water.

Insects

Insects are good indicators of water. If bees are present, water is usually within several kilometres of your location. Bees fly a maximum of 6.5 km (4 miles) from their nests or hives. They do not have regular watering times, but drink when thirsty.

Ants are dependant on water. An ant nest will often be close to a source of water. A column of ants marching up a tree is likely going to a small reservoir of trapped water.

Most flies keep within 90 m (100 yards) of water. If mosquitoes and flies are swarming, there is most likely a good source of water close by.

Amphibians

Amphibians are not an indicator of water. They collect dew and draw moisture from prey.

Mammals

Most mammals require water regularly. Grazing mammals are usually close to water. Converging game trails often lead to water; follow them downhill.

Birds

Grain eaters, such as finches and pigeons are never far from water. They drink at dawn and dusk. When they fly straight and low, they are heading for water. When they return from water they fly from tree to tree, resting frequently. By plotting their direction, water can be found.

Water birds can travel long distances without stopping to feed or drink; they do not necessarily indicate water nearby.

Hawks, eagles and other birds of prey draw water from their victims and cannot be taken as a sign that water is nearby.

SEARCHING FOR PLANTS

Watch for green leaf plants and trees that require a lot of water. These plants include cattails, bulrush, elderberries, and reeds. Trees include cottonwood, poplars, greasewood and willows. This type of growth indicates a high water table. These plants may be located on a dry river bed. To get to the water, dig into the ground 30–60 cm (1–2 feet) and water will accumulate in this pit.

An alternate place to search for water is at the base of a cliff where there is vegetation.

SEARCHING IN VALLEY BOTTOMS

Look in valley bottoms where water will naturally drain. If there are no obvious streams or pools, look for patches of green vegetation and dig there. There may be water just below the surface, which will collect in the hole. Digging in gullies and dry streambeds may reveal a spring beneath the surface, especially in gravel areas. In mountain valleys, look for water trapped in crevices.

Pools or streams with no vegetation growing are likely to be polluted by a high concentration of minerals or chemicals that have been leached from the bedrock or close to the surface.

Any water collected from pools should be boiled prior to drinking.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What type of birds do not necessarily indicate that there is water nearby?

Q2. What are the best indicators of water?

Q3. What types of plants should you look for when seeking a water source?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Water birds can travel long distances without stopping to feed or drink so they do not necessarily indicate water nearby. Hawks, eagles and other birds of prey get water from their victims and cannot be taken as a sign that local water is nearby.

A2. Mammals.

A3. Look for green leaf plants and trees that require a lot of water. These plants include cattails, bulrush, elderberries, and reeds. Trees include cottonwood, poplars, greasewood, and willows.

Teaching Point 2 **Explain and Demonstrate Methods of Collecting Water**

Time: 15 min Method: Demonstration

As each method is identified, explain and demonstrate it to the cadets.

Collecting water can be difficult and it is important to take into consideration the time of year and the weather when looking for and collecting water.

DIGGING WELLS

Wells are dug in hopes of finding a reliable and ample supply of water. If a well is being dug in a survival situation, it must be done when the survivor has lots of strength and stamina.

Wells cannot be dug much deeper than the water table because it will continuously fill with water. In a dry season, when the water table falls, the well depth can be increased.

Water Table. The upper limit of groundwater that occurs naturally.

An example of a simple well is the soil moisture pit.

Soil Moisture Pit

1. Dig a pit 2 m x 2 m deep x 1 m (6.5 feet x 6.5 feet x 3.2 feet).
2. Take an empty water bottle and cut the top off.
3. Make a small hole in the centre of the plastic for the bottle.
4. Cover the the pit with a sheet of plastic wrap.
5. Place a small rock on the plastic wrap over the water bottle.
6. Let the sun do its job.

The water bottle will fill at least once a day, which is enough to keep you alive. This method will most likely not work in cooler weather.

COLLECTING PRECIPITATION

Precipitation can be in the form of rain, snow, hail, sleet, dew and frost.

Rainwater collected in clean containers or in plants is usually safe for drinking. However, purify water from lakes, ponds, swamps, springs, or streams, especially water found near populated areas or in the tropics.

Acid rain, or polluted rain can pollute soil, but generally all rain is drinkable.

Use as many containers as possible. Plastic, wood, bark and holes dug in clay can be used to catch water.

COLLECTING DEW

Although dew does not provide a large quantity of water, it is still a good source of water. Dew accumulates on grass, leaves, rocks and equipment at dawn and dusk. This is also when dew should be collected before potential freezing or evaporation.

Heavy dew can provide water. Tie rags or tufts of fine grass around your ankles and walk through dew-covered grass before sunrise. As the rags or grass tufts absorb the dew, wring the water into a container. Repeat the process until you have a supply of water or until the dew is gone. Australian natives sometimes mop up as much as a litre an hour this way.

COLLECTING CONDENSATION

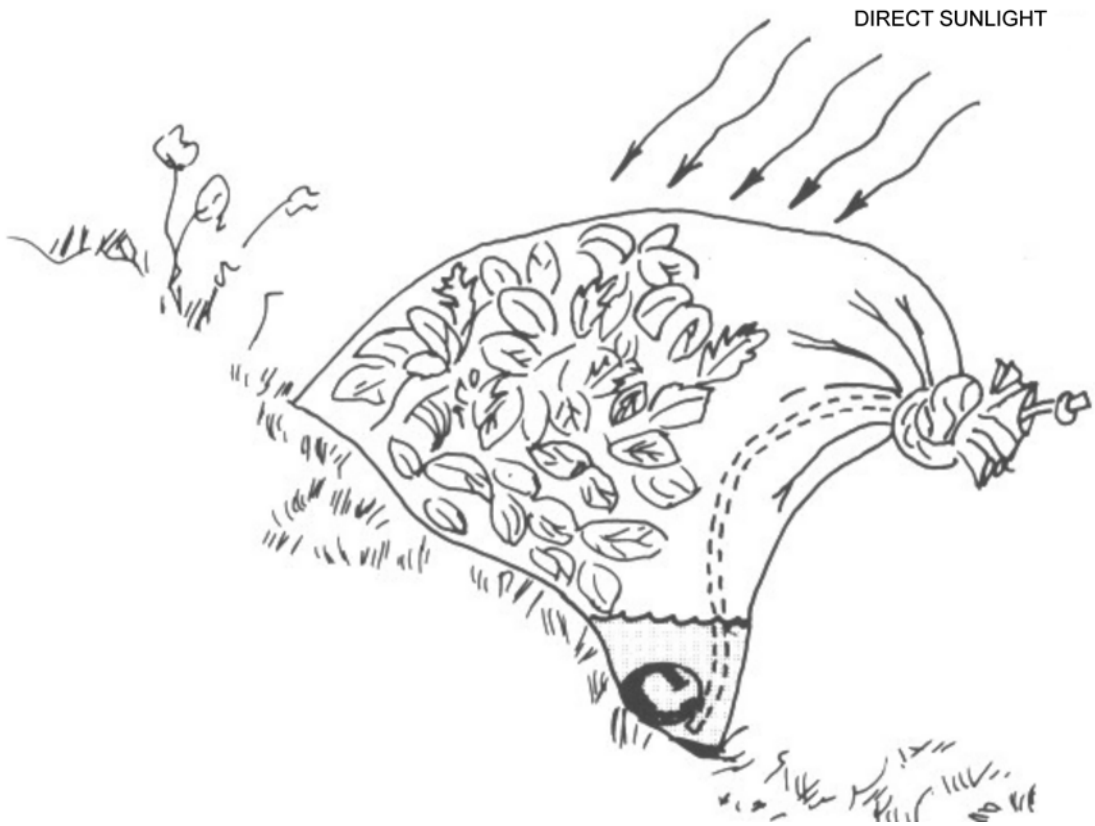
Condensation. The process of water vapour in the air turning into liquid. Drops on the outside of a cold glass are condensed water. Condensation is the opposite of evaporation.

Vegetation Bags

A vegetation bag is quite simply a container to collect condensation from vegetation. A section of shrubs, bushes and trees are covered in a vegetation bag and the condensation from the sun is collected within the bag.

To construct a vegetation bag, one will need a clear plastic bag and an ample supply of healthy, non-poisonous vegetation. A 1- to 2-m (4- to 6- foot) section of surgical tubing is also helpful.

1. Open the plastic bag and fill it with air.
2. Fill the bag one half to three quarters full with lush green vegetation. Be careful not to puncture the bag.
3. Place a small rock or similar item into the bag. If you have surgical tubing, slide one end inside and toward the bottom of the bag. Tie the other end with an overhand knot.
4. Tie off the bag as close to the opening as possible.
5. Place the bag on a sunny slope so that the opening is slightly higher than the bag’s lowest point.
6. Position the rock and surgical tubing at the lowest point in the bag.
7. For best results, change the vegetation every two to three days.
8. If using surgical tubing, simply untie the knot and drink the water that has condensed in the bag. If no tubing is used, loosen the tie and drain off available liquid. Be sure to drain off all liquid prior to sunset each day, or it will be reabsorbed by the vegetation.



G. Davenport, Wilderness Survival (2nd ed), Stackpole Books (p. 144)

Figure 14-2-1 Vegetation Bag

Transpiration Bags

Transpiration. Process by which water absorbed by plants, usually through the roots, is evaporated into the atmosphere from the plant surface, such as leaf pores.

A transpiration bag is better than a vegetation bag because the same vegetation can be reused allowing time for it to rejuvenate. Water transpiration bags are beneficial because, they yield more, are easier to assemble, and often have a better taste.

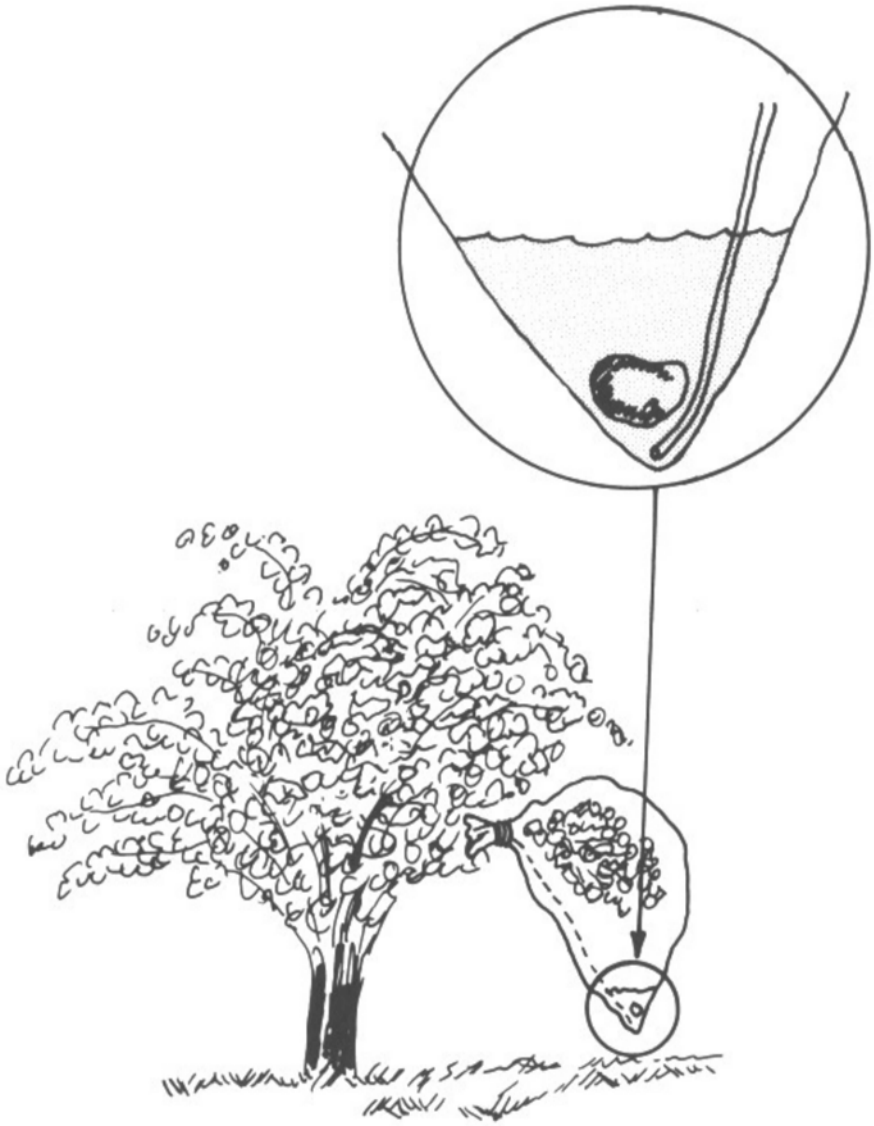
To construct a transpiration bag, one will need a clear plastic bag and a non-poisonous bush or tree.

A 1- to 2-m (4- to 6- foot) section of surgical tubing is also helpful.

1. Open the plastic bag and fill it with air.
2. Place the bag over the lush leafy vegetation of a tree or bush, being careful not to puncture the bag. Be sure the bag is on the side of the tree or bush with the greatest exposure to the sun.
3. Place a small rock or similar item into the bag's lowest point, and if you have surgical tubing, place one end at the bottom of the bag next to the rock.
4. Tie the other end of the tubing with an overhand knot.
5. Tie off the bag as close to the opening as possible.

6. Change the bag's location every two to three days to ensure optimal outcome and to allow the previous site to rejuvenate so it might be used again later.

7. If using surgical tubing, simply untie the knot and drink the water that has condensed in the bag. Be sure to drain off all liquid prior to sunset each day, or it will be reabsorbed by the tree or bush.



G. Davenport, Wilderness Survival (2nd ed), Stackpole Books (p. 144)

Figure 14-2-2 Transpiration Bag

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. How does the water table affect well depth?

Q2. How is dew collected?

Q3. What are the benefits of a transpiration bag?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Wells cannot be dug much deeper than the water table.

A2. Dew is collected by tying rags or tufts of long grass to your ankles and walking through dew-covered grass before sunrise.

A3. Transpiration bags are beneficial because they have a high yield, are easier to assemble, and often have a better taste.

Teaching Point 3 **Explain Methods of Transporting Water**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to introduce the cadets to the different methods of collecting water in a survival situation.

Water in a survival situation may require transportation from one location to another. If possible, having or finding a water container which can hold a minimum of one litre with a wide-mouth opening is ideal.

Improvised water containers are sometimes necessary. Anything sturdy can hold water.

STORAGE CASE

Any container, including the case that holds a survival kit can be used. The storage case for matches, bags that contain food, and metal cases can hold water.

CONDOM

Condoms are great for water storage provided they are non-lubricated and non-spermicidal. In addition, a condom will have to be placed in a scarf or other forming structure to give it extra strength.

PONCHO

A poncho is made of a great material to transport water and is already watertight. The poncho can be folded, bent and rolled into shapes to collect and carry water. Create a bowl from the poncho by securing the corners to tree limbs.

NATURAL CONTAINER

Natural containers such as hollowed-out wood pieces are excellent for storing water. The wood in the container will give strength and stability for larger quantities of water. Large leaves can be folded and held in the hand for smaller quantities of water.

PLASTIC BAG

Plastic bags are a useful piece of equipment in survival situations. A large plastic bag such as a large polythene bag about 200 cm by 60 cm (7 feet by 2 feet) can be used in many ways, particularly to collect large amounts of water.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are different ways to transport water?

Q2. What is the benefit of using a poncho for transporting water?

Q3. What are examples of natural containers?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Transporting water can be done using a storage case, condom, poncho, natural container and plastic bag.

A2. A poncho is beneficial to transport water as it is already watertight.

A3. Natural containers are hollowed-out wood pieces and large leaves.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is potable water?

Q2. What is the water table?

Q3. How is a transpiration bag constructed?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Potable water is water of higher quality which is suitable for drinking.

A2. The water table is the upper limit of groundwater that occurs naturally.

A3. To construct a transpiration bag:

1. Open the plastic bag and fill it with air.
2. Place the bag over the lush leafy vegetation of a tree or bush, being careful not to puncture the bag. Be sure the bag is on the side of the tree or bush with the greatest exposure to the sun.
3. Place a small rock or similar item into the bag's lowest point, and if you have surgical tubing, place one end at the bottom of the bag next to the rock.
4. Tie the other end of the tubing with an overhand knot.
5. Tie off the bag as close to the opening as possible.
6. Change the bag's location every two to three days to ensure optimal outcome and to allow the previous site to rejuvenate so it might be used again later.
7. If using surgical tubing, simply untie the knot and drink the water that has condensed in the bag. Be sure to drain off all liquid prior to sunset each day, or it will be reabsorbed by the tree or bush.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 6 (324 EC-02).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Collecting water may mean the difference between survival and death. Knowing how and where to collect water will assist the cadets in combating the enemies of survival and keep them healthy and hydrated during the experience.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Cadets will be required to collect water during the bivouac FTX.

REFERENCES

C0-111 (ISBN 0-9740820-2-3) Tawrell, P. (2002). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*. Green Valley, ON: Paul Tawrell.

C3-002 (ISBN 0-00-653140-7) Wiseman, J. (1999). *The SAS Survival Handbook*. Hammersmith, London: HarperCollins Publishers.

C3-150 (ISBN 978-0-8117-3292-5) Davenport, G. (2006). *Wilderness Survival* (2nd ed.). Mechanicsburg, PA: Stackpole Books.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 3

EO M324.03 – LIGHT A FIRE WITHOUT MATCHES

Total Time: 120 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Photocopy instructions located at Annexes A to D for each cadet.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 to orient cadets to methods of lighting a fire without matches and generate interest in the topic.

Demonstration was chosen for TP 2 as it allows the instructor to demonstrate and explain different methods of lighting a fire without matches.

Performance was chosen for TP 3 as it allows the cadets to practice lighting a fire without matches while under supervision.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

The review for this lesson is taken from EO M224.05 (Prepare, Light, Maintain and Extinguish a Fire, A-CR-CCP-702/PF-001, Chapter 14, Section 5).

Before conducting training in provincial or national parks, one must confirm that fires are allowed. Open fires are normally only allowed in designated areas. Open fires are fires that are not contained in a structure or housing that ensures the fire will not spread (eg, barrel or fireplace).

Each park will clearly state their fire regulations and restrictions.

Parks commonly follow the Fire Weather Index, which provides an assessment of relative fire potential that is based solely on weather observations. Check with park administration for rules and regulations when planning to light fires within the park boundaries.

CANADIAN FOREST FIRE DANGER RATING SYSTEM (CFFDRS)

The CFFDRS is Canada's national system for rating forest fire danger. The system evaluates and integrates data to help managers predict woodland fire potential.

The CFFDRS provides an index (as illustrated in Figure 14-3-1) on how easy it is to ignite vegetation, how difficult a fire may be to control, and how much damage a fire may do.

BLUE	GREEN	YELLOW	ORANGE	RED
LOW	MODERATE	HIGH	VERY HIGH	EXTREME

Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 14-3-1 CFFDRS Fire Index

Low. Low chance of fires occurring. Fires that do occur are likely to be self-extinguishing and new ignitions are unlikely.

Moderate. Moderate chance of fires starting. These fires are creeping or gentle surface fires. They are easily contained by ground crews with water pumps.

High. High chance of fire starting. These fires are challenging for ground crews to handle and heavy equipment (tanker trucks and aircraft) are often required to contain the fire.

Very High. Very high chance of a fire starting. These fires are fast spreading and are of high intensity. They are hard to control and require aircraft support.

Extreme. The environment is very dry and chances of fire are extreme. These fires are fast spreading, of high intensity and very difficult to control.

Review this information by looking up the CFFDRS on the Internet at https://nofc1.cfsnet.nfis.org/mapserver/cwfis/index.phtml.

MAINTAINING A SAFE FIRE SITE

Prior to starting a fire, ensure fire safety equipment is available.

Shovel. A shovel provides a means to smother the fire. Shovelling dirt, gravel or sand on a fire reduces oxygen, thus extinguishing the fire.

Rake. A rake allows one to disperse burning material away from the fire. A rake can also be used to smother the fire by raking dirt, gravel, or sand onto the fire.

Pail Filled With Sand or Water. A pail of water or sand can be immediately thrown over a fire if it starts to get out of control and can be refilled as many times as required.

Fire Extinguisher. A fire extinguisher is designed to tackle a fire for a short duration. It is very effective in extinguishing a small fire that is getting out of control.

CHOOSING A SAFE FIRE LOCATION

Before beginning to build a fire, think about the location. It should be placed for maximum warmth and convenience without sacrificing safety. Consider the following when choosing a safe fire location:

- The fire site should be high and dry.
- The area should be sheltered and away from windy areas to reduce flare ups.
- The site should be clear of over-hanging boughs and branches.
- All combustible materials shall be cleared from the fire site.
- The site should be 1.8 m (4–6 feet) from the shelter entrance.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall follow the process to light a fire without matches.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to be able to light a fire without matches. The second element of the survival pattern is fire, which provides heat, light and comfort. A fire also provides a means to cook food, scare away animals and signal rescuers if the cadet becomes lost and is in a survival situation without a survival kit.

Teaching Point 1 **Identify Methods of Lighting a Fire Without Matches**

Time: 20 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This information in this TP is background information relating to the different methods of lighting a fire without matches.

ALTERNATIVE METHODS OF LIGHTING A FIRE

In a survival situation, there may not be matches available to light a fire. In these situations it is necessary to find alternative methods to light a fire.

Bow and Drill

The bow and drill uses friction and pressure to heat a piece of wood and create a fine black powder that will light tinder. This method takes practice, but can easily be repeated over and over with materials found in the environment.

Fire Saw

The fire saw is a method that involves rubbing the bevelled edge of a stick in the notch of a fireboard. This method is commonly used in the jungle or a moist environment.

Flint and Steel

This is the best method to light tinder aside from matches. The flint and steel method uses shavings that have been struck from flint by a sharp knife to ignite timber.

A magnesium fire block is similar to flint and steel but incorporates a chunk of magnesium in aluminium that can be shaved off to assist in lighting. Cut or scratch shavings off the block which are ignited by striking the back of a knife on the flint rod. Magnesium generates tremendous heat. Be careful that no shavings land on skin or clothing.

Sun and Glass

A convex lens (a lens where the centre bulges out) from binoculars, a lens from a camera or telescope, the bottom of an old pop bottle or can, a piece of ice or a magnifying glass may be used to light tinder with the help of the sun.

Fire can be created from an old pop can and a chocolate bar. The bottom of the pop can is shaped like a lens but is not very reflective. Polish the bottom of the can with chocolate, like polishing a pair of boots until it has a mirror finish. Use the sun to focus the light onto tinder. This method takes a lot of time, but it works.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are different methods of lighting a fire?

Q2. How does the bow and drill method work?

Q3. How does the flint and steel method work?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Bow and drill, fire saw, flint and steel and sun and glass are different methods of lighting a fire.

A2. The bow and drill method uses friction and pressure to heat a piece of wood and create a fine black powder that will light tinder.

A3. The flint and steel method uses shavings that have been struck from flint by a sharp knife to ignite timber.

Teaching Point 2 **Demonstrate Methods of Lighting a Fire**

Time: 30 min Method: Demonstration

Demonstrate the following methods of lighting a fire. There is no requirement to create fire, but each method should be explained and demonstrated.

Bow and Drill (Spindle)

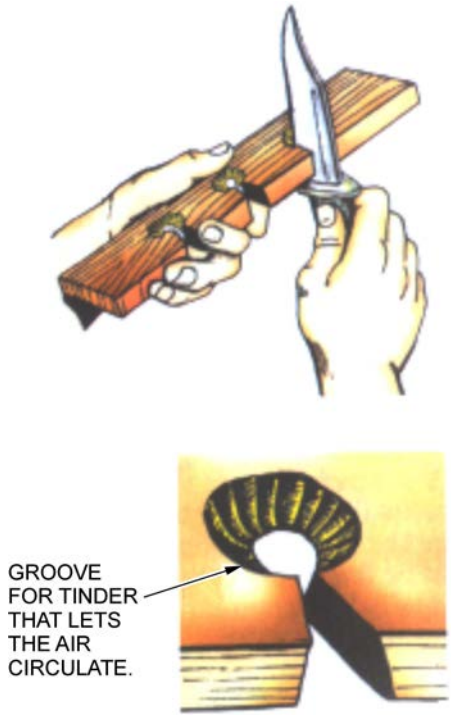
The following steps are required to light a fire with a bow and drill:

1. Collect the following materials:
   a. one hardwood shaft 2 cm thick and 30 cm long,
   b. one softwood base 5 cm wide, 20 cm long and 2 cm thick,
   c. one bearing block or socket,
   d. one stick 60–90 cm long to make the bow (green wood from a sapling is best), and
   e. one piece of cord.
2. Cut a groove in the bearing block or socket 3–5 cm deep for the hardwood shaft to fit (as illustrated in Figure 14-3-2).

P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 434)

Figure 14-3-2 Bearing Block

3. Cut a groove into the softwood base in which the hardwood shaft will spin. The groove should be open on one end for the heat and embers to escape (as illustrated in Figure 14-3-3).

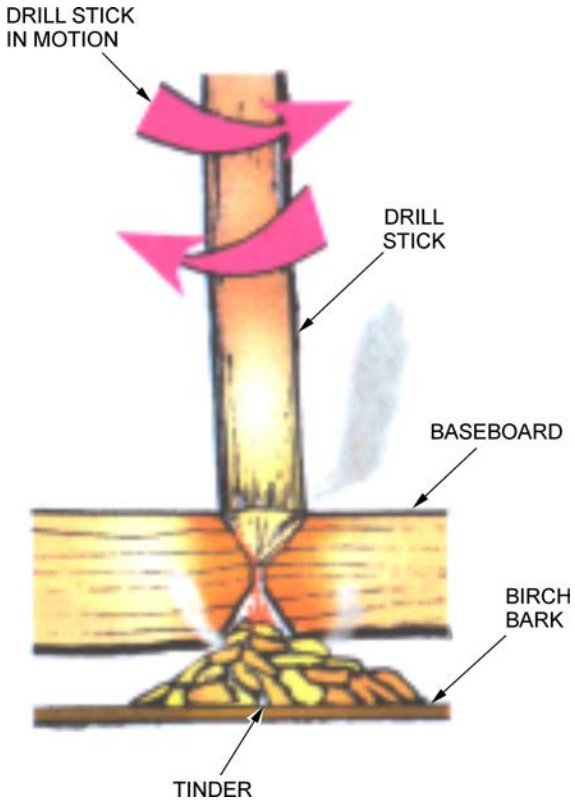


P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 434)

Figure 14-3-3 Softwood Base

4. Carve one end of the hardwood shaft into a small point.

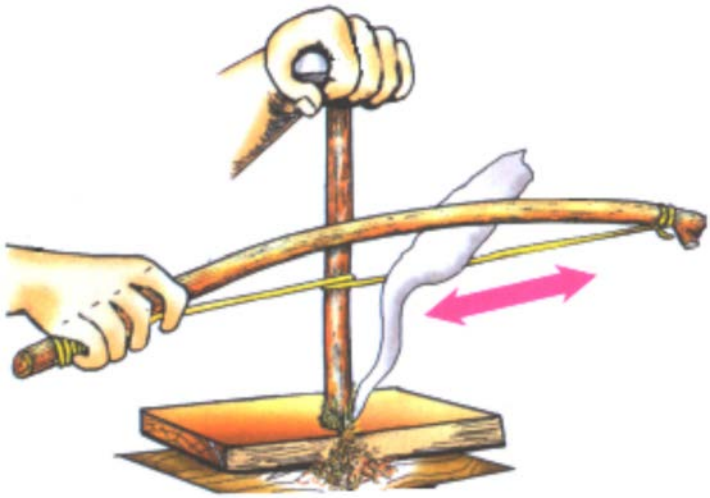
5. Place tinder in the opening in which the embers will fall.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 434)

Figure 14-3-4 Drill

6. Wrap the bow around the hardwood shaft and place it into the groove of the softwood base.
7. Place the bearing block on the top of the shaft.
8. Slowly at first, start a sawing motion with the bow back and forth so the hardwood shaft spins back and forth.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 434)

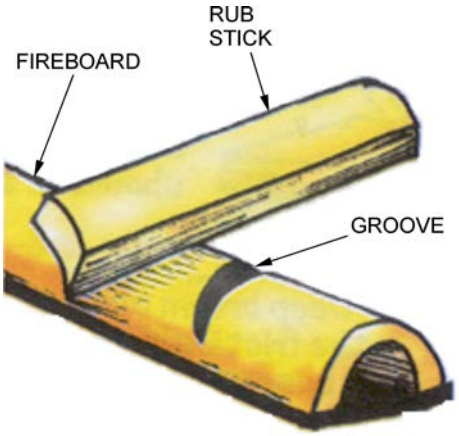
Figure 14-3-5 Fire Bow and Drill

9. Maintain a constant motion back and forth; consistency is more important than speed.
10. Once smoke appears increase speed and look for embers to start to appear.
11. Once the tinder begins to smoke, stop and lightly blow on the tinder to start combustion.
12. When the tinder lights, apply gathered kindling and fuel as required.

FIRE SAW

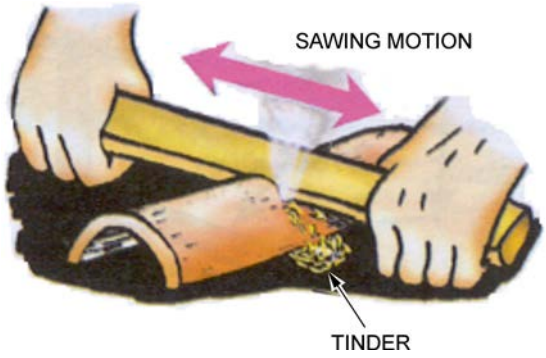
The fire saw consists of two pieces of dry wood: one rubbed vigorously against the other in a sawing motion.

Use a half a piece of split wood as the fireboard and a piece of softwood as a rub stick. Good tinder for the fire saw is material that is light and fluffy such as dried mosses or lichen such as old man's beard.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 434)

Figure 14-3-6 Fire Saw

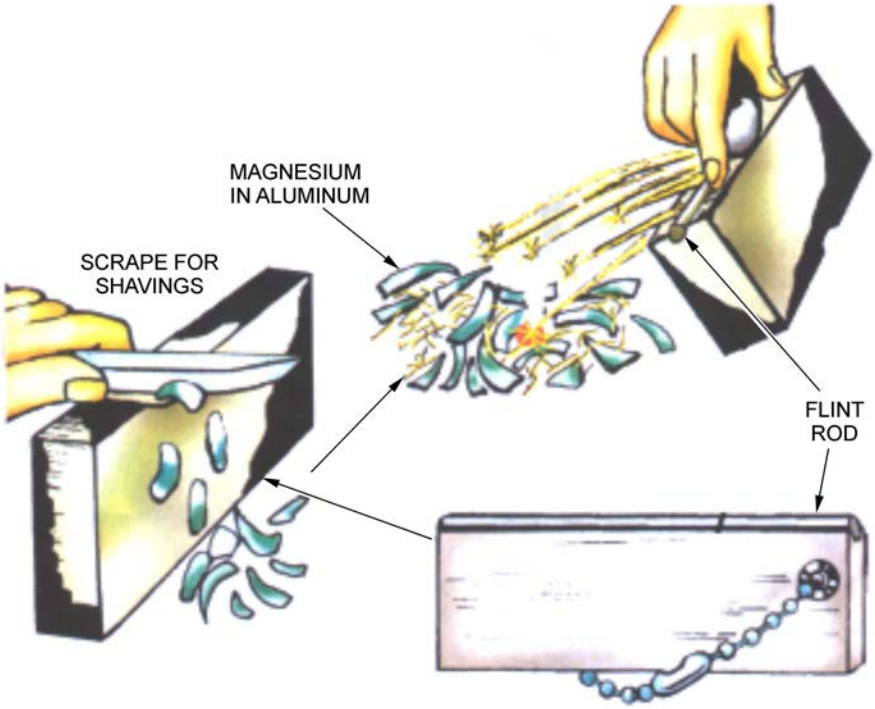


P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 434)

Figure 14-3-7 Fire Saw in Motion

FLINT AND STEEL

Hold the flint as close to the tinder as possible and strike it with the back of a knife blade or a small piece of carbon steel. Strike downward to scrape magnesium so that the sparks fall into the tinder. When the tinder begins to smoulder, fan or blow gently into a flame.

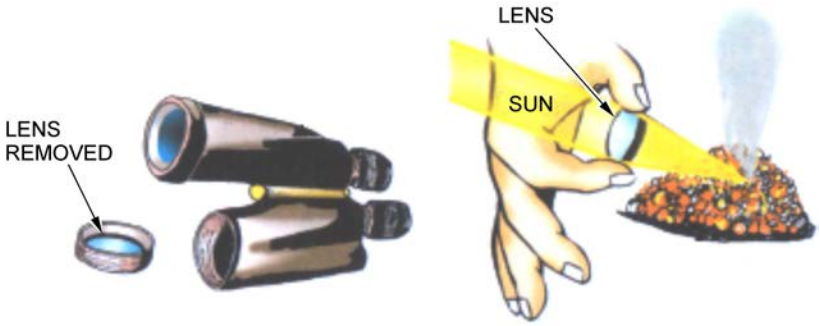


P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 436)

Figure 14-3-8 Flint and Steel

SUN AND GLASS

Use a piece of convex glass to concentrate rays of the sun on the tinder and hold until the tinder begins to smoke.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 437)

Figure 14-3-9 Sun and Glass

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets' participation in the activity in TP 3 will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 3 **Have the Cadets Practice Lighting a Fire**

Time: 60 min Method: Performance

The cadets will practice lighting a fire without matches. There is no requirement for the cadet to create fire.

If time allows, a subsequent method should be attempted.

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets construct and practice lighting a fire without matches.

RESOURCES

- Flint and steel,
- Glass,
- 1.8-kg (4-lb) axe with a 91-cm (36-inch) handle,
- 60-cm (24-inch) bow saw,
- Pail filled with sand or water,
- Tinder,
- Kindling,
- Knife,
- Hardwood shaft 2 cm thick and 30 cm long,
- Softwood base 5 cm wide, 20 cm long and 2 cm thick,
- One bearing block or socket,
- One stick 60–90 cm long to make the bow (green wood from a sapling is best),
- Cord,
- Water, and
- Shovel.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Have the cadets attempt to light a fire without matches, using one of the following methods:
   a. bow and drill,

b. fire saw,

c. flint and steel, and

d. sun and glass.

2. Have the cadets choose a method from the ones listed above.

3. Distribute the handouts of instructions located at Annexes A to D.

4. Distribute materials to cadets.

There is no requirement for the cadets to light a fire, since it is a challenging skill to master. Cadets are only required to construct and attempt one method, but may attempt another, if time permits.

SAFETY

- Firefighting equipment must be present during the lighting of fires.
- Additional instructors may be required to all cadets are attempting this activity simultaneously.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets' participation in practicing to light a fire will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in practicing to light a fire by bow and drill, fire saw, flint and steel or sun and glass will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 6 (324 EC-03).

CLOSING STATEMENT

It is important for cadets to be able to light a fire without matches. The second element of the survival pattern is fire, which provides heat, light and comfort. A fire also provides a means to cook food, scare away animals and signal rescuers if the cadet becomes lost.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

C0-111 (ISBN 0-9740820-2-3) Tawrell, P. (2002). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*. Green Valley, ON: Paul Tawrell.

C2-008 (ISBN 0-00-265314-7) Wiseman, J. (1999). *The SAS Survival Handbook*. Hammersmith, London: HarperCollins Publishers.

C2-148 (ISBN 978-0-8118-3292-5) Davenport, G. (2006) *Wilderness Survival* (2nd ed.). Mechanicsburg, PA: Stackpole Books.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 4

EO M324.04 – PREDICT WEATHER

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 1 and 2 to introduce the cadet to weather fronts and weather indicators that will influence predicting weather.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 3 as it is an interactive way to introduce cadets to predicting weather in a safe, controlled environment. This activity contributes to the development of survival skills and knowledge in a fun and challenging setting.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to predict weather for a 24-hour period.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to learn to predict weather so they can factor the weather into their survival plan if they become lost. The weather will play an important role when selecting the best action to take while waiting for assistance from rescuers, when deciding the type of shelter to seek and if/when making a decision to move.

Teaching Point 1 **Describe Weather Indicators**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP allows the cadets to view the clouds while learning their different characteristics.

Some information on types of clouds was taken from EO M224.03, (Predict Weather Using Cloud Formations, A-CR-CCP-702/PF-001, Chapter 14, Section 3).

Allow the cadets to view cloud formations for a short time before describing the characteristics of each one.

CLOUDS

Cumulus. These clouds are large, individual puffy clouds. They resemble cauliflower or cotton balls, with bottoms which often appear dark and flat. They can often be seen on a warm day. When these clouds are in the sky one can expect fair weather, unless they begin to extend upward.

Cumulus clouds may bring the following associated weather:

- black or grey – possible thunderstorm,
- may develop into cumulonimbus – possible storm, and
- small isolated patches – good weather.

E. Brotak, Wild About Weather, Lark Books (p. 88)

Figure 14-4-1 Cumulus Clouds

Altocumulus. These clouds are very big and can be white or grey. They appear as a layer or a series of patches of rounded masses. Altocumulus clouds can be seen before fair or bad weather and have little value as an indicator of future weather developments.

Altocumuus clouds may bring the following associated weather:

- domed shape – possible thunderstorm, and
- small isolated patches – good weather.

E. Brotak, Wild About Weather, Lark Books (p. 87)

Figure 14-4-2 Altocumulus Clouds

Stratocumulus. These appear as sheets of big puffy white or grey clouds. Stratocumulus clouds often appear in dark patches or rolls and are often thin with blue sky showing through the breaks. Snow or showers of rain are possible and can be heavy.

Stratocumulus clouds may precede or follow a storm.

E. Brotak, Wild About Weather, Lark Books (p. 88)

Figure 14-4-3 Stratocumulus Clouds

Cirrus. These clouds are wispy and look like cotton candy being pulled. They appear to be whitish wisps of cloud and are usually an indicator of fair weather.

Cirrus clouds may bring the following associated weather:

- drifting slowly or standing still – fair weather; and
- moving rapidly, followed by more clouds – foul weather.

E. Brotak, Wild About Weather, Lark Books (p. 87)

Figure 14-4-4 Cirrus Clouds

Cirrostratus. These clouds are whitish sheets that completely cover the sky. Cirrostratus clouds are normally see-through. When these clouds are in the sky, one can expect precipitation in a day or two.

Cirrostratus clouds indicate changeable weather.

E. Brotak, Wild About Weather, Lark Books (p. 87)

Figure 14-4-5 Cirrostratus Clouds

Nimbostratus. These appear as dark grey layers of large, puffy clouds. When they produce precipitation, it is in the form of continuous rain or snow. The bottom of this cloud is often hidden by heavy falling rain or snow.

Nimbostratus clouds indicate upcoming rainfall.

E. Brotak, Wild About Weather, Lark Books (p. 88)

Figure 14-4-6 Nimbostratus Clouds

A figure illustrating the cloud types in the atmosphere is included at Annex E. Distribute Annex E to each cadet.

Being able to forecast weather using clouds is a great tool in a survival situation.

Ask cadets if they know any signs that indicate weather may change.

SIGNS OF BAD WEATHER

When the weather is going to change for the worse, cloud formations will change. Signs of change for bad weather are:

- Clouds, regardless of their formation, are thicker (darker), increase in numbers or join together to form layers lower in the sky.
- Clouds form banks in the west with winds from the south.
- Clouds move in all directions or contrary to the wind on the ground.
- Altocumulus clouds move quickly across the sky or form towers in the morning.
- Cumulus clouds form in the morning and stack in the afternoon or move from the south or southwest.

A halo around the sun or moon indicates bad weather.

SIGNS OF GOOD WEATHER

When the weather is going to change for the better, cloud formations will change. Signs of a change for good weather are:

- Cloud cover lifts, becomes lighter and small patches of blue sky develop.
- Cumulus clouds form in the afternoon or float alone.
- Stratocumulus clouds drift with the prevailing wind and remain scattered.
- The condensation trail (contrail) left by high altitude aircraft disperses quickly.
- Morning fog is burnt off before noon.

THUNDERSTORMS

Thunderstorms are most common in the summertime. They are formed by cumulus clouds, feeding off warm and moist air. These clouds grow quickly during the day, driven by the heat from the sun. When dark cumulonimbus clouds begin to approach, one can expect a thunderstorm. Thunderstorms not only have thunder, but very often lightning as well.

Lightning. Lightning is an electrical discharge in the atmosphere. When cumulus clouds grow tall, they develop an electrical field. The top of the cloud, where there are lots of ice crystals, is normally positive. The bottom part of the cloud, filled with rain droplets, is normally negative. The ground has a positive charge. An electrical charge builds up and the atmosphere produces lightning.

Ground Lightning. Ground lightning happens when the charges are exchanged by the clouds and ground. These flashes affect people greatly, often causing injury or death and disrupting power and communications and starting forest fires. People can be injured a significant distance from the point where the lightning strikes as the current travels through the ground.

Thunder. Thunder is the sound made when a lightning bolt heats the air and expands quickly. Since sound moves much slower than light, one can judge how far away a lightning bolt is by counting the seconds between seeing the flash and hearing the thunder. Each three-second interval equals about one km (0.6 miles).

Calculate the Speed of an Approaching Storm

Count the seconds between the flash and the thunder clap. (Each second represents a 300 m [984 feet] distance) from the lightning strike. The speed and distance of the approaching storm can be calculated by comparing the time delay between the lightning and the thunder from several lightning strikes.

ACTIONS TO TAKE IN THE EVENT OF A THUNDERSTORM

A thunderstorm can arrive quickly and lightning can strike in front of the storm. Seek shelter well before a storm hits.

Avoid High Points

Make sure not to be the prominent high point in the area (in a field, on a beach, in the water) and not next to a prominent high point (next to an isolated tree, steeple, flag pole).

Avoid Running

Walk fast, but do not run as rapid movement may cause air currents that attract an electric strike.

Stay Low in Open Areas

If in the open, crouch very low and try to insulate the body from the ground by standing on a backpack (with no metal), raincoat, jacket or air mattress. The importance of this insulation is that the ground charge cannot rise through the body to attempt to reach the lightning discharge.

Keep hands off the ground especially if the ground is wet or if it is humid.

Avoid Metal Objects

Stay away from any metal tent poles, backpack frames, walking poles, etc. Abandon these items, in a flat field, as they may create a better potential impact point other than the body. Avoid being in a boat or in water during a storm.

Avoid Grouping Together

Do not group together during a storm. According to author Paul Tawrell, *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*, Tawrell Books (p. 224) “a flash of lightning killed 504 sheep that had huddled together during a storm.”

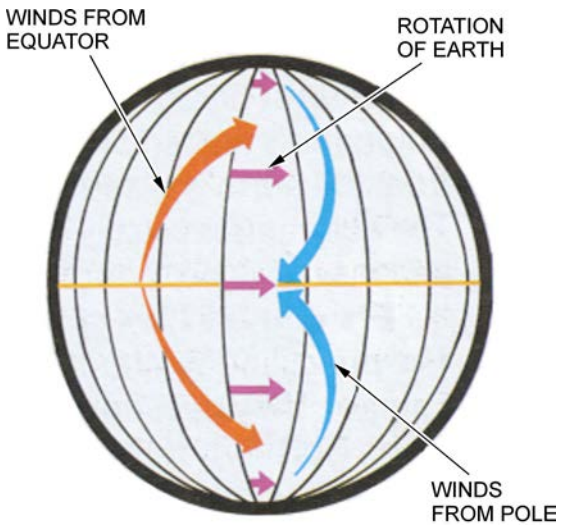
Make sure that the storm has completely passed before moving so that you do not attract the last lightning strike.

WIND

Defined as the horizontal motion of air across the earth’s surface. Wind is produced by air pressure and is different from place to place. Local winds result from thermal differences that generate local pressure gradient. Wind speed is expressed in kilometres per hour (km/h), metres per second (mps) or knots (kt).

The two principle properties of wind are speed and direction. Winds are named for the direction from which they originate. For example, a wind from the west is a westerly wind (it blows eastward). The most important factor affecting wind is the Coriolis effect. The Coriolis effect is zero at the equator and increases as it reaches the poles. The effect is proportional to the wind speed.

Coriolis effect is the deflection of moving objects on earth from a straight path, in relation to the differential speed of rotation at varying latitudes.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Tawrell Books (p. 607)

Figure 14-4-7 Coriolis Effect

Wind will flow from a high air pressure area to a low air pressure area. Due to the rotation of the earth and friction, wind will flow around the outside of the high or low pressure areas. Wind strengths are directly related to the difference between high and low air pressure areas; the larger the difference, the stronger the winds.

WEATHER LORE

Meteorologists use lots of equipment and science to forecast weather. However, people whose livelihoods depend on weather – farmers and sailors – often use the things around them to predict the weather. Nature, animals and even humans may give clues to future weather patterns. Certain species of plants and animals are affected by the slightest change in their environment. Weather lore is often considered to be old wives tales and superstitions.

NATURE SIGNS

There are signs in nature that can show change in air pressure. Some are very obvious changes while others are of a more subtle nature.

Smoke. Smoke rising from a fire straight into the air means fair weather (high pressure) and smoke hanging low, (low pressure) means rain is on the way.

Red Sky. A red sky at either dusk or dawn is a beautiful natural sign one can use to predict weather. At dusk, a red sky indicates that the next day will be dry and clear day. This is due to the sun shining through dust particles being pushed ahead of a high pressure system bringing in dry air. A red sky at dawn often means that an approaching low pressure system is bringing in a lot of moisture. This is a fair indication that a storm is approaching. Do not confuse a red sky in the morning with a red sun in the morning. If the sun itself is red and the sky is a normal colour, the day will be fair.

Remember the old rhyme:

“Red sky at night, sailor’s delight. Red sky at morning, sailors take warning”

Sun Halo. When a halo rings the moon or sun, rain is approaching.

PLANTS

Flowers. Flowers and plants will close before a storm.

Leaves. When the leaves of trees turn over, windy conditions and severe storms will not be far behind.

Pine Cones. Pine cones close up in moist weather to protect their seeds. If the weather is dry, the pine cone will open.

Seaweed. In coastal areas, kelp shrivels and feels dry in fine weather, and swells and becomes damp if rain is in the air.

ANIMALS

Lying Cows. When cows are lying down in a field, rain is on the way. The cows sense the moisture in the air and are making sure they have somewhere dry to lie down.

Squirrels Tails. If a squirrel's tail is very bushy, or they are collecting big stores of nuts in autumn, a severe winter may be expected (little scientific evidence supports this theory).

Birds and Bats. Birds and bats have a tendency to fly much lower to the ground right before rain due to the "thinning" of the air. They prefer to fly where the air is densest and where they get greater lift for their wings. With high pressure and dry air, the atmosphere becomes denser and birds can easily fly at higher altitudes. Some birds, like cockerels, sing when a thunderstorm approaches.

Crickets. When crickets are in cool grass, count the number of chirps they make. The number of chirps will indicate the temperature.

Household Pets. Cats and dogs in houses can sense storms and often seek a comfortable warm place to sleep.

HUMAN OBSERVATIONS

Senses. Mountains and other faraway objects will appear to be much closer and more sharply focused as wet weather approaches and the air pressure drops. The dust particles in the air begin to settle to the ground and the air clears allowing one to see more details of faraway objects. As high pressure approaches and the air becomes thicker, more dust particles become suspended in the air and landmarks take on their normal hazy appearance.

Sounds become sharper and more focused prior to stormy weather. Instead of travelling upward and outward into the atmosphere, sound waves are bent back to the earth and their range extended. Even birdcalls sound sharper. This is why some people think the air is clean and fresh and bird songs and calls sound sharper before a rain.

Aches and Pains. When cold is expected, many humans claim to experience aches and pains in joints and muscles.

Hair. When there is a lot of humidity, human hair often becomes frizzy. When air is moist (indicating rain), hair swells and straightens.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What signs of cloud formation signal changes for bad weather?

Q2. What should you do in an open field when a thunderstorm is approaching?

Q3. What is weather lore?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Signs of change for bad weather are:

- Clouds, regardless of their formation are thicker (darker), increase in numbers or join together to form layers, and/or lower in elevation.
- Clouds form banks in the west with winds from the south.
- Clouds move in all directions, or contrary to the wind on the ground.
- Altostratus clouds darken and lower.
- Altocumulus clouds move quickly across the sky or form towers in the morning.
- Cumulus clouds form in the morning and stack in the afternoon or move from the south or southwest.

A2. Make sure you are not the prominent high point in the area or that you are not next to a prominent high point.

A3. Weather lore is a way of predicting weather.

Teaching Point 2 **Explain Weather Systems**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

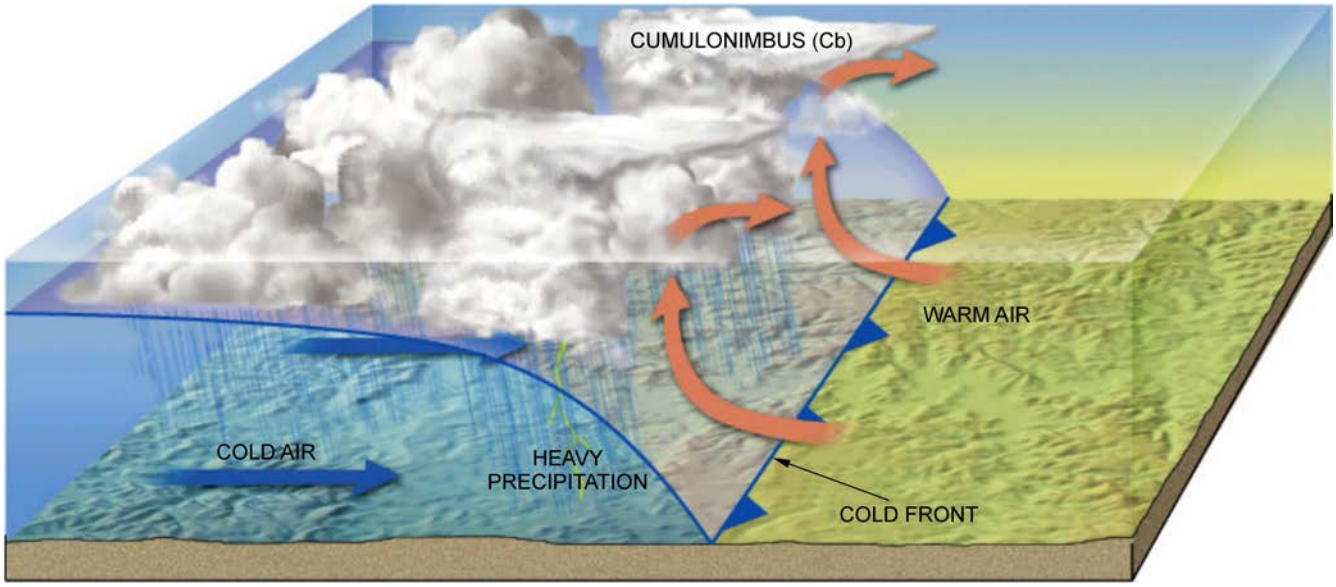
The information in this TP is designed to give cadets background knowledge of weather systems which will aid them in predicting weather.

FRONTS

Weather Front. A boundary that separates two air masses that have different characteristics. As two air masses collide they will mix along their boundary, but will retain their distinct characteristics.

Cold Front. Cold (more dense) air mass moving into a warmer (less dense) air mass and is characterized by the following:

- abrupt uplift along the frontal boundary;
- cumulus (flat based or anvil-shaped) development;
- short duration heavy rain and thunderstorms; and
- shown as a line of blue triangles on surface weather maps.

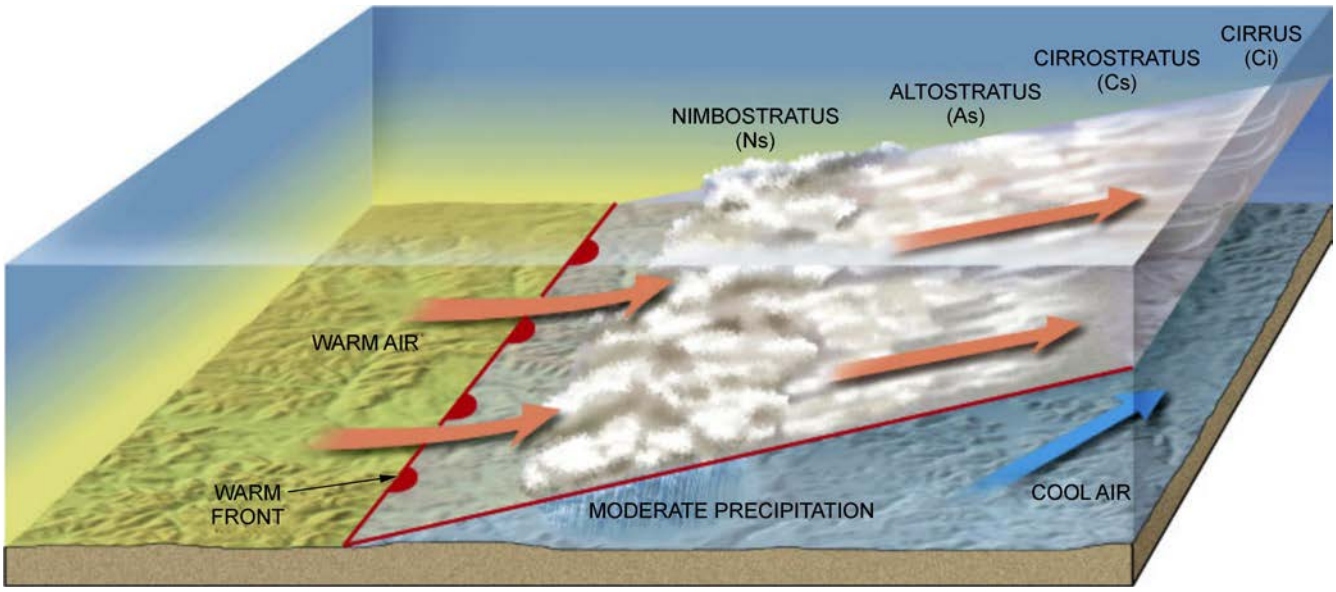


"Fronts", by The Atmosphere, Lutgens and Tarbuck, (8th ed). Copyright 2001 by John Stimac. Retrieved November 19, 2007, from http://www.ux1.eiu.edu/~jpstimac/1400/fronts.html

Figure 14-4-8 Cold Front

Warm Front. A warm (less dense) air mass moving into a cold air mass and is characterized by the following:

- gentle uplift;
- stratiform (stratus) cloud cover (the leading clouds, cirrus, are a good indicator of an impending change in the weather);
- long duration moderate rainfall; and
- shown as a line of red semicircles on surface weather maps.



"Fronts", by The Atmosphere, Lutgens and Tarbuck, (8th ed.) Copyright 2001 by John Stimac. Retrieved November 19, 2007, from http://www.ux1.eiu.edu/~jpstimac/1400/fronts.html

Figure 14-4-9 Warm Front

HIGHS AND LOWS

Air Pressure. The force of the air pushing down on the earth's surface. Air pressure is higher near sea level because there is more air at lower altitudes than on the top of a mountain. Changing weather is a result of changing air pressure. Understanding the effects of low and high air pressure is important in predicting weather.

Low Pressure Area. A low (an "L" on weather maps) is a region of air where the pressure is lowest in relation to the surrounding area. Lows are associated with stronger winds and rising air. This rising air expands and cools and cannot hold as much water, resulting in condensation and cloud formation.

Think about the air rising above a campfire. The air molecules, as they are heated, begin to expand and leave the earth's surface, putting less pressure on it. On a large scale, this hot air creates an area of low pressure.

High Pressure Area. A high ("H" on weather maps) is a region where the air pressure is highest with relation to the surrounding area.

An area of high pressure is a section of air that is sinking. As the air sinks, it warms, allowing it to hold more water. Highs are often associated with fair weather.

Ask the cadets if they were to open a window on a cold winter night and stand in the middle of the room what part of their bodies would be first to feel the cold?

Answer: Feet.

This is because cold air is dense and the molecules are sinking. On a large scale, cold air masses push down on the earths' surface creating an area of high pressure.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is a weather front?

Q2. What is a low pressure area?

Q3. What is high pressure?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. A boundary that separates two air masses that have different characteristics. As two air masses collide, they mix along their boundary, but retain their distinct characteristics.

A2. A low pressure area (an “L” shown on weather maps) is a region of air where the pressure is lowest in relation to the surrounding area.

A3. An area of high pressure is a section of air that is sinking.

Teaching Point 3 **Have the Cadets Predict Weather for the Next 24-Hour Period**

Time: 10 min Method: Practical Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadet predict weather conditions for the next 24 hours.

RESOURCES

- Pen or pencil, and
- Paper.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Have the cadets observe the clouds, weather and natural features around them.
2. Have the cadets write down what they think might happen in the next 24 hours.
3. Divide the cadets into small groups, of no more than four and have them discuss weather predictions over the next 24 hours.
4. Follow up with the cadets’ predictions in a few days time.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in predicting weather will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 6 (324 EC-04).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Being able to predict weather is a great tool when in a survival situation. Weather is an important aspect of planning in any survival situation with respect to the type of shelter selected and the best course of action to take.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Time shall be provided during a corps FTX to allow cadets to continue to practice the skill of predicting weather.

REFERENCES

C0-111 (ISBN 0-9740820-2-3) Tawrell, P. (2002). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*. Green Valley, ON: Paul Tawrell.

C2-157 The Old Farmer's Almanac. *Cricket Chirps to Temperature*. Retrieved February 1, 2008, from http://www.almanac.com/outdoors/crickets.php.

C2-162 Clouds R Us.com-Weather Features. *Weather Lore*. Retrieved February 1, 2008, from http://www.rcn27.dial.pipex.com/cloudsrus/lore.html.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 5

EO M324.05 – DETERMINE WHEN TO SELF-RESCUE

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Prepare trail markings.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for this lesson to give background information on the factors to consider when deciding to break camp and search for help and generate interest in survival.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

The review for this lesson is from EO M224.01 (Identify Immediate Actions to Take When Lost, A-CR-CCP-702/PF-001, Chapter 14, Section 1).

FIVE ELEMENTS OF SURVIVAL

After successfully completing the S.T.O.P. action and recognizing a survival situation, the lost individual shall take inventory of all the food and equipment on hand and address the five elements of survival. The five elements of survival, listed in order of priority, are:

1. **Attitude.** Maintaining a positive attitude is essential. One can survive by staying calm, using all available resources, and prioritizing personal needs.

2. **Shelter.** A shelter is designed to provide protection from the weather and, depending on the conditions, protect a person from either hot or cold temperatures. Hypothermia and hyperthermia are two of the greatest dangers in a survival situation. A proper shelter can help prevent these from occurring. In a desert, for example, the goal is to stay under a shelter, shaded from the sun. In cold weather situations, the shelter will provide insulation.

3. **Water.** Water is the most essential nutrient for the human body. Even when thirst is not extreme it can dull the mind. Lack of water will slowly degrade the ability to survive. With adequate shelter and water one can survive for weeks.

4. **Fire.** In a survival situation, fire provides heat and light, and signals for rescuers. Cold weather not only lowers the ability to think, but it also lowers one's will to do anything. A drop of a few degrees in body temperature can affect the ability to make reasonable decisions.

5. **Food.** Individuals in good physical condition can go for many days or even weeks without food. The goal in a wilderness survival situation is to be located in the shortest time possible, so in most cases one will be located before food becomes a survival issue. However, it is always important to prepare for the worst and find ways to supply the body with substance, such as berries, fish, animals, birds, etc.

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the five elements of survival?

Q2. What is the one essential nutrient the body requires to function?

Q3. What does a shelter provide?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Attitude, shelter, water, fire and food.

A2. Water.

A3. Shelter provides protection from the weather and depending on the conditions, protects you from either hot or cold temperatures.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be able to determine when to self-rescue.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to be able to make the decision to move from their survival site and search for help. The decision to move is crucial and there are many considerations before changing location.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss the Factors to Consider When Deciding to Self-Rescue**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to introduce the cadets to the factors to consider when deciding to self-rescue.

It is usually easier to locate food and water supplies from a permanent base than constantly being on the move. The first choice is to stay put.

Making the decision to self-rescue requires many considerations and should only happen as a last resort.

It is important to consider all the factors before leaving the survival site. When an analysis of the factors indicates that a site will not be able to provide resources critical to sustaining life, a move should be considered.

Behaviour in survival situations depends on the knowledge and attitude of the survivor. Hunters traditionally form the largest number of individuals lost. This is due to the adrenaline pushing them past their limits and being unprepared for adverse conditions.

Hikers and backpackers form the smallest group of lost individuals, yet they are prone to the hardships of being lost as they rarely carry survival equipment. This group typically goes out in good weather and gets stranded due to sudden storms.

FOOD AND WATER RESOURCES

Time Without Water

An area without water, or with a limited supply of water, will not be beneficial in the long run.

The body is estimated to be made up of two thirds water. Water is the most essential nutrient for survival and the human body can last just a few days without it.

During a normal non-strenuous day, a healthy individual will require 2 to 3 L of water. When physically active or in extreme hot or cold environments, that same person would need at least 4 to 6 L. Even when thirst is not extreme it can dull the mind. Lack of water will slowly degrade the ability to survive.

Drinking water wards off dehydration and environmental injuries. A person who is mildly dehydrated may become thirsty and become irritable and weak. As this becomes more serious, individuals will show a decrease in mental capacity and coordination.

In a survival situation, water is procured from the earth or from the sky, and sources can include surface water, groundwater, precipitation, condensation and plants.

Time Without Food

The human body can last for a few weeks without food. In a survival situation, energy must be conserved and food resources planned and monitored.

In general, the requirements for food should be de-emphasized. Do not eat if water is not available. If water is available, more food can be taken in to sustain the energy level.

Proper Nutrition

In a survival situation, getting the nutrients and vitamins a person needs is difficult. When choosing food sources, it is worthwhile to choose foods from four groups:

- carbohydrates,
- protein,
- fats, and
- minerals.

Carbohydrates. Easily digested foods that provide rapid energy. Fruits and vegetables are good sources of carbohydrates and should be checked for bug infestation before eating.

Protein. Builds body cells. Fish, game and poultry are good sources of protein but should be cooked thoroughly before eating.

Fats. Slowly-digestable food that provides long-lasting energy. Animal fats, eggs and nuts are excellent sources in survival situations.

Minerals. Aid in building and repairing the skeletal system. Water provides adequate minerals in survival situations.

Alternative food sources can be found in EO C324.01 (Identify Animal and Insect Food Sources, Section 6).

FIRE AND SHELTER RESOURCES

Fire and shelter provides personal protection in survival situations; playing a vital role in protecting a cadet from the realities that can be dealt by nature. Fire and shelter serve many functions: removing the cadet from inclement weather, providing light, purifying water, drying clothes, warding off wildlife, and signalling. In addition, both fire and shelter reduce stress and keep the cadet comfortable.

It is important to have fire resources available in a survival situation. Hardwoods such as maple, ash, oak and hickory will burn longer and produce less smoke. If there are limited sources of hardwoods, softwoods can be used. Supplies will be used up quickly as softwoods burn hotter and faster.

As time passes and the need for wood dwindles the surrounding resources, survivors are required to go further and further to gather wood.

Information regarding shelter construction can be found in M224.04 (Identify Emergency Shelters, A-CR-CCP-702/PF-001, Chapter 14, Section 4), as well as M324.01(Construct an Improvised Shelter, Section 1).

Information regarding fire construction can be found in M224.05 (Prepare, Light, Maintain and Extinguish a Fire, A-CR-CCP-702/PF-001, Chapter 14, Section 5) as well as M324.03 (Light a Fire Without Matches, Section 3).

ENVIRONMENTAL DANGERS

Environmental dangers including weather, fire and wildlife will necessitate a move away from the danger.

HEALTH OF PARTY MEMBERS

The health and well-being of all members must be considered prior to moving. If the cadet is alone and injured, moving should be a last resort.

Before moving, procure enough food and water to last at least two weeks.

In survival situations, there is a risk of disease from staying in one spot for too long. Even if the strictest sanitary management is kept, there is still a risk of illness or disease.

If injured members are staying behind, it is important to leave one healthy person behind to care for the injured and gather supplies.

RISK OF FURTHER INJURY

Moving will be necessary if there is risk further injury to members of the group. As members get weaker, the risk of injury increases. Areas where there are hills, cliffs and large rocks are dangerous areas because of potential slides and avalanches.

THE STAY OR GO DECISION

The decision to move away from the initial survival site is dependent on the many factors listed above; staying is the best scenario. Many lost people waste valuable energy and risk injury by panicking, running aimlessly, continuing to travel after dark, or walking in circles. If a lost person attempts to find their location, in most cases they will become more lost, increasing the distance between the last known point of their route. This wandering will only increase the size of the search area, time it will take for a rescue team to locate an individual or group. As long as there is no immediate danger, stay in one place.

Ideally, the survivor or group should establish a small area search. Complete the Star Compass Search to determine the decision to move.

Star Compass Search

To complete the Star Compass Search:

1. Visualize the starting point. Look around your current location. Make note of what is surrounding you such as obvious landmarks.
2. Mark the starting point using a stick or rock cairn.
3. Taking all your gear with you, walk 100 m (328 feet) in a straight line from the starting point along one of the cardinal compass points (N, S, E, W) and then back to the starting point.
4. Repeat step three for the remaining compass points.
5. Walk 200 m (656 feet) in a straight line from the starting point along one of the intercardinal compass points (NE, NW, SE, SW) and back again.
6. Repeat step five for the remaining compass points.

This will create a star pattern and allow the cadet to search the area for usable resources like water.

The decision to move will invariably depend on the survivors' experiences, knowledge and skills and answers to questions regarding:

- **Food and Water Resources.** Is there a water source? Are there food sources?
- **Fire and Shelter Resources.** Are there shelter-building resources? Is there wood for fire?
- **Environmental Dangers.** Is the area safe?
- **Health of Party Members**. Can everybody travel? Are there injured members who need to stay in one spot?
- **Risk of Further Injury.** Is there a risk of more injuries if we stay?

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is the most important nutrient the body requires?

Q2. How long can the human body last without food?

Q3. What factors should be considered when deciding to move?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The most important nutrient the body requires is water.

A2. The human body can last a few weeks without food.

A3. Factors to consider include food and water resources, fire and shelter resources, environmental dangers, health of party members and risk of further injury.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss Planning a Route to Search for Help**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to introduce cadets to the factors for planning a route when the decision to self-rescue has been made.

When the decision to move has been made, it is important to leave signs that the group has been there and has decided to move.

Leaving a message or sign that the group has moved, will assist rescuers when they find the initial camp and try to follow the group.

IDENTIFYING DIRECTION

Determine Direction Using a Shadow Stick

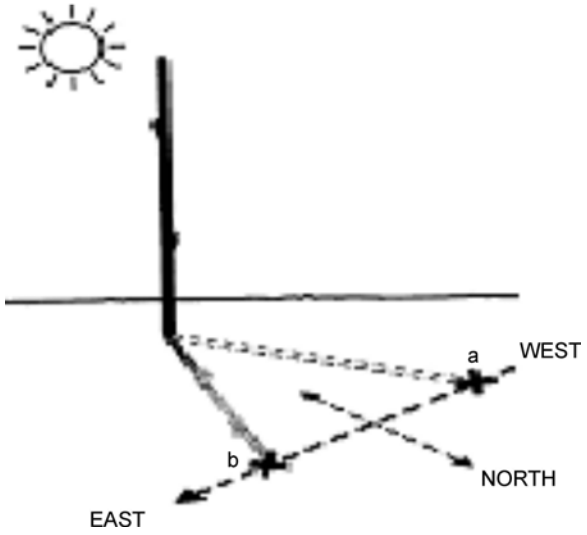
In a survival situation one may not have a map of the area, a compass or a watch. It will be necessary to use natural phenomena, to determine direction. The sun can be used to find north using a branch or stick to cast a shadow on the ground.

A shadow stick works because the sun always travels east to west, even though it may not rise at exactly 90 degrees or set at exactly 270 degrees. The tip of the shadow stick's shadow moves in the opposite direction, so the first shadow tip is always west of the second, anywhere on earth. Improvised methods are only general indicators of direction. The shadow stick is more accurate and easier to read when the stick is narrow.

The line drawn in Figure 14-5-1 indicates the east-west line. The first mark made is west and the last mark made is east. A line perpendicular to the east-west line is a north-south line.

Steps to make a shadow stick:

1. Find a level, vegetation-free spot. Push the 45- to 60-cm straight stick into the ground about 10 cm so it will remain upright. Incline it by 5–10 degrees to get a longer, bigger shadow if necessary.
2. Mark the tip of the shadow with a stone. Wait until the shadow tip moves a few inches (10–15 minutes with a 45-cm stick).
3. Mark the new position of the shadow tip.
4. Draw a straight line from the first mark through the second mark, and about 30 cm past it.



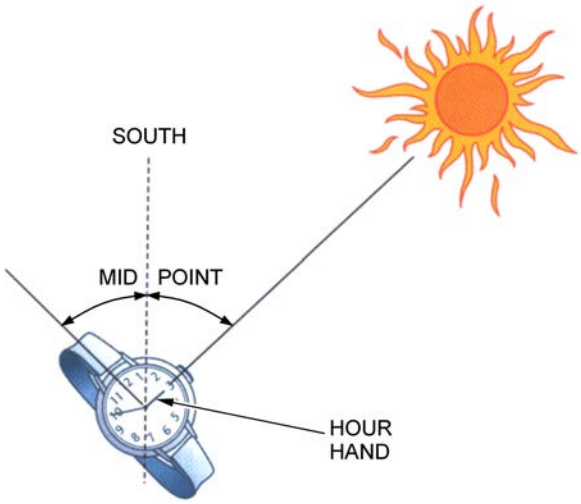
J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 353)

Figure 14-5-1 Shadow Stick

Determining Direction Using an Analog Watch

An analog watch can help determine direction using either standard or daylight savings time.

Point the hour hand towards the sun and determine the halfway point between the hour hand and 12 o'clock or 1 o'clock (daylight savings time). The halfway point indicates a north-south line (south in the northern hemisphere and north in the southern hemisphere).



National Association of Search and Rescue, Fundamentals of Search and Rescue, Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Inc. (p. 76)

Figure 14-5-2 Analog Watch

FOLLOWING RIVERS

Following rivers will automatically increase survival because it provides the necessary life-support of water. Most waterways will lead to civilization, inland lakes or an ocean.

Rivers offer clearly defined routes to follow although there may be difficult terrain on the shorelines. Steep, rocky and slippery routes along the shore should be avoided. Following the general course of the river will bring the survivor to the same location.

A river cutting through level ground will be easier to follow and most likely have animal trails.

MAINTAINING DIRECTION

When a direction has been decided on, maintain it as best as possible. Choose a prominent feature in the distance and walk towards it.

In a group, use the relay system where one person moves forward, stops and rests and another takes over. This is both to maintain the direction and conserve energy.

Walking in a Straight Line

Indian Line. A group of hikers in an open area become landmarks themselves. Hikers are spaced so that the last individual is far enough back to see the leader and the line. The last person lines up the leader with the people in the line. When the leader deviates, they can be signalled to fall back into line.

A distant noise can be followed to reach a destination. Verify direction by cupping the ears and rotating the head to determine the direction of the highest sound intensity.

Estimating Distance

When walking in a straight line, the following table outlines the distances at which objects can be seen.

DISTANCE	ITEM
40 m (132 feet)	Mouth and eyes are clearly distinguished.
90 m (295 feet)	Eyes are dots.
180 m (590 feet)	General details of clothing can be distinguished.
270 m (885 feet)	Faces can be seen.
450 m (1476 feet)	Colours of clothing can be distinguished.
700 m (2297 feet)	People look like posts.
1.5 km (4921 feet)	Trunks of large trees can be seen.
4 km (13 123 feet)	Chimneys and windows can be distinguished.
8 km (26 246 feet)	Large houses, silos and towers can be recognized.
10 km (32 808 feet)	Average height church steeples can be seen.

Following Animal Trails

Following animal trails will most likely lead to a water source. Animals have a set territory near suitable water sources and rarely stray from it.

Bushwhacking

Bushwhacking is the most difficult form of keeping direction. Brush, forests and shores can be quite dense and in warmer climates the vegetation along river shores gets more light and water and is able to grow thicker and stronger. This will inhibit the survivor's ability to move smoothly.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are two ways to determine direction?

Q2. What are the benefits of following rivers?

Q3. If one were to follow animal trails, where would they lead?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Using a shadow stick and an analog watch.

A2. The benefits of following rivers are they offer clearly defined routes and lead to civilization, inland lakes or an ocean.

A3. Following animal trails will most likely lead to a water source. Animals have a set territory that is near suitable water sources and rarely stray from it.

Teaching Point 3 **Identify Ways of Marking a Trail**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to introduce cadets to marking a trail.

REASONS FOR MARKING A TRAIL

Most trails are marked coming and going so that they can be seen from both directions of travel. Trails are also marked to ensure the people using them do not get lost or rerouted.

Leaving and Returning to the Site

When searching for water or finding higher ground to build a signal fire, the survivor may have to walk for a kilometre or more. Marking will help to establish the route one can follow to return to the survival site.

Acting as a Guide to a Ground Search and Rescue Party

Signs on the ground will draw attention to any presence or past presence and the direction markers will help rescuers follow the survivor's trail.

TRAIL-MARKING TECHNIQUES

A large arrow to indicate the direction in which one is travelling. It should be visible from the air. Other direction markers can be interpreted at ground level. Direction markers could include:

- rocks or debris placed in an arrow shape;
- a stick left in a crooked support, with the top pointing in the direction taken;
- grasses tied in an overhand knot with the end hanging in the direction followed;
- forked branches laid with the fork pointing in the direction of travel;
- arrowhead-shape notches cut out of tree trunks indicating a turn;
- small rocks set upon larger rocks, with small rocks beside indicating the direction; and
- a cross of sticks or stones meaning 'Not this way'.

When travelling, continue to mark trails, not only for people to follow but to establish a route to retrace and guide someone who needs to go back on the trail.

Leave a message or sure signs that the group has moved. Hang them from tripods or trees and draw attention to them with markers.

Show the cadets the previously prepared marked trail with grass and rocks. Allow the cadets to ask questions.

Trees

Trees are great for marking trails.

To mark a trail with branches:

1. Find a route to follow for 100 m (328 feet).
2. Gather branches which are already on the ground.
3. Place the branches along the route in the direction of travel for 100 m (328 feet).
4. Turn the branches around when returning to the starting point.
5. Return the branches to the environment.

Saplings

Saplings can be used to mark trails as they bend easily and can be contorted to indicate the direction of travel.

Long Grass

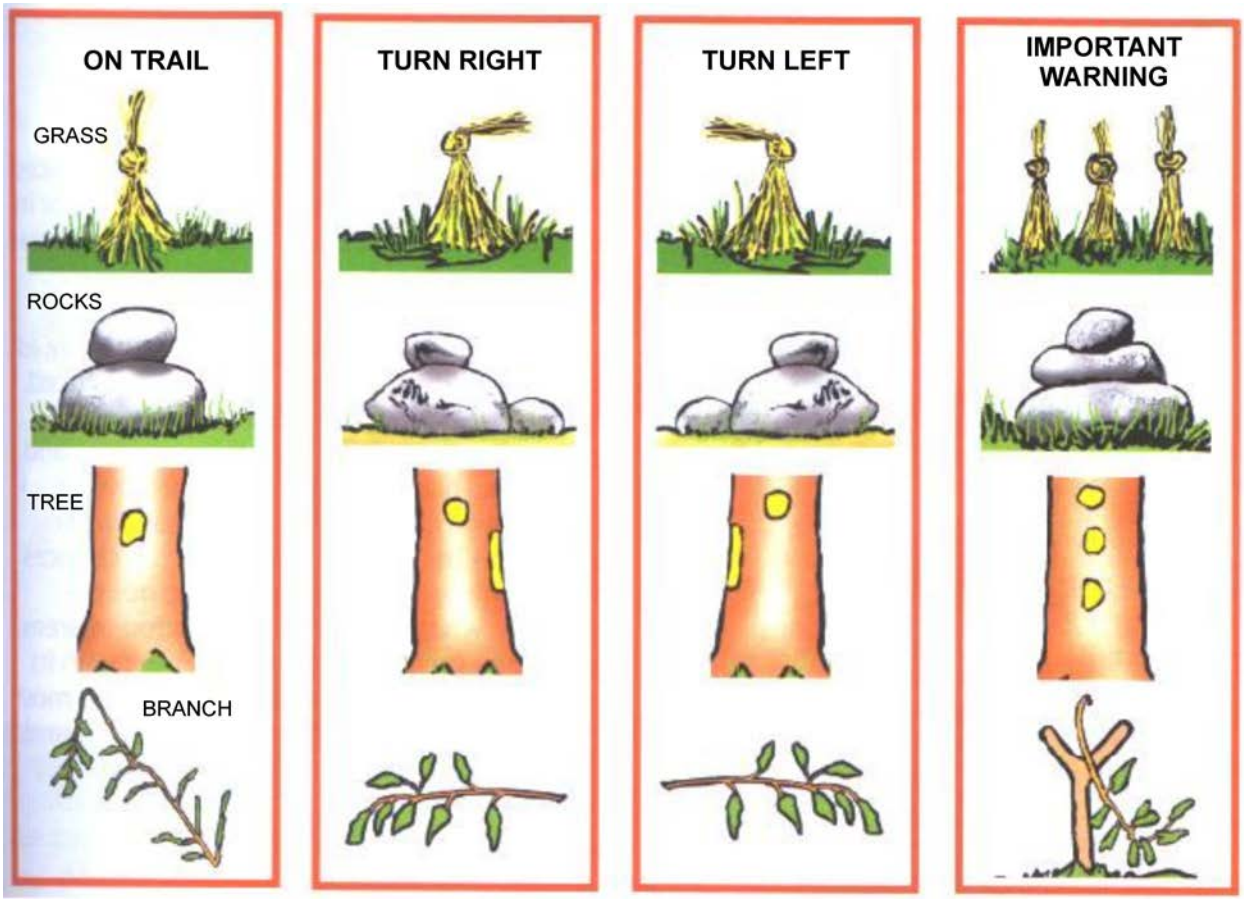
Long grass or straw can be tied together to indicate direction.

Cairns

Cairns are piles of rocks used to illustrate where the trail leads. They vary in size from a small grouping of three or four rocks to large piles that can be seen in thick fog. When a trail is marked by cairns, they may be harder to locate than a marking at eye level because they are easy to miss being lower to the ground. Cairns should be used to mark a trail in rocky terrain.

K. Berger, Backpacking and Hiking, DK Publishing Inc. (p. 158)

Figure 14-5-3 Cairn



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 547)

Figure 14-5-4 Trail-Marking Techniques

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the different ways to mark a trail?

Q2. How is a trail marked with branches?

Q3. How is a trail marked in rocky terrain?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The different ways to mark a trail are with trees, saplings, long grass and cairns.

A2. To mark a trail with branches:

1. Find a route to follow for 100 m (328 feet).
2. Gather branches which are already on the ground.
3. Place the branches along the route in the direction of travel for 100 m (328 feet).
4. Turn the branches around when returning to the starting point.

5. Return the branches to the environment.

A3. Trails in rocky terrain are marked by cairns.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the factors to consider when deciding to self-rescue?

Q2. When planning a route to search for help, what are three things to consider?

Q3. What are some direction markers used when leaving a survival site?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Factors to consider include food and water resources, fire and shelter resources, environmental dangers, health of party members and risk of further injury.

A2. Identifying direction, following rivers and maintaining direction.

A3. Direction markers include:

- rocks or debris placed in an arrow shape;
- a stick left in a crooked support, with the top pointing in the direction taken;
- grasses tied in an overhand knot with the end hanging in the direction followed;
- forked branches laid with the fork pointing in the direction of travel;
- arrowhead-shape notches cut out of tree trunks indicating a turn;
- small rocks set upon larger rocks, with small rocks beside indicating the direction; and
- a cross of sticks or stones meaning ’Not this way’.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

There are many factors to consider when making a decision to move and search for help in survival situations. Knowing the considerations and what to do when moving will assist the cadet in finding help or being rescued quicker.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

A2-046 B-GG-217-001/PT-001 Director Air Operations Training (1983). *Down But Not Out*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C0-111 (ISBN 0-9740820-2-3) Tawrell, P. (2006). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book* (2nd ed.). Green Valley, ON: Paul Tawrell.

C2-008 (ISBN 0-00-653140-7) Wiseman, J. (1999). *SAS Survival Handbook*. Hammersmith, London: HarperCollins Publishers.

C2-148 (ISBN 978-0-8118-3292-5) Davenport, G. (2006). *Wilderness Survival* (2nd ed.). Mechanicsburg, PA: Stackpole Books.

C2-163 (ISBN 0-9694132-0-3) Ferri, G. (1989). *The Psychology of Wilderness Survival*. Hanover, ON: Skyway Printing.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 6

EO C324.01 – IDENTIFY ANIMAL AND INSECT FOOD SOURCES

Total Time: 60 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter, 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Complete a reconnaissance of area used to teach the lesson. Locate different signs of animals and their tracks for TP3

Photocopy the handouts located at Annexes F and G.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 1 and 2 to introduce daily energy requirements and orient the cadet to food sources when lost.

A demonstration was chosen for TP 3 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate finding animal and insect food sources.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 4 as it is an interactive way to allow the cadets to demonstrate identifying animal and insect food sources in a safe, controlled environment. This activity contributes to the development of their outdoor survival skills in a fun and challenging setting.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to identify animal and insect food sources.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to be able to identify animal and insect food sources in the field. For those participating in expedition training the need to live off natural resources while in the field may become a realistic situation. In a survival situation, a cadet may rely on and make appropriate choices to supplement nutrition and avoid a situation of accidental poisoning or illness.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss the Daily Energy Requirements for an Average Person When Surviving in the Field**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

ENERGY REQUIREMENTS

The body needs food to:

- supply heat;
- supply energy;
- speed recovery after hard work or injury; and
- help fight off disease and maintain mental and physical capabilities.

A healthy body can survive for several days, even weeks without food, depending on environmental conditions. Food replenishes the nutritional substances that a body uses. It provides vitamins, minerals, salts, and other elements essential to good health.

A calorie is a unit of heat – it is the amount needed to raise the temperature of 1 L of water by one degree Celsius. It is the way energy is expressed when discussing nutrition.

ENERGY NEEDS

The average person in a completely restful state requires 70 calories per hour to maintain their basic metabolism. The simplest activities that make up an ordinary day demand another 45 calories per hour (eg, standing up, sitting down, lighting a fire, etc). That makes a total of about 2040 calories a day without major activities. Participating in a strenuous activity could burn up a further 3500 calories daily. Even mental effort or anxiety will burn additional calories.

Calories are not produced equally by all foods. In general, the energy values of the basic food types are:

- **Carbohydrates.** 1 g produces 4 calories;
- **Fat.** 1 g produces 9 calories; and
- **Protein.** 1 g produces 4 calories.

Consuming more than one source of food will avoid the possibility of nutrient deficiencies. Nutrients must include a combination of carbohydrates, fats and proteins, minerals and other trace elements and vitamins. A balanced diet is important for long-term survival. Do not rely on the easiest source of food for a balanced diet.

Carbohydrates

Carbohydrates form the bulk of our diets and are a primary source of energy for the body, not just for physical effort but also for fuelling the body and running the nervous system. There are two types of carbohydrates:

- **Fibre.** A complex carbohydrate, and
- **Sugar.** A simple carbohydrate.

Fats

Fats contain the same elements as carbohydrates but are combined differently. They are a concentrated source of energy, providing twice as many calories as carbohydrates. Fat is stored in the body as a layer under the skin and around the organs. Fats heat and insulate the body, protect organs, lubricate the alimentary tract and build an energy reserve. They are found in meat, eggs, milk and nuts.

The alimentary tract is the passage along which food is passed from the mouth to the anus during digestion.

Proteins

Proteins build muscles, bones, and teeth and are found in a variety of foods such as meat, poultry, fish, legumes, nuts, milk products, and grain products. Proteins are the only food ingredient containing nitrogen and are therefore essential for the growth and repair of the body. If carbohydrates and fats are missing from the diet, protein is used to generate energy but at the expense of the body's other needs; the body will burn its own tissue muscle for energy.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What nutrients provide calories for energy?

Q2. How many calories will an average person at a completely restful state burn in a day?

Q3. When doing strenuous work how many calories could the body burn?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Carbohydrates, fats, and proteins.

A2. A average person at rest will burn approximately 2040 calories.

A3. Strenuous work may burn upward of 3500 calories.

Teaching Point 2 **Identify Edible Insects and Their Habitat**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP should be conducted somewhere close to rotting logs, stones, boards or any other materials lying on the ground providing good nesting sites for insects. During the TP provide examples of insects and grubs found under one of the listed objects above.

Be cautious when overturning objects, as dangerous or poisonous insects or creatures may be found underneath (snakes, spiders, bees, wasps, etc).

EDIBLE INSECTS

Insects are the most abundant life form on earth and are easily caught. They provide ample amounts of proteins, fats, carbohydrates, calcium and iron. This makes insects a valuable food source for survival.

Although a fair number of insects can be eaten raw, it is best to cook them in order to avoid ingesting parasites. Collect only living specimens. Avoid any that look sick or dead, have a bad smell or produce skin irritation or a rash when handled. The nutritional value per 100 g of various insects is illustrated in the chart at Figure 14-6-1.

Individuals with known allergies to insects or arthropods should exercise caution. Insects and shellfish are in the same category. People who suffer allergic reactions to lobster, shrimp, crayfish, and other such foods should avoid eating insects.

NUTRITIONAL VALUE

One gram of carbohydrates equals four calories. This calculation relates to the amount of calories that must be consumed to maintain strength and basic functions when surviving in the field. Note that there is a significant amount of protein that comes from insects.

Distribute handout Annex G.

Have cadets, based on the chart, determine what two insects they would eat. Have them then calculate the amount of insects they would have to eat in order to make up half of their daily caloric intake (roughly 1020 calories).

Insect (per 100 g)	Protein (g)	Fats (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Calcium (mg)	Iron (mg)
Crickets	**12.9**	**5.5**	**5.1**	**75.8**	**9.5**
Small grasshoppers	**20.6**	**6.1**	**3.9**	**35.2**	**5.0**
Giant water beetles	**19.8**	**8.3**	**2.1**	**43.5**	**13.6**
Red ants	**13.9**	**3.5**	**2.9**	**47.8**	**5.7**
Silkworm pupae	**9.6**	**5.6**	**2.3**	**41.7**	**1.8**
Termites	**14.2**	**n/a**	**n/a**	**0.050**	**35.5**
Weevils	**6.7**	**n/a**	**n/a**	**0.186**	**13.1**

G. Davenport, Wilderness Survival, Stackpole Books (p. 161)

Figure 14-6-1 Nutritional Value

INSECT HABITAT

Rotting logs, stones, boards or any other materials lying on the ground provide good nesting sites and are excellent places to find a variety of insects including ants, termites, beetles and grubs. Grassy areas are

good areas to search because insects are easily seen. The following insects can commonly be found in most locations.

Grasshoppers. Most commonly found in open fields. Watch for them jumping out of the way when walking. Eaten raw or cooked, remove the legs.

Discover Entomology, by Carl D. Patrick, Grasshoppers and Their Control, Copyright 2008 by Texas A&M University Department of Entomology. Retrieved March 5, 2008, from http://insects.tamu.edu/extension/bulletins/l-5201.html

Figure 14-6-2 Grasshopper

Beetles. Often found under rotting logs, stones, boards or any other material lying on the ground. Insects with hard outer shells will have parasites so cook them before eating.

Canadian Biodiversity Information Facility, Ground Beetles of Canada. Retrieved March 5, 2008, from http://www.cbif.gc.ca/spp_pages/carabids/phps/image1_e.php#Bembidiini

Figure 14-6-3 Beetles

Worms. Worms are an excellent source of protein, a large proportion of essential amino acids and are easily collected. Dig for them in damp soil or watch for them on the ground after rain. After collecting them, drop them into clean, potable water for a few minutes. The worms will naturally purge or wash themselves out, after which they can be eaten raw.

Cheshire Wildlife Trust, Find Out About Earth Worms, Copyright 2004 by Cheshire Wildlife Trust. Retrieved March 5, 2008, from http://www.wildlifetrust.org.uk/cheshire/watch_earthworms.htm

Figure 14-6-4 Earth Worm

Grubs. Known as insect larva, grubs are often found under rotting logs, stones, boards or any other materials lying on the ground.

Green Smiths, Grub Worms. Retrieved March 5, 2008, from http://www.greensmiths.com/grubs.htm

Figure 14-6-5 Grubs

Aquatic Insects. Many species of edible insects exist around the edges of lakes, or ponds, or the ocean. Cook any hard shell insects.

P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 912)

Figure 14-6-6 Water Insects

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What nutritional value will insects provide for survival?

Q2. Where would insects be generally located?

Q3. How would someone find worms?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Insects will provide ample amounts of proteins, fats, carbohydrates, calcium and iron.

A2. Under rotting logs, stones, boards or any other materials lying on the ground providing good nesting sites and are excellent places to find a variety of insects.

A3. Dig for them in damp soil or watch for them on the ground after rain.

Teaching Point 3 **Discuss Finding Small Animals**

Time: 15 min Method: Demonstration

During this TP move about the training area pointing out different signs of animals. Identify their tracks and habitat to the cadets.

IDENTIFYING TRACKS AND HABITAT

All animals can be a source of nourishment. The more one knows about animals, the better the chances of locating an animal. To find an animal in the wild, one must be observant for signs. If a person can recognize the signs an animal leaves, and identify the animal, one can devise a method to hunt and trap it.

Most mammals are on the move at dawn and dusk (first light, last light), using regular routes between their watering spots, feeding places and homes. Animal tracks and trails can be identified by looking for specific signs.

The following are tips to locate and identify animals:

- Tracks are more obvious on wet ground snow and damp sand.
- The size of the impression is left from their tracks.
- The age of the track can be identified by its sharpness and moisture content.
- The clearer the track the more recent it is. If water or rain has seeped into it, it may be older.
- Heavy vegetation reveals regularly used routes or paths.
- Some animals never travel very far; any tracks likely mean they are in the area.
- Smaller animals make tunnels through dense underbrush.
- Broken twigs along a route, will identify direction of travel and the height of the animal.

Rabbits and Hares

Rabbits and hares are easy to catch. They live either in burrows or above ground and most often use a specific run that they routinely retrace. Rabbits and hares have long hind legs with small front paws. When looking for rabbits or hares, keep the following in mind:

- They leave little detail on soft ground.
- They have a narrow hind foot with four toes.
- They leave tracks with their hind feet in front of the forefoot instead of side by side.
- They eat tree bark and may nibble the base of a tree.
- They warn other rabbits and hares by using their paws to create sounds. The sound emitted sounds like a thump or someone hitting a cushion.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 35)

Figure 14-6-7 Rabbit and Tracks

Squirrels

Squirrels are alert and very nimble. Most are active day and night – feeding on nuts, fruits, shoots and for some bird's eggs. Their nests are usually the size of a small day pack, made of sticks and leaves, high in trees. However, squirrels seek out tree hollows for winter dens. Squirrels are small and their tracks are barely noticeable. Signs of squirrel presence include:

- chewed cones,
- cone scales piled about, and
- loud and almost continuous high-pitched squeals and chirps.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 49)

Figure 14-6-8 Squirrel and Tracks

Marmots (Groundhogs)

The groundhog is most commonly found in pastures, on roadsides, and overgrown fields. Groundhogs live alone in burrows up to 9 m long (30 feet), excavated under stumps, rocks or edges of buildings. Normally there are three entrances to the burrows. They are visible, measuring 20–30 cm (8–12 inches) across, with big mounds of dirt nearby.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 91)

Figure 14-6-9 Marmot (Groundhog) and Tracks

Porcupines

The porcupine is the second largest rodent. It has sharp quills that are solid at the base and barbed at the tip. This animal feeds mainly on grasses, acorns and twigs and is fond of salt. Their tracks and signs include:

- footprints, where the front paws have four toes and hind paws have five toes,
- trees with bark stripped in irregular patches, and
- nipped twigs littering the ground.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 109)

Figure 14-6-10 Porcupine and Tracks

Beavers

Beavers are known as dam builders. They are aquatic animals with scaly, padded-like tails. They can be found using regular runs along streams, lakes, or bogs/marshes and reside in a den known as a beaver house, where they can be trapped. Their tracks and signs include:

- fore footprints that have five toes with claw marks but, often only four show,
- rear footprints that are webbed, roundish and larger,
- water levels that are higher than normal in lakes, bogs or marshes,
- the presence of a beaver dam, lodges, fallen and chewed saplings, and
- the presence of bark shavings near water.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 110)

Figure 14-6-11 Beaver and Tracks

Raccoons

The “masked bandit” lives in a variety of habitats, from forests to prairies to city parks. They prefer to be in the vicinity of water and trees and are most abundant in wooded swamps. They reside in dens often in a hollow tree or log, rock crevice, cave or abandoned building. A raccoon’s diet from land sources includes nuts, fruit, insects, small rodents, and birds. Near water they will eat frogs, fish, molluscs and insects. Their tracks and signs include:

- a hind track that is about 7.62 cm (3 inches) long with 5 toes, and
- a front paw that is like a small hand with five fingers.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 99)

Figure 14-6-12 Raccoon and Tracks

DETECTING SIGNS OF FEEDING

A skilled eye can often identify the species of animal by the pattern left by teeth or beak marks on a nut, or the way in which a pine cone has been stripped to get at its seeds. Some signs of feeding that may be found in the wilderness include:

- bark stripped from trees,
- the gnawed shells of nuts,
- partially-eaten fruits,
- bitten-off shoots,
- the remains of prey, and
- remains of carnivores or the destruction of nests.

Discarded fruits or nuts are often found when food is plentiful – an animal finds one piece not to its liking and drops it to try another. They not only disclose an animal's presence but suggest bait for traps.

FINDING DROPPINGS

Droppings (sometimes called scat) are one of the best indications of whether an animal is a herbivore or a carnivore. The size of the animal can be judged from the mass and quantity of droppings. The dropping's dryness is an indication of how long it has been since they were passed. Old droppings will be hard and odourless. Fresh droppings will be wet, still smell and may be covered by flies.

The composition of droppings can be used to figure out what kind of animal deposited it. Bits of plant material (stems, seeds, husks, and stalks) indicate a herbivore (plant eater). There is almost no scent to the droppings of a plant eater, although those that have gorged on berries leave sweet smelling scat.

Droppings filled with animal material (scales, bones, and fur) left by a carnivore, usually has a rank smell. A mass of flies indicate a pile of fresh droppings.

If flies can be heard buzzing but they can not be spotted, there may be fresh kill from a ferocious wild animal. Leave the area immediately.

IDENTIFYING ROOTINGS

Some animals root up the ground in search of insects and tubers. If the earth is still crumbly and fresh an animal is likely to have been active on the spot. Small scratches may be where a squirrel or other rodents have been digging for shoots.

DETECTING SCENTS AND SMELLS

Be alert and if you smell anything out of the ordinary. Try and register the smells. They may be indications of wildlife present. Where one kind of animal exists, there will also be others.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. When are most animals moving about their environment?

Q2. What route does a rabbit usually follow?

Q3. If you were lost in a wooded area near a lake, what animals may you find?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Most animals move about their environment during dawn and dusk.

A2. A rabbit will usually follow a specific route that they routinely retrace.

A3. You may find beavers and racoons.

Teaching Point 4 **Conduct an Activity Where Cadets, in Pairs, Will Search the Local Area for Animal and Insect Food Sources by Identifying Two Signs of Recent Activity That Will Lead Them to Food**

Time: 20 min Method: Practical Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets identify animals and insect food sources by finding signs of recent activity in the field.

RESOURCES

Animal and insect handout.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into pairs.
2. Distribute the handout located at Annex F.
3. Have the cadets search the training area and identify animals and/or insect food sources by finding signs of recent activity in the field.
4. Have the cadets describe the signs of recent activity, to include:
   a. type of animal and or insect; and
   b. estimated size of the animal or insect.

SAFETY

- Set boundaries around the areas of use.
- Additional staff can be used to help supervise during this task.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 4

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. If a person was to consume 1 g of carbohydrates, how many calories would this produce?

Q2. What is the danger of consuming only one type of food when in a survival situation?

Q3. Where would you most likely find a beaver?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. 1 g of carbohydrates produces four calories.

A2. Consuming only one type of food may limit the necessary nutrients the body needs to survive.

A3. Beavers can be found using regular runs along streams, lakes, or bogs/marshes and residing in their den known as a beaver house.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

A person who becomes lost in the field will find themselves in a scary and dangerous situation if they are unaware of how to deal with the situation. Cadets have been provided with knowledge of where and how to locate edible animal and insect food sources that will provide the necessary nutrients to survive.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

C0-111 (ISBN 0-9740820-2-3) Tawrell, P. (2006). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book* (2nd ed.). Lebanon, NH: Paul Tawrell.

C2-008 (ISBN 0-00-653140-7) Wiseman, J. (1999). *The SAS Survival Handbook*. Hammersmith, London: HarperCollins Publishers.

C2-148 (ISBN 978-0-8117-3292-5) Davenport, G. (2006). *Wilderness Survival*. Mechanicsburg, PA: Stackpole Books.

C2-155 (ISBN 978-1-58574-556-2) The Lyons Press. (2002). *U.S. Army Survival Handbook*. Guilford, CT: The Lyons Press.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 7

EO C324.02 – CONSTRUCT SNARES

Total Time: 120 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Prepare 60 cm (2 feet) lengths of non-ferrous wire for each cadet.

Prepare examples of the different snares and traps for demonstrations on how they work.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 to introduce constructing snares.

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TPs 2–4 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate constructing snares while providing an opportunity for the cadet to practice these skills under supervision.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have constructed snares.

IMPORTANCE

Non-ferrous wire is a common component in a survival kit. It is used in the construction of snares in a survival situation. It is important for cadets to know how to construct snares because in a survival situation, snares will trap game and provide nourishment.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss Types of Snares**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

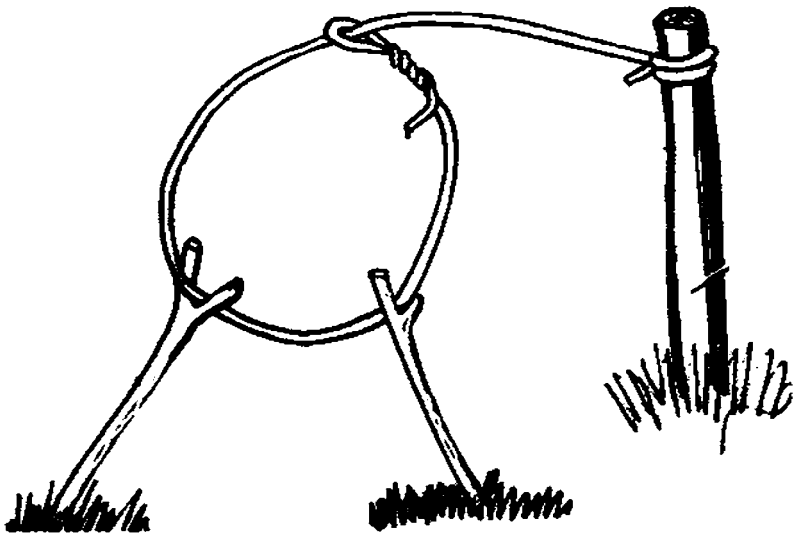
Discuss the different types of snares that can be made to catch wild game.

Snares are the simplest traps and snare wire should be part of any survival kit. Snares are made from non-ferrous wire (wire that is not iron or steel) with a running eye at one end through which the other end of the wire passes before being firmly anchored to a stake, rock or tree. A snare is a free running noose which can catch small game around the throat and larger game around the leg.

TYPES OF SNARES

Simple Snare

A simple snare may be made of non-ferrous wire, string, plant cordage, roots, horse hair, rawhide, dried animal entrails, etc. The best material for constructing a simple snare is non-ferrous wire because it keeps its round shape and is easily twisted to make a loop through which the moving part of the wire will slide.

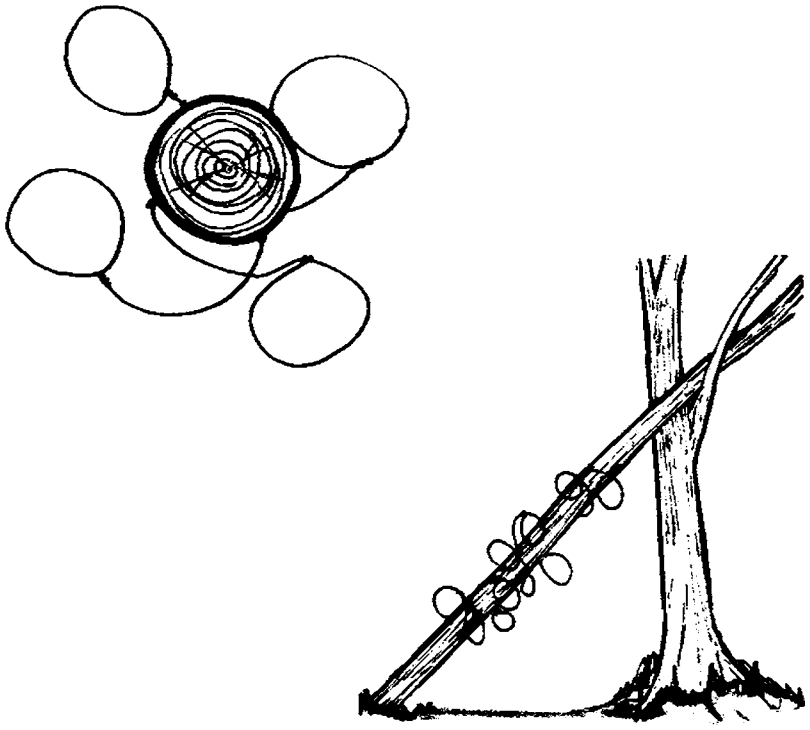


P. Tawrell, Camping & Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book, Paul Tawrell (p. 160)

Figure 14-7-1 Simple Snare

Squirrel Trap

A squirrel trap is made with several small nooses on an inclined log. The squirrel will pass its head through the noose and fall off the log causing the snare to tighten. The dangling squirrel will not deter other squirrels from being caught.

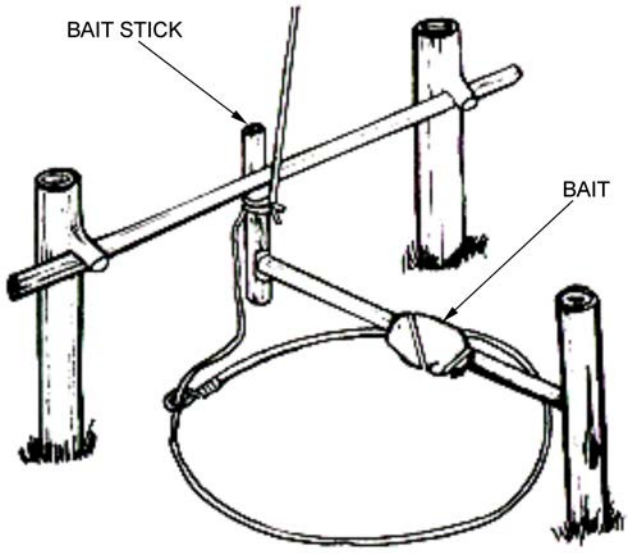


P. Tawrell, Camping & Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book, Paul Tawrell (p. 160)

Figure 14-7-2 Squirrel Snare

Baited Spring Snare

A baited spring snare tempts game with food. Once caught, the snare will lift game off the ground. The noose is laid on the ground and the bait strung above. As game takes the bait, the trigger is released. The baited spring snare is suited for medium-sized animals, such as foxes. This trap can be located in an open area as the bait will attract animals. A small clearing in the woods is a good site for the baited spring snare.



P. Tawrell, Camping & Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book, Paul Tawrell (p. 160)

Figure 14-7-3 Baited Spring Snare

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. Name the three types of snares.

Q2. Which snare is made with several small nooses on an inclined log?

Q3. Which snare has a noose laid on the ground?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The three types of snares are a simple snare, a squirrel trap and a baited spring snare.

A2. A squirrel trap is made with several small nooses on an inclined log.

A3. The baited spring snare has a noose laid on the ground.

Teaching Point 2 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Construct a Simple Snare**

Time: 35 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

For this TP, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate constructing a simple snare while cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step required to construct a simple snare. Monitor cadets as they imitate each step.

Note: Assistant instructors may be employed to monitor the cadets' performance.

SIMPLE SNARE

Constructing A Simple Snare

Instructions for constructing a simple snare:

1. **Select the Site.** Find the game trails or runs, which lead from the animal's home to where it feeds or waters. Look for natural bottlenecks along the route where it will have to pass through (deadwood fall or a place where the track goes under an obstruction). Guidelines to set a snare include:
   - **Avoid Disturbing the Environment**. Do not walk on the game trail. Do all preparation off the trail and do not leave any sign that you have been there.
   - **Hide Scent.** When constructing or handling traps do not leave a scent on them. Handle as little as possible and wear gloves. Make a trap of the same type of wood that is in the surrounding environment. Each tree gives off its own smell. Animals have an acute sense of smell and may be wary of a different scent. Exposing a snare to smoke can mask any human scent.
   - **Camouflage.** Hide freshly cut ends of wood with mud. Cover any snare on the ground to blend it as naturally as possible with its surroundings.
2. **Make the Snare From Wire.** Use non-ferrous wire, to make a loop, fist-width wide, and twist the end of the loop to ensure its stability while allowing the moving part to slide easily.

3. **Set the Snare.** Keep in mind the type of animal that is being trapped and set the snare above the ground, next to an obstruction on the trail (for a rabbit use four fingers above the ground and one hand width from the obstruction).

4. **Anchor Securely.** Check that the snare is anchored securely, with twigs to support the loop, if necessary. A snared animal is fighting for its life. It will exert a lot of energy in an attempt to escape. Any weakness in the trap will be exposed.

5. **Make a Funnel.** The animal run can be directed to the trap increasing the likelihood of a successful capture. To make a funnel place twigs and boughs and other obstructions that will guide animals into the snare.

ACTIVITY

Time: 25 min

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets construct a simple snare.

RESOURCES

- Non-ferrous wire, and
- Knife.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into pairs.
2. Provide each pair with non-ferrous snare wire and a knife.
3. Have the cadets construct a simple snare as demonstrated at the beginning of the lesson. Snares shall be constructed to simulate trapping rabbits.
4. Have the cadets tour each site. Debrief the cadets on each snare identifying strengths and weaknesses.
5. Have the cadets disassemble the snares and return materials.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 3 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadets Practice Constructing a Squirrel Trap**

Time: 35 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

For this TP, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

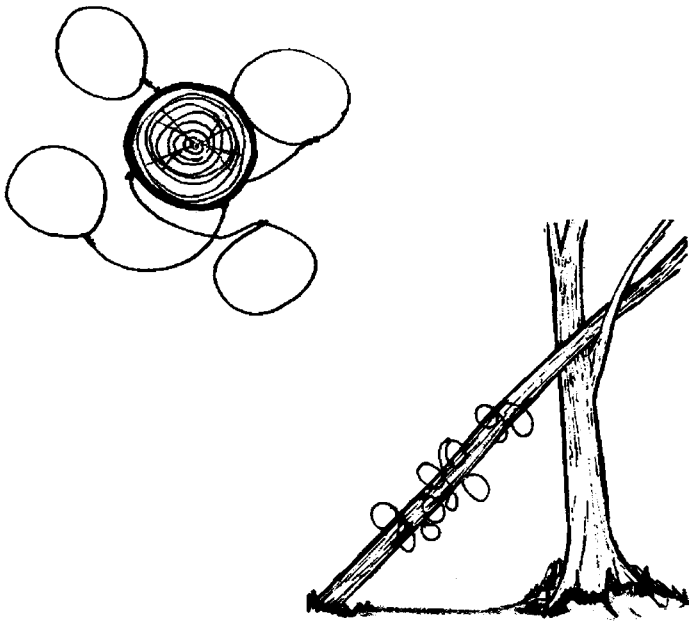
1. Explain and demonstrate constructing a squirrel trap while cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step required to construct a squirrel trap. Monitor cadets as they imitate each step.
3. Monitor the cadets' performance as they practice the complete skill.

Note: Assistant instructors may be employed to monitor the cadets' performance.

SQUIRREL TRAP

Instructions for constructing a squirrel trap:

1. **Select the Site.** Find the game trails or runs, which lead from the animals' home to where it feeds or waters. When setting the squirrel trap identify the squirrel's run by locating a worn down route or tracks. Look for natural bottlenecks along the route where the squirrel will have to pass through or over and set the trap in combination with the following guidelines:
   - **Avoid Disturbing the Environment.** Do not walk on the game trail. Do all preparation off the trail and do not leave any sign that you have been there.
   - **Hide Scent.** When constructing or handling traps do not leave your scent on them. Handle as little as possible and wear gloves. Make a trap of the same type of wood that is in the surrounding environment. Each tree gives off its own smell. Animals have an acute sense of smell and may be wary of a different scent. Exposing a snare to smoke can mask any human scent.
   - **Camouflage the Trap.** Hide freshly cut ends of wood with mud. Cover any snare on the ground to blend it as naturally as possible with its surroundings.
2. **Make Several Small Nooses.** Use non-ferrous wire to make a loop, fist-width wide, and twist the end of the loop to ensure its stability while allowing the moving part to slide easily. Make several nooses as illustrated in Figure 14-7-4.



P. Tawrell, Camping & Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book, Paul Tawrell (p. 160)

Figure 14-7-4 Squirrel Trap

3. **Arrange Nooses on an Inclined Trunk.** Arrange several small nooses on an inclined trunk. The squirrel will pass its head through the noose and fall off the log. The dangling squirrel will not deter other squirrels from being caught.

ACTIVITY

Time: 25 min

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets construct a squirrel trap.

RESOURCES

- Non-ferrous wire, and
- Knife.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into pairs.
2. Provide each pair with non-ferrous snare wire and a knife.
3. Have the cadets construct a squirrel trap as demonstrated at the beginning of the lesson.
4. Have the cadets tour each site. Debrief the cadets on each snare identifying strengths and weaknesses.
5. Have the cadets dissemble the snares and return materials.

During the debriefing ask cadets how many of them made the traps with their bare hands. Remind cadets how scent can deter animals, and how important it is to try and conceal their scent while setting traps.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 4 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadets Practice Constructing a Baited Spring Snare**

Time: 35 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

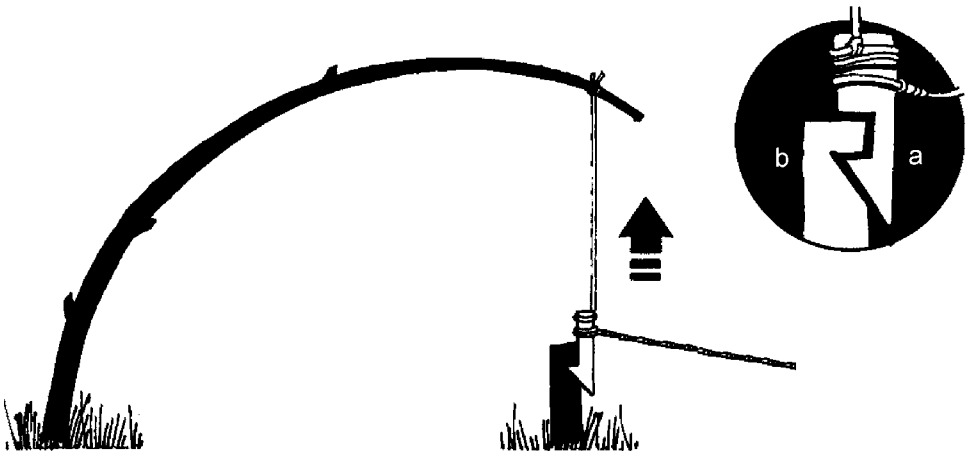
For this TP, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate constructing a baited spring snare while cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step required to construct a baited spring snare. Monitor cadets as they imitate each step.
3. Monitor the cadets' performance as they practice the complete skill.

Note: Assistant instructors may be employed to monitor the cadets' performance.

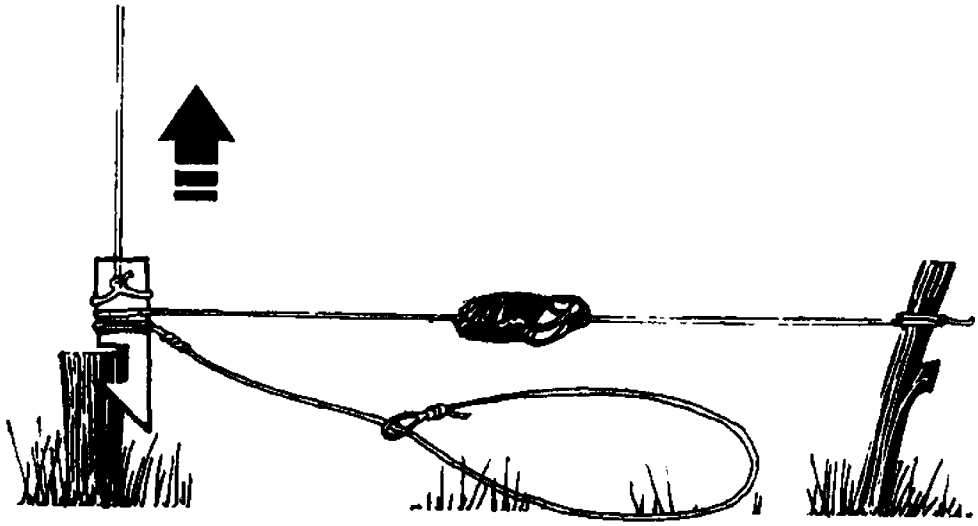
BAITED SPRING SNARE

A baited spring snare is situated in the open and lures animals to it with food. The bait is laid on the ground or strung above. As the game takes the bait, the trigger is released. When game is caught the trigger bar disengages and the game is lifted off the ground. This snare is good for animals such as rabbits and foxes, as it will trap game coming in both directions and is situated in an open area, as the bait will attract attention.



J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 188)

Figure 14-7-5 Squirrel Snare



J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 188)

Figure 14-7-6 Baited Spring Snare

Instructions for constructing a baited spring snare:

1. **Locate a Spring.** Find the game trail or run close to an open area close to a possible spring snare. The spring should be a small tree, two to five years old, that is flexible and can hold the weight of a small animal. The guidelines when constructing a baited spring snare are:

    - **Avoid Disturbing the Environment.** Do not walk on the game trail. Do all your preparation off the trail and do not leave any sign that you have been there.

    - **Hide Scent.** When constructing or handling traps do not leave a scent on them. Handle as little as possible and wear gloves. Make a trap of the same type of wood that is in the surrounding environment. Each tree gives off its own smell. Animals have an acute sense of smell and may be wary of a different scent. Exposing a snare to smoke can mask any human scent.

    - **Camouflage.** Hide freshly cut ends of wood with mud. Cover any snare on the ground to blend it as naturally as possible with its surroundings.

2. **Make a Trigger Bar.** A trigger bar is the string that stretches across and above the trap (this can be a stick as well). It is created by stretching a string from a stake to the release mechanism. Bait is placed or attached to the string and when moved will release the spring mechanism, catching the animal.

3. **Cut Release Notches.** The release notches are cut to resemble a sharp end with a notch located a few centimetres down from the tip. The notch locks the two bars together until the bar is moved as illustrated in Figure 14-7-5.

4. **Bait the Line.** Determine the animal to be caught and bait it accordingly. The bait should be wrapped tightly to the trigger bar or string, forcing the animal to bite the bait roughly. The movement will release the spring.

5. **Set the Noose.** Once all parts have been constructed set a snare on the ground under the bait and:

   a. Attach the snare to the release notch system (Part A as seen in Figure 14-7-5).

   b. Attach baited string to release (Notch A as seen in Figure 14-7-5).

   c. Drive a stake into the ground with Notch B. The stake must be able to handle the pulling of the spring. Drive the stake in on an angle to add strength to the stake.

   d. Set spring by attaching a string to the tip of the spring. The string should reach release Notch A however the spring must have a bend (bow) in it. When tripped it will release with force pulling the snare, trapping the animal and lifting the animal into the air.

   e. Pull the spring to the ground.

   f. Set release notches together and slowly allow the system to establish tension.

   g. Have the spring and lines hold under the tension of all parts. Any jolt to the system should release the notches and activate the spring, pull the snare and catch the animal.

ACTIVITY

Time: 25 min

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets construct a baited spring snare.

RESOURCES

- String,
- Simulated bait,
- Knife, and
- Non-ferrous snare wire.

Bait can be anything small that attaches to the line. The idea here is to attach something that will simulate the use of bait, luring the game to the trap.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into pairs.
2. Provide each pair with non-ferrous snare wire, string, simulated bait and a knife.
3. In pairs, have the cadets construct a baited spring snare as demonstrated at the beginning of the lesson.
4. Have the cadets tour each site. Debrief the cadets on each snare identifying the strengths and weaknesses.
5. Have the cadets dissemble the snares and return materials to the instructor.

During the debriefing ask cadets how many of them made the traps with their bare hands. Remind cadets of how scent can deter animals, and how important it is to try and conceal their scent while setting traps.

SAFETY

The spring snare can be dangerous when setting. Caution cadets to be careful not to accidentally release the spring on themselves. The spring should not lift cadets off the ground, however. the tree can afflict injury to an eye or other body parts.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 4

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in constructing snares will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

If a cadet is in a survival situation, the cadet may rely on their training to construct snares and traps to catch wild game to provide their nutritional requirements until rescue.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Additional instructors may be required to help with the construction of snares and supervision of cadets during activity sessions.

Instructors are to clearly communicate that the intent of this lesson is to prepare cadets for a survival situation. Cadets should not be encouraged to actually trap game during this lesson.

REFERENCES

C2-004 (ISBN 1-896713-00-9) Tawrell, P. (1996). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*. Green Valley, ON: Paul Tawrell.

C2-008 (ISBN 0-00-653140-7) Wiseman, J. (1999). *The SAS Survival Handbook*. Hammersmith, London: HarperCollins Publishers.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 8

EO C324.03 – CATCH A FISH

Total Time: 90 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Check provincial fishing regulations prior to conducting a fishing activity; a provincial permit must be purchased if required.

Prepare examples of each fishing instrument in TP 2 to aid in the explanations and demonstrations.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 1 and 2 to introduce and orient the cadet to catching a fish.

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TP 3 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate constructing fishing instruments while providing an opportunity for the cadet to practice under supervision.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 4 as it is an interactive way to allow the cadets to practice fishing with constructed fishing instruments. This activity contributes to the development of their outdoor survival skills in a fun and challenging setting.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have attempted to catch a fish.

IMPORTANCE

Fishing equipment is a common component in a survival kit. This equipment is used to catch fish in a survival situation. It is important for cadets to learn how to catch fish because fish are a valuable food source, containing

protein, vitamins and fats. Knowing when, where and how to catch fish will be a key survival skill in the event a cadet becomes lost.

Teaching Point 1 **Explain Fishing**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Some cadets may have experience fishing, allow them to provide their personal experiences.

WHERE TO FISH

Fish constantly swim in bodies of water and can be found in locations where there is a food source. The location is affected by temperature and time of day.

Hot Weather. If it is a hot day and the water is low, fish will usually be found in deeper water where there is shade and it is cooler.

Cold Weather. In cold weather, fish choose a shallow area where the sun has warmed the water. Lake fish tend to keep to the edges, which are warmer.

Rivers. Fish are found in areas where a tributary feeds the mainstream with less flow, under shelter of banks, below rocks and under submerged logs. If a river is flooding, fish will stay where the water is not rushing – on the outside of a bend.

WHEN TO FISH

In the summer it is more likely to catch fish in the morning between first light and 1030 hours. They tend to hit better if the water is dead calm and the skies are clear.

Hit. Fish bite the bait or strike the bait.

In early spring, fish tend to feed during different hours of the day. As a general rule, leave lines out overnight and check them just before first light, some fish will feed at night during a full moon. If a storm is imminent, fish before it breaks. Fishing is poor in a river after heavy rain.

Signs that fish are feeding, and therefore likely to take the bait, are when they jump out of the water, or there are frequent clear ring ripples breaking out where fish are taking flies off the surface. Lots of little fish darting about may mean larger fish are pursuing.

Arctic Alaska's Kiana Lodge. Retrieved April 11, 2008, from http://www.alaskasheefishing.com/alaska_fishing.htm

Figure 14-8-1 Fish Jumping

Ingram Publishing, by Ingram Publishing. Retrieved April 11, 2008, from http://www.jupiterimages.com/popup2.aspx?navigationSubType=itemdetails&itemID=22741844

Figure 14-8-2 Ripples on a Lake

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. If it is a hot day where would a person usually find fish?

Q2. In cold weather where can fish be found in a lake?

Q3. In the summer when would be the best time to go fishing?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. If it is a hot day, fish will usually be found in deeper areas where the water is cooler.

A2. Lake fish tend to keep to the edges which are warmer.

A3. In the summer it is more likely to catch fish in the morning between first light and 1030 hours.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss Fishing**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Discuss with cadets the materials that are required to go fishing and the different types of bait that can be used.

Some cadets may be experienced anglers, have them discuss their experiences and knowledge to encourage class participation during instruction.

FISHING TACKLE

Fishing tackle is a general term that refers to the equipment used to fish with. The following are some types of tackle required to fish when in a survival situation:

Hook. Used to catch a fish, it is often found tied to the end of a fishing line. The hook is swallowed by a fish and impales the body allowing the angler to retrieve the fish.

Some commonly used hooks are skewers and shank hooks (made from bone, wood, or plastic) and safety pin hooks. Large hooks will catch large fish like salmon and pike. Small hooks will catch a range of sizes, but will also be able to catch small fish like perch, bass and trout.

Welcome to Fishing Reports, Copyright 1996–2006 by Fish Reports.net. Retrieved April 11, 2008, from http://www.fishreports.net/fishing-gear/images/fishing-hook.jpg

Figure 14-8-3 Fishing Hook

Cast. To throw out a fishing line into the water.

Line. A line is used to cast the hook into the water. When the fish is caught on the hook, the line allows the fisherman to retrieve the fish by pulling in the line. Lines can be made by twisting bark or cloth fibres together.

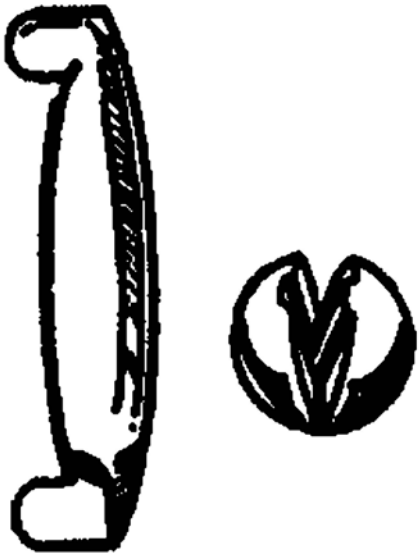
Although a line can be attached to a single pole it is more efficient to set multiple lines tied to the end of one or several long, straight branches. By sticking these poles into the ground, one can catch fish while attending to other chores.

Float. A float is a object that attaches to the fishing line and floats restricting the hook from resting on the bottom of the lake (eg, Styrofoam, plastic bottle, bobber, wood etc). The float should be easily seen from shore and identifies when a fish has taken the bait by bobbing in the water or moving about.

The float should be attached to the line where it will allow the bait to be suspended approximately 30 cm (12 inches) off of the bottom of the lake. The float's position will help control casting and where the line descends.

Weight. A weight is used to sink the hook. In a river, the current can cause the hook to float. By adding weights, the hook can trail in a deeper position. Weights can be made from anything heavy in comparison to the line and hook (pebbles, lead, wire, flat washer, nut or bolt).

Small weights between the float and the hook will stop the line from following a current while trailing. To obtain a deeper hook position, extend the line below the hook and attach weights to the end of the line.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book, Paul Tawrell (p. 16)

Figure 14-8-4 Weights

BAIT

Bait is what is used to lure fish to a hook. The bait increases the chances of catching a fish. Bait may be berries that hang over the water or insects that breed in and near the water. Scavenger fish will take pieces of meat, raw fish, ants and other insects. Using bait native to the fishes' water is most likely to be successful. If one type of bait is unsuccessful, change to another.

Once you have a catch, examine the stomach contents of the fish and eliminate the guess work as to diet.

Live. Worms, maggots, insects and small fish can be used as live bait. Cover the hook completely with the bait. You can place the hook through the meat part of a small fish without killing them, or through the body of a grasshopper. Their distressed movement in the water will attract the fish. Small fish are easy to catch, and can be used as bait to catch bigger fish.

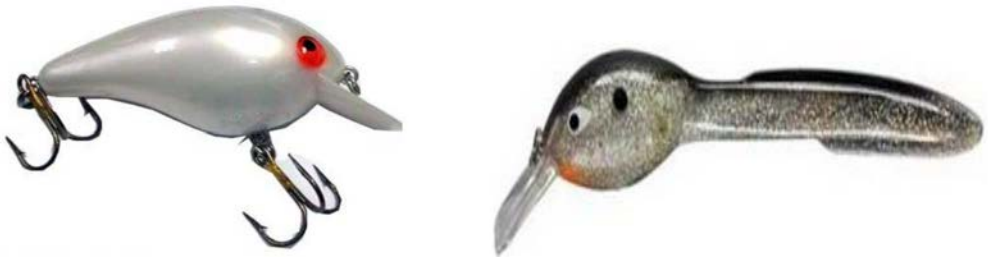
Discover Entomology, by C.D. Patrick, Grasshoppers and Their Control, Copyright 2008 by Texas A&M University Department of Entomology. Retrieved March 5, 2008, from http://insects.tamu.edu/extension/bulletins/l-5201.html

Figure 14-8-5 Grasshopper

Cheshire Wildlife Trust, Find Out About Earth Worms, Copyright 2004 by Cheshire Wildlife Trust. Retrieved March 5, 2008, from http://www.wildlifetrust.org.uk/cheshire/watch_earthworms.htm

Figure 14-8-6 Earth Worm

Lures. A lure is an object attached to the end of the fishing line and designed to resemble and move like prey. The purpose of the lure is to use movement, vibrations, and colour to catch the fish's attention and make them bite the hook. Lures are equipped with one or more single, double, or triple hooks that are used to hook fish when they attack the lure. Fishing with a hook and line is the common way of fishing. Hooks and lines are part of most survival kits. Hooks may also be constructed from wire, pins, bones, wood and even thorns.



Canadian Tire, Copyright 1997–2008 by Canadian Tire Corporation, Limited. Retrieved April 15, 2008, from http://www.canadiantire.ca/home.jsp

Figure 14-8-7 Fishing Lures

Berries. Wild berries that grow around the water's edge may be bait. When the wind blows over hanging trees drop berries into the water and fish will eat them. Baiting the line with the berries may increase the chances of catching a fish.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What materials can hooks be made from?

Q2. What are the types of fishing tackle?

Q3. What are the types of bait available?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Hooks can be made from bone, wood, or plastic. (Answers may vary, keep an open mind of the possible solutions when accepting answers to this question.)

A2. The types of fishing tackle include hooks, line, floats and weights.

A3. The types of bait are live, lures and berries.

Teaching Point 3 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadets Practice Constructing Fishing Instruments**

Time: 35 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

For this TP, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate the complete skill while cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step required to complete the skill.
3. Have the cadets practice the skill.

Note: Assistant instructors may be employed to monitor the cadets' performance.

Show the cadets how to exactly make and set up each instrument. Be thorough in the examples and demonstrations given. The cadets may experience difficulty making the automatic fishing rod.

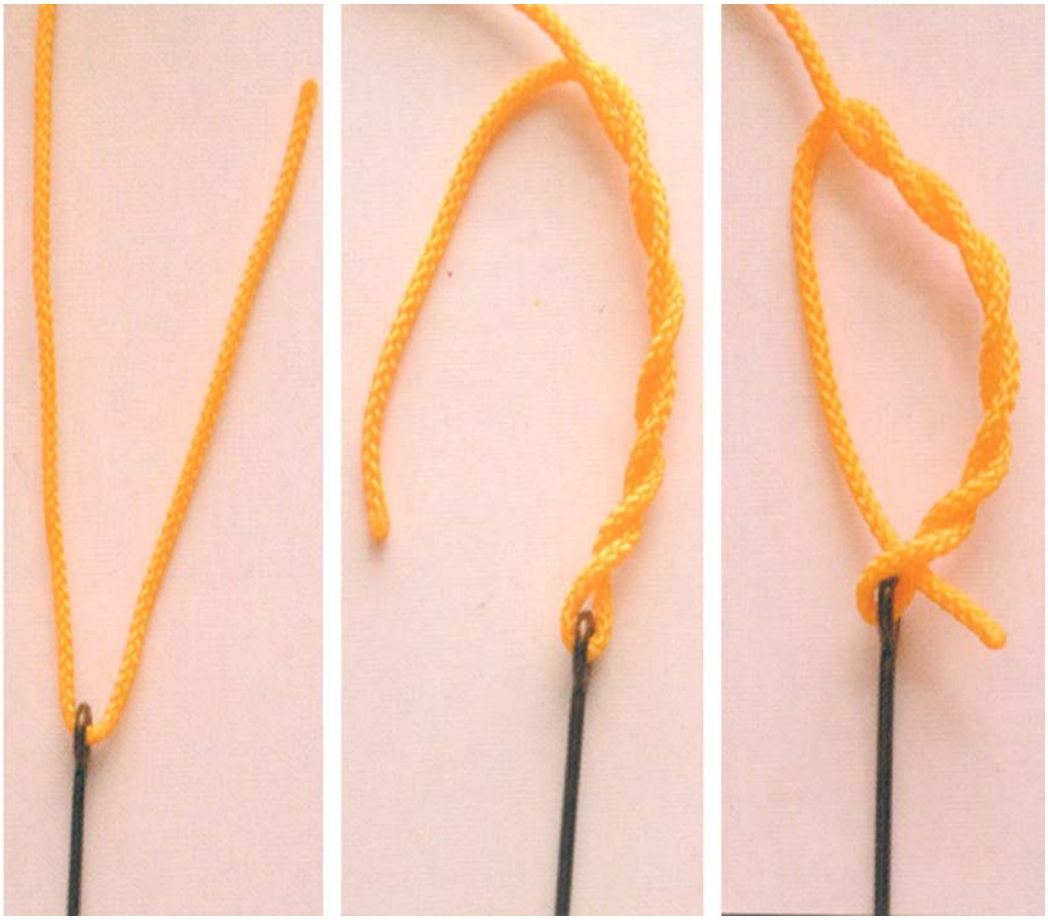
HOOK AND LINE

A person does not require a rod to fish. Using just a hook and line is effective and usually in a survival kit. Initially, people may find that fishing with a hook and line is the most effective for a given water source. This technique is familiar to most people, takes little time and skill. The only disadvantage is that it often requires a sizable length of line or cordage and proper bait. Hooks for this instrument may be made of bone, wood, plastic or any other suitable materials.

Standard Hook. This hook is manufactured and fashioned in a factory made of metal and has an eye loop on one end with a sharp barb on the other end as seen in Figure 14-8-9. Tie the fishing line to the hook securely using an improved clinch knot (as illustrated in Figures 14-8-8 and 14-8-9.)

To make a clinch knot complete the following steps:

1. Put the end of the line through the eye of the hook.
2. Twist the short end a round the main part of the line three or four times.
3. Tuck the end of the line back through the start of the twist.
4. Pull tight (practice line may need a little coaxing and nylon a little lubrication).



D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots and Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p.158–159)

Figure 14-8-8 Clinch Knot Steps 1, 2 and 3

D. Pawson, Pocket Guide to Knots and Splices, Chartwell Books, Inc. (p.159)

Figure 14-8-9 Clinch Knot Steps 4 and Finished Knot

Skewer Hook. A skewer hook is a sliver of wood or plastic that is notched and tied at the middle. When baited, this hook is turned parallel to the line making it easier for the fish to swallow. Once the fish takes the bait, a simple tug on the line will turn the skewer sideways, lodging it in the fish's mouth.

Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

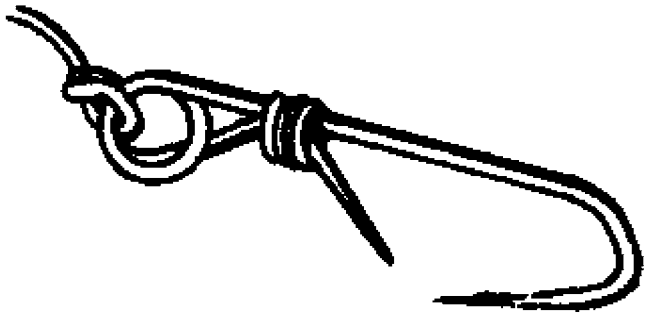
Figure 14-8-10 Skewer Hook

Shank Hook. A shank hook is made by carving a piece of wood or plastic until it takes on the shape of a hook that is notched and tied to the line at the top (Figure 14-8-11 depicts a piece of wood that has been carved down to a hook). When the fish swallows the hook, a tug on the line will set it by causing the hook end to lodge in the fish's throat.

G. Davenport, Wilderness Survival, Stackpole Books (p. 167)

Figure 14-8-11 Shank Hook

Safety Pin Hook. A safety pin can be manipulated to create a hook. Depending on the size of the safety pin, this system can catch fish of various sizes and is a good option.



J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Pblishers (p. 225)

Figure 14-8-12 Safety Pin Hook

AUTOMATIC FISHING ROD

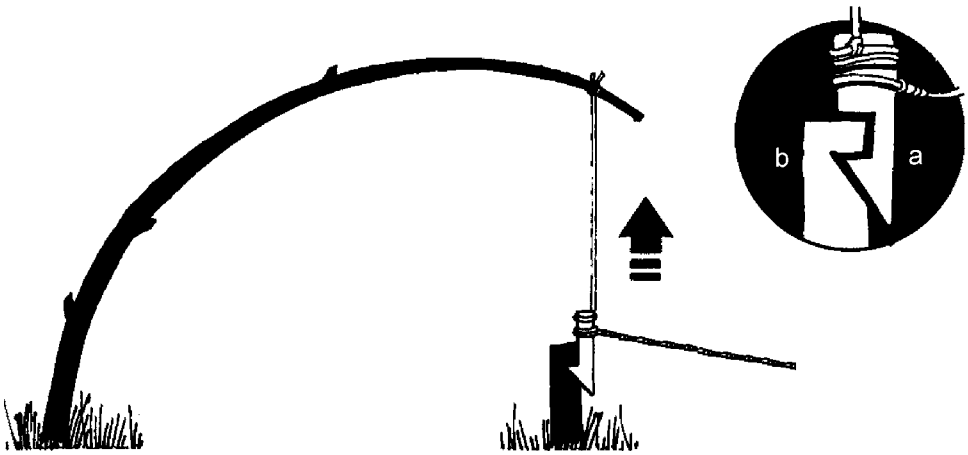
The automatic fishing rod works similarly to the baited spring snare in EO C324.02 (Construct Snares, Section 7). To construct an automatic fishing rod:

1. **Tying Several Hooks Onto a Line.** Make a hook and line. The line should have many hooks attached to it increasing the chances of a catch.
2. **Locating a Fishing Rod.** The automatic fishing rod requires a flexible tree, bush or branch close to the water's edge that is capable of, when released, pulling on the line hooking the fish.
3. **Setting the Fishing Rod With a Trigger.** The fishing rod will have to be set up to release when a fish eats the bait and attempts to swim away. The movement on the line should activate the spring and hook the fish.

Follow these steps to create a fishing rod with a trigger:

1. Find a small tree or flexible bush or branches close the water's edge that is suitable to lift a fish into the air.
2. Attach a string to the top of the tree or flexible bush or branches that will be used as the spring.
3. Construct a trigger release by:
    a. finding a stake you can drive into the ground that will be able to support the weight of the spring;
    b. making a notch in the stake (as illustrated in Figure 14-8-13); and
    c. finding a similar size piece of wood that will link to the stake as the trigger release, cut a release notch in it (as illustrated in Figure 14-8-13).

4. Make a hook and line. The line should have many hooks attached to it increasing the chances of a catch.
5. Bait the hooks.
6. Attach the hook and line to trigger release A.
7. Cast the hook and line into the water and then tie the string from the tree to trigger release A.
8. Set trigger release A into B and gradually release the tree allowing tension to arm the automatic fishing rod.
9. Wait for a fish to activate the release mechanism.

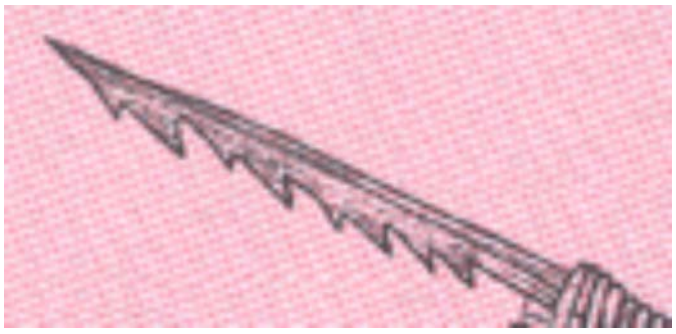


J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins publishers (p. 188)

Figure 14-8-13 Automatic Fishing Rod

SPEAR

The spear is the simplest of all fishing instruments to construct, however, the hardest to be successful with. It is a straight green stick or sapling with a sharpened point and barbs (as illustrated in Figure 14-8-14). Spearing a fish is difficult except when the stream is small or the body of water is shallow and the fish are large and numerous as during spawning season or when the fish congregate in pools. Shallow water makes it easier to see fish and spear them.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book, Paul Tawrell (p. 169)

Figure 14-8-14 Barbed Spear

Follow these steps to make a spear:

1. **Sharpening a Long Stick.**

   a. Find or cut a long, straight sapling or stick.

   b. Sharpen the end to a point using a knife or the friction of a rock.

   c. It is also possible to use the 'Y' of a hardwood branch. Cut the branch, sharpen the end and tie to the spear.

Some sticks may still be green and fragile. To make a spear more durable, harden the wood by holding the tip of the spear over an open flame to dry the wood. It is dry once the ends turn brown.

2. **Adding Barbs.** Barbs will stop the fish from sliding off the spear when impaled. To add barbs, on the sharp side cut angled notches into it. The notches will have to be cut in the direction of the sharp point (as illustrated in Figure 14-8-13).

3. **Aiming.** To aim a spear consider the following:

   - Aiming can be tricky as water diffracts light (similar to what a magnifying glass does to the view you see that is distorted) and the fish will not be where it looks like it is. The fish will actually be closer than it appears, so the person will have to aim low.
   - To learn how to judge the fish's position, point the spear at a rock under water and push toward it without throwing the spear into the water.
   - The chances of hitting the rock on the first attempt will be slim but the person will learn the angle which is required to spear the rock.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. What kind of hooks can you use for a hook and line fishing instrument?

Q2. How does an automatic fishing rod work?

Q3. How can you make a spear more durable?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The hooks that can be used on a hook and line fishing instrument are a standard, skewer, shank and a safety pin hook.

A2. An automatic fishing rod works similarly to the baited spring snare.

A3. To make a spear more durable harden the wood by holding the tip of the spear over an open flame to dry the wood. It is dry once the ends turn brown.

Teaching Point 4 **Have the Cadets Attempt to Catch a Fish Using One Type of Fishing Instrument**

Time: 35 min Method: Practical Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have cadets attempt to catch a fish using one type of fishing instrument.

RESOURCES

- Fishing line,
- Hooks,
- Safety pin, and
- Knife.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Have the cadets select one of the following fishing instruments:
   a. hook and line,
   b. automatic fishing rod, or
   c. a spear.

Cadets who choose to make an automatic fishing rod will be in a group of three to speed construction and save resources.

2. Have the cadets construct a fishing instrument and attempt to catch a fish.
3. Have the cadets who are successful at catching a fish, construct another instrument and attempt to catch another fish.
4. Have the cadets disassemble their fishing instrument.
5. Complete a group discussion about the cadets' experience and what they learned about using constructed fishing instruments.

Cadets are not required to keep the fish they catch. If a fish sustains only minor injuries during the catching process, release the fish back into the water. Catch and release practices will be encouraged.

SAFETY

Cadets will be close to a body of water. Additional supervision is required to monitor the cadets.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 4

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in fishing with constructed fishing instruments will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

By learning when, where and how to catch fish cadets can rely on fishing as a means of providing a valuable food source. Fish contain protein, vitamins and fats, the key ingredients for nourishment. This food source will prolong survival while waiting to be rescued.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Cadets are not required to keep the fish they catch. If a fish sustains only minor injuries during the catching process, release the fish back into the water. Catch and release practices will be encouraged.

REFERENCES

C2-008 (ISBN 0-00-653140-7) Wiseman, J. (1999). *The SAS Survival Handbook*. Hammersmith, London: HarperCollins Publishers.

C2-148 (ISBN 978-0-8117-3292-5) Davenport, G. (2006). *Wilderness Survival*. Mechanicsburg, PA: Stackpole Books.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 9

EO C324.04 – COLLECT EDIBLE PLANTS

Total Time: 120 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Instructors are recommended to research local flora and provide examples where necessary throughout the lesson.

Conduct a reconnaissance of the surrounding area and collect examples for this lesson.

Locate edible plants in the surrounding area to use as examples for TP 2.

Photocopy Annexes H and I for each cadet.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 1 and 3 to orient cadets to poisonous plants and illustrate the application of rules when identifying poisonous plants.

Demonstration was chosen for TPs 2 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate ways to determine if plants are edible.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 4 as it is an interactive way to allow the cadets to demonstrate identifying edible plants in a safe, controlled environment. This activity contributes to the development of their outdoor survival skills in a fun and challenging setting.

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TP 5 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate how to conduct the universal edibility test while providing an opportunity for the cadets to practice this skill under supervision.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to collect edible plants.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for the cadets to know how to identify and collect edible plants. In a survival situation, plants are an excellent source of nutrition that can be beneficial to nutritional requirements.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss Ways to Determine if Plants are Edible**

Time: 25 min Method: Interactive Lecture

In a survival situation, a person should always be on the lookout for familiar wild foods. Even in the most static survival situation, maintaining health through a complete and nutritious diet is essential to maintaining strength and peace of mind.

Nature can provide food that will enable a cadet to survive any ordeal. Cadets should therefore learn as much as possible about the flora of the region where they will be training.

The critical factor in using plants for food is to avoid accidental poisoning. Eat only those plants that can be positively identified and are known to be safe to eat.

THE BERRY RULE

In general, the edibility of berries can be classified according to their colour and composition. The berry rule is a general guide to determine whether the edibility test needs to be performed. The only berries that should be eaten without testing are those that can be positively identified as non-poisonous.

The following is the berry rule:

- Green, yellow and white berries are 10 percent edible.
- Red berries are 50 percent edible.
- Purple, blue and black berries are 90 percent edible.
- Aggregate berries (berries that are a collection of units formed into one body) such as thimbleberries, raspberries and blackberries are considered 99 percent edible.

EDIBLE PARTS OF A PLANT

Some plants are completely edible, whereas others have both edible and poisonous parts. Plants can be broken down into several distinct components.

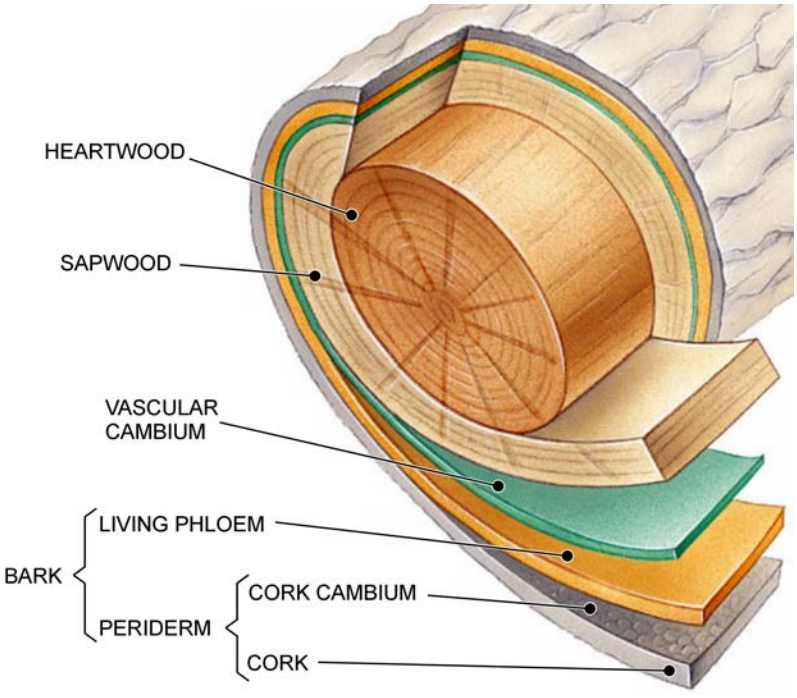
Stems, Roots and Leaves

Plants that have stems, roots and leaves are probably the most abundant source of edible vegetation in the world. Their high vitamin content makes them a valuable component of our daily diet. Shoots grow like asparagus and are best when boiled twice (boiled five minutes, drained off and boiled again until done). Some examples of these plants are bracken fern, young bamboo and cattail (as per Figure 14-9-1).

Leaves may be eaten raw or cooked but to achieve the highest nutritional value, they are best eaten raw. The pith, found inside the stem of some plants, has a very high food value. Some examples are sago, rattan, coconut and sugar. Cambium is the inner bark found between the bark and the wood of a tree (as per Figure 14-9-2). It can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried and then pulverized into flour.

"Cattails", Aquasprings, 2007, Retrieved November 15, 2007, from http://www.aquaspringsinfo.com/cattails.jpg

Figure 14-9-1 Cattail



UIC, Plant Structures and Function: UIC. Retrieved November 15, 2007, from http://uic.edu/classes/bios/bios100/lectf03am/treetrunk.jpg

Figure 14-9-2 Cambium

Flowers, Buds and Pollen

Flowers, buds and pollens are high in food value and are often eaten raw or in a salad. Some examples include hibiscus (flower), rosehips (buds), and cattail (pollen).

About .com, Holistic Healing, Copyright 2007 by About, Inc. Retrieved November 15, 2007, from http://healing.about.com/od/floweressences/ig/Flower-Essence-Gallery/Hibiscus.htm

Figure 14-9-3 Hibiscus

Fruits (Sweet and Non-Sweet)

Fruits are the seed-bearing part of the plant and can be found in all areas of the world. They are best eaten raw to retain all of their nutritional value, but may also be cooked. Examples of sweet fruits are apples, prickly pears, saskatoon berries and wild strawberries. Examples of non-sweet fruits include tomatoes, cucumber, plantains and horseradish.

Nuts

Nuts are high in fat and protein and can be found around the world. Most can be eaten raw but some, like acorns, require leaching (soaking in water), with several changes of water, to remove their tannic acid.

Seeds and Grains

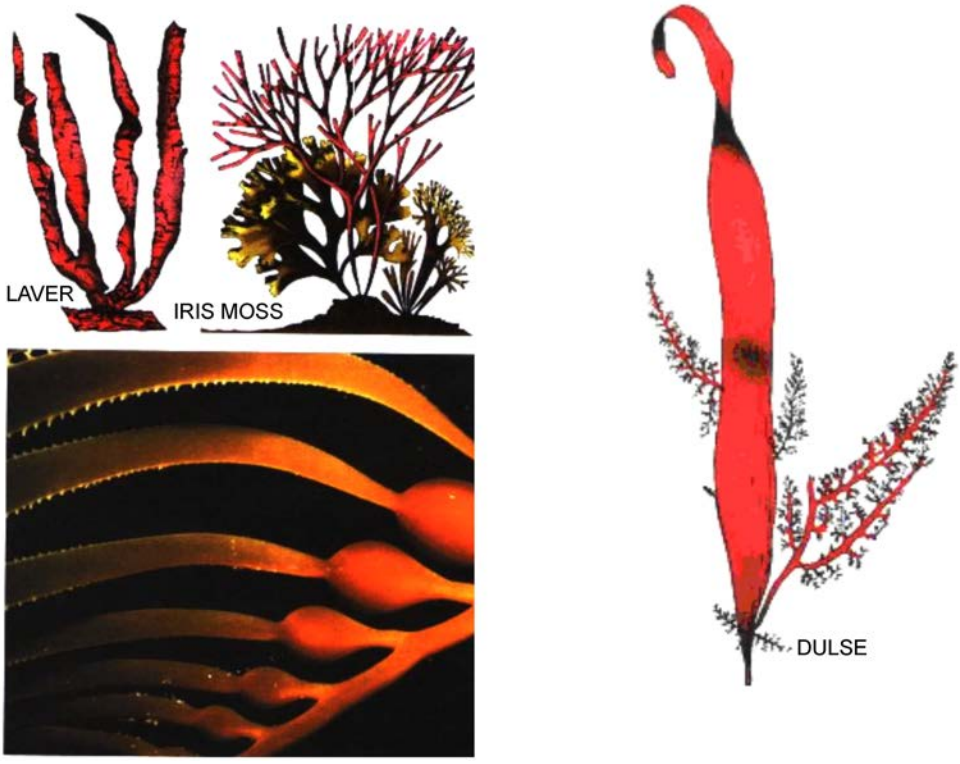
The seeds and grains of many plants are a valuable food resource and should not be overlooked. Some examples are grasses and millet, best eaten when ground into flour or roasted. Purple or black grass seeds should not be eaten; they often contain a fungal contamination.

Seaweed and Algae

One plant that should never be overlooked is seaweed. It is a form of marine algae found on or near shores. There are also some edible freshwater varieties. Seaweed is a valuable source of iodine, other minerals, and vitamin C.

When gathering seaweed for food, find living plants attached to rocks or that are floating free. Seaweed washed ashore for any length of time may be spoiled or decayed. Freshly harvested seaweed can be dried for later use.

Preparation for eating depends on the type of seaweed. Thin and tender varieties can be dried in the sun or over a fire until crisp. Crush and add to soups or broths. Boil thick, leathery seaweeds for a short time to soften them. Eat them as a vegetable or with other foods. Some varieties can be eaten raw after testing for edibility. Some examples are dulse, green seaweed, irish moss, kelp, laver, mojaban, and sugar wrack.



Wilderness Survival, "Plants", Copyright 2007 Jalic Inc. Retrieved November 15, 2007, from http://www.wilderness-survival.net/plants-1.php

Figure 14-9-4 Seaweed

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. Which berries are 99 percent edible?

Q2. Which grass seeds should not be eaten?

Q3. What should you look for when gathering seaweed?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Aggregate berries such as thimbleberries, raspberries and blackberries are 99 percent edible.

A2. Purple or black seeds should not be eaten.

A3. Living plants attached to rocks or that are floating free should be looked for when gathering seaweed.

Teaching Point 2 **Identify Edible Plants**

Time: 15 min Method: Demonstration

Demonstrate to the cadets where these plants are located and what they look like.

When available, fruits and nuts are one of the survivor's most important foods.

FRUITS

Blackberries/Raspberries. These berries grow in scrub, woods and on open ground. They have leaves that are toothed and flowers that are white or sometimes pinkish in blackberries. Look for straggly bushes with arching thorny stems and juicy segmented berries, which ripen from green through red to purplish blackberries in late summer. Raspberries are less straggly, have fewer prickles, and ripen to a rich red earlier in the summer. All are edible raw.

J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 142)

Figure 14-9-5 Blackberry

Wild Strawberries. Wild strawberries grow on small scrambling plants in dry grassy places and woodland areas. The fruits resemble small cultivated strawberries and are sometimes found underneath the leaves. These fruits are rich in vitamin C and are best eaten fresh.

J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 142)

Figure 14-9-6 Wild Strawberries

Crab Apples. Crab apples are short spiny trees found in scrubland and woods. They can be identified by oval, toothed, often downy leaves, usually reddish-brown twigs and white, pink or red flowers. The fruit, often very bitter, looks like cultivated apples. Too many of the yellowish-green, pectin-rich apples will cause diarrhea and are best cooked with other fruits.

J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 143)

Figure 14-9-7 Crab Apples

Plums. Plums exist in many varieties, in scrub and woodland, and in virtually all temperate areas. Small scrubs or tress, similar to wild cherries, are larger fruit, downy, blackish-purple, red or yellow in colour. Some are too tart to eat.

Food Network, Plums, Copyright 2008 by CW Media INC. Retrieved May 2, 2008, from http:// www.foodtv.ca/content/recipes/ContentDetail.aspx?ContentId=2661&Category=Recipes

Figure 14-9-8 Plums

Wild Cherries. This fruit grows in woodland areas, growing to 24 m (80 feet) tall with small, pale green to reddish leaves, usually shiny-reddish brown bark, and white or pinkish flowers. The fruit is red or black in colour and depending on the kind may taste sour.

J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 143)

Figure 14-9-9 Wild Cherries

Blueberries. This berry is abundant on northern moors, bogs, tundra, and sometimes in wooded areas. Bushes vary in size, but all are woody and shrubby with small oval leaves and small globe-shaped flowers varying from white to pink or greenish.

J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 144)

Figure 14-9-10 Blueberry

ROOTS, LEAVES AND STEMS

In spring and summer young shoots are tender and easy to pick. Some can be eaten raw, but many are better cooked. Wash them in clean water, rub off any hairs and boil in a small amount of water so that they cook in the steam. The leaves are very rich in vitamins and minerals. Together with young shoots, they are the survivor's easiest source of food. Most shoots taste better cooked, however avoid overcooking because it destroys the vitamins.

Dandelion. This plant grows in many forms almost everywhere. Look for large yellow to orange flower heads or the rosette of deeply-lobed leaves. Eat the young leaves raw, but boil the older ones, changing the water to remove the bitter taste. Boil the roots or roast for coffee. Dandelion juice is rich in vitamins and minerals.

J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 132)

Figure 14-9-11 Dandelions

Cattail or Reedmace. This plant is found in and around swaps and marshy areas. Peeled roots can be eaten raw or cooked. They are an excellent survival food as they can be extracted from the ground if it is not frozen. Roots can be dried and ground into flour. Heads, when green, can be cooked and eaten as corn.

Aquasprings, 2007, Cattails. Retrieved November 15, 2007, from http://www.aquaspringsinfo.com/cattails.jpg

Figure 14-9-12 Cattail

Reed. This plant is located in fresh water almost everywhere, growing to 4 m (13 feet) high, with greyish-green leaves and spreading, brownish-purple flower heads on tall canes. When cooked, if the cane is punctured it will exude an edible sugar-rich gum.

J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 136)

Figure 14-9-13 Reed

Pine. Found in North America, it has needles that can be chewed. During the spring, the inner bark can be eaten raw or cooked. To cook, cut the bark lengthwise into strips and cook like spaghetti. It can also be dried and ground into flour.

P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 972)

Figure 14-9-14 Pine

Maple. Found in the forests of North America, its seeds can be eaten after removing the shell. Maple can be dried and stored. Young leaves are rich in sugar and can be eaten raw, or cooked after being cut into spaghetti-like strips. To collect maple sap, cut a “V” into the tree and drill a 5 cm (2 inch) deep hole and insert a spout.

P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 972)

Figure 14-9-15 Maple

Sweet Flag. Found in wetlands and lakes, this flower, stem and leaves can be eaten raw in the spring.

P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 975)

Figure 14-9-16 Sweet Flag

Willow. The young leaves of this plant and its inner bark can be eaten raw.

P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 975)

Figure 14-9-17 Willow

NUTS

Pine Nut. This nut comes from the familiar cone-bearing pine tree, seen with clusters of slim evergreen needles found in most temperate and northerly areas. Heat matures the pine cone to release the nuts. They are tasty raw, but delicious roasted. Roasted nuts can be stored.

J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 146)

Figure 14-9-18 Pine Nut

Chestnut. This nut is found on the tree, ranging from 5–30 m (15–90 feet) high, with large, toothed hairless leaves and bearing catkins. Nuts are borne in globe-shaped, thick prickly green husks. Smash open the husks, peel the nuts, boil and mash to eat.

Do not confuse the chestnut with the horse chestnut which has large palmate leaves, like the fingers on a hand. The horse chestnut is poisonous.

J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 146)

Figure 14-9-19 Chestnuts

Hazelnut. This nut is found on tall shrubs of thickets and waste ground. It has toothed–oval–heart– shaped leaves and brownish-yellow catkins. The highly nutritious nuts come in ovoid, leafy, bristly, or hairy husks.

J. Wiseman, The SAS Survival Handbook, HarperCollins Publishers (p. 146)

Figure 14-9-20 Hazelnut

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What fruits are edible?

Q2. What releases nuts (seeds) from a pine cone?

Q3. What do the blackberry bushes look like?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The fruits that are edible are:

- blackberries/raspberries,
- wild strawberries,
- crab apples,
- plums,
- wild cherries, and
- blueberries.

A2. Heat releases the nuts (seeds) from a pine cone.

A3. Blackberry bushes have leaves that are toothed and flowers of white or sometimes pink in blackberries. Look for straggly bushes with arching thorny stems and juicy segmented berries.

Teaching Point 3 **Identify How People are Poisoned by Plants**

Time: 15 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Distribute Annexes H and I to the cadets.

HOW PEOPLE ARE POISONED BY PLANTS

There are two common poisons in the plant world:

Hydrocyanic Acid. It has the taste and smell of bitter almonds or peaches. The most notable example is the cherry laurel.

Oxalic Acid. Its salts occur naturally in some plants, for instance, wild rhubarb and wood sorrel. It is recognized by the sharp, dry, stinging or burning sensation when applied to the skin or tongue.

Plants generally poison by:

Ingestion. When a person eats a part of a poisonous plant.

Contact. When a person makes contact with a poisonous plant that causes any type of skin irritation or dermatitis.

Dermatitis is the inflammation of the skin.

Absorption and Inhalation. When a person either absorbs poison through the skin or inhales it into the respiratory system.

POISONOUS PLANTS

Plants to Avoid

- plants with a milky sap, unless positively identified as safe (such as dandelion).
- red plants. The red-streaked stalk of wild rhubarb is edible but its leaf is poisonous. Hemlock has reddish-purple splotches on its stem.
- fruits which are divided into five segments.
- bulbs (resembling onion or garlic).
- carrot like leaves, roots or tubers.
- bean and pea like appearance.
- shiny leaves or fine hairs.
- grasses and other plants with tiny barbs on their stems and leaves.
- old or wilted leaves. The leaves of some trees and plants develop deadly hydrocyanic acid when they wilt – including blackberry, raspberry, cherry, peach and plum. All may be safely eaten when young, fresh and dry.
- all mushrooms. Mushroom identification is very difficult and must be precise, even more so than with other plants. Two types of mushroom poisoning are gastrointestinal and central nervous system.

Plants Which Cause Dermatitis

The following plants cause dermatitis:

- poison ivy,
- poison oak, and
- poison sumac.

Plants Which Cause Ingestion Poisoning

The following plants cause ingestion poisoning:

- castor bean,
- death camas,
- oleander,
- poison and water hemlock,
- skunk cabbage, and
- stinging nettle.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the names of two fairly common poisons in the plant world?

Q2. What colour plant should be avoided?

Q3. Name three plants which cause dermatitis.

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Two names of fairly common poisons in the plant world are hydrocyanic acid and oxalic acid.

A2. Red plants should be avoided.

A3. Three plants that cause dermatitis are poison ivy, poison oak and poison sumac.

Teaching Point 4 **Conduct an Activity Where the Cadets, in Pairs, Will Search and Collect Two Types of Edible Plants Within the Local Area**

Time: 30 min Method: Practical Activity

ACTIVITY

If poison ivy or other poisonous plants are known to be in the search area, ensure the area is kept off limits to the cadets.

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets collect two types of edible plants.

RESOURCES

Gloves.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into pairs and distribute a pair of gloves to each cadet.
2. Have the cadets search for edible plants.
3. Gather cadets into a group and have them present their plants to the group.
4. Have the group confirm if the plant presented is edible and why.
5. Supervise and give feedback on the cadets' findings.

SAFETY

- Cadets should wear gloves when collecting plants. This will avoid any accidental contact with poisonous plants.
- Ensure the cadets do not eat any of their findings until they have been inspected by the instructor.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 4

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 5 **Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Perform the Universal Edibility Test**

Time: 25 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

Always adopt the following procedure when trying potential food sources. NEVER take short cuts and complete the whole test. If in any doubt, do NOT eat the plant.

UNIVERSAL EDIBILITY TEST

The universal edibility test is a method a person can use when it is unknown if a plant is safe to eat. This test is not a guarantee that the plant will be safe; however, it will provide some certainty of the plant's edibility. To conduct the test, follow this sequence:

1. **Inspect.** Separate the plant into its basic sections (leaves, stems, roots and flowers). Inspect each section one at a time. Ensure that the plant is not slimy or worm-eaten. Some plants, when old, change their chemical content and become toxic.
2. **Smell.** Crush a small portion. Smell the plant for strong or acid odours. If it smells of bitter almonds or peaches DISCARD.
3. **Rub the Plant on the Skin.** Rub slightly or squeeze some of the juice onto a tender part of the body (under the arm between the armpit and the elbow, for instance). If any discomfort, rash or swelling is experienced DISCARD and reject for future use. Wait 15 minutes and if there is not a reaction, continue.
4. **Place the Plant on the Lips, Mouth and Tongue.** If there is no irritation to the skin proceed with the following steps, going on to the next step after waiting three minutes if there is not an unpleasant reaction:
   a. Place a small portion on the lips.
   b. Place a small portion in the corner of the mouth.
   c. Place a small portion on the tip of the tongue.
   d. Place a small portion under the tongue.
   e. Chew a small portion.

In all cases, if any discomfort is felt, such as soreness to the throat, irritation, stinging or burning sensations discard.

1. **Swallow.** Swallow a small amount and wait eight hours. During this period do not eat or drink anything else.
2. **Eat.** If there is no reaction, such as soreness to the mouth, repeated belching, nausea, sickness, stomach pains, griping pains in the lower abdomen or any other distressing symptoms, the plant may be considered safe. Eat a larger portion and wait eight hours again.

ACTIVITY

Time: 15 min

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets perform the universal edibility test.

RESOURCES

- Local vegetation plants,
- Lemons,
- Celery stalks,
- Onions,
- Berries (in season), and
- Spinach leaves.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

The cadets do not have to wait the eight hours before being able to eat again for this TP.

Ensure the cadets follow the format for testing for poison. Have the cadets:

1. take a piece of fruit or vegetable;
2. inspect the fruit or vegetable;
3. smell the fruit or vegetable;
4. rub the fruit or vegetable on their arm or underside of the wrist;
5. place a small portion of the fruit or vegetable on their lips;
6. place a small portion of the fruit or vegetable in the corner of their mouths;
7. place a small portion of the fruit or vegetable on the tip of their tongue;
8. place a small portion of the fruit or vegetable under their tongue;
9. chew a small portion of the fruit or vegetable;
10. choose another piece of fruit or vegetable; and
11. repeat Steps 1. to 10. until all have had a chance to try at least three different textures and tastes.

SAFETY

Ensure the cadets do not share the fruits and vegetables being used in the activity.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 5

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the collecting of edible plants and completing the universal edibility test will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

It is important for the cadets to know how to perform the universal edibility test, identify both poisonous and non-poisonous plants and be able to collect plants in a survival situation. Plants are an excellent source of nutrition when animals are not abundant. Many plants have health benefits which are also important in a survival situation.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Instructors will research any plants they anticipate to use for a test. Ensure the plants have no known poisons or toxins.

REFERENCES

C0-111 (ISBN 0-9740820-2-3) Tawrell, P. (2006). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*. Lebanon, NH: Paul Tawrell.

C2-008 (ISBN 0-00-653140-7) Wiseman, J. (1999). *The SAS Survival Handbook*. Hammersmith, London: HarperCollins Publishers.

C2-155 (ISBN 978-1-58574-556-2) The Lyons Press. (2002). *U.S. Army Survival Handbook*. Guilford, CT: The Lyons Press.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 10

EO C324.05 – PREPARE A MEAL FROM FIELD FOOD SOURCES

Total Time:	90 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Photocopy Annex J for each cadet.

Prepare all resources for TPs 2 and 3.

Choose a cooking method and set up area for TP 3.

Cadets who feel uncomfortable observing the skinning of a small animal do not have to attend that portion of the class but should be present for the TP on preparing a fish.

Only one rabbit should be caught or purchased and skinned for demonstration purposes. Check provincial regulations on catching and killing small animals.

Parents shall be made aware of the training and when it will take place.

Instructors will have to use purchased or caught fish. Fish will have to be properly stored in a cool area (cooler with ice) to ensure they do not spoil.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

A demonstration was chosen for TP 1 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate skinning a small animal.

A demonstration and performance was chosen for TP 2 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate preparing and cooking a small animal or fish in the field while providing an opportunity for the cadet to practice under supervision.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 3 as it is an interactive way to allow the cadet to experience cooking a small animal or fish. This activity contributes to the development of survival skills in a fun and challenging setting under supervision.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have prepared a meal from field food sources.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to prepare a meal from field food sources because in a survival situation, cadets may be required to prepare and cook fresh food that they have caught. Having the confidence and ability to cook food, will help a cadet maintain nutrition and energy when in a survival situation.

Teaching Point 1 **Explain and Demonstrate Skinning a Small Animal**

Time: 25 min Method: Demonstration

For this TP, it is recommended that instructor explain and demonstrate each step required to complete the skill.

It is required that the instructor have experience skinning an animal prior to this lesson.

It is important to know how to prepare fish and game for cooking in a survival situation. Improper cleaning or storing can result in inedible fish or game, as well as creating a health hazard.

SKINNING A SMALL ANIMAL

Once a small animal has been caught there are some important steps that have to be completed to prepare the animal prior to eating.

The process of skinning most small animals does not vary much. A rabbit will be used in this lesson for the demonstration.

Step 1 – Bleeding the Animal. Upon catching a rabbit, bleed the rabbit by cutting its throat. If possible, clean the carcass near a stream but downstream from your water source and at a minimum of 100 m from the campsite.

RiverCottage.net, How to Skin a Rabbit. Retrieved April 15, 2008, from http://forum.rivercottage.net/viewtopic.php?t=12605

Figure 14-10-1 Skinning a Small Animal – Step 2

Step 2 – Preparing Materials. Lay the rabbit on a flat surface and gather required materials (knife or small hatchet and water) (as per Figure 14-10-1).

RiverCottage.net, How to Skin a Rabbit. Retrieved April 15, 2008, from http://forum.rivercottage.net/viewtopic.php?t=12605

Figure 14-10-2 Skinning a Small Animal – Step 3

Step 3 – Removing Legs. Remove each leg at the joint with a clean cut.

RiverCottage.net, How to Skin a Rabbit. Retrieved April 15, 2008, from http://forum.rivercottage.net/viewtopic.php?t=12605

Figure 14-10-3 Skinning a Small Animal – Step 4

Step 4 – Removing the Skin. Lay the rabbit on its back on a flat surface and pinch the skin at the loose part of the lower belly. Cut a hole in the skin with the knife and cut all the way to just below the front legs. Be careful not to puncture the stomach lining.

RiverCottage.net, How to Skin a Rabbit. Retrieved April 15, 2008, from http://forum.rivercottage.net/viewtopic.php?t=12605

Figure 14-10-4 Skinning a Small Animal – Step 5

Step 5 – Separating the Skin. Separate the muscle covering the gut from the skin starting at the opening, (it comes away quite easily) and continue around to the back.

RiverCottage.net, How to Skin a Rabbit. Retrieved April 15, 2008, from http://forum.rivercottage.net/viewtopic.php?t=12605

Figure 14-10-5 Skinning a Small Animal – Step 6

Step 6 – Removing Skin From the Hind Legs. Pull the skin over the back legs as if taking off a sock.

RiverCottage.net, How to Skin a Rabbit. Retrieved April 15, 2008, from http://forum.rivercottage.net/viewtopic.php?t=12605

Figure 14-10-6 Skinning a Small Animal – Step 7

Step 7 – Removing Skin From the Front Legs. Pull the skin forwards and ease out each front leg in turn.

RiverCottage.net, How to Skin a Rabbit. Retrieved April 15, 2008, from http://forum.rivercottage.net/viewtopic.php?t=12605

Figure 14-10-7 Skinning a Small Animal – Step 8

Step 8 – Exposing the Neck. Pull the skin forward exposing the neck.

RiverCottage.net, How to Skin a Rabbit. Retrieved April 15, 2008, from http://forum.rivercottage.net/viewtopic.php?t=12605

Figure 14-10-8 Skinning a Small Animal – Step 9

Step 9 – Removing the Head and Remaining Skin. Sever the head and remove any remaining skin.

RiverCottage.Net, How to Skin a Rabbit. Retrieved April 15, 2008, from http://forum.rivercottage.net/viewtopic.php?t=12605

Figure 14-10-9 Skinning a Small Animal – Step 10

Step 10 – Removing Entrails and Glands. Make a cut using a knife along the rabbit's belly through the rib cage and pelvis. Open the sides of the belly and grasp the windpipe below the severed neck and pull it out. Clean the rabbit's chest cavity thoroughly by rinsing it with water. Be sure to pay special attention to areas like the chest cavity and folds in the skin.

Dig a hole and bury all discarded animal parts to avoid attracting scavenging animals.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What position should the animal be placed in when preparing to skin it?

Q2. What area of the animal's body is first cut?

Q3. What is the last step in skinning an animal?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The animal should be laid out flat.

A2. The first part that should be cut is the neck to bleed the animal.

A3. The last step in skinning the animal is cleaning the small animal and rinsing the chest cavity thoroughly by rinsing with water.

Teaching Point 2 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Prepare a Fish**

Time: 25 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

For this TP, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate each step required to complete the skill one at a time.
2. Monitor cadets as they imitate each step.

Background information has been provided to support the demonstration and performance. Assistant instructors may be employed to monitor the cadets' performance.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION

PREPARING A FISH

All freshwater fish are edible. Those under 5 cm (2 inches) long need no preparation and can be eaten whole. Larger fish must be gutted. To prevent spoilage, prepare the fish as soon as possible. The innards can be used as bait or buried in the ground, as the odour will attract insects and scavengers.

It may be some time from when the fish is caught to when it is cooked. Keep the fish cool, out of the sunlight, and away from insects. Cover in forest moss or place in a pool of cool water.

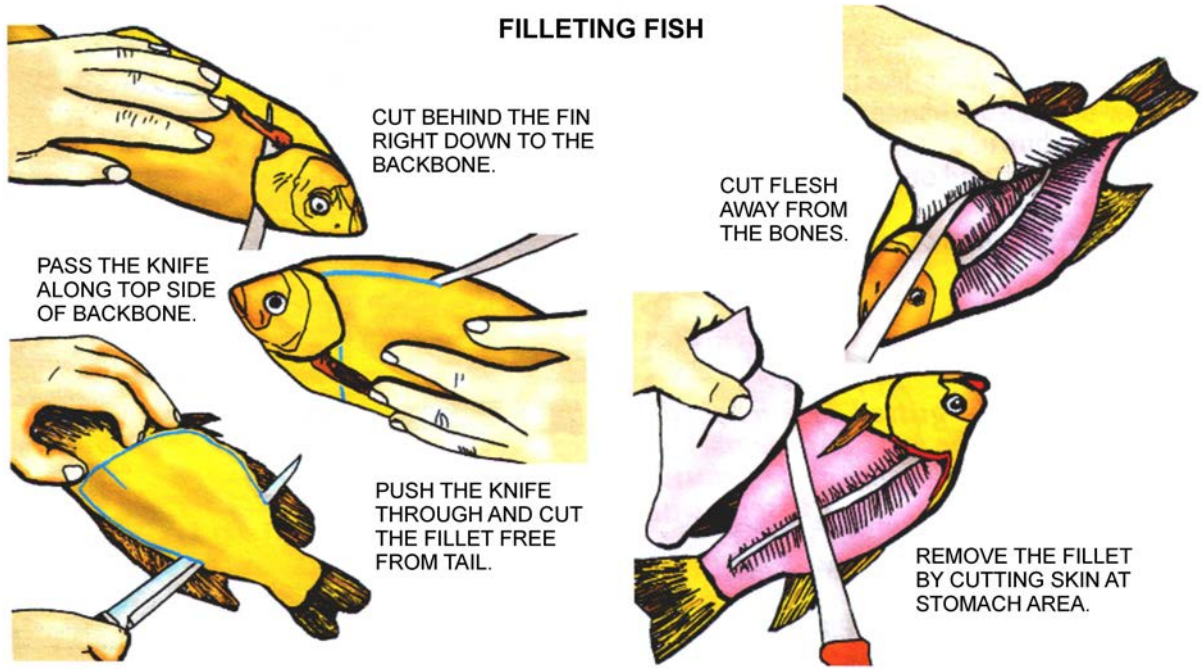
Different types of fish may require different methods of preparing. Determine the common local fish and describe the cleaning method for that type of fish.

Bleeding. As soon as a fish is caught, cut its throat and allow it to bleed. Wipe the slime off the fish to make it less slippery. Do not let any slime get in your eyes. Cut out the gills.

Gutting. Make an incision from the anal orifice to where the throat was cut. Remove the entrails – you can use them for hook bait. Keep the roe (fish eggs); it is very nutritious.

Scaling. Scaling is not necessary and fish can be cooked with scales on, but if there is time, scrape them off. Remove scales by holding the tail and pushing a dull knife across the skin at a 45-degree angle. Draw the knife from tail to head.

Filleting. Filleting is one way of preparing a fish. Pass the knife along the top side of the backbone. Cut behind the fin down to the backbone. Push the knife through and cut the fillet free from the tail. Cut the flesh away from the bones. Remove the fillet by cutting the skin at the stomach area.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 144)

Figure 14-10-10 Filleting a Fish

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have cadets prepare a fish.

RESOURCES

- Fish, and
- Knife.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

Have cadets prepare an open area with a clean table or flat surface to prepare fish.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

Cadets will prepare a fish as each step is demonstrated by the instructor.

SAFETY

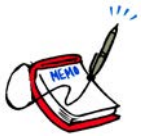
Cadets shall be reminded to always cut away from their body.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 3 — **Explain and Demonstrate Cooking a Small Animal and Have the Cadet Practice Cooking a Fish**

Time: 30 min — Method: Practical Activity



This lesson incorporates material covered in EO C224.01 (Cook in the Field, A-CR-CCP-702/PF-001, Chapter 14, Section 7). Background information has been provided in this lesson as the possibility exists that some cadets may have not participated in the complementary training.

Distribute the handout located at Annex J to each cadet.

The instructor will give a demonstration of one cooking method. The method chosen should already be set up and lit. Demonstrate how to cook the fish.

Concurrently cook the rabbit, while the cadets cook their fish. Instructors may choose to use a different method than the cadets.

COOKING

Cooking food can make it more palatable and kills parasites and bacteria. However, when food is heated it loses nutritional value – the more the heat, the greater the loss – so nothing should be cooked longer than necessary. The methods chosen for cooking a small animal or fish simulate the ways that can be used in a survival situation.

All of the methods listed require prior preparation of the food being cooked. This involves peeling/skinning, cleaning and wrapping. When cooking in the field, food must be properly prepared.

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

Cooking in the field is an important skill for people who find themselves in a survival situation. Since the human body needs nutrients and energy, cooking is essential to kill harmful bacteria. There are many different ways to cook in the field.

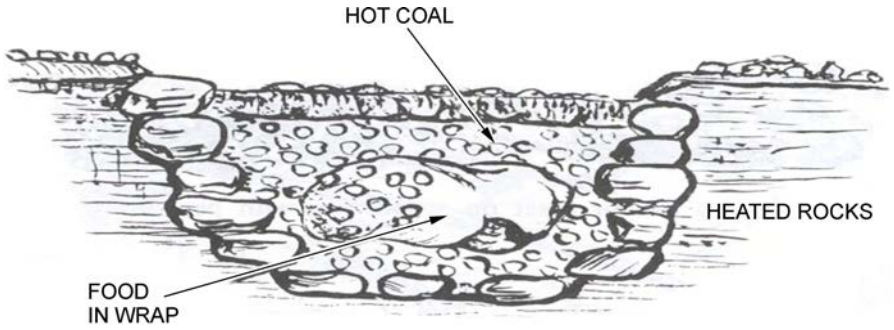
BAKING

The best way to bake in the field is in the ground. When food is buried, it will cook faster. To do this:

1. Dig a shallow pit in the ground.
2. Line the pit with rocks.
3. Burn a small fire to get a bed of coals.
4. Place a layer of wet grass on the embers when there are no more open flames and only hot, red embers remaining (if the grass is dry, use water).
5. Place the food (already prepared to be cooked) on top of the wet grass.

6. Use a stick to move around the hot coals to get them as close to the food as possible. Try to put some coals on top of the food.

7. Cover the food with the earth that was dug from the pit.



Department of National Defence, Down But Not Out, Department of National Defence (p.130)

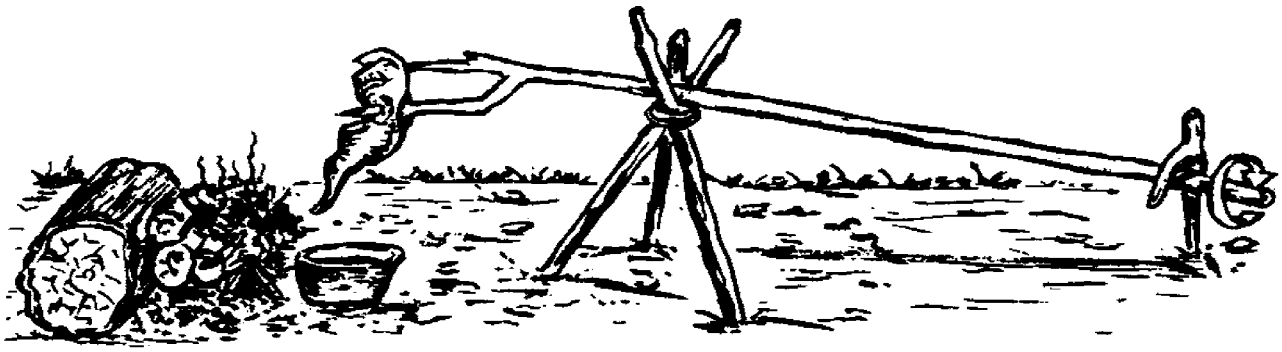
Figure 14-10-11 Baking in the Ground

When using this method, it is very difficult to check and see if the food is cooked. Cooking time will vary, depending on what is being cooked. Ensure food is completely cooked before consuming. Place it back in the ground and allow more time if unsure.

ROASTING

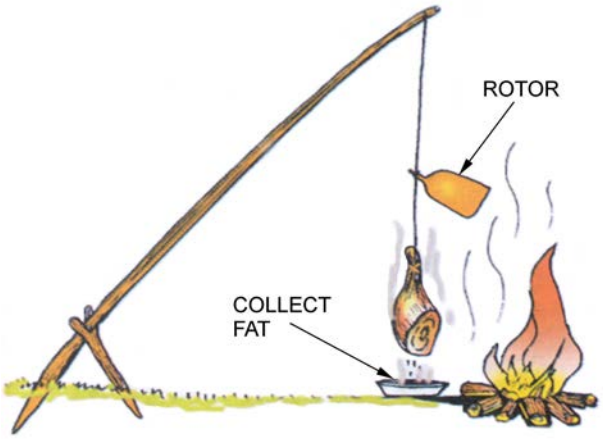
Roasting is an easy method that produces tasty results. Unfortunately, it also produces a lot of grease when cooking meat. To minimize waste, place a pot or container under the roasting food to catch grease. Place the object being cooked on the end of a stick, beside an open fire. The food should not be placed directly over the fire and direct contact with smoke and flame should be avoided as much as possible.

The food will need to be rotated or turned to ensure it is cooked throughout. If hanging the food from above the fire, a rotor, made with plastic or heavy paper, can be attached (as per Figure 14-10-13). The rotor will catch and turn in the wind, turning the food.



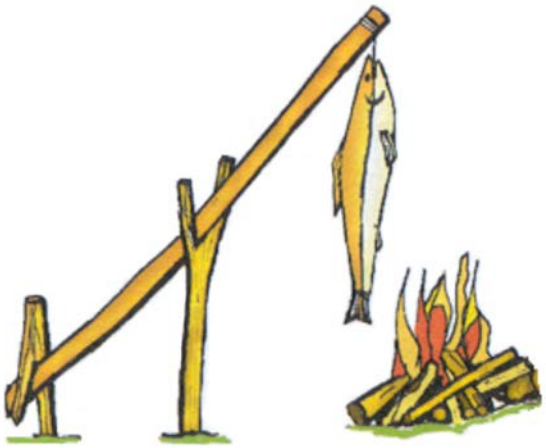
Department of National Defence, Down But Not Out, Department of National Defence (p.129)

Figure 14-10-12 Roasting



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 442)

Figure 14-10-13 Roasting With a Rotor



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 448)

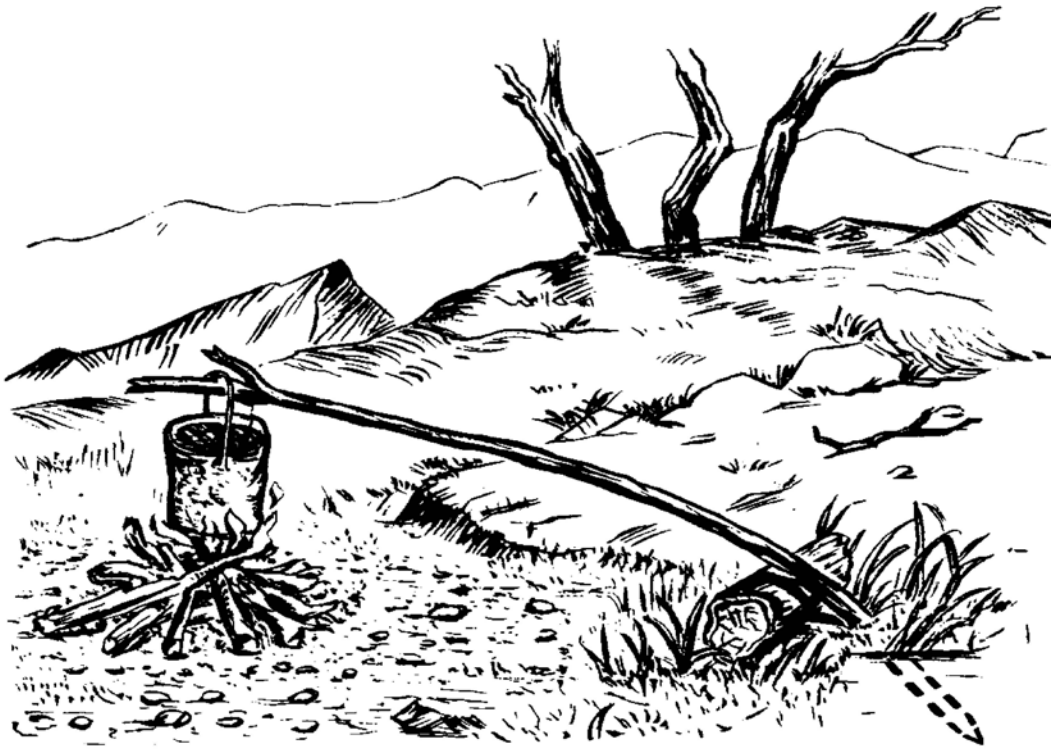
Figure 14-10-14 Roasting Fish

BOILING

Boiling in a pot can be done over an open fire, the same as on a stove. When boiling in a pot, ensure the pot is sitting straight up on the fire. This can be done by using a grill, wedging it between two pieces of thick wood or placing rocks around to stabilize it. There are many ways to place a pot over a fire using wood (as per Figures 14-10-15 and 14-10-16). It is important to ensure the pot is stable and does not have a risk of falling into the fire.

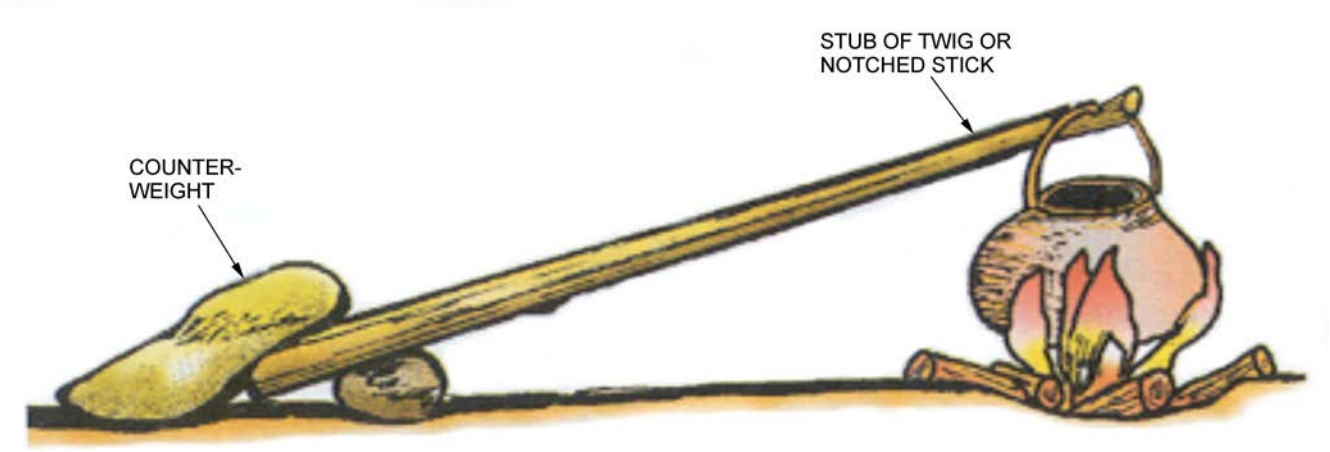
Seeing bubbles is an easy way to tell that water is boiling.

Boiling over an open fire will normally cause soot to form on the outside of the pot. A coating of soapy water on the outside of the pot will make cleaning much easier.



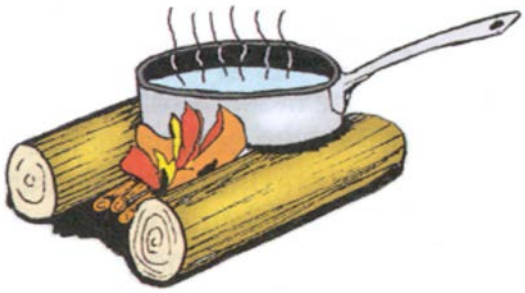
Department of National Defence, Down But Not Out, Department of National Defence (p.128)

Figure 14-10-15 Boiling



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 442)

Figure 14-10-16 Boiling Using a Counterweight



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 444)

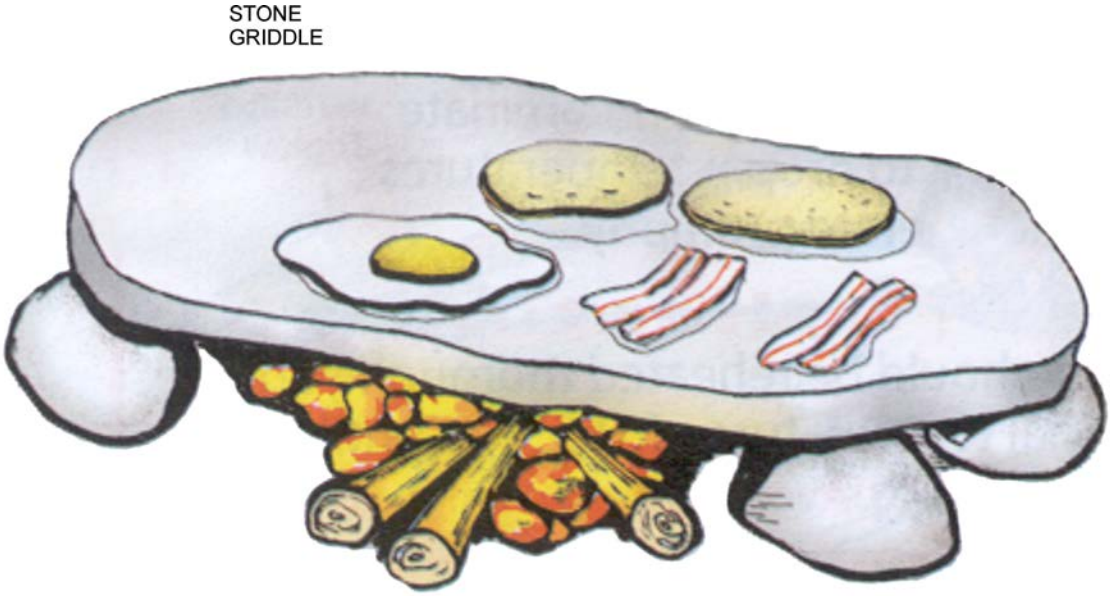
Figure 14-10-17 Boiling on an Open Flame With Wood

P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 442)

Figure 14-10-18 Boiling on an Open Flame With Rocks

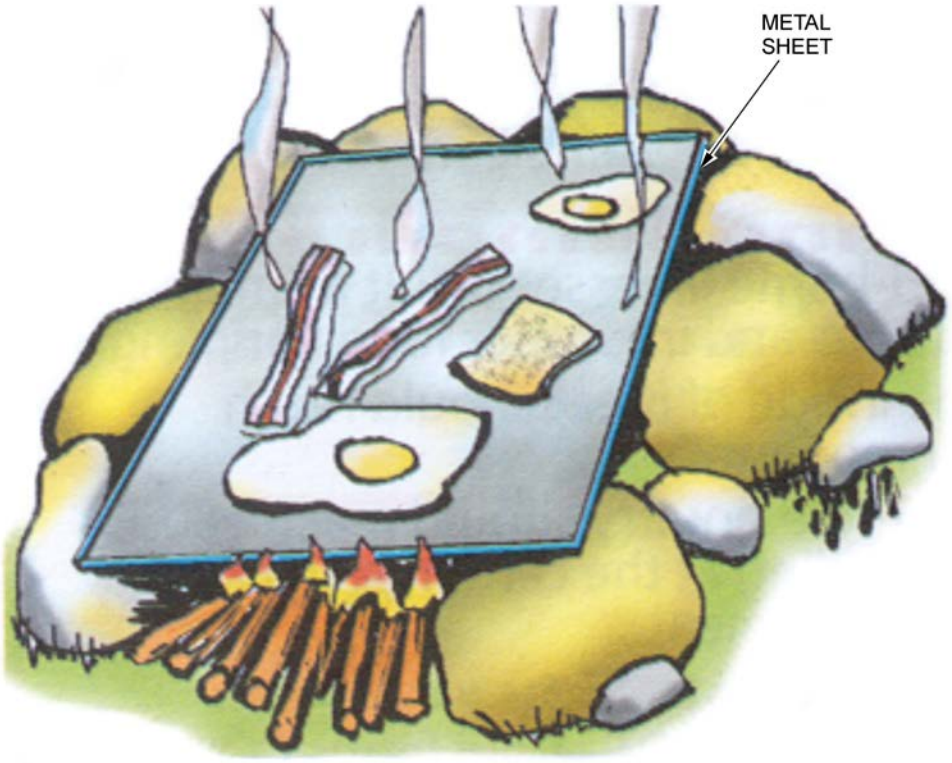
FRYING

Food can be easily fried on a rock or sheet of metal. A rock will hold a lot of heat for a very long time. When using this method to cook, food may easily stick if there is not a sufficient amount of grease.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 442)

Figure 14-10-19 Frying on a Flat Rock



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 442)

Figure 14-10-20 Frying With a Metal Sheet

ACTIVITY

Time: 20 min

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadet cook fish using one of the following methods chosen by the instructor:

- baking,
- roasting,
- boiling, or
- frying.

RESOURCES

- Water,
- Fish prepared in TP 2,
- Matches, and
- Shovels.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

An open area that is suitable for lighting small fires should be used for the cadets to cook food.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into pairs.
2. Distribute a fish (use the prepared fish from TP2) to each cadet.
3. Have the cadets prepare the assigned method to cook their fish.
4. Have the cadets carry out preparing a heat source and cooking food.
5. Have the cadets sample cooked food, with approval from supervising staff.
6. Have the cadets ensure the fire is out when finished and no hot embers remain.

SAFETY

- Cadets will be lighting fires. Review fire orders and procedures.
- Fire safety equipment must be on hand.
- Additional supervision will have to be present during this lesson.
- In the event of an out of control fire contact emergency fire services.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in cooking a fish will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Knowing how to cook in the field is a great skill to have when lost. Knowing the many different ways to cook in the field could mean in a person making it through a survival situation. Being able to use different methods of cooking in the field is also a fun way to cook food when on a weekend bivouac FTX.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Cadets who feel uncomfortable observing the skinning of a small animal do not have to attend that portion of the class but should be present for the TP on preparing a fish.

Only one rabbit should be caught or purchased and skinned for demonstration purposes. Check provincial regulations on catching and killing small animals.

Parents shall be made aware of the training and when it will take place.

REFERENCES

C0-111 (ISBN 0-9740820-2-3) Tawrell, P. (2006). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book* (2nd ed.). Lebanon, NH: Paul Tawrell.

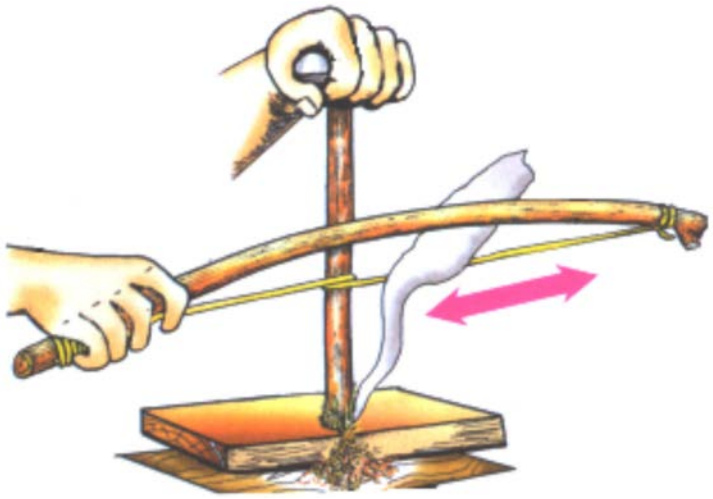
C2-004 (ISBN 1-896713-00-9) Tawrell, P. (1996). *Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*. Green Valley, ON: Paul Tawrell.

C2-008 (ISBN 0-00-653140-7) Wiseman, J. (1999). *The SAS Survival Handbook*. Hammersmith, London: HarperCollins Publishers.

BOW AND DRILL

Construct and use a bow and drill using the following steps:

1. Cut a groove into the bearing block or socket 3–5 cm deep for the hardwood shaft to fit.
2. Cut a groove into the softwood base in which the hardwood shaft will spin.
3. Carve one end of the hardwood shaft into a small point.
4. Collect kindling, tinder and fuel as required.
5. Place tinder into the opening of the softwood base for the embers to fall onto.
6. Wrap the bow around the hardwood shaft and place into the groove on the softwood base.
7. Gather kindling and fuel as required.
8. Place the bearing block on the top of the shaft.
9. Saw the bow back and forth so the hardwood shaft spins.
10. Maintain a constant motion back and forth.
11. Increase speed and look for embers, once smoke appears.
12. Stop and lightly blow on the tinder to start combustion, once the tinder begins to smoke.
13. Apply gathered kindling and fuel as required, when the tinder ignites.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 434)

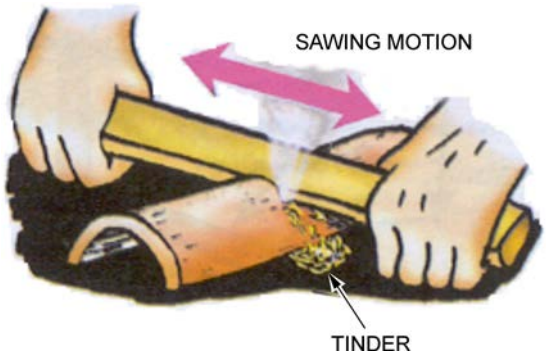
Figure 14A-1 Fire Bow and Drill

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

FIRE SAW

Construct and use a fire saw using the following steps:

1. On the inside of the fireboard, pick and splinter stringy fibres in order for them to catch a spark.
2. On the outside opposite to the direction of the fibres, cut a narrow groove in which the sawing will be done.
3. Rub the rub stick in a sawing motion in the groove of the fireboard until sparks appear.
4. Collect kindling, tinder and fuel as required.
5. Stop and lightly blow on the tinder to start combustion, once the tinder begins to smoke.
6. Apply gathered kindling and fuel as required, when the tinder ignites.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 434)

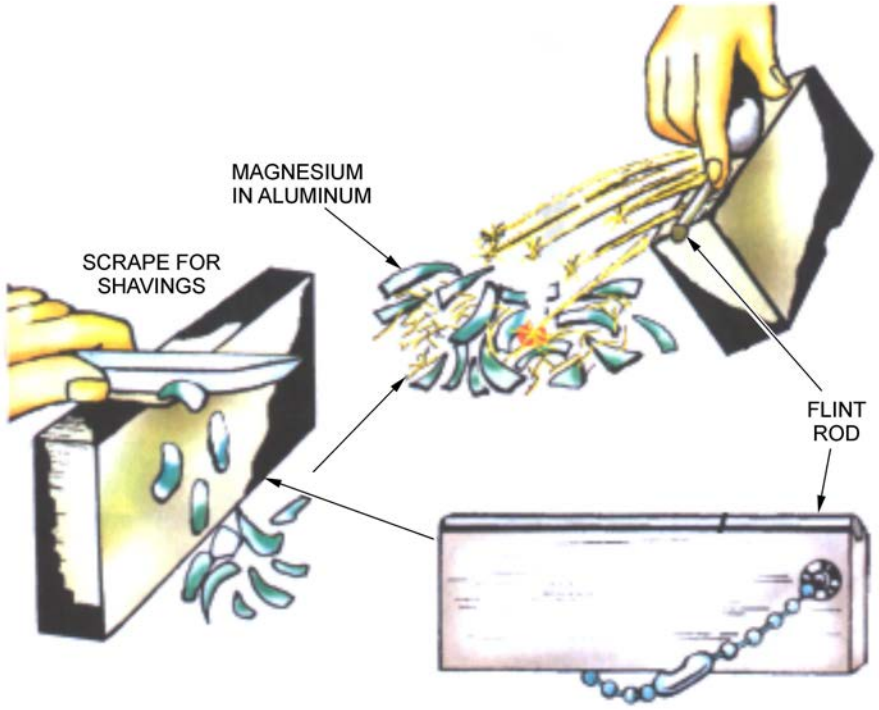
Figure 14B-1 Fire Saw in Motion

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

FLINT AND STEEL

Construct and use flint and steel using the following steps:

1. Hold the flint as close to the tinder as possible.
2. Strike it with the back of a knife blade or a small piece of carbon steel.
3. Collect kindling, tinder and fuel as required.
4. Strike downward so that the sparks fall into the tinder.
5. When the tinder begins to smoulder, fan or blow it gently into a flame.
6. Stop and lightly blow on the tinder to start combustion, once the tinder begins to smoke.
7. Apply gathered kindling and fuel as required, when the tinder ignites.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 436)

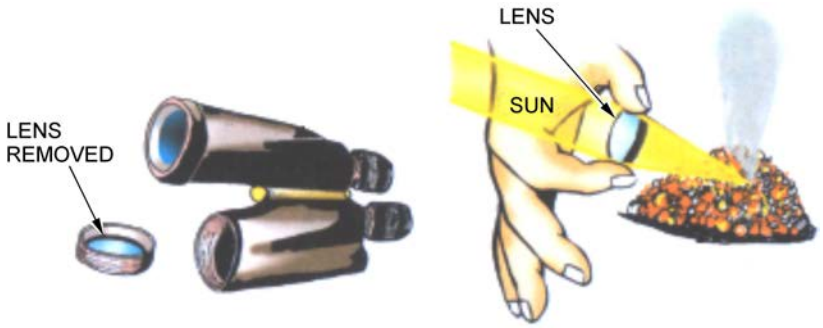
Figure 14C-1 Flint and Steel

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SUN AND GLASS

Construct and use sun and glass using the following steps:

1. Locate a sunny spot in an open area.
2. Gather tinder and kindling in a small pile.
3. Point a piece of glass or convex lens to concentrate the rays of sun on the tinder.
4. When the tinder begins to smolder, fan or blow it gently into a flame.
5. Stop and lightly blow on the tinder to start combustion, once the tinder begins to smoke.
6. Apply gathered kindling and fuel as required, when the tinder ignites.

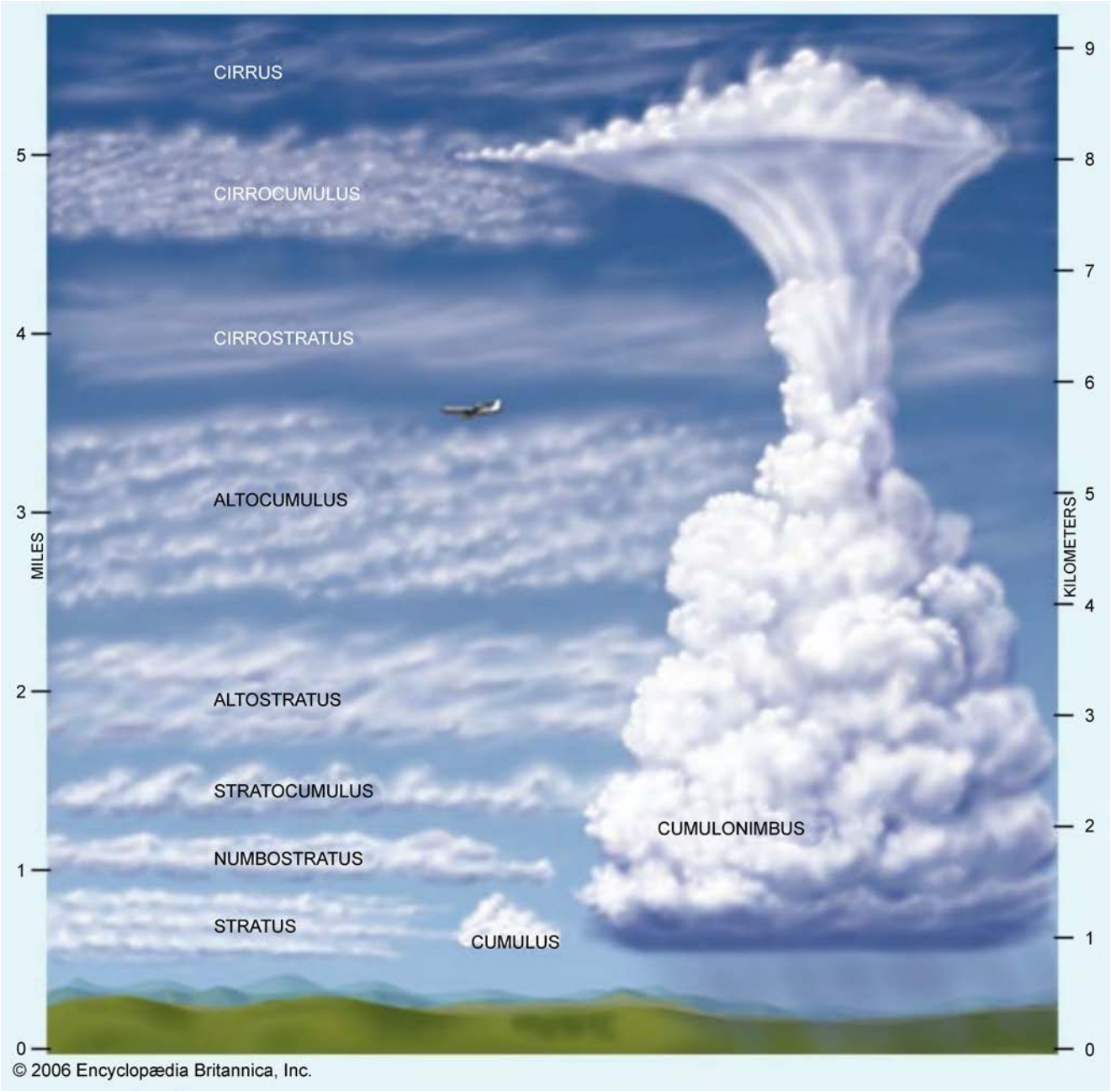


P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 437)

Figure 14D-1 Sun and Glass

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

COMMON TYPES OF CLOUDS



"Cumulus Cloud", by Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc, 2006, Encyclopaedia Britannica Online, Copyright 2006 by Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc. Retrieved November 21, 2007, from http://cache.eb.com/eb/image?id=93302&rendTypeId=34

Figure 14E-1 Common Types of Clouds

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

COMMON HABITAT

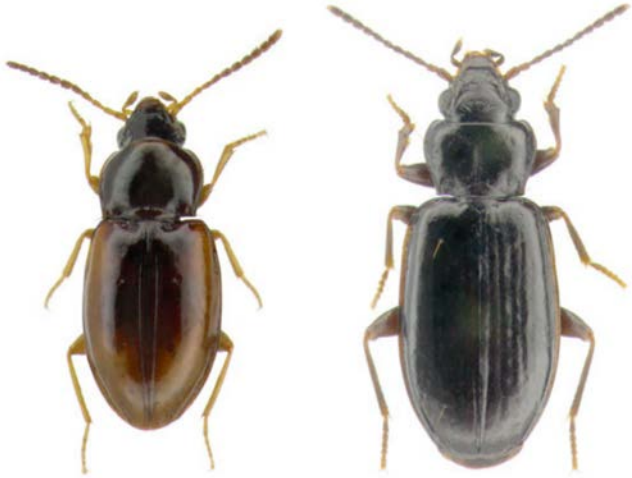
Rotting logs, stones, boards or any other materials lying on the ground provide good nesting sites and are excellent places to find a variety of insects including ants, termites, beetles and grubs. Grassy areas are good areas to search because insects are easily seen. The following insects can commonly be found in most locations.

Grasshoppers. Most commonly found in open fields. Watch for them jumping out of the way when walking. Eaten raw or cooked, remove the legs.

Discover Entomology, by Carl D. Patrick, Grasshoppers and Their Control, Copyright 2008 by Texas A&M University Department of Entomology. Retrieved March 5, 2008, from http://insects.tamu.edu/extension/bulletins/l-5201.html

Figure 14F-1 Grasshopper

Beetles. Often found under rotting logs, stones, boards or any other material lying on the ground. Insects with hard outer shells will have parasites so cook them before eating.



Canadian Biodiversity Information Facility, Ground Beetles of Canada. Retrieved March 5, 2008, from http://www.cbif.gc.ca/spp_pages/carabids/phps/image1_e.php#Bembidiini

Figure 14F-2 Beetles

Worms. Worms are an excellent source of protein. Dig for them in damp soil or watch for them on the ground after rain. After collecting them, drop them into clean, potable water for a few minutes. The worms will naturally purge or wash themselves out, after which they can be eaten raw.

Cheshire Wildlife Trust, Find Out About Earth Worms, Copyright 2004 by Cheshire Wildlife Trust. Retrieved March 5, 2008, from http://www.wildlifetrust.org.uk/cheshire/watch_earthworms.htm

Figure 14F-3 Earth Worm

Grubs. Known as insect larva, grubs are often found under rotting logs, stones, boards or any other materials lying on the ground.

Green Smiths, Grub Worms. Retrieved March 5, 2008, from http://www.greensmiths.com/grubs.htm

Figure 14F-4 Grubs

Aquatic Insects. Many species of edible insects exist around the edges of lakes, or ponds, or the ocean. Cook any hard shell insects.

P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book (2nd ed.), Paul Tawrell (p. 912)

Figure 14F-5 Water Insects

IDENTIFYING TRACKS AND HABITAT

All animals can be a source of nourishment. The more one knows about animals, the better the chances of locating an animal. To find an animal in the wild, one must be observant for signs. If a person can recognize the signs an animal leaves, and identify the animal, one can devise a method to hunt and trap it.

Most mammals are on the move at dawn and dusk (first light, last light), using regular routes between their watering spots, feeding places and homes. Animal tracks and trails can be identified by looking for specific signs.

The following are tips to locate and identify animals:

- Tracks are more obvious on wet ground snow and damp sand.
- The size of the impression is left from their tracks.
- The age of the track can be identified by its sharpness and moisture content.
- The clearer the track the more recent it is. If water or rain has seeped into it, it may be older.
- Heavy vegetation reveals regularly used routes or paths.
- Some animals never travel very far; any tracks likely mean they are in the area.
- Smaller animals make tunnels through dense underbrush.
- Broken twigs along a route, will identify direction of travel and the height of the animal.

Rabbits and Hares

Rabbits and hares are easy to catch. They live either in burrows or above ground and most often use a specific run that they routinely retrace. Rabbits and hares have long hind legs with small front paws. When looking for rabbits or hares keep the following in mind:

- They leave little detail on soft ground.
- They have a narrow hind foot with four toes.
- They leave tracks with their hind feet in front of the forefoot instead of side by side.

- They eat tree bark and may nibble the base of a tree.
- They warn other rabbits and hares by using their paws to create sounds. The sound emitted sounds like a thump or someone hitting a cushion.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 35)

Figure 14F-6 Rabbit and Tracks

Squirrels

Squirrels are alert and very nimble. Most are active day and night – feeding on nuts, fruits, shoots and for some bird's eggs. Their nests are usually the size of a small day pack, made of sticks and leaves, high in trees. However, squirrels seek out tree hollows for winter dens. Squirrels are small and their tracks are barely noticeable. Signs of squirrel presence include:

- chewed cones,
- cone scales piled about, and
- loud and almost continuous high-pitched squeals and chirps.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 49)

Figure 14F-7 Squirrel and Tracks

Marmots (Groundhog)

The groundhog is most commonly found on pastures, roadsides, and overgrown fields. Groundhogs live alone in burrows up to 9 m long (30 feet), excavated under stumps, rocks or edges of buildings. Normally there are three entrances to the burrows. They are visible, measuring 20–30 cm (8–12 inches) across, with big mounds of dirt nearby.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 91)

Figure 14F-8 Marmot (Groundhog) and Tracks

Porcupines

The porcupine is the second largest rodent. It has sharp quills that are solid at the base and barbed at the tip. This animal feeds mainly on grasses, acorns and twigs and is fond of salt. Their tracks and signs include:

- footprints, where the front paws have four toes and hind paws have five toes,
- trees with bark stripped in irregular patches, and
- nipped twigs littering the ground.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 109)

Figure 14F-9 Porcupine and Tracks

Beavers

Beavers are known as dam builders. They are aquatic animals with scaly, padded-like tails. They can be found using regular runs along streams, lakes, or bogs/marshes and reside in a den known as a beaver house, where they can be trapped. Their tracks and signs include:

- fore footprints that have five toes with claw marks but, often only four show,
- rear footprints that are webbed, roundish and larger,
- water levels that are higher than normal lakes, bogs or marshes,
- the presence of a beaver dam, lodges, fallen and chewed saplings, and
- the presence of bark shavings near water.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 110)

Figure 14F-10 Beaver and Tracks

Raccoons

The “masked bandit” lives in a variety of habitats, from forests to prairies to city parks. They prefer to be in the vicinity of water and trees and are most abundant in wooded swamps. They reside in dens often in a hollow tree or log, rock crevice, cave or abandoned building. A raccoon’s diet from land sources includes nuts, fruit, insects, small rodents, and birds. Near water they will eat frogs, fish, molluscs and insects. Their tracks and signs include:

- a hind track that is about 7.62 cm (3 inches) long with 5 toes, and
- a front paw that is like a small hand with five fingers.

N. Bowers, R. Bowers, and K. Kaufman, Kaufman Focus Guides: Mammals of North America, Houghton Mifflin Company (p. 99)

Figure 14F-11 Raccoon and Tracks

DETECTING SIGNS OF FEEDING

A skilled eye can often identify the species of animal by the pattern left by teeth or beak marks on a nut, or the way in which a pine cone has been stripped to get at its seeds. Some signs of feeding that my be found in the wilderness include:

- bark stripped from trees,
- the gnawed shells of nuts,
- partially eaten fruits,
- bitten off shoots,
- the remains of prey, and
- remains of carnivores or the destruction of nests.

Discarded fruits or nuts are often found when food is plentiful – an animal finds one piece not to its liking and drops it to try another. They not only disclose an animal's presence but suggest bait for traps.

FINDING DROPPINGS

Droppings (sometimes called scat) are one of the best indications of whether an animal is a herbivore or a carnivore. The size of the animal can be judged from the mass and quantity of droppings. The dropping's dryness is an indication of how long it has been since they were passed. Old droppings will be hard and odourless. Fresh droppings will be wet, still smell and may be covered by flies.

The composition of droppings can be used to figure out what kind of animal deposited it. Bits of plant material (stems, seeds, husks, and stalks) indicate an herbivore (plant eater). There is almost no scent to the droppings of a plant eater, although those that have gorged on berries leave sweet smelling scat.

Droppings filled with animal material (scales, bones, and fur) left by a carnivore, usually has a rank smell. A mass of flies indicate a pile of fresh droppings.

IDENTIFYING ROOTINGS

Some animals root up the ground in search of insects and tubers. If the earth is still crumbly and fresh an animal is likely to have been active on the spot. Small scratches may be where a squirrel or other rodents have been digging for shoots.

DETECTING SCENTS AND SMELLS

Be alert and if you smell anything out of the ordinary. Try and register the smells. They may be indications of wildlife present. Where one kind of animal exists, there will also be others.

INSECT NUTRITIONAL VALUE CHART

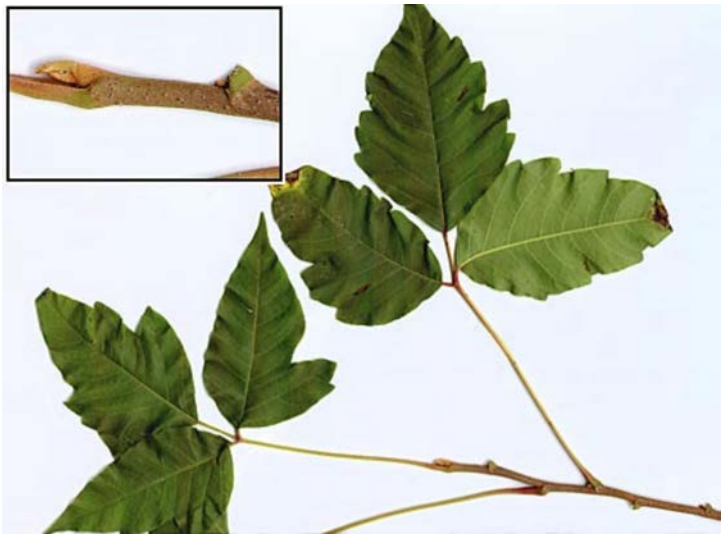
Insect (per 100 g)	Protein (g)	Fats (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Calcium (mg)	Iron (mg)
Crickets	**12.9**	**5.5**	**5.1**	**75.8**	**9.5**
Small Grasshoppers	**20.6**	**6.1**	**3.9**	**35.2**	**5.0**
Giant Water Beetles	**19.8**	**8.3**	**2.1**	**43.5**	**13.6**
Red Ants	**13.9**	**3.5**	**2.9**	**47.8**	**5.7**
Silkworm Pupae	**9.6**	**5.6**	**2.3**	**41.7**	**1.8**
Termites	**14.2**	**n/a**	**n/a**	**0.050**	**35.5**
Weevils	**6.7**	**n/a**	**n/a**	**0.186**	**13.1**

G. Davenport, Wilderness Survival, Stackpole Books (p. 161)

Figure 14G-1 Nutritional Value

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

COMMON POISONOUS PLANTS



Government of Canada Poisonous Plants. Retrieved November 15, 2007, from http://cbif.gc.ca/pls/pp/ppack.jump?p_null=illust&p_type=list&p_sci=comm&p_x=px

Figure 14H-1 Poison Ivy

Government of Canada Poisonous Plants. Retrieved November 15, 2007, from http://cbif.gc.ca/pls/pp/ppack.jump?p_null=illust&p_type=list&p_sci=comm&p_x=px

Figure 14H-2 Poison Oak

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

COMMON POISONOUS PLANTS

Government of Canada Poisonous Plants. Retrieved November 15, 2007, from http://cbif.gc.ca/pls/pp/ppack.jump?p_null=illust&p_type=list&p_sci=comm&p_x=px

Figure 14I-1 Castor Bean

Government of Canada Poisonous Plants. Retrieved November 15, 2007, from http://cbif.gc.ca/pls/pp/ppack.jump?p_null=illust&p_type=list&p_sci=comm&p_x=px

Figure 14I-2 Death Camas

Government of Canada Poisonous Plants. Retrieved November 15, 2007, from http://cbif.gc.ca/pls/pp/ppack.jump?p_null=illust&p_type=list&p_sci=comm&p_x=px

Figure 14I-3 Oleander

Government of Canada Poisonous Plants. Retrieved November 15, 2007, from http://cbif.gc.ca/pls/pp/ppack.jump?p_null=illust&p_type=list&p_sci=comm&p_x=px

Figure 14I-4 Poison Hemlock

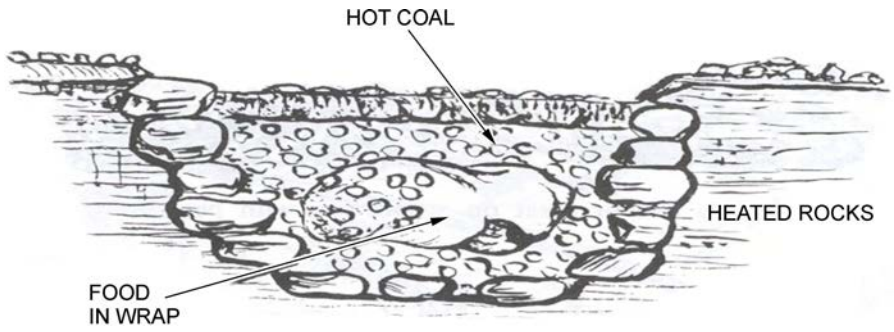
METHODS OF FIELD COOKING HANDOUT

Cooking in the field is an important skill for people who find themselves in a survival situation. Since the human body needs nutrients and energy, cooking is essential to kill harmful bacteria. There are many different ways to cook in the field.

BAKING IN A SHALLOW PIT LINED WITH ROCKS

The best way to bake in the field is in the ground. When food is buried, it will cook faster. To do this:

1. Dig a shallow pit in the ground.
2. Line the pit with rocks.
3. Burn a small fire to get a bed of coals.
4. Place a layer of wet grass on the embers when there are no more open flames and only hot, red embers remaining (if the grass is dry, use water).
5. Place the food (already prepared to be cooked) on top of the wet grass.
6. Use a stick to move around the hot coals to get them as close to the food as possible. Try to put some coals on top of the food.
7. Cover the food with the earth that was dug from the pit.



Department of National Defence, Down But Not Out, Department of National Defence (p.130)

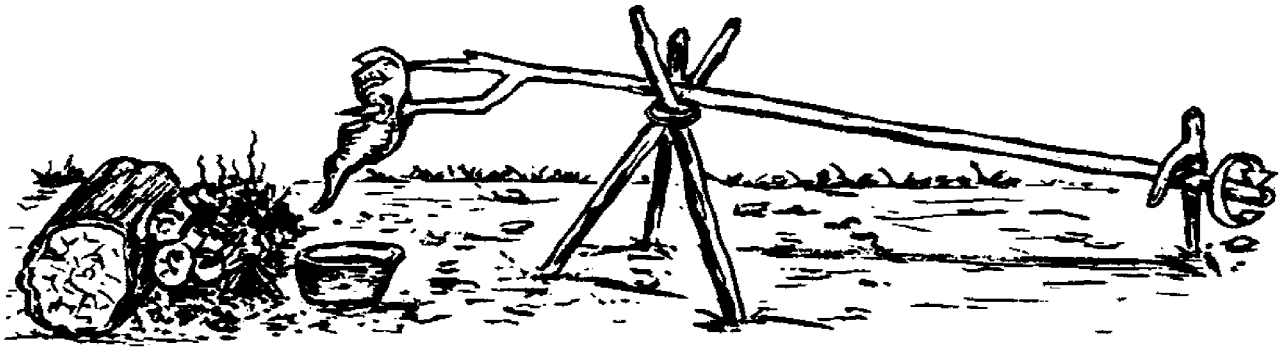
Figure 14J-1 Baking in the Ground

When using this method, it is very difficult to check and see if the food is cooked. Cooking time will vary, depending on what is being cooked. Ensure food is completely cooked before consuming. Place it back in the ground and allow more time if unsure.

ROASTING WITH A STICK

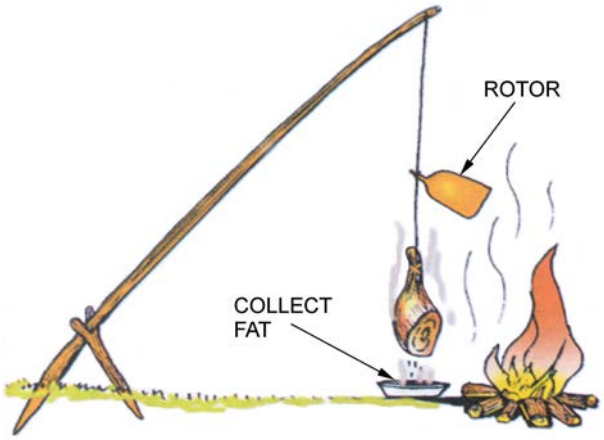
Roasting is an easy method that produces tasty results. Unfortunately, it also produces a lot of grease when cooking meat. To minimize waste, place a pot or container under the roasting food to catch grease. Place the object being cooked on the end of a stick, beside an open fire. The food should not be placed directly over the fire and direct contact with smoke and flame should be avoided as much as possible.

The food will need to be rotated or turned to ensure it is cooked throughout. If hanging the food above the fire, a rotor, made with plastic or heavy paper, can be attached (see Figure 14J-2). The rotor will catch and turn in the wind, turning the food.



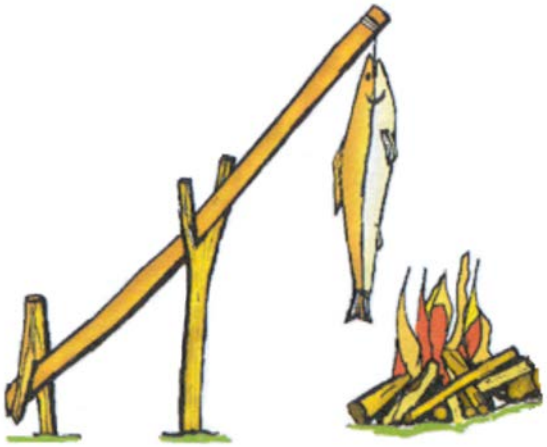
Department of National Defence, Down But Not Out, Department of National Defence (p.129)

Figure 14J-2 Roasting on a Stick



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 442)

Figure 14J-3 Roasting With a Rotor



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 448)

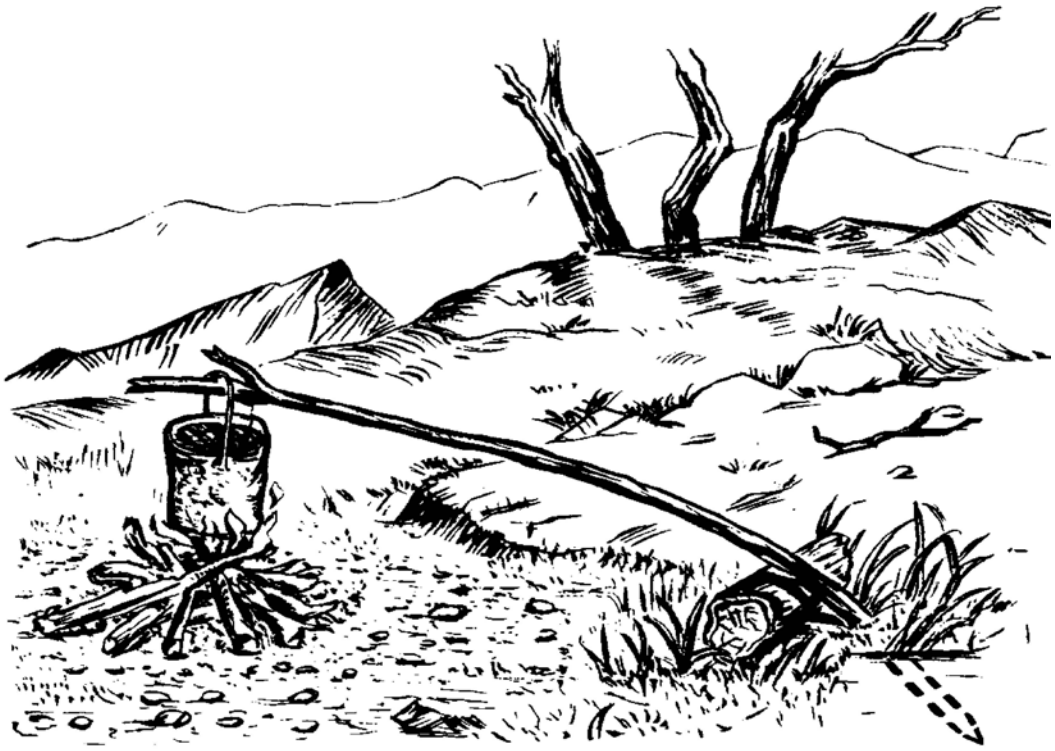
Figure 14J-4 Roasting Fish

BOILING IN A POT

Boiling in a pot can be done over an open fire, the same as on a stove. When boiling in a pot, ensure the pot is sitting straight up on the fire. This can be done by using a grill, wedging it between two pieces of thick wood or placing rocks around to stabilize it. There are many ways to place a pot over a fire using wood (see Figures 14J-5 to 14J-8). It is important to ensure the pot is stable and does not have a risk of falling into the fire.

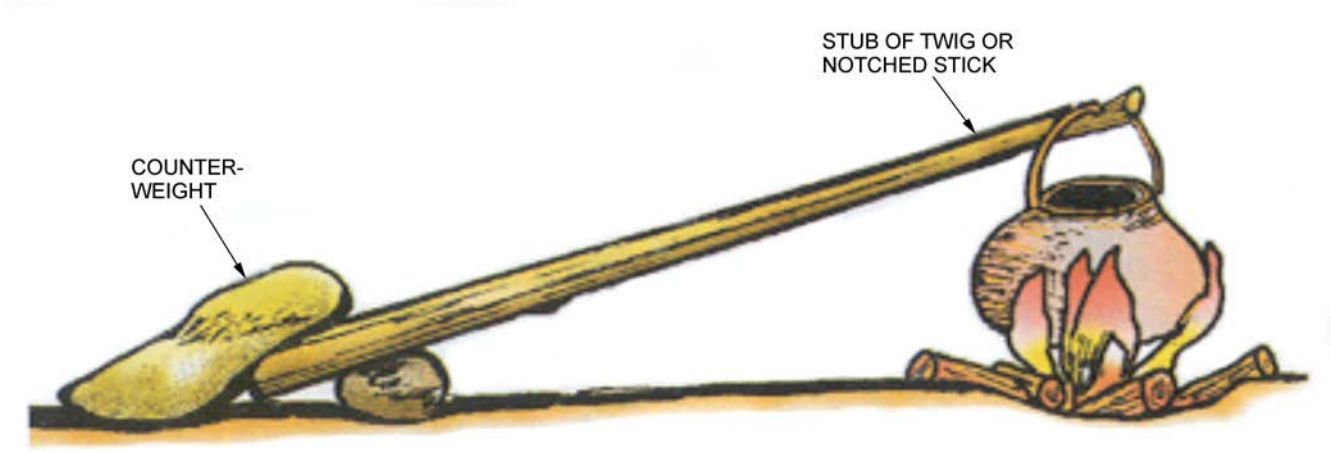
Seeing bubbles is an easy way to tell that water is boiling.

Boiling over an open fire will normally cause soot to form on the outside of the pot. A coating of soapy water on the outside of the pot will make cleaning much easier.



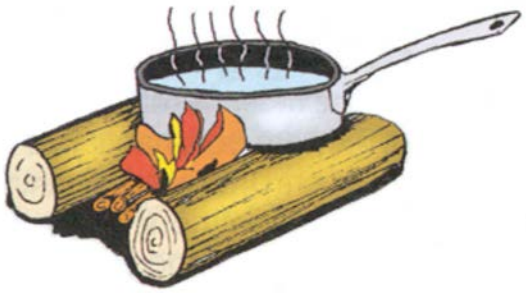
Department of National Defence, Down But Not Out, Department of National Defence (p.128)

Figure 14J-5 Boiling



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 442)

Figure 14J-6 Boiling Using a Counterweight



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 444)

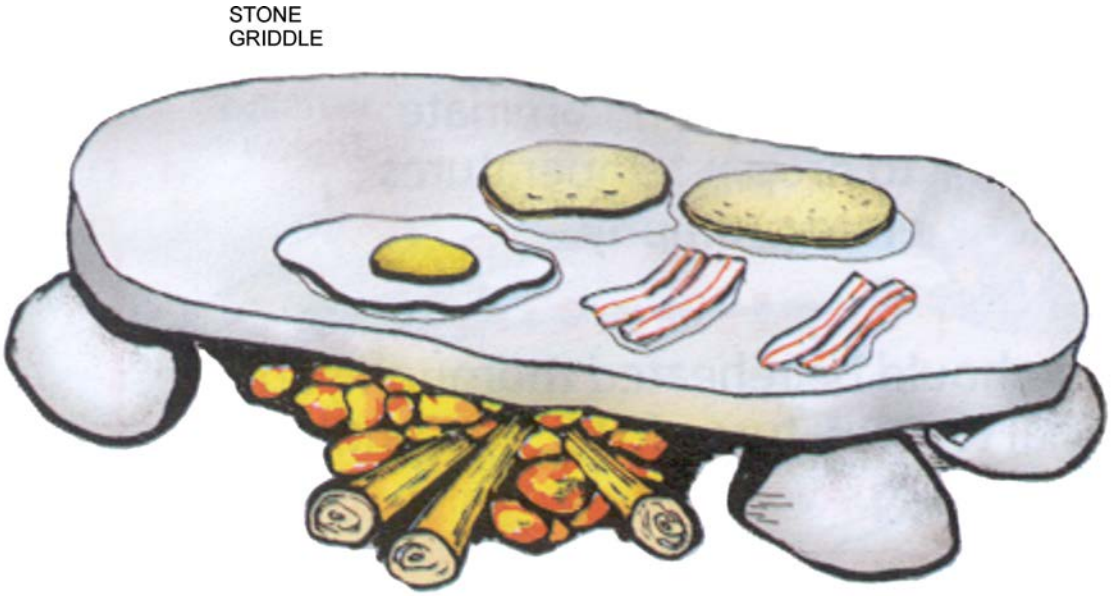
Figure 14J-7 Boiling on an Open Flame With Wood

P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 442)

Figure 14J-8 Boiling on an Open Flame With Rocks

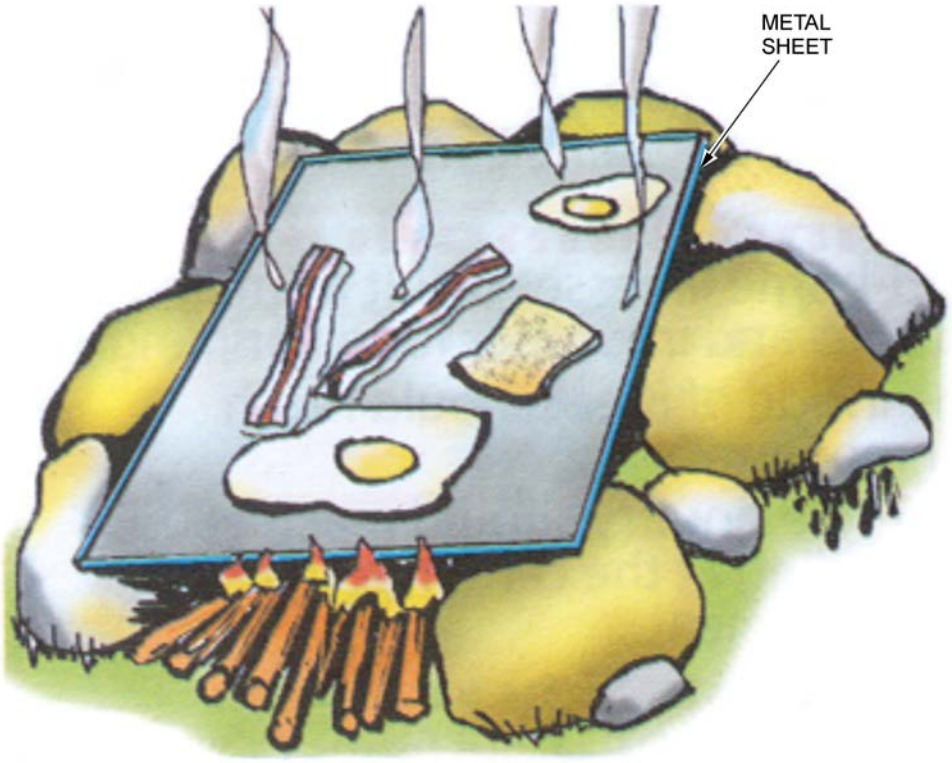
FRYING

Food can be easily fried on a rock or sheet of metal. A rock will hold a lot of heat for a very long time. When using this method to cook, food may easily stick if there is not a sufficient amount of grease.



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 442)

Figure 14J-9 Frying on a Flat Rock



P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 442)

Figure 14J-10 Frying With a Metal Sheet

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 15

PO 325 – IDENTIFY THE COMPETENCIES OF AN OUTDOOR LEADER

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 1

EO M325.01 – PARTICIPATE IN A DISCUSSION ON ARMY CADET EXPEDITION TRAINING

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 to introduce the topic of adventure learning and expeditions, and highlight opportunities available to cadets through expedition training within the Army Cadet Program.

A group discussion was chosen for TPs 2 and 3 as it allows the cadets to interact with their peers and share their knowledge, experiences, opinions and feelings about army cadet expedition training. This helps develop rapport by allowing the cadets to speak in a non-threatening way while helping them refine their ideas. A group discussion also helps cadets improve their listening skills and develop as members of a team.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have participated in a discussion on cadet expedition training.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to understand the history of outdoor programs and the expedition program within army cadets as it is the backbone of the Army Cadet Program. Having the background knowledge of army cadet expedition training will allow cadets to participate in expedition training to the level they choose, as well as having the ability to set personal goals.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss the History of Civilian Outdoor Programs**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

The difference between going outside and an organized outdoor program is in the leadership and facilitation of the activity.

This TP illustrates the changes and growth of outdoor programs.

Adventure learning was initially regarded as lacking a solid base, its benefits unrecognized. However, those that participated in the activities were adamant that there was a personal benefit. It was not until the 1950s that this development began to be recognized. Hence, adventure training and outdoor education have been studied and critiqued since the 1950s.

GROWTH OF ADVENTURE LEARNING PROGRAMS

Adventure learning is a branch of outdoor education that focuses on personal relationships. Trained facilitators present a series of activities that challenge personal and group limits within a supportive environment.

Adventure learning stemmed from a need to better prepare outdoor instructors through formal leadership courses. The current training and education evolved over many decades, and now extends around the globe with the common goal of training outdoor leaders to a high degree of professionalism.

HISTORY OF OUTWARD BOUND CANADA

The Outward Bound organization was founded in 1941 by Kurt Hahn in Wales. Hahn claimed that challenge-based outdoor training would benefit the personal development of students. Outward Bound is a wilderness expedition placing experience and challenge at the forefront of all activities providing students the opportunity to meet challenges.

Outward Bound Canada was started in 1969, and has been challenging youth and adults in the wilderness classroom ever since. Based on the 20th century school originating in Wales, Outward Bound Canada facilitates adventure in the classic sense, dealing with the unknown.

Outward Bound courses are challenging journeys through Canada's wilderness, where every aspect of the outdoors is the classroom. Through this medium, students develop leadership skills, work effectively as a member of team, and progress through technical and decision-making skills.

The name Outward Bound originates from the idea of a ship leaving the harbour and headed to face the challenges and risks of the sea. For sailors, it implied commitment to long journeys and adventure.

EXPERIENTIAL TRAINING IN CANADA

Adventure and experiential training in Canada originally began in Ontario, British Columbia and Nova Scotia. All three provinces have been facilitating experiential training since the 1970s. Now all provinces and territories have a form of experiential training, through local government and/or civilian organizations.

WILDERNESS AND EXPERIENTIAL THERAPY

Wilderness and Experiential Therapy has been used by organizations dealing with at risk youth, youth with disabilities, and young offenders for many years. The idea is to challenge youth in unfamiliar situations.

Wilderness and experiential therapy is a process through which a learner constructs knowledge, skill, and value from direct experience.

This challenge involves experiential education, cultural awareness, skill development and personal growth.

The goal of wilderness and experiential therapy is to provide students with communication, goal setting and strategies for continued success beyond the therapy.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is the purpose of Outward Bound?

Q2. Where did adventure and experiential training start in Canada?

Q3. What is the goal of Wilderness and Experiential Therapy?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Outward Bound is a wilderness expedition placing experience and challenge at the forefront of all activities providing students the opportunity to meet challenges.

A2. Adventure and experiential training in Canada started in Ontario, British Columbia and Nova Scotia.

A3. The goal of wilderness and experiential therapy is to provide students with communication, goal setting and strategies for continued success.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss Army Cadet Expedition Training**

Time: 10 min Method: Guided Discussion

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

The point of the group discussion is to draw the following information from the group using the tips for answering/facilitating discussion and the suggested questions provided.

Cadets can experience many different training streams in the army cadet movement. This TP provides details on the structure of army cadet expedition training.

HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT AND RATIONALE OF THE PROGRAM

Expedition is defined as an organized voyage or journey across land or water, with a specific aim.

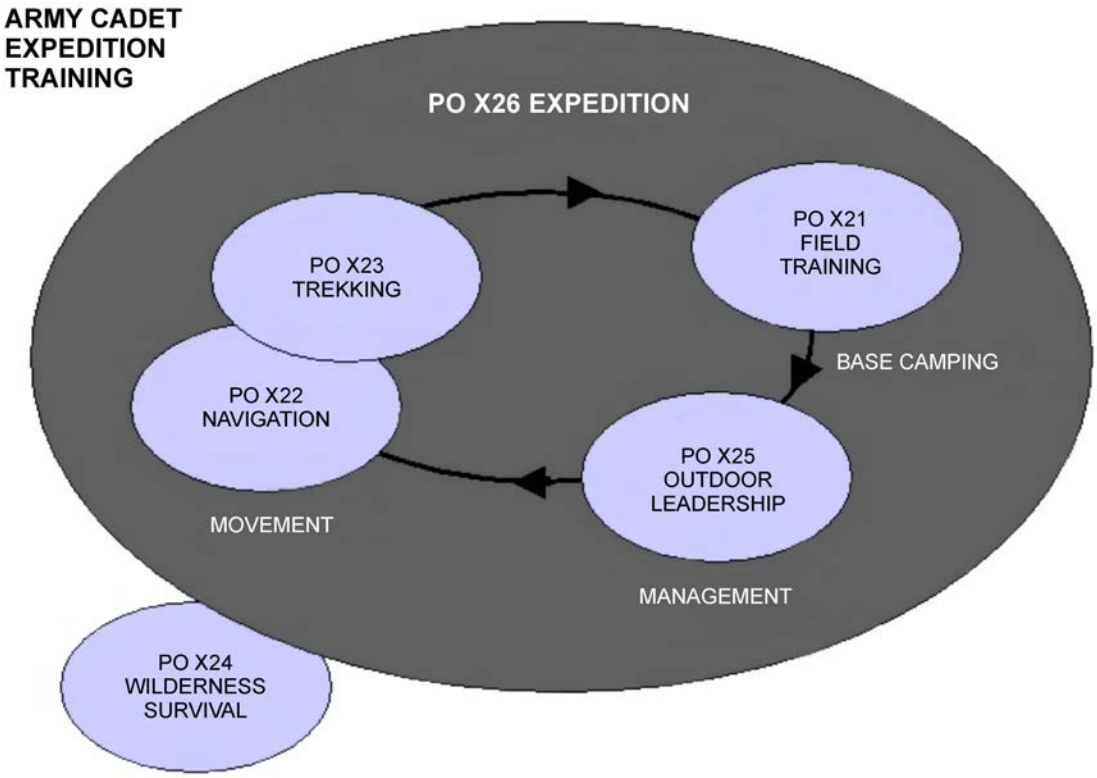
Army cadet expedition training combines many historical army-related field skills with adventure training to create one of the most challenging and rewarding aspects of army cadet training. Current army cadet expedition training evolved from a common vision developed by stakeholders in 1998 and refined over the period of a decade.

Expeditions provide an excellent platform for army cadets to achieve the aims and participant outcomes of the Cadet Program. Specifically, the objectives of expedition training are:

- to ensure all cadets participate in army cadet adventure training activities as part of mandatory training;
- promote retention and recruiting at the corps;
- develop leadership skills, while enhancing self-reliance, self-confidence, self-esteem, and self-discipline; and
- raise the profile and promote the Army Cadet Program.

For more information on the Cadet Program mandate refer to CATO 11-03, *Cadet Program Mandate*.

THE ARMY CADET EXPEDITION MODEL



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 15-1-1 Army Cadet Expedition Model

As illustrated in Figure 15-1-1, expedition is built on training at the corps that incorporates base camping (PO X21 Field Training), movement (PO X22 Navigation and PO X23 Trekking) and management (PO X25 Outdoor Leadership). From this foundation a cadet is well equipped to move to more advanced expeditions at regional expedition centres, Cadet Summer Training Centres, and at a national and international level.

BASE CAMPING

PO X21 Field Training. When a young person joins the Army Cadet Program they may have never spent a night outdoors. Field Training builds the basic skills requisite for a cadet to be able to comfortably live in the outdoors in a stationary supported base camp. In Silver Star, cadets transition from the relatively luxurious accommodations of a supported base camp to the more challenging environment of an expedition campsite in preparation for expeditions that may require a cadet to travel for a number of days carrying all of their support equipment.

MOVEMENT

PO X22 Navigation. In order for a cadet to be capable of travelling by any means during an expedition they must first be capable of navigating. Navigation in the Cadet Program progressively trains a cadet by instructing map using in Green Star, map and compass use in Red Star, map and GPS in Silver Star and GPS navigation in Gold Star. By the time a cadet achieves their Master Cadet qualification, they should be proficient in navigation.

PO X23 Trekking. The cornerstone method of movement during an expedition is trekking, which is defined within the Army Cadet Program as, “arduous outdoor travel on foot.” Cadets begin expedition training with a day hike on Class 1 terrain in Green Star, and the cadet is challenged as they progress through the Army Cadet Program by increasing levels of terrain difficulty and by shifting to backpacking, which is an overnight hike with all required equipment being carried by group members. All expeditions will involve some level of trekking. As expeditions become more advanced, other modes of dynamic travel will be introduced, such as canoeing and mountain biking.

MANAGEMENT

PO X25 Outdoor Leadership. Someone who leads others in the outdoors is an outdoor leader. By the time a cadet is qualified as a master cadet they are able to plan, implement, and lead their peers on an expedition. To provide the cadet with the requisite skills to reach this goal, the Army Cadet Program introduces the cadet to the technical competencies that differentiate an outdoor leader from any other leader. It also provides the cadet with the management skills required to plan an expedition, and prepares the cadet to lead an expedition.

WILDERNESS SURVIVAL

PO X24 Wilderness Survival. Peripheral to any expedition are the skills to survive if one becomes lost in the wilderness. PO X24 Wilderness Survival provides cadets with the basic skills that may increase their chance of survival.

THE ROLE OF THE EXPEDITION CENTRE

Regional expedition centres conduct training that is beyond the scope of the average cadet corps. Expedition centres use adult staff with considerable expedition and adventure training experience to provide cadets with an experience beyond the resources of an average corps. Cadets attending an expedition centre will be challenged physically and mentally while building hard and soft expedition skills.

SKILL DEVELOPMENT

Hard Skill Development. Hard skills are solid, tangible, and measurable (also called technical skills). Hard skills are the technical competencies needed to conduct activities skillfully and safely. Examples of hard skills are the ability to climb a certain level of the Yosemite Decimal System (YDS), or paddle a specific class of river. Hard skills are easy to learn, and often involve taking a course.

Soft Skill Development. Soft skills are amorphous and intangible, best defined as the interpersonal and people skills required during an activity. These skills include, but are not limited to, communication, listening, understanding and motivating. Soft skills are harder to learn and effective leaders constantly strive to improve these skills.

The activities authorized for adventure training and expeditions are located in A-CR-CCP-951/PT-002, *Royal Canadian Army Cadets Adventure Training Safety Standards* online at www.cadets.ca.

GROUP DISCUSSION

TIPS FOR ANSWERING/FACILITATING DISCUSSION

- Establish ground rules for discussion, eg, everyone should listen respectfully; don't interrupt; only one person speaks at a time; no one's ideas should be made fun of; you can disagree with ideas but not with the person; try to understand others as much as you hope they understand you; etc.
- Sit the group in a circle, making sure all cadets can be seen by everyone else.
- Ask questions that will provoke thought; in other words avoid questions with yes or no answers.
- Manage time by ensuring the cadets stay on topic.
- Listen and respond in a way that indicates you have heard and understood the cadet. This can be done by paraphrasing their ideas.
- Give the cadets time to respond to your questions.
- Ensure every cadet has an opportunity to participate. One option is to go around the group and have each cadet answer the question with a short answer. Cadets must also have the option to pass if they wish.
- Additional questions should be prepared ahead of time.

SUGGESTED QUESTIONS

Q1. What subjects are used within expedition training?

Q2. What role does outdoor leadership play in expedition training?

Q3. What is the role of the expedition centre?

Q4. Define hard skills.

Q5. Define soft skills.

Other questions and answers will develop throughout the group discussion. The group discussion should not be limited to only those suggested.

Reinforce those answers given and comments made during the group discussion, ensuring the teaching point has been covered.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadet's participation in the group discussion will serve as confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 3 **Discuss Opportunities Within Army Cadet Expedition Training**

Time: 10 min Method: Guided Discussion

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

The point of the group discussion is to draw the following information from the group using the tips for answering/facilitating discussion and the suggested questions provided.

Adventure training begins at the corps in Green Star, and all Silver Star cadets have an opportunity to participate in corps expedition training.

REGIONAL EXPEDITION CENTRE TRAINING

Regional Expedition Centre training is conducted by the regions and is mandatory training for all Silver Star, Gold Star and Master Cadets. This training will be conducted over one weekend for silver and gold star cadets, with longer expeditions for master cadets, and combines cadets from corps in a common geographic area.

Refer to joining instructions published by the RCSU for further information.

Although it is possible for cadets to participate in many different activities, the listed activities authorized by D Cdts & JCR are referred to in CATO 41-05, *Royal Canadian Army Cadet Expedition Program*.

MASTER CADET EXPEDITION TRAINING

Each Regional Cadet Support Unit (RCSU) develops and implements regional expeditions. This is supported solely by the RCSU, and cadets are selected from the region.

These expeditions are 4–10 days in duration, provide a personal sense of accomplishment, and are based on an experiential approach where cadets do a minimum of 75 percent adventure-based activities. The level of challenge is high and exceeds that which can be done at the zone level.

Examples of regional expedition sites include the Cathedral Mountains, Petawawa River, Dolomite Pass, and Bay of Fundy.

Selection processes for regional expeditions will be listed in the regional orders, and may include:

- a minimum star qualification,
- a minimum age requirement,
- participation at zone level activities,
- a fitness test, and/or
- medical fitness IAW CATO 16-02, *Selection of Cadets for Summer Training–Medical Considerations*.

NATIONAL EXPEDITION TRAINING

National expeditions take two forms: domestic and international. These expeditions are conducted to develop and retain senior cadets and enhance their ability to assist in delivering expedition activities.

Domestic Expedition

Since 2001, domestic expeditions have been conducted annually within Canada. Sixteen cadets are selected to participate in these expeditions which are 10–14 days in duration and occur in many of Canada's best parks and wilderness areas.

International Expeditions

Every year in September, 16 cadets take part in an international expedition. These expeditions are approximately 14 days in duration and are held in locations worldwide. A few examples of these expeditions include hiking in Australia, trekking in Korea, climbing volcanoes in Costa Rica, and mountaineering in the French and Italian Alps.

Selection processes for domestic and international expeditions will be listed in the national directives, and may include:

- a minimum star qualification,
- a minimum age requirement,
- participation at expedition centre activities,
- a fitness test, and/or
- medical fitness IAW CATO 16-02, *Selection of Cadets for Summer Training–Medical Considerations*.

National and international expedition information can be found at the national cadet website (www.cadets.ca) or at The Army Cadet League of Canada's website (www.armycadetleague.ca).

GROUP DISCUSSION

TIPS FOR ANSWERING/FACILITATING DISCUSSION

- Establish ground rules for discussion, eg, everyone should listen respectfully; don't interrupt; only one person speaks at a time; no one's ideas should be made fun of; you can disagree with ideas but not with the person; try to understand others as much as you hope they understand you; etc.
- Sit the group in a circle, making sure all cadets can be seen by everyone else.
- Ask questions that will provoke thought; in other words avoid questions with yes or no answers.
- Manage time by ensuring the cadets stay on topic.
- Listen and respond in a way that indicates you have heard and understood the cadet. This can be done by paraphrasing their ideas.
- Give the cadets time to respond to your questions.
- Ensure every cadet has an opportunity to participate. One option is to go around the group and have each cadet answer the question with a short answer. Cadets must also have the option to pass if they wish.
- Additional questions should be prepared ahead of time.

SUGGESTED QUESTIONS

Q1. When does expedition training begin?

Q2. What is expedition centre training?

Q3. Explain Master Cadet expedition training.

Q4. What selection criteria may be included for domestic and international expeditions?

Q5. Where can expedition information be found?

Other questions and answers will develop throughout the group discussion. The group discussion should not be limited to only those suggested.

Reinforce those answers given and comments made during the group discussion, ensuring the teaching point has been covered.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadet's participation in the group discussion will serve as confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. Give a brief description of the growth of adventure learning programs.

Q2. What are the objectives of army cadet expedition training?

Q3. What are some prerequisites for a national expedition?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Adventure learning programs grew with an increased demand for more reliable and concrete training for instructors.

A2. The objectives of Army Cadet Expedition Training are:

- to ensure all cadets participate in army cadet adventure training activities as part of mandatory training;
- to promote retention and recruiting at the corps;
- to develop leadership skills, while enhancing self-reliance, self-confidence, self-esteem, and self-discipline; and
- to raise the profile and promote the Army Cadet Program.

A3. The minimum prerequisites for participation in a national expedition are:

- hold a minimum star qualification,
- meet a minimum age requirement,
- have participated at zone level activities,
- pass a fitness test, and/or
- be medically fit IAW CATO 16-02, *Selection of Cadets for Summer Training–Medical Considerations*.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Expedition training is exciting and challenging, includes team-building and all the benefits found within the Army Cadet Program. The skills and knowledge acquired during expedition training are transferable to many other aspects of army cadet training as well as civilian adventure activities.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

A2-001 A-CR-CCP-951/PT-002 Director Cadets 3. (2006). *Royal Canadian Army Cadets Adventure Training Safety Standards*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

A2-035 Director Cadets 4. (2006). CATO 41-05, *Army Cadet Expedition Program*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C2-034 (ISBN 0-87322-637-2) Priest, S., & Gass, M. (2005). *Effective Leadership in Adventure Programming* (2nd ed.). Windsor, ON: Human Kinetics Publishing Inc.

C2-169 Outward Bound Canada. (2008). *What is Outward Bound?* Retrieved March 3, 2008 from www.outwardbound.ca.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 2

EO M325.02 – LIST THE COMPETENCIES OF AN OUTDOOR LEADER (OL)

Total Time: 60 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

When setting the jigsaw activity, ensure there is enough room for each group to work independently and free from interruptions by other groups.

Photocopy:

- the scenario located at Annex A (one per cadet),
- the competencies of an OL information cards located at Annexes B to D (three copies),
- the expert activity sheets located at Annex E (one per cadet),
- the competencies of an OL handout located at Annex F (one per cadet), and
- the homework assignment located at Annex G (one per cadet).

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 as it is an interactive way for cadets to define an OL.

An in-class activity was chosen for TP 2 as an interactive way to provoke thought and stimulate interest in the competencies of an OL within a peer setting.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to define the term OL and list the competencies of an OL.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to be able to list the competencies of an OL to ensure that when the cadet is placed in a team leader role while participating in an adventure activity they know what is required of them. The competencies of an OL provide cadets with a foundation on which to develop their skills as an OL. Understanding and subscribing to these competencies will benefit the cadet during cadet adventure training activities, and during civilian outdoor experiences.

Teaching Point 1 **Define an OL**

Time: 15 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Some of the information included in this TP will be a review for the cadets. It is important to explain the uniqueness of an OL and how it differs from that of a regular leader at the home corps.

LEADERSHIP

The term leadership can be interpreted in many different ways. It is defined to meet the needs of goals of the organization, however, all meanings have a common basis or foundation. In most cases, the definition is tailored to fit the activity or organization under which it has been developed.

The Canadian Forces (CF) defines leadership as “directly or indirectly influencing others, by means of formal authority or personal attributes, to act in accordance with one’s intent to a shared purpose”. The CF definition is generic, value-neutral and broadly inclusive of all forms of leadership across a wide range of settings and times.

DISTINCTION BETWEEN LEADERSHIP AND LEADERS

It is important to note that there should be a distinction between the concept of leadership and the ways in which an individual becomes a leader.

Leadership

Leadership is a process of influence. In most informal group settings, people who become group leaders influence other group members to create, identify, work toward, achieve, and share mutually acceptable goals. In these types of situations, more than one group member often emerges to fulfill different leadership responsibilities.

Competent leadership requires formal training, especially in outdoor situations where bad leadership can have disastrous consequences.

Leader

A leader is a person with certain qualities or traits exercising a definite and particular role in relation to others. The role they exercise is a set of expected behaviours associated with a person’s position in a group.

It is important for cadets to understand how the concept of leadership influences the cadets’ ability to become a leader. While the terms may seem interchangeable, they are not. Leadership allows for the cadet to develop their skills as a leader even in situations where they are not the leader of the group.

EXPECTATIONS OF A LEADER

Any person who has been a member of a team, participating in an activity, whether indoors or outdoors, has developed a list of expectations they believe the leader of their group should possess. As an individual participating in an activity, people expect leaders to:

- be good at planning and organizing;
- be confident;
- be technically competent, which for OLs includes competency in basic skills such as first aid, route finding and predicting the weather;
- care for other people;
- make good decisions;
- be trustworthy;
- communicate well;
- inspire others to be their best;
- build and maintain morale;
- be good teachers and coaches;
- be able to deal with difficult people and handle conflicts;
- be able to build and guide teams; and
- anticipate problems and deal with them proactively.

QUALITIES OF AN OL

The responsibilities associated with being an OL can, at times, seem overwhelming. It is not just about possessing leadership skills. To be an effective OL, the leader should possess the following qualities:

- courage,
- tenacity,
- humility,
- warmth,
- enthusiasm,
- integrity,
- patience,
- competency,
- strength of character,
- desire to be a leader,
- humour, and
- organizational skills.

THE UNIQUE SKILL OF BEING AN OL

Being an OL requires a different set of skills, qualifications, competencies and qualities than that of a leader in other settings. Incorporating these skills, qualifications and competencies into daily routine while participating in an outdoor adventure activity (OAA) is what makes an individual an OL. OLs:

- are unique as they are usually appointed into the position they hold in the group;
- are motivated and enjoy being outside and instilling this enjoyment in the individuals they lead;
- have previous outdoor experiences that provide them with a strong basis from which to lead;
- are required to use the process of group interaction and cooperation as a basis for the facilitation of personal and social growth of the members in their group;
- are responsible to ensure the safety of the individuals engaging in OAA under their leadership;
- aim to ensure the protection and preservation of the natural environments into which people venture for OAA; and
- aim to enhance the quality of OAA for individuals they are leading.

Who Will Lead the Group?

A leader is either appointed or emerges from the membership to lead. Groups may naturally be drawn to the individual who exhibits the best leadership qualities. Some groups may naturally defer to the individual with the most experience while other groups may feel that no one person needs to be designated as the leader and leadership should be shared among the members of the group.

Designated Leader. When a person is appointed as the leader of a group, they become the designated leader. OLs will usually find themselves in this role. They are appointed due to their knowledge and experience in the activities being completed.

HARD AND SOFT SKILL COMPETENCY

Being a leader in the outdoors requires a different set of hard and soft skills than that of a leader in other settings. OLs must be able to incorporate both types of these skills into their daily routine while participating in OAA.

Hard Skills

Hard skills are the technical, safety and environmental skills associated with being an OL. There is no requirement for individuals to master every skill; however, competency with a wide variety of skills is encouraged. As well, it is important for OLs to know their limitations. The safety of the individuals in the group relies on the ability of the OL to carry out the specific activity.

Examples of hard skills include:

- canoeing,
- mountain biking,
- hiking,
- mountaineering,
- kayaking,
- rock climbing,

- caving,
- ice climbing,
- navigating,
- camping, and
- winter hiking.

Soft Skills

Soft skills complement hard skills. Being an excellent kayaker does not mean that an individual will be an effective OL. There has to be a balance between hard and soft skills. Soft skills are divided into the categories of instruction, organization and facilitation. Unfortunately, soft skill development is sometimes neglected.

DEFINITION OF AN OL

An OL is an individual who leads groups and individuals into natural settings using a variety of modes of transportation such as hiking, mountain biking, canoeing, kayaking, mountaineering, etc. An OL must combine their hard skill competencies with soft skills in order to provide groups and individuals with a positive, safe and challenging outdoor experience. It is the responsibility of an OL to ensure the protection and preservation of the natural environments into which they bring people for an OAA.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What qualities should an OL possess in order to be effective?

Q2. What type of leader is an OL?

Q3. What are some examples of hard skills?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. To be an effective OL, the leader should possess the following qualities:

- courage,
- tenacity,
- humility,
- warmth,
- enthusiasm,
- integrity,
- patience,
- competency,
- strength of character,
- desire to be a leader,
- humour, and

- organizational skills.

A2. OLs are usually designated leaders because they are appointed due to their knowledge and experience in the activities being completed.

A3. Examples of hard skills are:

- canoeing,
- mountain biking,
- hiking,
- mountaineering,
- kayaking,
- rock climbing,
- caving,
- ice climbing,
- navigating,
- camping, and
- winter hiking.

Teaching Point 2 **Conduct an Activity Where the Cadet Will List and Discuss the Competencies of an OL**

Time: 40 min Method: In-Class Activity

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

SELF-AWARENESS AND PROFESSIONAL CONDUCT

Being Self-Aware

A competent OL needs to be self-aware. To be self-aware is to be conscious of one's character, feelings and motives. As an OL, who is responsible for the safety, well-being and organization of a group of people, being self-aware ensures a higher quality experience for all group members. Being aware of individual feelings and motives will allow the OL to better relate to their group members.

Being Aware of One's Personal Abilities and Limitations

Self-awareness starts with a clear understanding of one's personal abilities and limitations. Without a clear sense of their own abilities and limitations, OLs will have difficulty setting challenges appropriate to the abilities and limitations of group members. As well, there may be a tendency to set the bar too high, which may jeopardize the emotional and physical safety of the members of the group they are leading. This can result in the OL becoming a possible danger to the group and diminishing the quality of the experience for all.

Being Mindful of All Actions

Good OLs are always mindful – intentional – in their actions. They act with regard to the ultimate goals of the group experience, which is a balance between being attentive to the needs of the group members and being attentive to the tasks that must be accomplished.

Managing Stress

Stress can be caused by a number of factors. While some may believe that stress caused by physical danger is the hardest to manage, this is not the case. Situations that place stress on the OL are often a lot less dramatic than a singular event such as a rope breaking during a climbing activity. The event happens so fast that adrenalin kicks in before stress can occur. Instead, it is the ordinariness of the situation which makes it so stressful. For example, a rainstorm catches a group 5 km (3 miles) away from the trailhead. Members force their own frustrations on the group leader, who not only has to deal with the group complaints, but also with the stream of rain running down the neck of their own parka.

Demonstrating Professional Conduct

OLs are placed in a position of responsibility and as such must conduct themselves accordingly in all situations. A lack of professional conduct could result in situations such as an injury during a paddling activity, or a breakdown in group dynamics while on an OAA. It is the inherent risk associated with OAA that makes professional conduct so important for an OL. Professional conduct is characterized through demonstration of the following qualities:

- trustworthiness,
- flexibility,
- approachability,
- commitment,
- awareness of the position of authority, and
- modelling.

CONFLICT MANAGEMENT

Conflicts in OAAs are inevitable. The challenge, for the OL, is to stop the conflict before it escalates, or deal with it quickly and effectively as possible. Most conflicts that occur in outdoor situations are a result of:

- weather conditions;
- varying levels of experience among group members;
- the challenging nature of the activity; and
- personalities of group members.

An OL who is able to communicate clearly with all group members will be better suited to manage conflict. There are always going to be situations where the OL is required to interact with difficult people. A group member who was a pleasure to have around at the beginning of a 10-day expedition, and who got along with everyone at the campsite, may, by Day 8, have blisters from ill-fitting boots and be arguing with everyone. It becomes the responsibility of the OL to deal with this situation. Conflict while on an expedition is like a wound: unless it is dealt with, it will just keep spreading and festering. Dealing with conflict is not a pleasant task, however, the first step is to always speak with the individual and discuss the issues in a calm and sensitive manner.

DECISION MAKING AND JUDGMENT

Decision Making. Decision making is the process of choosing the best option from a collection of possible options. In order to make this choice, the OL will be required to use their judgment.

Judgment. Judgment is an informed opinion based on past experiences. Judgment also provides OLs with the ability to anticipate problems before they occur. Their experience in leading people during an OAA provides them the foresight to know when something is going well or when it needs adjustment.

OLs are placed in the position because of the experience they have. It is then assumed that when leading a group, they will be qualified to make decisions that affect the safety and welfare of the group. That is not to say that OLs have to make the “big” decisions on their own: being able to communicate with fellow group members and use their experience and ideas to help make a decision is also an integral part of making a decision. An OL, who has completed the same route up a mountain, may benefit from another individual’s point of view before deciding whether or not to continue an ascent, or halt due to a lack of motivation in group members.

Decision making is a process which should be carried out decisively. Once an OL has considered their options and reached a decision, they should stick with it, unless circumstances change. They should not allow themselves to be swayed by other group members. They have the experience, have assessed the factors and have reached a decision. In OAA, where safety is always a concern, the OL must have confidence in the decisions they make and the group must have confidence in the decisions the OL has made.

FACILITATION OF THE EXPEDITION EXPERIENCE

Leading others in OAA does not guarantee that learning will occur. An outdoor experience can bring joy and wonder, and can help people develop new relationships and make discoveries. An outdoor experience encourages people to learn things about themselves, others and the outdoors.

It is possible to be outdoors and miss these opportunities or not enjoy the experience. Some participants do not want to learn in the outdoors:

- it feels unsafe in its newness;
- they have had previous negative experiences; or
- they are not interested in getting the most out of the experience.

An effective OL can facilitate the experience and shift the outdoor experience from a mere excursion in the outdoors to a dynamic learning experience.

Facilitation is the process of moving a group or individual toward a desired outcome. A facilitator provides the means for making experiences possible. For an OL, facilitation is a skill which fosters productive group dynamics, enabling all members to work toward completing the OAA, in a safe and enjoyable manner, while also developing interpersonal relationships.

OLs will often be required to:

- resolve conflicts;
- communicate effectively;
- foster personal trust and group cooperation; and
- debrief and guide reflection during and following an OAA.

TECHNICIAL ABILITIES

OLs may possess excellent facilitations skills and may be extremely effective at organizing an OAA, however, without technical ability to serve as the foundation for conducting the activity, these skills cannot be used. Technical abilities are organized into two main areas – generic competency skills and specific competencies.

Generic Competency Skills

Generic competency skills are those skills in which, no matter the OAA, an OL must be competent. They include:

- weather prediction,
- wilderness first aid,
- trip planning,
- navigation,
- camp skills,
- general outdoor skills,
- physical fitness, and
- mental awareness.

Specific Competency Skills

Specific competency skills are those skills unique to the OAA the OL will be leading. Examples include:

- trekking,
- mountain biking,
- abseiling,
- climbing,
- caving,
- canoeing, and
- kayaking.

There is no requirement for an OL to be an expert in all activities. In many cases they choose activities that interest them the most and capitalize on the experiences they offer. Proficiency in an OAA can only be gained through experience. The more experience OLs gain, the more competent they become.

OLs cannot allow their skills to decay; they should continuously participate in professional development training to refresh their knowledge and skills. It is the responsibility of the OL to stay up-to-date in the areas in which they lead others.

INSTRUCTIONAL TECHNIQUES

Instructional skills are important because OLs often have the opportunity to teach and thus share important skills and knowledge with the people they lead. OLs with the responsibility of teaching others need to be well versed in skills such as using instructional aids, developing skill lesson plans and employing different teaching strategies. Experiential education is the primary method by which OLs deliver their educational content. Every lesson involves some degree of explanation and demonstration, and a greater degree of practice – which gives individuals the opportunity to learn skills in a hands-on manner.

ENVIRONMENTAL STEWARDSHIP

Environmental stewardship is a three-faceted term that takes into account environmental ethics, ecological literacy and parks and protected areas management. With the environment experiencing the heavy impact of current culture, it is OLs who must alter the attitudes of others toward preserving and conserving the environment. When leading groups, OLs must practice and enforce the environmental ethical code, represented by the seven principles of Leave No Trace, which serve as the basis for ecologically responsible interactions with the natural environment.

Ecological literacy entails thinking and acting critically in an environmental context, especially when making decisions and exercising judgment regarding environmental problems.

Many of the areas OLs use to conduct OAAs are managed by provincial and national agencies. It is critical that OLs are aware of the policies and regulations of the park/conservation area they are using and abide by these rules. The park/conservation area has implemented these policies and regulations as a means to reduce the environmental impact while still allowing people to enjoy the outdoor setting. OLs must understand that every action has the potential to impact the natural environment and that they must take the necessary precautions to protect the environment when travelling or camping outdoors. As well, they must teach low-impact camping, waste management and travelling techniques to their groups.

PROGRAM MANAGEMENT

Program management consists of two main areas – employing safety and risk management, and planning, organizing and managing. OAAs are, for the most part, characterized by the inherent risk they possess. Risk is one of the critical components that make outdoor programming so popular and successful. OLs must be able to balance risk and safety – too much risk and the danger of the experience will become unreasonable; too much safety and the activity will fail to remain adventurous. As an OL, there is a responsibility to assess the OAA for risk, manage risk during the activity and develop a contingency plan to ensure the safety of all participants. Most aspects of risk management are carried out during the planning phase of an activity.

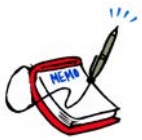
OLs are required to complete detailed planning for trips/activities they lead. Proper planning is essential for any OAA and when it is not carried out thoroughly, the possibility for tragedy increases. Trip/activity plans include:

- emergency management details,
- contingency plans,
- time control plans,
- energy control plans,
- ration plans,
- communication plans, and
- equipment/resource procurement, etc.

Once a plan has been developed, the ability to implement the plan is based on the OL’s organizational skills. Implementation involves creating a system for getting tasks done and requires the ability to coordinate the various components of the plan so that it comes together to create a unified whole.

Management skills involve the ability of the OL to direct the group in an efficient manner to complete all required tasks throughout the OAA. For example, when arriving at the campsite, after a long day of paddling, an organized OL will have already divided the group into sub-groups to allow for multi-tasking to ensure the campsite is set up, water is collected, the fire is started and supper is prepared.

ACTIVITY



A cooperative learning strategy called a jigsaw structure will be used for this activity.

A jigsaw structure allows each cadet, as a member of a team, to become an “expert” in their part of the assignment. They do this by developing communication strategies that will allow them to interpret information they receive, both on their own and as a contributing member of a team, and by presenting the information as a response.

Each cadet in a team will receive the information to complete only their part. The cadets who are responsible for the same part join together and form a new, temporary expert team whose purpose is to master the ideas in their part and to develop strategies for communicating/presenting what they have learned to the other cadets in their original team.

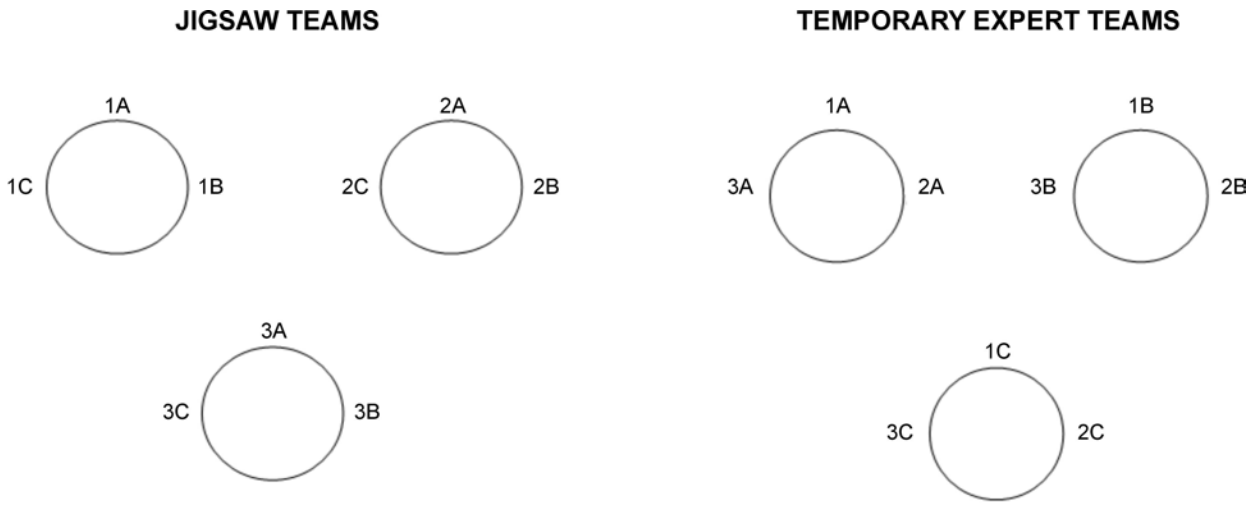
Cadets must work together to accomplish a common goal which means that each cadet’s part, and each cadet, is essential. This structure encourages teamwork and it requires the cadets to be actively engaged in the process. It facilitates the development of a depth of knowledge not possible when learning material individually.

There are high expectations and responsibilities placed on each cadet in the jigsaw structure, therefore sufficient time should be taken to explain the process and requirements before beginning the activity as some cadets may find it to be complex.

For the purpose of this activity, there will be two sets of teams formed (as described in the activity instructions):

- jigsaw teams, and
- temporary expert teams.

Refer to Figure 15-2-1 for a visual representation of the format for these teams using six cadets per jigsaw team.



Director Cadets 3, 2008, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 15-2-1 Format of Jigsaw Activity Groups

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to have the cadets list and discuss the competencies of an OL.

RESOURCES

- Scenario (located at Annex A),
- Competencies of an OL information cards (located at Annexes B to D),
- Expert activity sheets (located at Annex E),
- Competencies of an OL handout (located at Annex F),
- Pen/pencil, and
- Notebook.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

Arrange the classroom for group work.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

To facilitate this activity there should be three groups, with at least three cadets in each group. In situations where there are more than three cadets, assign two cadets the same information card. In situations where there are less than nine cadets in the class, divide the cadets into two groups and have each group discuss three of the six competencies. Then have each group present their material. Timings will remain the same.

1. Explain the following to the cadets:
   a. they will be participating in a jigsaw activity about the competencies of an OL, in which each member of their team will be responsible for 2–3 different competencies;
   b. they will be divided into jigsaw teams of three cadets, and each cadet will be given a competencies of an OL information card and scenario to review and a worksheet to guide them through the activity;
   c. after reviewing the scenario and their competencies of an OL information card, cadets will then form temporary expert teams by regrouping with the cadets from the other jigsaw teams who have the same competencies of an OL information card they do;
   d. temporary expert teams will work together to complete their expert activity sheets and develop a strategy to present the information to their jigsaw teams; and
   e. they will return to their jigsaw teams and take turns presenting information about their competencies and will note key points while other members are presenting.
2. Distribute the scenario to each cadet.
3. Divide the cadets into equal jigsaw teams of three, creating a maximum of three teams. Groups should be as heterogeneous as possible in terms of ability.
4. Appoint one cadet in each team to be the leader.

5. Distribute the competencies of an OL information cards to each group.
6. Each group member will select one of the three information cards (A to C); each card includes information on two or three competencies.
7. Provide cadets five minutes to read through the scenario and their information cards.
8. Have cadets form temporary expert teams by regrouping with the cadets from the other jigsaw teams who have the same information card they do.
9. Distribute expert activity sheets to each expert team.
10. Provide cadets 15 minutes to discuss and complete their activity sheets and develop a strategy to present the information back in their jigsaw team.

It is not uncommon in jigsaw activity for a confident cadet to dominate the conversation or try to control the group; ensure all cadets are contributing.

11. Circulate among the groups and assist the cadets as necessary, offering suggestions and advice for improvement.
12. Have cadets return to their jigsaw teams.
13. Provide cadets 20 minutes to present information gathered in their expert team to the members of their jigsaw team, under the direction of the group leader.
14. Debrief the cadets.
15. Distribute competencies of an OL handout.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets' participation in the in-class activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the in-class activity will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

Distribute homework assignment located at Annex G. Cadets will be required to complete and hand in the assignment for the next training session.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

OLs are a critical aspect of the army cadet adventure training program. The presence of knowledgeable, conscientious OLs during cadet activities will influence the safety and success of the activity. The competencies of an OL are the skills and ideals which can be learned but must be practiced in order to master.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

C2-150 (ISBN 0-89886-502-6) Graham, J. (1997). *Outdoor Leadership: Technique, Common Sense and Self-Confidence*. Seattle, WA: The Mountaineers.

C2-151 (ISBN 0-7360-4709-3) Gilbertson, K., Bates, T., McLaughlin, T., & Ewert, A. (2006). *Outdoor Education: Methods and Strategies*. Windsor, ON: Human Kinetics.

C2-152 (ISBN 1-898555-09-5) Ogilvie, K. (1993). *Leading and Managing Groups in the Outdoors: New Revised Edition*. Cumbria, England: The Institute for Outdoor Learning.

C2-153 (ISBN 0-7360-5731-5) Martin, B., Cashel, C., Wagstaff, M., & Breunig, M. (2006). *Outdoor Leadership: Theory and Practice*. Windsor, ON: Human Kinetics.

C2-154 (ISBN 0-87322-637-2) Priest, S., & Gass, M. (1997). *Effective Leadership in Adventure Programming*. Windsor, ON: Human Kinetics.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 3

EO M325.03 – DISCUSS SELF-AWARENESS AND PROFESSIONAL CONDUCT AS A COMPETENCY OF AN OUTDOOR LEADER (OL)

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Photocopy the scenario located at Annex H for each cadet.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

A group discussion was chosen for TP 1 as it allows the cadet to interact with their peers and share their knowledge, opinions and feelings about self-awareness.

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 2 to orient the cadet to professional conduct as a competency of an OL.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

The review for this lesson is from EO M325.02 (List the Competencies of an Outdoor Leader [OL], Section 2):

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is an OL?

Q2. What are the eight competencies of an OL?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. An OL is an individual who leads groups and individuals into natural settings using a variety of modes of transportation such as hiking, mountain biking, canoeing, kayaking, mountaineering, etc. OLs must combine their technical skill competencies with personal and interpersonal skills in order to provide groups and individuals with a positive, safe and challenging outdoor adventure activity (OAA). It is the responsibility of an OL to ensure the protection and preservation of the natural environments into which they bring people for an OAA.

A2. The eight competencies of an OL are:

- self-awareness and professional conduct,
- conflict management,
- decision making and judgment,
- facilitation of the expedition experience,
- technical abilities,
- instructional techniques,
- environmental stewardship, and
- program management.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have discussed self-awareness and professional conduct as a competency of an OL.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to further investigate the OL competency of self-awareness and professional conduct because as a new OL this competency shapes their daily experiences as an OL. Being cognizant of personal behaviour and how an individual presents themselves to others is an important aspect of being a leader. The inherent risk associated with outdoor activities adds to the importance of an OL acting appropriately while leading groups.

Teaching Point 1 **Conduct a Group Discussion on Self-Awareness**

Time: 15 min Method: Group Discussion

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

The point of the group discussion is to draw the following information from the group using the tips for answering/facilitating discussion and the suggested questions provided.

DEFINING WHAT IT MEANS TO BE SELF-AWARE

To be self-aware is to be conscious of one's character, feelings and motives. As an OL, who is responsible for the safety, well-being and organization of a group of people, being self-aware helps to ensure a high quality experience for all group members. Being aware of individual feelings and motives will help the OL relate to their group members.

Being Mindful of All Actions

Good OLs are always mindful of their actions and deliberate in their intent. They act with regard to the ultimate goals of the group, which is a balance between being attentive to the needs of the group members and being attentive to the tasks that must be accomplished.

Being Aware of One's Personal Abilities and Limitations

Self-awareness starts with a clear understanding of one's personal abilities and limitations. Without a clear sense of their own abilities and limitations, OLs will have difficulty setting challenges appropriate to the abilities and limitations of group members. As well, there may be a tendency to set the bar too high, which may jeopardize the emotional and physical safety of the members of the group they are leading. This can result in the OL becoming a possible danger to the group and diminishing the quality of the experience for all.

Knowing How One Influences Others

An OL is considered the expert when they lead a group of people on an OAA. They have been chosen because of their experience and knowledge in the specific activity being conducted. This is an enormous responsibility. This position provides them the opportunity to influence the decisions and actions of the people they are leading. Being aware of this is a very important step in OLs developing their own self-awareness. Once they understand how their actions and comments can influence those around them, they will be able to judge what is appropriate and what is not.

Understanding the Importance of Demonstrating Commitment to the Activity

An OL is committed when they participate fully in all aspects of the activity they are leading. The OL must commit their "mind, body and soul" to themselves, the people they are leading, the OAA they are completing and the environment they are using.

If an OL is not committed to the activity which they are leading, then the activity is doomed to fail. This commitment can be demonstrated verbally, through the actions of the OL and/or by their overall behaviour and presence. The OL who chooses to sit around the campfire after a long day of hiking to discuss the day's events, demonstrates a commitment to the activity by continuing the learning experience of the group. Likewise, the OL who displays excitement for the day of rock climbing shows a strong commitment to the activity. When the OL is committed to the activity, the group members will be committed to the activity.

Knowing How One Reacts to Different Situations

An OL must always be prepared to react to the unexpected. To do this, it is important for OLs to know how they will react when faced with different situations. In most cases, this understanding will come from experience. However, developing strategies to implement when faced with an unlikely or challenging situation will assist the OL in facing the situation head-on with strength and confidence.

Examples of these different challenges the OL may face are:

- danger,
- hardship,
- stress,
- conflict, and
- fatigue.

Understanding the Importance and Benefits of Personal Reflection

A good OL will take the time to learn from their successes and their mistakes. This process is called experiential learning, and can be described as the change in a person that results from reflection on a direct experience resulting in new understandings and applications. In practical terms, this process involves taking the time to sit down after an experience and think about how it went. The OL should ask themselves the following questions:

- What did I do well?
- What can I improve upon?
- How did people react to my leadership style?
- What can I learn from the way other OLs did things?

By thinking about past experiences, the OL can learn by experience and can start to think about ways they will do things in the future. When the next opportunity to confront a similar situation arises, the lessons learned – from taking the time to reflect on the past—will be drawn on to improve the way the OL deals with the new, but similar, experience. In many ways this is the same process as learning to ride a bicycle; from every success and every mistake the cadet learns something new, eventually allowing the training wheels to be removed.

GROUP DISCUSSION

TIPS FOR ANSWERING/FACILITATING DISCUSSION:

- Establish ground rules for discussion, eg, everyone should listen respectfully; don't interrupt; only one person speaks at a time; no one's ideas should be made fun of; you can disagree with ideas but not with the person; try to understand others as much as you hope they understand you; etc.
- Sit the group in a circle, making sure all cadets can be seen by everyone else.
- Ask questions that will provoke thought; in other words avoid questions with yes or no answers.
- Manage time by ensuring the cadets stay on topic.
- Listen and respond in a way that indicates you have heard and understood the cadet. This can be done by paraphrasing their ideas.
- Give the cadets time to respond to your questions.
- Ensure every cadet has an opportunity to participate. One option is to go around the group and have each cadet answer the question with a short answer. Cadets must also have the option to pass if they wish.
- Additional questions should be prepared ahead of time.

SCENARIO

Consider the following scenario:

> It's your third time out as a trip leader [OL] and you're taking a bunch of beginners up an easy trail to Mosquito Lake. Your group is moving a little slower than you'd like, but the weather is fair and the wildflowers are out; you figure it'll be OK to cook dinner in the dark if you have to.
>
> Suddenly, black clouds begin to pour over a ridge to the west, and within minutes a summer storm is bearing down on you. The first drops of rain are so big they kick up dust on the trail. Lightning forks behind the peaks above and the crash of thunder is so loud and near, you know the storm center will be on top of you in minutes.
>
> You've just started up a long exposed ridge. If you continue up, the danger of being hit by lightning could be significant, and even if it isn't, the chance that someone will panic in a storm this big is very real. But if you head down into the forest below, you'll never make it to the lake before dark; you'll have to camp lower, and you're not sure of the water supply there.

Up until now there has been no need for anyone to 'lead' on this easy, well-travelled trail. But now things have changed. This is Ben's first trip into the mountains. He is clearly getting more worried with each flash of lightning (Graham 1997, 15–16).

SUGGESTED QUESTIONS

Q1. What does it mean to be self-aware?

Q2. What are the abilities and limitations of the OL in the scenario?

Q3. What are some examples of how the OL in the scenario demonstrates commitment to the hike?

Q4. How will knowing how one reacts to situations of danger and stress benefit the OL in the scenario?

Q5. In the scenario Ben, an inexperienced hiker, is getting very nervous about the situation facing the hikers. What can the OL do to alleviate some these fears?

Q6. Upon completion of the hike, why is it important that the OL, and group members, complete a personal reflection?

Q7. What is the relationship between being self-aware and being an effective OL?

Other questions and answers will develop throughout the group discussion. The group discussion should not be limited to only those suggested.

Reinforce those answers given and comments made during the group discussion, ensuring the teaching point has been covered.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadets' participation in the group discussion will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss Professional Conduct**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP provides cadets an opportunity to further develop their understanding of professional conduct which is a component of the OL competency of self-awareness and professional conduct.

PROFESSIONAL CONDUCT

OLs are placed in a position of responsibility and as such must conduct themselves accordingly in all situations. A lack of professional conduct could result in an injury during a paddling activity or a breakdown in group dynamics while on an expedition, etc. The risks associated with an OAA demand professional conduct of an OL.

An OL who demonstrates professional conduct is typically viewed as being:

- flexible,
- responsible,
- trustworthy,
- courageous,
- hardworking,
- selfless,
- approachable,
- committed, and
- tolerant.

USING THE POSITION RESPONSIBLY

Cadets are placed in the position of an OL because of their experience. This position does not permit them to use their authority in unethical ways. In the environment of an OAA, OLs who abuse their position of authority have a negative impact on group morale and effectiveness, and can make dangerous situations even more dangerous.

The experience that OLs have is what makes them such a valuable asset to the group. However, it is important that OLs understand that in most cases the individuals they are leading do not have as much experience as they do. It is one thing to encourage an individual to try something new, such as a slightly more difficult rock climbing ascent, but an OL should never force an individual to do something they are not comfortable doing; it is extremely unprofessional and risky. Forcing an individual to abseil down a cliff by telling them they will not get their supper meal is a form of coercion. If that individual hurts themselves or another group member, the consequences in an outdoor setting could be dramatic. Coercion shall never be an option.

Coercion is the process of persuading an unwilling person by force.

MODELLING ACTIONS WHICH THE TEAM SHOULD EMULATE

An OL should always model the behaviour which they want their team/group to emulate.

Committing Personally

If an OL is not personally committed to being an OL it will be obvious to the individuals they are leading. Being an OL is more than just about taking individuals into the outdoors; it is about providing them an experience and the opportunity to learn from that experience. An OL who is not personally committed to the activity and the people involved in the activity will be an ineffective leader. The hazardous nature of activities led by OLs requires their complete attention and commitment. To not give an activity their full attention and commitment OLs are putting themselves and the people they are leading at risk.

Complying With Safety Regulations and Precautions

Safety regulations and precautions are established by subject matter experts to ensure the safety of individuals completing the specific OAA. While many OLs are very experienced, it is not their prerogative to change/alter predetermined safety regulations and precautions. Failing to abide by safety regulations and precautions could result in injuries which are compounded when in an isolated wilderness setting. Although it may seem redundant

to hang food in a food hang every night, even if the group has not seen one bear, not doing so is a risk that should not be taken. Likewise, wearing a PFD while paddling on a flatwater lake may seem unnecessary, however, accidents can happen and wearing that PFD could save a life.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. An OL who demonstrates professional conduct typically displays what qualities?

Q2. What are two examples of ways in which an OL can abuse their position of authority?

Q3. Why is it important for OLs to comply with safety regulations and precautions?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The following qualities are typically displayed by an OL who demonstrates professional conduct:

- flexible,
- responsible,
- trustworthy,
- courageous,
- hardworking,
- selfless,
- approachable,
- committed, and
- tolerant.

A2. The following is a list of three possible examples of ways in which an OL has abused their position of authority are:

- have group members set up and tear down their tent;
- have group members cook meals for the OL; or
- have group member pump water for the OL each night.

A3. Failing to abide by safety regulations and precautions could result in injuries which are compounded when in an isolated wilderness setting.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. What does it mean to be self-aware?

Q2. Why is it important for an OL to be aware of their own abilities and limitations?

Q3. What are the consequences of an OL not being personally committed to the activity being completed?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. To be self-aware is:

- being conscious of one's character, feelings and motives;
- ensuring a high quality experience for all group members; and
- being aware of individual feelings and motives in order to relate to group members.

A2. Without a clear sense of their own abilities and limitations, OLs will have difficulty setting challenges appropriate to the abilities and limitations of the program participants. As well, there may be a tendency to set the bar too high, which may jeopardize the emotional and physical safety of the members of the group they are leading. This can result in the OL becoming a possible danger to the group and diminishing the quality of the experience for all.

A3. An OL who is not personally committed to the activity and the people involved in the activity will be an ineffective leader and will put themselves and the people they are leading at risk.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Self-awareness and professional conduct is a fundamental competency of an OL. This competency deals with the OL's ability to interact and develop relationships with the people they are leading. While technical, instructional and facilitation skills are all competencies of an OL, without a personal understanding of oneself and the ability to act in a professional manner, these skills are useless. An OL must develop the whole package of competencies, beginning with self-awareness and professional conduct.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

N/A.

REFERENCES

C2-150 (ISBN 0-89886-502-6) Graham, J. (1997). *Outdoor Leadership: Technique, Common Sense and Self-Confidence*. Seattle, WA: The Mountaineers.

C2-152 (ISBN 1-898555-09-5) Ogilvie, K. (1993). *Leading and Managing Groups in the Outdoors: New Revised Edition*. Cumbria, England: The Institute for Outdoor Learning.

C2-153 (ISBN 0-7360-5731-5) Martin, B., Cashel, C., Wagstaff, M., & Breunig, M. (2006). *Outdoor Leadership: Theory and Practice*. Windsor, ON: Human Kinetics.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 4

EO C325.01 – COMMUNICATE DURING AN EXPEDITION

Total Time: 120 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Ensure that all hand-held radios are ready to use (serviceable, batteries fully charged).

Review the owners' manual associated with the hand-held radio being used.

Photocopy Annex I (one per cadet) and Annex J (one per group).

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 1–3 and TP 7 to introduce communicating using basic voice procedures, familiarizing the cadet with the parts of the hand-held radio and alternative methods of emergency communication.

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TPs 4–6 as it allows the instructor to demonstrate and explain the communication skills the cadet is expected to acquire, while providing an opportunity for the cadet to practice basic voice procedures, transmitting messages over a radio net, and using alternative methods of communication under the supervision of an instructor.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 8 as it is an interactive way to for the cadet to practice communicating with a hand-held radio using basic voice procedures and transmitting a message using an alternative method of communication. This activity contributes to the cadets' development of communication skills in a fun and challenging setting.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to communicate during an expedition by operating a hand-held radio and employing an alternative emergency communication method to transmit the Morse code message, Save Our Souls (SOS).

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to know how to operate hand-held radios in order to communicate between groups during expeditions. As an outdoor leader there will be a requirement for cadets to operate radios as part of daily responsibilities, as well as in emergency situations. Due to the nature of the expedition activities and the remote locations in which they occur, knowing how to communicate is critical for the safety of all group members.

Teaching Point 1 **Explain the Elements of Radio Etiquette**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

The information presented in this TP is an introduction to elements of radio etiquette. The cadets may have some previous knowledge of the material. Ask lead-in questions to gain their insight.

APPROPRIATE LANGUAGE

The way that one talks on the air is guided by national and international standards. These standards are termed voice procedure.

Voice procedure is intended to maximize clarity and reduce misunderstanding in spoken communication. One must follow basic radio rules, to include:

- Avoid sending transmissions without proper authority.
- Avoid transmissions using the operator's name.
- Never use profane, indecent or obscene language.
- Allow emergency calls to take priority over all other calls. If a person is talking, stop and wait until the emergency is finished.
- Keep communications official. Do not chat.

ENUNCIATION

Enunciation is the act of speaking clearly. When making transmissions, each message will be as short as possible and should not exceed 10 seconds in length. To reduce the possibility of confusion while transmitting, subject matter should be kept to one topic.

When sending a transmission via radio it is important to pronounce words clearly and concisely. Before transmitting, wait for a period long enough so as not to interfere with transmissions already in progress. To ensure the message is received clearly, follow these tips:

- Speak slowly.
- Write down the message prior to transmitting (if it is lengthy).
- Hold the PTT button one second before and after speaking, to ensure the entire message was heard.

- Transmit only what is needed.
- Refrain from using slang terms.

NO DUFFS

No Duff is the term spoken over the radio to identify that what is being said is not a drill. This term is only spoken during emergency situations when serious information has to be passed along. It shall never be used as part of an exercise or as a joke. Upon hearing No Duff, all radio communications will cease between parties. Normal communications may continue when the sender of No Duff has ended the transmission.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are two basic radio rules?

Q2. What should be the maximum length of a transmission?

Q3. When sending transmissions, how should words be pronounced?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The basic radio rules are:

- Avoid sending transmissions without proper authority.
- Avoid using the operator's name.
- Never use of profane, indecent or obscene language.
- Allow emergency calls to take priority over all other calls. If a person is talking, stop and wait until the emergency is finished.
- Keep communications official. Do not chat.

A2. Each message will be as short as possible, and should not exceed 10 seconds.

A3. Pronounce words clearly and concisely.

Teaching Point 2 **Describe the Phonetic Alphabet**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Distribute the handout at Annex I to the cadets. As the information is presented have the cadets follow the handout. Have the cadets repeat the alphabet and numbers as they are presented.

PHONETIC ALPHABET

Purpose

Radios are usually used outdoors and are sometimes subject to background noise such as inclement weather, equipment, and other people. For this reason, the use of the International Phonetic Alphabet is required. The

phonetic alphabet associates the letters of the alphabet with a word to assist in clarifying statements over a radio.

Uses

The phonetic alphabet is used whenever isolated letters or groups of letters are pronounced separately, when spelling words, or when communication is difficult.

Structure

The following table identifies the phonetic symbol and its corresponding pronunciation.

Letter	Phonetic	Pronunciation		Letter	Phonetic	Pronunciation
A	ALFA	AL FAH		N	NOVEMBER	NO VÈM BER
B	BRAVO	BRAH VOH		O	OSCAR	OSS CAR
C	CHARLIE	CHAR LEE		P	PAPA	PAH PAH
D	DELTA	DELL TAH		Q	QUEBEC	KÉH BECK
E	ECHO	ECK OH		R	ROMEO	ROW ME OH
F	FOXTROT	FOKS TROT		S	SIERRA	SEE AIR RAH
G	GOLF	GOLF		T	TANGO	TANG GO
H	HOTEL	HOH TÈLL		U	UNIFORM	YOU NEE FORM
I	INDIA	IN DEE AH		V	VICTOR	VIK TAR
J	JULIETT	JEW LEE ÈTT		W	WHISKEY	WISS KEY
K	KILO	KEY LOH		X	X-RAY	ECKS RAY
L	LIMA	LEE MAH		Y	YANKEE	YANG KEY
M	MIKE	MÏ KE		Z	ZULU	ZOO LOO

Spell the word CADETS using the phonetic alphabet: CHARLIE – ALFA – DELTA – ECHO – TANGO – SIERRA.

Pronunciation of Numerals

When numbers are used in a radio transmission, they are always spoken as separate numbers digit by digit, (15 is spoken as ONE–FIFE) except multiples of a thousand, which may be spoken. The procedural word FIGURES can be used before transmitting such numbers.

The table identifies the number and its corresponding pronunciation.

Number	Pronunciation		Number	Pronunciation
0	ZE-RO		5	FIFE
1	WUN		6	SIX
2	TOO		7	SEV-EN
3	TREE		8	AIT
4	FOW-ER		9	NIN-ER

Have the cadets recite the entire alphabet using phonetic pronunciations.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is used to spell words over a radio?

Q2. How is the figure five spoken over the radio?

Q3. Using the phonetic alphabet, how would you spell radio?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The phonetic alphabet is used to spell words over a radio.

A2. The figure five is spoken “FIFE” over the radio.

A3. Radio would be spelled as follows: ROMEO–ALFA–DELTA–INDIA–OSCAR.

Teaching Point 3 **Identify and Briefly Describe the Parts of a Hand-Held Radio**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Radios presented in this lesson are the Talkabout FRS/GMRS Recreational Two-Way Radio Models T5000, T5500, and T5550. Models may vary. Refer to the manufacturer’s owners’ manual as required.

Divide cadets into groups of no more than four and assign each group a radio. Cadets will point to the specific parts as they are explained.

PARTS OF THE HAND-HELD RADIO AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

On-Off/Volume Knob. Controls volume and power to the unit.

Light Emitting Diode (LED). This light will be illuminated when the radio is on.

Push-to-Talk Button (PTT). A depressible button that allows transmissions.

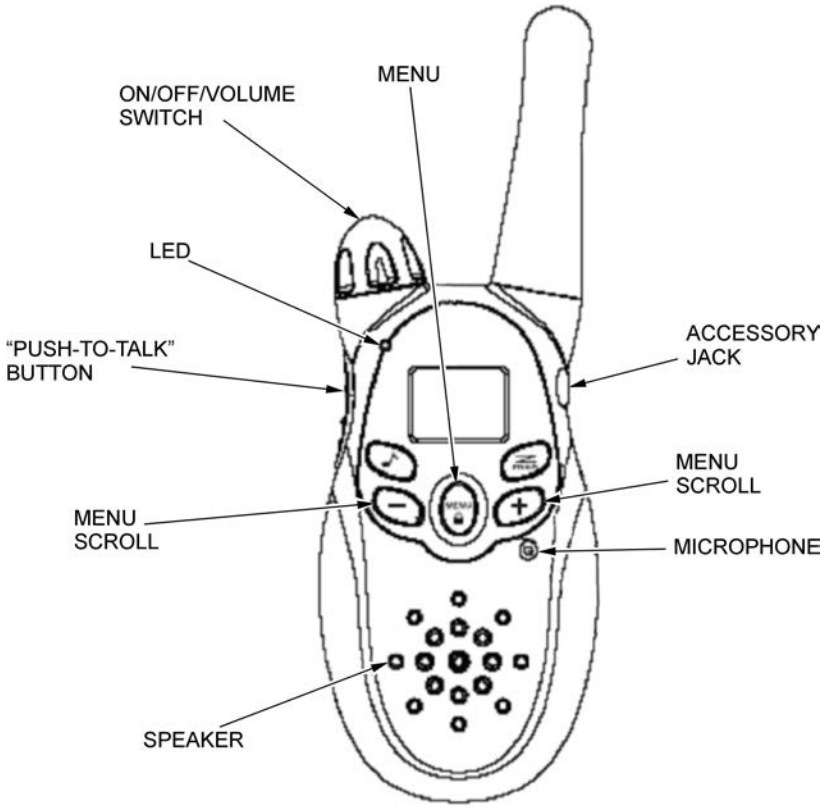
Speaker. Converts electric current into audible sound.

Antenna. An electrical device designed to transmit or receive radio waves.

Accessory Jack. Used to insert accessory items such as a headset.

Menu Scroll/Channel/Frequency Selector. Push to scroll through the menu options and channels. Use the "+" and "-" symbol in order to scroll through the menu options.

Microphone. Converts sound into an electrical signal.

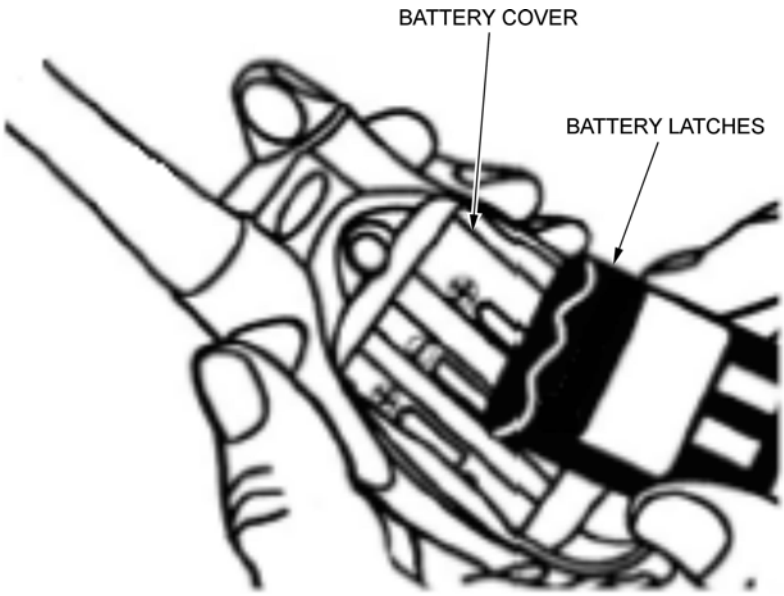


Motorola, Inc. Talkabout FRS/GMRS Recreational Two-Way Radios Models T5000, T5500, T5550 User's Guide, Motorola, Inc. (p. 11)

Figure 15-4-1 Hand-Held Radio

Battery Cover. Covers the storage compartment of the battery (located on the reverse side of the radio).

Battery Cover Latches. Secures the cover to the radio (located on the reverse side of the radio).



Motorola, Inc. Talkabout FRS/GMRS Recreational Two-Way Radios Models T5000, T5500, T5550 User's Guide, Motorola, Inc. (p. 13)

Figure 15-4-2 Battery Compartment

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. Name the parts of the radio.

Q2. What function does the antenna perform?

Q3. What function does the microphone perform?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The 10 parts of the Talkabout radio are: on-off / volume knob, LED, PTT, speaker, antenna, accessory jack, menu scroll, microphone, battery cover, and battery cover latches.

A2. The antenna transmits and receives radio waves.

A3. The microphone converts sound into an electrical signal.

Teaching Point 4 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Practice Using a Hand-Held Radio**

Time: 15 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

For this TP, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate each skill while cadets observe.
2. Monitor the cadets' performance as they practice each skill.

Note: Assistant instructors may be employed to monitor the cadets' performance.

TURNING THE RADIO ON/OFF

To turn the radio ON, turn the on-off/volume knob clockwise. The radio will beep and the radio display will briefly show all feature icons on the radio.

To turn the radio OFF, turn the on-off/volume knob counter-clockwise. A clicking sound will indicate that the radio is turned off.

ADJUSTING FREQUENCIES

Selecting a Channel (Frequency)

The radio operates on a group of frequencies that are accessed through radio channels. To set the channel of the radio, push the Menu button, which will cause the current channel to flash. Using the Menu scroll button, scroll through the channels and push the PTT button to select the desired channel.

OPERATING THE PTT BUTTON

To send and receive messages, check the channel activity by pressing the monitor (MON) button. Static will be heard if the channel is clear to use. Do not transmit if someone is talking on the channel.

To send messages:

1. Press the PTT button.
2. Observe a standard pause.
3. Speak loudly, clearly and briefly into the microphone.
4. Release the PTT button (to maximize clarity, hold the radio 3–5 cm from the mouth).

The LED will glow continuously when sending messages.

In order to listen to messages, the PTT button must be fully released.

CHANGING THE BATTERIES

Explain to the cadets the type of battery required to operate the hand-held radio. Consult the owner's manual to ensure the proper size and type of battery is being used. The Talkabout radios discussed in this lesson use three AA batteries.

Many hand-held radios will use three AA batteries for power. In order to install the batteries or to replace them, follow these steps:

1. Lift the battery latch to release the battery cover.
2. Remove the battery cover.
3. Insert three AA batteries as shown on the inside of the battery compartment.
4. Replace the battery cover and clip the battery latch to secure.
5. Discard spent batteries safely.

Motorola, Inc. Talkabout FRS/GMRS Recreational Two-Way Radios Models T5000, T5500, T5550 User's Guide, Motorola, Inc. (p. 13)

Figure 15-4-3 Batteries

Motorola, Inc. Talkabout FRS/GMRS Recreational Two-Way Radios Models T5000, T5500, T5550 User's Guide, Motorola, Inc. (p. 13)

Figure 15-4-4 Changing the Batteries

Batteries may corrode over time if left in radios and can cause permanent damage; therefore, they should be removed before storing radios for extended periods of time.

Batteries are made of various materials comprised of heavy metals including nickel cadmium, alkaline, mercury, nickel metal hydride, and lead acid. These elements can harm the environment if not properly discarded. As such, batteries are one of the most complex items to dispose of or recycle.

Batteries, if not properly disposed of, may cause:

- pollution of lakes and streams as the metals vaporize into the air when burned;
- leaching of heavy metals from solid waste landfills;
- exposure of the environment and water to lead and acid;
- corrosion from the strong acids; and
- burns or other injury to eyes and skin.

Batteries are not all the same and each have specific instructions for their proper disposal and/or recycling. The batteries most people use are household types; however, due to the variety of different rules and regulations, check with the local community recycling facility to determine the household battery recycling options or supporting unit/base POL/HAZMAT section.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 4

QUESTIONS

Q1. How would one change channels on the radio?

Q2. What position must the PTT button be in to receive a message?

Q3. What is the most common type of battery used for hand-held radios?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. To set the channel of the radio, push the Menu button, which will cause the current channel to flash. Using the Menu scroll button, scroll through the channels and push the PTT button to select the desired channel.

A2. The PTT button must be released to receive a message.

A3. The most common type of battery used for hand-held radios are AA.

Teaching Point 5 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Practice Radio Communication**

Time: 20 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

The following section deals with call signs and transmission sequence. It is the basis for developing clear and understandable communications. Discuss the use of call signs and transmission sequence and demonstrate voice procedure using the examples provided below. Cadets will have an opportunity to practice sending radio transmissions during the practical activity.

USING CALL SIGNS

Call signs are used to identify and organize persons or groups (also know as stations) within a radio network. A call sign may take the form of a pair of words or a combination of letters and figures to a maximum of four.

UNDERSTANDING TRANSMISSION SEQUENCE

When a station originates a call it must first avoid interfering with other radio transmissions. An operator shall listen to make certain that a frequency is clear before making any transmissions.

Before conducting regular traffic over the radio it may be necessary to make contact with other stations involved to ascertain that communication is possible.

To initiate a call, the transmission sequence is as follows:

1. The initiating station will transmit the call sign of the intended receiver followed by the initiating station's call sign with the phrase "THIS IS" between them (see Example 1, step 1.).
2. The receiving station will acknowledge the initiating station's call by transmitting its call sign and finishing the transmission with the word "OVER" (see Example 1, step 2.).
3. After a reply is received the initiating station will end the transmission, if nothing further is to be said, by transmitting its call sign, acknowledging the receipt of the answer with the word "ROGER" and concluding the message by ending with the word "OUT" (see Example 1, step 3.).

Example 1 of a Radio Call

1. One Alfa transmits: Two Bravo – this is One Alfa – Over.
2. Two Bravo responds to the initial call transmitting: Two Bravo – Over.
3. One Alfa concludes radio transmissions by transmitting: One Alfa – Roger – Out.

Example 2 of a Radio Call

1. One Alfa transmits: Two Bravo – this is One Alfa – Message – Over.

2. Two Bravo responds to the initial call, transmitting: Two Bravo – Send message – Over.
3. One Alfa continues with the message, transmitting: One Alfa – will reach your location in two-fife minutes – Over.
4. Two Bravo responds to the message, transmitting: Two Bravo – Roger – Over.
5. One Alfa concludes the call by: One Alfa – Out.

The station that starts the transmission must end it.

CONDUCTING RADIO CHECKS

All stations are considered to have good signal strength unless otherwise notified. Strength of signals and readability checks will only be conducted when requested or when problems occur. The following prowords will be used to complete this procedure:

Prowords are prounceable words or phrases which have been assigned meanings for the purpose of expediting message handling on circuits where radiotelephone procedure is employed.

RADIO CHECK: What is my strength and readability?

ROGER: I have received your transmission satisfactorily.

NOTHING HEARD: To be used when no reply is received from a call station.

When answering a radio check both signal strength and readability are reported, as follows:

REPORTS	REPLY	MEANING
REPORT OF SIGNAL STRENGTH	LOUD	Signal is very strong.
	GOOD	Signal is good.
	WEAK	Signal is weak.
	VERY WEAK	Signal is very weak.
	FADING	Signal is fading and continuous communications cannot be relied on.
REPORT OF READABILITY	CLEAR	Excellent quality.
	READABLE	Quality is satisfactory.
	UNREADABLE	I cannot read you.
	DISTORTED	Having trouble reading you due to your signal being distorted.
	INTERFERENCE	Having trouble reading you due to interference.
	INTERMITTENT	Having trouble reading you due to your signal being intermittent.

Example of a Radio Check to One Station

1. One Alfa transmits: Two Bravo – this is One Alfa – Radio Check – Over.
2. Two Bravo answers the radio check with the answer transmitting: Two Bravo – Loud and Clear – Over.
3. One Alfa concludes the radio transmission by transmitting: One Alfa – Roger – Out.

Example of a Radio Check to Multiple Stations

1. One Alfa transmits: Three Alfa, Two Bravo, One Charlie – this is One Alfa – Radio Check – Over.
2. In sequence the radio stations respond to the radio check by transmitting:

   Three Alfa – Loud and clear – Over.

   Two Bravo – Good with interference – Over.

   One Charlie – Loud and readable – Over.
3. One Alfa concludes radio transmissions by transmitting: One Alfa – Roger – Out.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 5

The cadets' participation in practicing voice procedure will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 6 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Transmit an SOS Message by Morse Code With Sound and With Light**

Time: 10 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

For this skill, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate transmitting an SOS message using Morse code with sound and with light.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step of transmitting an SOS message using Morse code with sound and with light. Monitor the cadets as they practice each step.
3. Monitor the cadets' performance as they practice transmitting the complete SOS message using Morse code with sound and with light.

Note: Assistant instructors may be used to monitor the cadets' performance.

MORSE CODE

Morse code is a method for transmitting telegraphic information, using standardized sequences of short and long elements to represent the letters, numerals, punctuation and special characters of a message. In the Navy, Morse code is referred to as the dot-dash system, with each letter and number being represented by a particular arrangement of dots and dashes. When transmitting, dots (di) are represented by short, and dashes (dah) by long, bursts of sound or light. It was invented by Samuel F. B. Morse (1791-1872), who is also known for producing the first working telegraph set in 1836.

The following is an example of the dots and dashes used to spell cadet: C **-.** **-.** A **.-** D**-..** E**.** T**-**

The first Morse code message was "What hath God wrought" and was delivered from Washington, District of Columbia to Baltimore, Maryland.

Morse Code is usable in sound signalling (radio and whistle) and visual signalling (lights and flags).

An example of sound signalling is to use the PTT button on a hand-held radio. An example of light signalling is to use a flashlight.

SOS

The most well known Morse code transmission is Save Our Souls (SOS). SOS has been the obligatory signal since July 1, 1908.

The following format is used to transmit SOS:

- di-di-di-dah-dah-dah-di-di-di;
- **...---...**

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 6

The cadets' transmission of an SOS message, with light and with sound, will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 7 **Discuss Alternative Methods of Communication**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

A cellular phone, satellite phone or personal locator beacon can be a big help in an emergency situation allowing individuals to contact help almost immediately. That is, provided, there is reception, the batteries are charged, or there is no damage to the unit.

In the outdoor community there is a great deal of discussion about the use of cellular phones and satellite phones. Some argue that they are essential backcountry safety devices and some feel they intrude on the experience of the outdoors. It is important to recognize that communication devices work differently in different areas and situations, and as such should not be relied on completely.

SATELLITE PHONES

- Satellite phones require an unobstructed signal to the sky in order to establish a satellite connection.
- Although the technology is getting better all the time, connections often still cannot be made in deep forests, canyons, low-lying area and deep gorges.
- Satellite phones require a lot of battery power, so depending on the duration of the trip additional batteries or solar recharging panels may have to be brought.

CELLULAR PHONES

- Cellular phones often do not work in remote areas.
- When going into wilderness settings, a cellular phone should not be relied upon as the sole emergency contact device.
- Cellular phones are limited by their service area.
- Cellular phones are vulnerable to cold, moisture, sand and heat – requiring users to protect them from hazards.

Some cellular phones have internal Global Position System (GPS) locators which can be useful when in wilderness areas. In emergency situations this allows for rescuers to pinpoint the location of those being rescued. However, the same limitations as discussed above exist. For example, if the individuals are in a low lying, forest covered area, the signal would not be received.

PERSONAL LOCATOR BEACON

- Lightweight and reliable.
- Must be registered with a national search-and-rescue organization.
- In an emergency, press a button on the palm-sized unit to send a unique signal with GPS coordinates to a central call centre via satellite.

- When stranded but not in immediate danger or to check in as OK, send a help or OK message to your contacts via e-mail.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 7

QUESTIONS

Q1. When attempting to make a call using a satellite phone what are some considerations that should be made to ensure that they are able to establish a satellite connection?

Q2. What is the main limitation of using a cellular telephone?

Q3. What are the benefits of a GPS locator in a cell phone?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. To ensure the establishment of a good satellite connection the individual should ensure that they have an unobstructed signal to the sky, and that they are not in a deep forest, a canyon, low-lying area or a deep gorge.

A2. Cellular phones are limited by their service area.

A3. In emergency situations this allows for rescuers to pinpoint the location of those being rescued. However, the same limitations as discussed above exist. For example, if the individuals are in a low-lying, forest covered area, the signal would not be received.

Teaching Point 8 **Conduct a Communication Activity**

Time: 40 min Method: Practical Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for the cadet to practice radio communications through employing the phonetic alphabet, beginning and ending radio transmissions, conducting radio checks, and transmitting an SOS Morse code message using sound/light.

RESOURCES

- Large space with a minimum of 5 m (16 ft) between members of each group,
- One hand-held radio per group,
- Three AA batteries per radio,
- Radio Communication Exercise located at Annex J, and
- One flashlight per group.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide cadets into three groups.
2. Assign a call sign to each member of each group (depending on numbers there may be a requirement to assign the same call sign to more than one person in a group, or assign two call signs to one person in a group).
3. Hand out a copy of the Radio Communication Exercise to each group.
4. Assign each group a specific area with at least 5 m (16 ft) between them.
5. Acting as 1, complete the radio communication exercise.
6. Once the radio communication exercise is complete, have each group transmit a SOS message using the PTT button on their radios and using a flashlight.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 8

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the communication activity will serves as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

As an outdoor leader understanding the principles of radio communication and being able to transit radio messages is very important. Daily expedition routine may require an outdoor leader to communicate between their group and other groups. As well, situations may arise when the outdoor leader must implement emergency communication strategies.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Hand-held radio models may vary. The instructor will be responsible for consulting the owner's manual for detailed instructions on radio operation.

REFERENCES

A2-034 ACP 125 CANSUPP Department of National Defence. (1984). *Radiotelephone Procedure for the Canadian Forces (Land Environment)*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C0-069 Motorola Inc. (2004). *Talkabout FRS/GMRS Recreational Two-Way Radios Models T5000, T5500, T5550 User's Guide*.

C1-003 (ISBN 11-770973-5) Royal Navy. (1972). *Admiralty Manual of Seamanship* (Vol. 1). London, England: Her Majesty's Stationary Office.

C2-016 (ISBN 1-4000-5309-9) Curtis, R. (2005). *The Backpacker's Field Manual: A Comprehensive Guide to Mastering Backcountry Skills*. New York, NY: Three Rivers Press.

Two-way hand-held radio owner's manual.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 5

EO C325.02 – PARTICIPATE IN A PRESENTATION ON THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH AWARD PROGRAM

Total Time:	30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Contact the local Duke of Edinburgh Award program division and gather presentation material about the Duke of Edinburgh Award program.

A member of the corps staff may present this lesson if a Duke of Edinburgh Award program representative is unavailable.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for this lesson to introduce, clarify, emphasize and summarize the objectives of the Duke of Edinburgh Award program.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have participated in a presentation on the Duke of Edinburgh Award program.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to know all opportunities for growth available to them. The Duke of Edinburgh Award program is one opportunity that is widely available to cadets. By knowing what the program entails and what the rewards are, cadets will have a better understanding of the program and be able to decide if they wish to become a participant.

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

The material for this lesson will be gathered from the provincial office of the Duke of Edinburgh Award program. Videos, brochures and activities used to present the information can be found at www.dukeofed.org.

The program was founded in 1956 by His Royal Highness Prince Philip, The Duke of Edinburgh K.G. K.T. in London, England, as a means to encourage and motivate youth. The goal of the Duke of Edinburgh Award program is to encourage young people's participation in activities they already enjoy and to develop personal goals and encourage achievement based on individual effort and improvement.

The Duke of Edinburgh Award program is about personal challenge, and aims to encourage and stimulate:

1. self-reliance and self-discipline,
2. perseverance and determination,
3. initiative and creativity,
4. community involvement and social responsibility,
5. value orientation and value-oriented decision making,
6. the spirit of adventure,
7. fitness of body and mind,
8. vocational, cultural and family life skills, and
9. international understanding and awareness.

The award is a lapel pin or brooch, and an inscribed certificate of achievement. Upon completion of the Gold award, the individual will be presented the award by HRH Prince Philip.

More than 30 000 young Canadians are currently participating in the Duke of Edinburgh Award program; many within the Canadian Cadet Movement.

Teaching Point 1 **Describe the Different Levels of the Program**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

There are three levels within the Duke of Edinburgh Award program. Each successive level requires more commitment and becomes more demanding. The levels are Bronze, Silver and Gold. A young person may choose to participate at any time and any level, keeping in mind the prescribed age requirements.

Bronze. For youth over the age of 14. There is a minimum 6-month period of participation.

Silver. For youth over the age of 15. There is a minimum 12-month period of participation.

Gold. For youth over the age of 16. There is a minimum 18-month period of participation.

If a participant has completed a prior level, the period of participation is decreased by six months. (eg, a cadet who has completed the Bronze level can complete the Silver level in six months).

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the three levels of the program?

Q2. What is the age requirement for the program?

Q3. When can a person start the Gold level?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The three levels of the program are Bronze, Silver and Gold.

A2. The age requirement is a minimum of 14, although each subsequent level has an age minimum if a participant is just beginning the program.

A3. The Gold level can be started at age 16.

Teaching Point 2 **Explain the Five Sections of the Program**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

The Award's activities are arranged into sections, and within each section there are many choices. There are five sections to the program. The four common sections are:

- service,
- adventurous journey,
- skills, and
- physical recreation.

At the Gold level, participants have to complete a residential project.

SERVICE

Service is a commitment to the needs of others without pay.

The goal of the service section is to encourage participants to realize that as members of a community, they have a responsibility to others and that their help is needed. By helping others, it is hoped that participants will find satisfaction sparking a commitment to community service for life.

ADVENTUROUS JOURNEY

The goal of the adventurous journey is to develop self-reliance by undertaking a journey of discovery. The adventurous journey encourages participants to develop an awareness of the natural environment, and the importance of protecting it.

The distance the cadet must travel and the duration of the journey varies for each level of the Award:

- Bronze – two days including one night away,
- Silver – three days including two nights away, and
- Gold – four days including three nights away.

The hours the cadet must spend on planned activities varies for each level:

- Bronze – an average of six hours per day,
- Silver – an average of seven hours per day, and
- Gold – an average of eight hours per day.

There are three types of journeys that can be undertaken:

- **Explorations.** A purpose with a trip. During this journey, participants must spend a minimum of 10 hours on journeying (moving without motorized assistance). The remainder of the time is spent on a special activity, (eg, historic site exploration, or studying flora and fauna). Explorations must involve pre-journey research, on-site study, and a report on the findings.
- **Expeditions.** A trip with a purpose. An Expedition is a journey where participants stay at a different campsite each night. The required hours will be spent on journeying, navigating and route finding. This may include tasks related to the purpose of the expedition.
- **Adventurous Projects.** An Adventurous Project is a journey that does not fit the above descriptions exactly, or may be a combination of the two. This type of journey would be used by those with medical restrictions or who require more challenges.

All Explorations, Expeditions and Adventurous Projects must have a clearly defined and a preconceived purpose.

SKILLS

The goal of the skills section is to encourage the discovery of personal interests and development of social and practical skills. Participants are encouraged to take up interests within a range of practical, social and cultural activities. Skills can be either a progressive activity such as stamp collecting, playing a musical instrument, a study of a topic of personal interest such as money matters, or a definite task such as building something.

PHYSICAL RECREATION

The goal of the physical recreation section is to encourage participation in physical activity and provide an opportunity to improve performance and learn to appreciate physical recreation as an important component of a healthy lifestyle.

Participation in one or more physical activities for the required number of weeks:

- Bronze – 30 hours over a minimum of 15 weeks,
- Silver – 40 hours over a minimum of 20 weeks, and
- Gold – 50 hours over a minimum of 25 weeks.

Improvement of overall performance is essential for qualification in this section.

RESIDENTIAL PROJECT

The goal of the residential project is to develop social adaptability through involvement in a group setting. It involves participants in projects or training in the company of peers who are not their everyday companions.

The residential project is applied only at the Gold level, but can be completed at any time during award participation.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the five sections of the Duke of Edinburgh Award program?

Q2. What is the goal of the skills section?

Q3. When is the residential project completed?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The five sections of the program are:

- service,
- adventurous journey,
- skills,
- physical recreation, and
- residential project.

A2. The goal of the skills section is to encourage the discovery of personal interests and development of social and practical skills. Participants are encouraged to take up interests within a range of practical, social and cultural activities.

A3. The residential project can be completed at any time during award participation.

Teaching Point 3 **Describe the Relationship Between the Corps, CSTC Programs and the Duke of Edinburgh Award Program**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to inform the cadet about the opportunities within the Award that correspond with activities within the Canadian Cadet Organization (CCO).

The CCO offers many opportunities for participants to work toward completing their respective level.

Within the corps program and CSTC program, many opportunities exist for cadets to meet the requirements of the Award. Beyond the opportunities listed, many other opportunities may also exist, especially in very active cadet corps. Some examples of cadet activities that meet the Award requirements are:

- **SERVICE**
  - participating in community service activities as part of PO 302 (Perform Community Service, Chapter 2) within the corps program;
  - participating in opportunities as a senior cadet when instructing junior cadets during the corps program;
  - helping with the cadet corps newsletter;

- volunteering to help the Royal Canadian Legion during poppy days; and
- participating in a band demonstration where the corps does not receive funds in return.

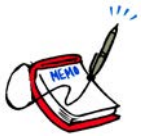
- **ADVENTUROUS JOURNEY**
  - participating in the Silver and Gold Star program weekend bivouac exercise will qualify as practice or adventurous journeys for Bronze and Silver levels;
  - participating in most Year 2+ CSTC program exercises will qualify as practice or adventurous journeys for Bronze and Silver level; and
  - participating in regional/international and national expeditions may qualify as the Gold level provided the cadet directly participates in planning aspects of the activity.
- **SKILL**
  - participating in the cadet corps band;
  - participating in the marksmanship team; and
  - participating in the drill team.
- **PHYSICAL FITNESS**
  - participating in recreational sports as part of PO 305 (Participate in Recreational Sports, Chapter 5),
  - participating in cadet fitness testing as part of PO 304 (Update Personal Activity Plan, Chapter 4); and
  - participating in recreational sports as part of the CSTC Program.
- **RESIDENTIAL PROJECT**
  - participation in any qualification at a CSTC.

CATO 13-19, *The Duke of Edinburgh's Award*, outlines the participation requirements of a youth as a member of the Army Cadet program.

In addition to all the award requirements that are recognized as part of the Cadet Program, many activities cadets participate in outside the cadet corps also count toward the award, such as:

- volunteer activities,
- extracurricular sports teams,
- school clubs, and
- hobbies.

Duke of Edinburgh Award pins may be worn on the cadet uniform in accordance with CATO 46-01, *Army Cadet Dress Regulations*.



After cadets have been informed of the Duke of Edinburgh Award program, and displayed interest in participation, discuss participation with the CO.

Contact the divisional office of the Duke of Edinburgh Award program. Contact information for the offices can be found at www.dukeofed.org.

After the Division office has been contacted:

1. Collect the registration fee from each cadet who wants to participate in the program.
2. If there are only a few cadets who wish to participate, register them as individuals.
3. If the corps will be participating as a whole, register as a group.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. What activities at the corps can be completed as part of the service section of the award?

Q2. What optional activities within cadets can be used for the skill section?

Q3. When is the residential project completed?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. As part of the service section, the following can be completed at the home corps:

- participating in community service activities as part of PO 302 (Perform Community Service, Chapter 2) within the corps program;
- participating in opportunities as a senior cadet when instructing junior cadets during the corps program;
- helping with the cadet corps newsletter;
- volunteering to help the Royal Canadian Legion during Poppy Days; and
- participating in a band demonstration where the corps does not receive funds in return.

A2. Participating in the cadet corps band, the marksmanship team, and the drill team may be used to complete the skill section.

A3. The residential project is completed with any qualification at a CSTC.

Teaching Point 4 **Facilitate a Question and Answer Period**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Allow cadets time to ask questions and discuss participation in the program.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 5

The cadets' participation in a question and answer period will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the presentation on the Duke of EdinburghAward program will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

The Duke of Edinburgh Award program is one of the largest award programs for youth across the world. Informing cadets about the program will encourage them to participate in the program. It will give them positive experiences to move toward in both the Cadet Program and in life.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Training aids should be determined by contacting the speaker prior to the presentation.

Cadets may participate in the Duke of Edinburgh Award program as an optional activity.

A member of the corps staff may present this lesson if a Duke of Edinburgh Award representative is unavailable.

REFERENCES

C0-196 Duke of Edinburgh Award. (2008). *The Award*. Retrieved February 12, 2008, from http:// www.dukeofed.org/Award.htm.

C0-197 Duke of Edinburgh Award. (2007). *Participant's Record Book*. Markham, ON: Langstaff Reed Printing Ltd.

SCENARIO

With the confidence he gained from his first outdoor leadership course five years ago, Peter decided to enrol in an adventure trip to Nepal. Their instructors were apparently experienced and skilled so the trip seemed safe. The participants were from all over the country. They had all enjoyed previous outdoor experiences. Everyone looked fit and ready for a fun adventure. The group met their instructors in Kathmandu. They were whisked away to the hotel and were given a quick briefing.

The next day, the group boarded a bus to travel toward the mountains. They were met by a group of Sherpas and porters who would cook, guide and carry their clothing and equipment. Peter was psyched – this was going to be great! They hiked through river beds and mountains, gaining and losing enormous amounts of elevation each day. Since it was fall, the weather was clear and cool. The group practiced the Nepali language each evening by playing volleyball with the porters and singing songs with them.

One day the instructors offered the group the chance to hike over a pass at 5 395 m (17 700 feet). There was some discussion about the route since the group had been advised to bring light hiking clothes. If anyone had extra warm sweaters or jackets they shared them with the porters. Peter thought it was a great idea to have such a challenge and get to a high elevation. He had total faith in the instructors and the program. It was snowing when they left camp at three in the morning. Up they climbed in two groups.

After 10 hours of hiking, the group was in trouble. One girl was suffering from hypothermia and a Sherpa carried her back down the mountain. Others were lying in the snow, vomiting, or just sitting, exhausted. The two hiking groups had lost sight of each other, and none of the participants really cared. They would keep going as long as they were told to do. Finally, the head Sherpa ran up to the lead group and said the group would return to camp. The group turned around and stumbled down the trail. Exhausted, cold, and sick, they finally made it to camp. The next day the experience was debriefed. The instructors informed the group that the porters had turned back well before the group had and refused to carry the groups' belongings to the next camp. It was also revealed that the next camp, a communal hut, had no firewood. The last group over the pass had used all of it the previous night. With the condition of the group they thought four or five people could have suffered severe hypothermia or death if they had not turned back.

The group was quiet. Peter thought he would have been one of the unlucky ones since he had wanted to lie down and go to sleep in the snow, a sure death sentence. He had strained a leg falling down the trail and was really scared. Mostly he had lost faith in the leaders and their ability to make safe decisions. He doubted his own abilities and swore that he would never participate in another organized trip unless he had all the details first. What had he been thinking, trying to go to over 5 000 m (17 000 feet) in sneakers and cotton pants? He had known better but trusted the leaders completely to make good decisions. The more he thought about it, the angrier he got, mostly at himself for doing something that was so unsafe. The experience also made Peter want to become an outdoor leader so that others could have safe and enjoyable experiences. He would get the training necessary to work with participants at their ability level. He also learned that life is fragile and it would be easy to die in the outdoors.

Peter's overconfidence after his first course was misplaced. He knew that outdoor experiences could change someone for the better, but now he had learned that poor decisions by leaders could lead to potential disaster. Peter understood and could reframe his scary experience so that he became determined to do better and to share what he had learned with others. He sought out further training and opportunities to learn technical skills. His teaching experience helped him to work with groups effectively and be sensitive to needs of participants at different age and experience levels.

Peter had been forced to look at himself critically. He learned not to take nature for granted. He became much more self-aware, which helped him to develop into an excellent outdoor leader. Peter has now led hundreds of students through the mountains. In retrospect, he is glad that he had experiences that made him pay attention to what people can tolerate in outdoor situations. He makes conservative decisions and routinely leads safe trips. Peter was lucky to be able to derive the positive from a negative experience. He became a more complete human and a successful, mature outdoor leader (Martin, B., Cashel, C., Wagstaff, M., and Breunig, M., *Outdoor Leadership: Theory and Practice*, Human Kinetics. [pp 120–121]).

INFORMATION CARD A

SELF-AWARENESS AND PROFESSIONAL CONDUCT

Being Self-Aware

A competent outdoor leader (OL) needs to be self-aware. To be self-aware is to be conscious of one's:

- character,
- feelings, and
- motives.

As an OL, who is responsible for the safety, well-being and organization of a group of people, being self-aware:

- ensures a higher quality experience for all group members, and
- allows the OL to better relate to their group members.

Being Aware of One's Personal Abilities and Limitations

Self-awareness starts with a clear understanding of one's personal abilities and limitations. Without a clear sense of their own abilities and limitations, OLs will have difficulty setting challenges appropriate to the abilities and limitations of group members. As well, there may be a tendency to set the bar too high, which may jeopardize the emotional and physical safety of the members of the group they are leading. This can result in the OL becoming a possible danger to the group and diminishing the quality of the experience for all.

Being Mindful of All Actions

Good OLs are always mindful – intentional – in their actions. They act with regard to the ultimate goals of the group experience, which is a balance between being attentive to the needs of the group members and being attentive to the tasks that must be accomplished.

Managing Stress

- Stress caused by physical danger is not the hardest type of stress for an OL to manage.
- Ordinary situations – a rainstorm that catches a group 5 km (3 miles) away from the trailhead with members who force their own frustrations on the group leader, who not only has to deal with the group complaints, but also with the stream of rain running down the neck of their own parka – are more stressful as they usually occur over an extended period of time, require more attention and require the OL to deal with uncontrollable factors.

Demonstrating Professional Conduct

OLs are placed in a position of responsibility and as such must conduct themselves accordingly in all situations. It is the inherent risk associated with outdoor adventure activities (OAA) that makes professional conduct so important for an OL – safety of the participants is a critical factor.

Professional conduct is characterized through demonstration of the following qualities:

- trustworthiness,
- flexibility,
- approachability,
- commitment,
- awareness of the position of authority, and
- modelling.

CONFLICT MANAGEMENT

Conflicts in OAAs are inevitable. The challenge, for the OL, is to stop the conflict before it gets bigger, or deal with it as quickly and effectively as possible. Most conflicts that occur in outdoor situations are a result of:

- weather conditions;
- varying levels of experience among group members;
- the challenging nature of the activity; and
- personalities of group members.

An OL who is able to communicate clearly with all group members will be better suited to manage conflict. Dealing with conflict is not a pleasant task, however, the first step is to always speak with the individual and discuss the issues in a calm and sensitive manner.

DECISION MAKING AND JUDGMENT

Decision Making. Decision making is the process of choosing the best option from a collection of possible options. In order to make this choice the OL will be required to use their judgment.

Judgment. Judgment is an informed opinion based on past experiences. Judgment also provides OLs with the ability to anticipate problems before they occur. Their experience in leading people during an OAA provides them the foresight to know when something is going well or when it needs adjustment.

- OLs do not have to make the "big" decisions on their own.
- Communicating with fellow group members and using their experience and ideas to help make a decision is also an integral part of making a decision.
- A decision must be made and carried out decisively.
- OLs must have confidence in the decision that they have made.
- Group members must have confidence in the decision that is made by the OL.

INFORMATION CARD B

FACILITATION OF THE EXPEDITION EXPERIENCE

FACILITATION

Facilitation is the process of moving a group or individual toward a desired outcome. Facilitation:

- fosters productive group dynamics;
- enables group members to work toward completing the outdoor adventure activity (OAA), in a safe and enjoyable manner; and
- works to develop interpersonal relationships among group members.

FACILITATOR

A facilitator provides the means for making experiences possible. As a facilitator, outdoor leaders (OLs) will:

- be required to resolve conflicts;
- communicate effectively;
- foster personal trust and group cooperation; and
- debrief and guide reflection on OAA.

An effective OL can facilitate the experience and shift the outdoor experience from a mere excursion in the outdoors to a dynamic learning experience.

TECHNICAL ABILITIES

OLs may possess excellent facilitations skills and may be extremely effective at organizing OAAs, however, without technical ability to serve as the foundation for conducting the activity, these skills cannot be used. Technical abilities are organized into two main areas – generic competency skills and specific competencies.

Generic Competency Skills

Generic competency skills are those skills in which, no matter the OAA, an OL must be competent. They include:

- weather prediction,
- wilderness first aid,
- trip planning,
- navigation,
- camp skills,
- general outdoor skills,
- physical fitness, and
- mental awareness.

Specific Competency Skills

Specific competency skills are those skills unique to the OAA the OL will be leading. Examples include:

- trekking,
- mountain biking,
- abseiling,
- climbing,
- caving,

- canoeing, and
- kayaking.

There is no requirement for an OL to be an expert in all activities. In many cases they choose activities that interest them the most and capitalize on the experiences they offer. Proficiency in an OAA can only be gained through experience. The more experience OLs gain, the more competent they become.

OLs cannot allow their skills to decay; they should continuously participate in professional development training to refresh their knowledge and skills. It is the responsibility of the OL to stay up-to-date in the areas in which they lead others.

INSTRUCTIONAL TECHNIQUES

Instructional skills are important because OLs often have the opportunity to teach and thus share important skills and knowledge with the people they lead.

OLs with the responsibility of teaching others need to be well versed in skills such as:

- using instructional aids;
- developing skill lesson plans; and
- employing different teaching strategies.

Experiential education is the primary method by which OLs deliver their educational content. Every lesson involves some degree of explanation and demonstration, and a greater degree of practice – which gives individuals the opportunity to learn skills in a hands-on manner.

INFORMATION CARD C

ENVIRONMENTAL STEWARDSHIP

ENVIRONMENTAL ETHICS

- Outdoor leaders (OLs) must alter the attitudes of others toward preserving and conserving the environment.
- OLs must practice and enforce the environmental ethical code represented by the seven principles of Leave No Trace.

ECOLOGICAL LITERACY

Ecological literacy entails thinking and acting critically in an environmental context, especially when it comes to making decisions and exercising judgment regarding environmental problems.

PARKS AND PROTECTED AREAS MANAGEMENT

- Areas OLs use to conduct outdoor adventure activities (OAA) are managed by provincial and national agencies.
- It is critical that OLs are aware of the policies and regulations of the park/conservation area they are using and abide by these rules.
- OLs must teach low-impact camping, waste management and traveling techniques to their groups.

PROGRAM MANAGEMENT

EMPLOYING SAFETY AND RISK MANAGEMENT

OAA are, for the most part characterized by the inherent risk they possess. Risk is one of the critical components that make outdoor programming so popular and successful. OLs must be able to balance risk and safety.

As an OL, there is a responsibility to:

- assess the OAA for risk;
- manage risk during the activity; and
- develop a contingency plan to ensure the safety of all participants.

PLANNING, ORGANIZING AND MANAGING

Planning

OLs are required to complete detailed planning for trips/activities they lead. Proper planning is essential for any OAA and when it is not carried out thoroughly, the possibility of accidents increases.

Trip/activity plans include:

- emergency management details,
- contingency plans,
- time control plans,
- energy control plans,
- ration plans,
- communication plans, and
- equipment/resource procurement, etc.

Organizing

Once a plan has been developed, the ability to implement the plan is based on the OL's organizational skills. Implementation involves creating a system for getting tasks done and requires the ability to coordinate the various components of the plan so that it comes together to create a unified whole.

Managing

Management skills involve the ability of the OL to direct the group in an efficient manner to complete all required tasks throughout the OAA. For example, when arriving at the campsite, after a long day of paddling, an organized OL will have already divided the group into sub-groups to allow for multi-tasking to ensure the campsite is set up, water is collected, the fire is started and supper is prepared.

EXPERT ACTIVITY SHEET

Provide a brief overview of each assigned competency of an outdoor leader.

Competency #1 _____

Competency #2 _____

Competency #3 _____

Use the scenario to provide examples, positive and negative, of each assigned competency.

Competency #1 _____

Competency #2 _____

Competency #3 _____

COMPETENCIES OF AN OUTDOOR LEADER HANDOUT

SELF-AWARENESS AND PROFESSIONAL CONDUCT

Being Self-Aware

A competent OL needs to be self-aware. To be self-aware is to be conscious of one's character, feelings and motives. As an OL, who is responsible for the safety, well-being and organization of a group of people, being self-aware ensures a higher quality experience for all group members. Being aware of individual feelings and motives will allow the OL to better relate to their group members.

Being Aware of One's Personal Abilities and Limitations

Self-awareness starts with a clear understanding of one's personal abilities and limitations. Without a clear sense of their own abilities and limitations, OLs will have difficulty setting challenges appropriate to the abilities and limitations of group members. As well, there may be a tendency to set the bar too high, which may jeopardize the emotional and physical safety of the members of the group they are leading. This can result in the OL becoming a possible danger to the group and diminishing the quality of the experience for all.

Being Mindful of All Actions

Good OLs are always mindful – intentional – in their actions. They act with regard to the ultimate goals of the group experience, which is a balance between being attentive to the needs of the group members and being attentive to the tasks that must be accomplished.

Managing Stress

Stress can be caused by a number of factors. While some may believe that stress caused by physical danger is the hardest to manage, this is not the case. Situations that place stress on the OL are often a lot less dramatic than a singular event such as a rope breaking during a climbing activity. The event happens so fast that adrenalin kicks in before stress can occur. Instead, it is the ordinariness of the situation which makes it so stressful. For example, a rainstorm catches a group 5 km (3 miles) away from the trailhead. Members force their own frustrations on the group leader, who not only has to deal with the group complaints, but also with the stream of rain running down the neck of their own parka.

Demonstrating Professional Conduct

OLs are placed in a position of responsibility and as such must conduct themselves accordingly in all situations. A lack of professional conduct could result in situations such as an injury during a paddling activity, or a breakdown in group dynamics while on an OAA. It is the inherent risk associated with OAA that makes professional conduct so important for an OL. Professional conduct is characterized through demonstration of the following qualities:

- trustworthiness,
- flexibility,
- approachability,
- commitment,
- awareness of the position of authority, and
- modelling.

CONFLICT MANAGEMENT

Conflicts in OAAs are inevitable. The challenge, for the OL, is to stop the conflict before it escalates, or deal with it quickly and effectively as possible. Most conflicts that occur in outdoor situations are a result of:

- weather conditions;
- varying levels of experience among group members;
- the challenging nature of the activity; and
- personalities of group members.

An OL who is able to communicate clearly with all group members will be better suited to manage conflict. There are always going to be situations where the OL is required to interact with difficult people. A group member who was a pleasure to have around at the beginning of a 10-day expedition, and who got along with everyone at the campsite, may, by Day 8, have blisters from ill-fitting boots and be arguing with everyone. It becomes the responsibility of the OL to deal with this situation. Conflict while on an expedition is like a wound: unless it is dealt with, it will just keep spreading and festering. Dealing with conflict is not a pleasant task, however, the first step is to always speak with the individual and discuss the issues in a calm and sensitive manner.

DECISION MAKING AND JUDGMENT

Decision Making. Decision making is the process of choosing the best option from a collection of possible options. In order to make this choice, the OL will be required to use their judgment.

Judgment. Judgment is an informed opinion based on past experiences. Judgment also provides OLs with the ability to anticipate problems before they occur. Their experience in leading people during an OAA provides them the foresight to know when something is going well or when it needs adjustment.

OLs are placed in the position because of the experience they have. It is then assumed that when leading a group, they will be qualified to make decisions that affect the safety and welfare of the group. That is not to say that OLs have to make the “big” decisions on their own: being able to communicate with fellow group members and use their experience and ideas to help make a decision is also an integral part of making a decision. An OL, who has completed the same route up a mountain, may benefit from another individual’s point of view before deciding whether or not to continue an ascent, or halt due to a lack of motivation in group members.

Decision making is a process which should be carried out decisively. Once an OL has considered their options and reached a decision, they should stick with it, unless circumstances change. They should not allow themselves to be swayed by other group members. They have the experience, have assessed the factors and have reached a decision. In OAA, where safety is always a concern, the OL must have confidence in the decisions they make and the group must have confidence in the decisions the OL has made.

FACILITATION OF THE EXPEDITION EXPERIENCE

Leading others in OAA does not guarantee that learning will occur. An outdoor experience can bring joy and wonder, and can help people develop new relationships and make discoveries. An outdoor experience encourages people to learn things about themselves, others and the outdoors.

It is possible to be outdoors and miss these opportunities or not enjoy the experience. Some participants do not want to learn in the outdoors:

- it feels unsafe in its newness;
- they have had previous negative experiences; or
- they are not interested in getting the most out of the experience.

An effective OL can facilitate the experience and shift the outdoor experience from a mere excursion in the outdoors to a dynamic learning experience.

Facilitation is the process of moving a group or individual toward a desired outcome. A facilitator provides the means for making experiences possible. For an OL, facilitation is a skill which fosters productive group

dynamics, enabling all members to work toward completing the OAA, in a safe and enjoyable manner, while also developing interpersonal relationships.

OLs will often be required to:

- resolve conflicts;
- communicate effectively;
- foster personal trust and group cooperation; and
- debrief and guide reflection during and following an OAA.

TECHNICAL ABILITIES

OLs may possess excellent facilitations skills and may be extremely effective at organizing an OAA, however, without technical ability to serve as the foundation for conducting the activity, these skills cannot be used. Technical abilities are organized into two main areas – generic competency skills and specific competencies.

Generic Competency Skills

Generic competency skills are those skills in which, no matter the OAA, an OL must be competent. They include:

- weather prediction,
- wilderness first aid,
- trip planning,
- navigation,
- camp skills,
- general outdoor skills,
- physical fitness, and
- mental awareness.

Specific Competency Skills

Specific competency skills are those skills unique to the OAA the OL will be leading. Examples include:

- trekking,
- mountain biking,
- abseiling,
- climbing,
- caving,
- canoeing, and
- kayaking.

There is no requirement for an OL to be an expert in all activities. In many cases they choose activities that interest them the most and capitalize on the experiences they offer. Proficiency in an OAA can only be gained through experience. The more experience OLs gain, the more competent they become.

OLs cannot allow their skills to decay; they should continuously participate in professional development training to refresh their knowledge and skills. It is the responsibility of the OL to stay up-to-date in the areas in which they lead others.

INSTRUCTIONAL TECHNIQUES

Instructional skills are important because OLs often have the opportunity to teach and thus share important skills and knowledge with the people they lead. OLs with the responsibility of teaching others need to be well versed in skills such as using instructional aids, developing skill lesson plans and employing different teaching strategies. Experiential education is the primary method by which OLs deliver their educational content. Every lesson involves some degree of explanation and demonstration, and a greater degree of practice – which gives individuals the opportunity to learn skills in a hands-on manner.

ENVIRONMENTAL STEWARDSHIP

Environmental stewardship is a three-faceted term that takes into account environmental ethics, ecological literacy and parks and protected areas management. With the environment experiencing the heavy impact of current culture, it is OLs who must alter the attitudes of others toward preserving and conserving the environment. When leading groups, OLs must practice and enforce the environmental ethical code, represented by the seven principles of Leave No Trace, which serve as the basis for ecologically responsible interactions with the natural environment.

Ecological literacy entails thinking and acting critically in an environmental context, especially when making decisions and exercising judgment regarding environmental problems.

Many of the areas OLs use to conduct OAAs are managed by provincial and national agencies. It is critical that OLs are aware of the policies and regulations of the park/conservation area they are using and abide by these rules. The park/conservation area has implemented these policies and regulations as a means to reduce the environmental impact while still allowing people to enjoy the outdoor setting. OLs must understand that every action has the potential to impact the natural environment and that they must take the necessary precautions to protect the environment when travelling or camping outdoors. As well, they must teach low-impact camping, waste management and travelling techniques to their groups.

PROGRAM MANAGEMENT

Program management consists of two main areas – employing safety and risk management, and planning, organizing and managing. OAAs are, for the most part, characterized by the inherent risk they possess. Risk is one of the critical components that make outdoor programming so popular and successful. OLs must be able to balance risk and safety – too much risk and the danger of the experience will become unreasonable; too much safety and the activity will fail to remain adventurous. As an OL, there is a responsibility to assess the OAA for risk, manage risk during the activity and develop a contingency plan to ensure the safety of all participants. Most aspects of risk management are carried out during the planning phase of an activity.

OLs are required to complete detailed planning for trips/activities they lead. Proper planning is essential for any OAA and when it is not carried out thoroughly, the possibility for tragedy increases. Trip/activity plans include:

- emergency management details,
- contingency plans,
- time control plans,
- energy control plans,
- ration plans,
- communication plans, and

- equipment/resource procurement, etc.

Once a plan has been developed, the ability to implement the plan is based on the OL's organizational skills. Implementation involves creating a system for getting tasks done and requires the ability to coordinate the various components of the plan so that it comes together to create a unified whole.

Management skills involve the ability of the OL to direct the group in an efficient manner to complete all required tasks throughout the OAA. For example, when arriving at the campsite, after a long day of paddling, an organized OL will have already divided the group into sub-groups to allow for multi-tasking to ensure the campsite is set up, water is collected, the fire is started and supper is prepared.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HOMEWORK ASSIGNMENT

Use the scenarios below to answer the following questions:

1. What competency/competencies were displayed in the scenario?
2. How were the competency/competencies displayed? Were the OL's actions positive or negative?
3. If the actions were negative, what could the OL have done to correct their actions?

SCENARIO #1

Sarah is a new member of your club and the first trip she signs up for is yours. At the trailhead, you notice that she's quite proud of a brand new pair of boots. Fine boots or not, you know that new footwear sometimes means trouble, so you check in with her several times during the first mile or two, asking how she's doing. She tells you she's fine – in a tone of voice that suggests you mind your own business.

Most leaders would leave it at that. But your assessment of Sarah is that she's a person of tight-lipped stubbornness, with a very proud and independent spirit. Moreover, the way she was showing off her boots earlier might make her hesitate to admit that she could ever have a problem with them. In short, you're afraid Sarah won't tell you she is having a problem.

And this is a four-day trip. Anyone with serious foot problems on the first day could be in for a truly nasty time – and could slow the group down considerably. Your fears are confirmed when you see Sarah favouring her right foot. You suspect she is developing a blister and that she won't say anything until it's too late to prevent a real problem.

At the next break, you make a show of taking off your own boots to check your feet, informally commenting that this might be a good idea for everybody. Several other people follow your lead, which leaves an opening for Sarah to do the same. You bring out the moleskin and help her treat the red spot on her heel (Martin, B., Cashel, C., Wagstaff, M., and Breunig, M., *Outdoor Leadership: Theory and Practice*, Human Kinetics [pp. 72–73]).

ANSWERS – SCENARIO #1

SCENARIO #2

You're leading a rafting trip down a section of the Roughwater River that you know can get very dangerous this time of year. Two others in your group are expert rafters, but everyone else is a beginner. It's been raining hard in the mountains for two days and the river is high. That's not a problem for the first leg of the trip, but now your group has made it to Devil's Fork, where the river splits in two. The right-hand channel is no more difficult than what you've already experienced. But the left channel has serious rapids, even without the recent rains. You don't have a firsthand report of conditions, but you assume the left fork is too dangerous for the group you're leading.

When you tell the group that you're thinking of heading down the right fork, everybody nods – except Dan and Nora, who are at least as experienced as you as white-water rafters and challenge your assessment as being too conservative. They describe the trip down the left fork as "the adventure of a lifetime," and start recruiting two more people to make a full raft. Several beginners are being swayed by their challenge.

You're tempted by their arguments – it would be a great ride. But you also know it would be irresponsible to take that degree of risk with this group. You tell everyone the decision is made – it's the right fork. With the water this high, you say, the only way any raft should go down the left fork is with a crew of four expert paddlers.

Privately, you also know that even if two people with the experience of Dan and Nora could make it down on their own, that would leave you alone with two overloaded rafts of beginners – not a safe situation even on the "easy" fork. You tell Dan and Nora that the whole group has to stick together, and that it will take the easier fork (Martin, B., Cashel, C., Wagstaff, M., and Breunig, M., pp. 122–123).

ANSWERS – SCENARIO #2

SCENARIO #3

The sea kayaking instructor showed up at a small inland lake to teach a course called Introduction to Sea Kayaking. After he handed out the wetsuits and basic life jackets to the students, he donned his Gore-Tex drysuit, neoprene beanie hat, and the latest life jacket, with VHF radio in the packet, flares, whistle, compass and hydration system, a clear contrast to what the students were using. Later on, he climbed into his new Kevlar kayak while the students climbed into their plastic boats. As the day progressed, the students were amazed at how well the instructor could do the manoeuvres in his high-performance boat, while they could hardly do any in their boat. They also were intimidated by going into the cold water, even though the instructor was floating in it all the time, because of his fancy equipment (Gilberston, K., Bates, T., McLaughlin, and Ewert, A., *Outdoor Education: Methods and Strategies*, Human Kinetics [pg. 25]).

ANSWERS – SCENARIO #3

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SCENARIO

It's your third time out as a trip leader and you're taking a bunch of beginners up an easy trail to Mosquito Lake. Your group is moving a little slower than you'd like, but the weather is fair and the wildflowers are out; you figure it'll be OK to cook dinner in the dark if you have to.

Suddenly, black clouds begin to pour over a ridge to the west, and within minutes a summer storm is bearing down on you. The first drops of rain are so big they kick up dust on the trail. Lightning forks behind the peaks above and the crash of thunder is so loud and near, you know the storm centre will be on top of you in minutes.

You've just started up a long exposed ridge. If you continue up, the danger of being hit by lightning could be significant, and even if it isn't, the chance that someone will panic in a storm this big is very real. But if you head down into the forest below, you'll never make it to the lake before dark; you'll have to camp lower, and you're not sure of the water supply there.

Up until know there has been no need for anyone to 'lead' on this easy, well-travelled trail. But now things have changed. This is Ben's first trip into the mountains. He is clearly getting more worried with each flash of lightning (Graham, J., *Outdoor Leadership: Technique, Common Sense & Self-Confidence*, The Mountaineers [pp. 15–16]).

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PHONETIC ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION OF NUMBERS HANDOUT

Letter	Phonetic	Pronunciation		Letter	Phonetic	Pronunciation
A	ALFA	AL FAH		N	NOVEMBER	NO VÈM BER
B	BRAVO	BRAH VOH		O	OSCAR	OSS CAR
C	CHARLIE	CHAR LEE		P	PAPA	PAH PAH
D	DELTA	DELL TAH		Q	QUEBEC	KÉH BECK
E	ECHO	ECK OH		R	ROMEO	ROW ME OH
F	FOXTROT	FOKS TROT		S	SIERRA	SEE AIR RAH
G	GOLF	GOLF		T	TANGO	TANG GO
H	HOTEL	HOH TÈLL		U	UNIFORM	YOU NEE FORM
I	INDIA	IN DEE AH		V	VICTOR	VIK TAR
J	JULIETT	JEW LEE ÈTT		W	WHISKEY	WISS KEY
K	KILO	KEY LOH		X	X-RAY	ECKS RAY
L	LIMA	LEE MAH		Y	YANKEE	YANG KEY
M	MIKE	MÏ KE		Z	ZULU	ZOO LOO

Number	Pronunciation		Number	Pronunciation
0	ZE-RO		5	FIFE
1	WUN		6	SIX
2	TOO		7	SEV-EN
3	TREE		8	AIT
4	FOW-ER		9	NIN-ER

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

RADIO COMMUNICATION EXERCISE

SERIAL	FROM	TO	MESSAGE	REMARKS
1	1	All stations	All stations 1 – THIS IS – 1 – RADIO CHECK – OVER	Network check.
	All stations	1	11 – LOUD AND CLEAR – OVER 11A – LOUD AND CLEAR – OVER 11B – LOUD AND CLEAR – OVER 11C – LOUD AND CLEAR – OVER 12 – LOUD AND CLEAR – OVER 12A – LOUD AND CLEAR – OVER 12B – LOUD AND CLEAR – OVER 12C – LOUD AND CLEAR – OVER 13 – WEAK BUT READABLE – OVER 13A – WEAK AND DISTORTED – OVER 13B – WEAK BUT READABLE – OVER 13C – UNKNOWN STATION – SAY AGAIN – OVER	13C did not hear the call sign of the transmitting station.
	1	All stations	All stations – THIS IS – 1 – ROGER – 13C – THIS IS – 1 – I SAY AGAIN, RADIO CHECK – OVER	
	13C	1	13C – LOUD AND CLEAR – OVER	
	1	All stations	1 – ROGER – LOUD AND CLEAR – OUT	
2	1	11, 12, 13	11, 12, 13 – THIS IS – 1 – FETCH SUNRAY – OVER	Use of appointment titles.
	11	1	11 – SUNRAY speaking – OVER	
	12	1	12 – WAIT – OUT	
	13	1	13 – SUNRAY MINOR speaking, SUNRAY not in this location – OVER	Prowords
	12	1	1 – THIS IS – SUNRAY speaking – OVER	
	1	11, 12, 13	1 – ROMEO VICTOR at GRID 159597 – OVER	Phonetic alphabet and figures.
	11, 12, 13	1	11 – ROGER – OVER 12 – ROGER – OVER 13 – ROGER – OVER	

SERIAL	FROM	TO	MESSAGE	REMARKS
	1	11, 12, 13	1 – ROGER – OUT	
3	11	11A,11B, 11C	All stations 11 – THIS IS – 11 – LONG MESSAGE – OVER	
	11A,11B, 11C	11	11A – SEND – OVER 11B – WAIT – OVER 11C – SEND – OVER	Wait less than 5 seconds.
	11B	11	11 – THIS IS – 11B – SEND – OVER	
	11	11A,11B, 11C	11 - will move to the FOXTROT UNIFORM PAPA at FIGURES 0330 hours. 11C will lead, followed by 11, 11B and 11A. MORE TO FOLLOW – OVER	Long message.
	11A,11B, 11C	11	11A – ROGER – OVER 11B – ROGER – OVER 11C – ROGER – OVER	
	11	11A,11B, 11C	11 – CALL SIGN BLUEBELL will travel to FOXTROT UNIFORM PAPA with us. 11A will bring up the rear during the march– OVER	
	11A,11B, 11C	11	11A – ROGER – OVER 11B – ROGER – OVER 11C – SAY AGAIN ALL AFTER “with us” – OVER	Prowords SAY AGAIN and AFTER.
	11	11C	11 – I SAY AGAIN ALL AFTER “with us”, “11A will bring up the rear during the march” – OVER	
	11C	11	11C – ROGER – OVER	
	11	11A,11B, 11C	11 – ROGER – OUT	
4	12	12A,12B, 12C	All stations 12 – THIS IS – 12 – LONG MESSAGE – OVER	
	12A,12B, 12C	12	12A – SEND – OVER 12B – SEND – OVER 12C – SEND – OVER	
	12	12A,12B, 12C	12 – will move to FOXTROT UNIFORM PAPA at FIGURES 0300 … CORRECTION …FIGURES 0330 hours.	Long message,

SERIAL	FROM	TO	MESSAGE	REMARKS
			12C will lead, followed by 12, 12A and 12B…MORE TO FOLLOW – OVER	makes correction.
	12A,12B, 12C	12	12A – ROGER – OVER 12B – ROGER – OVER 12C – ROGER – OVER	
	12	12A,12B, 12C	12 – PLAYTIME will be in location to top up PAPA OSCAR LIMA when we arrive at FOXTROT UNIFORM PAPA. 12C will be left, 12B center, 12A right, 12 in depth - OVER	Appointment title.
	12A,12B, 12C	12	12A – SAY AGAIN ALL BETWEEN “PLAYTIME” and “arrive” – OVER 12B – ROGER – OVER 12C – ROGER – OVER	12A missed part of the message.
	12	12A	12 – I SAY AGAIN ALL BETWEEN “PLAYTIME” and “arrive”, “PLAYTIME will be in location to top up PAPA OSCAR LIMA when we arrive” – OVER	
	12A	12	12A – ROGER – OVER	
	12	12A,12B, 12C	12 – ROGER – OUT	
5	13	13A,13B, 13C	All stations 13 – THIS IS – 13 – OVER	
	13A,13B, 13C	13	13A – ROGER – OVER 13B – ROGER - OVER	Few seconds go by.
	13	13A,13B, 13C	13 – 13A, 13B – ROGER – 13C, THIS IS 13 – OVER	Few seconds go by.
	13	13C	13C – THIS IS – 13 – OVER	
	13C	13	13C – SEND – OVER	
	13	13C	13 – ENSURE YOU MONITOR NET CONTINUOUSLY – OVER	
	13C	13	13C – ROGER – OVER	
	13	13A,13B, 13C	All stations 13 – we will set-up bivouac site at GRID 178342 by FIGURES 0430 hours. Expect visitors from - I SPELL ALFA DELTA VICTOR ECHO NOVEMBER TANGO UNIFORM	Phonetic alphabet, spelling difficult words.

SERIAL	FROM	TO	MESSAGE	REMARKS
			ROMEO ECHO CHARLIE OSCAR YANKEE – OVER	
	13A,13B, 13C	13	13A – ROGER – OVER 13B – SAY AGAIN ALL AFTER “visitors from” – OVER 13C – ROGER – OVER	
	13	13B	13 – 13B READ BACK….I SAY AGAIN ALL AFTER “visitors from”…”visitors from I SPELL ALFA DELTA VICTOR ECHO NOVEMBER TANGO UNIFORM ROMEO ECHO CHARLIE OSCAR YANKEE – OVER	Ensure message is understood.
	13B	13	13B – I READ BACK… visitors from I SPELL ALFA DELTA VICTOR ECHO NOVEMBER TANGO UNIFORM ROMEO ECHO CHARLIE CHARLIE YANKEE – OVER	Mistake is made.
	13	13B	13 – NEGATIVE…” visitors from I SPELL ALFA DELTA VICTOR ECHO NOVEMBER TANGO UNIFORM ROMEO ECHO CHARLIE OSCAR YANKEE – OVER	
	13B	13	13B – I READ BACK…” visitors from I SPELL ALFA DELTA VICTOR ECHO NOVEMBER TANGO UNIFORM ROMEO ECHO CHARLIE OSCAR YANKEE – OVER	
	13	13C	13 – ROGER – OUT	
6	12	13	13 – THIS IS – 12 – OVER	Passing message.
	12	13	13 – THIS IS – 12 – OVER	
	12	13	13 – THIS IS – 12 – OVER	
	13C	12	12 – THIS IS – 13C – THROUGH ME – OVER	
	12	13C	12 – ROGER – RELAY TO 12 – SEND Location of ROMEO VICTOR – OVER	
	13C	12	13C – ROGER – OUT	
	13C	13	13 – THIS IS – 13C – OVER	

SERIAL	FROM	TO	MESSAGE	REMARKS
	13	13C	13 – SEND – OVER	
	13C	13	13C – RELAY FROM 12 – “SEND Location of ROMEO VICTOR” – OVER	
	13	13C	13C – ROGER – ROMEO VICTOR is at GRID 137954 – OVER	
	13C	13	13C – ROGER – OUT	
	13C	12	12 – THIS IS – 13C – OVER	
	12	13C	12 – SEND – OVER	
	13C	12	13C – RELAY FROM 13 – “ROMEO VICTOR is at GRID 137954” – OVER	
	12	13C	12 – ROGER – OUT	
7	1	All stations	All stations 1 – THIS IS – 1 – BULL DOG – OVER	Shutting down the net.
	All stations	1	11 – BULL DOG – OVER 11A – BULL DOG – OVER 11B – BULL DOG – OVER 11C – BULL DOG – OVER 12 – BULL DOG – OVER 12A – BULL DOG – OVER 12B – BULL DOG – OVER 12C – BULL DOG – OVER 13 – BULL DOG – OVER 13A – BULL DOG – OVER 13B – BULL DOG – OVER 13C – BULL DOG – OVER	
	1	All stations	1 – BULL DOG – NOW – OUT	

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 16
PO 326 – PERFORM EXPEDITION SKILLS

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 1

EO M326.01 – PREPARE FOR EXPEDITION TRAINING

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Obtain necessary examples of outdoor clothing and equipment.

Obtain the necessary examples of high-energy snacks if available.

Obtain the updated version of the expedition centre joining instructions.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for this lesson to orient the cadets to expedition training and their responsibilities with regard to equipment.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to prepare for expedition training.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to understand the importance of preparing for expedition training to allow the cadet to be more comfortable. Reviewing the joining instructions prior to undergoing training will assist cadets in preparing for training.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss the Selection of Clothing, Footwear, and Personal and Group Equipment**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to familiarize cadets with the proper clothing and equipment to pack for expedition training.

This TP is an introduction to selection criteria for personal clothing and equipment as well as group equipment. Cadets should have some knowledge of this subject from previous information presented in Green and Red Star.

Have examples of outdoor clothing available if possible.

Customize the lesson to the anticipated weather for the respective expedition centre and its activities. Cadets should be advised to check the weather forecast prior to the training.

CLOTHING

The most effective way to maintain warmth and comfort in varying conditions is by using multiple layers of clothing, rather than just one. Layers allow one to build a microclimate that surrounds the body which can then be adapted to moisture, wind, temperature and exertion levels.

Remember:

- It is easier to stay warm than to try to warm up after getting cold.
- It takes more insulation to stay warm when sitting still than when moving.
- Heat is lost faster to a cold solid object through conduction than to cold air through convection, which is the transfer of heat by upward movement.

FOOTWEAR

Footwear is an important aspect of dressing for expedition training. Properly fitting, comfortable shoes/boots will make the cadet more comfortable during training. Low-ankle hiking boots are the ideal footwear. Finding shoes/boots that provide adequate ankle protection is important.

Combat boots or other military issue high-ankle support boots should not be worn during expedition training.

PERSONAL EQUIPMENT

Consult the joining instructions for a specific list of requisite personal kit.

Personal expedition equipment are items which benefit the participant and should be maintained by that person. Personal equipment is the kit the cadets need to carry on them.

Items to bring from home:

- **Hygiene Kit.** Includes all personal items required to maintain good health and hygiene. A hygiene kit should include:
    - camp soap (biodegradable),
    - toothbrush,
    - toothpaste,
    - toilet paper, and
    - facecloth or small towel.
- **Insect Repellent.** The active ingredient in bug repellent is DEET. Many brands are available and can be purchased at most grocery stores.
- **Lip Balm.** Lip balm with sunscreen will help protect lips. Lips burn easily at any elevation and cold dry winds can make lips crack and bleed.
- **Sunscreen.** A Sun Protection Factor (SPF) of 4 means that it will take four times longer to burn as when unprotected. Most sunburns can be prevented with a SPF of 15 with UVA and UVB protection, however an SPF of 30 or higher is recommended for most activities.
- **Sunglasses.** Protective eyewear.
- **Notepad and Pencil.** Allows for note taking/leaving a message in any situation.
- **Water Carrier.** A leak proof water bottle or canteen.
- **Camera.** Cameras are great to record new experiences.

Items that the expedition centre may provide:

- **Flashlight/Headlamp.** A flashlight/headlamp should always be carried; smaller is better to control weight (be sure to have a spare set of batteries and bulb before each trip). Headlamps allow for hands-free operation.
- **Matches.** At least 20 matches that can strike anywhere and are waterproof are best. Store matches with a striker in a separate container inside the kit (35 mm film cases would suffice).
- **Pocket Knife/Multi-tool.** Useful tool for many applications in the field. Hunting-type knives with long fixed blades are not appropriate for cadet activities.
- **Survival Kit.** Fill with useful items that are specific for the environment you will be travelling in.
- **Whistle.** For use as a signalling device in emergencies.
- **High-Energy Snacks.** As detailed in TP 2.

There may be a requirement for each participant to have a plate, a bowl and cutlery depending on food being consumed during expedition training.

GROUP EQUIPMENT

Group equipment should be selected for its versatility, weight and ease of use and packing. The more compact an item is or can become, the easier it will be to pack and carry.

Group equipment will be given to cadets upon arrival at the expedition centre.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is the most effective way to maintain warmth and comfort in varying conditions?

Q2. What is the ideal footwear for expedition training?

Q3. What are the personal items a cadet should bring to the expedition centre?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The most effective way to maintain warmth and comfort in varying conditions is by using multiple layers of clothing, rather than just one garment.

A2. Low-ankle hiking boots are the ideal footwear for expedition training.

A3. The personal items that should be brought to the expedition centre are:

- hygiene kit,
- insect repellent,
- lip balm,
- sunscreen,
- sunglasses,
- notepad and pencil,
- water carrier, and
- camera.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss High-Energy Snacks**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to introduce cadets to the importance of eating and snacking while performing high-energy activities.

Use actual food examples if available.

Food is one of the most important factors to consider when expending large amounts of energy during activities. Choosing the right snacks to supplement meals is important to maintain energy and nutrition.

People are more prone to injuries around 1100 hours and 1500 hours when blood sugar is low and people are tired from activities.

GRANOLA BARS

Granola bars are an easy snack that can be brought on the trail with little waste. The wrapper of the granola bar can be folded and placed in a resealable plastic bag for disposal. When eating on the move, the wrapper can simply be placed in a pocket.

Granola bars come in a variety of flavours and often include chocolate. The nutrition in granola bars is largely grain based and provides a high calorie count. Granola bars often have 10–14 grams of sugar and 11–16 grams of fat.

Stay away from granola bars with more than 20 percent fat. These bars will only impede energy levels.

DRIED FRUIT AND NUTS

Dried fruits last for months, and keeps most of their nutritional value. Dried fruit provides energy benefits without the added weight of 80 percent water content. Most grocery stores have varieties of mixed fruit, which can be dried at home.

Homemade Dried Apples

1. Slice the apples thinly.
2. Place on baking tray in a single layer.
3. Place in oven on a low temperature setting (60 degrees Celsius [140 degrees Fahrenheit]).
4. Check dryness every 20 minutes.
5. Crack open the oven door to remove moist air and improve result.

This process can take up to four hours.

Seeds and nuts are great sources of carbohydrates, protein and fat. Proteins are an essential part of any diet; known as the “don’t leave home without it” snack. The high fat content will slow digestion so seeds and nuts are best used for refuelling during longer breaks. Nuts also provide magnesium, guarding the muscles against burn from lactic acid.

CHEESE

A good source of dairy on the trail, cheese is a great form of calcium.

Cheese with a high moisture content does not keep well when not refrigerated for extended periods of time.

Cheeses with a low moisture content include:

- cheddar,
- colby, and
- swiss.

Cheeses with low moisture content can keep longer. The liquefied milk fat will run off at high temperatures. While this is not a pleasant sight, it is not a sign of spoilage.

"GOOD OLD RAISINS AND PEANUTS" (GORP)

"Good old raisins and peanuts," is just that – a mixture of raisins, peanuts and anything else a person might want to add. There is often a sugar source like chocolate chips added to a dried fruit.

There are many varieties of GORP recipes. GORP can be bought in most groceries stores – pre-made – or made at home. Everyone has their favourite recipe. A person's GORP may change every expedition depending on what is available, or what they feel like eating.

Small items like sunflower seeds will settle to the bottom of the bag while larger items will float to the top. Mix up the contents of the bag before eating.

Simple GORP Recipe:

118 mL (1/2 cup) peanuts,

118 mL (1/2 cup) raisins,

59 mL (1/4 cup) chocolate chips*, and

59 mL (1/4 cup) dried cranberries.

*In warmer weather, chocolate chips can be substituted with candy-coated chocolate which will not melt.

Mix in a bowl and store in an air tight container or resealable bag.

This makes a little more than 354 mL (1 1/2 cups). Add or take away items as you like.

Examples of food items to put in GORP:

- dried apples,
- banana chips,
- dried papaya,
- dates,
- dried cranberries,
- coconut,

- almonds,
- cashews,
- peanuts,
- chocolate,
- carob chips,
- candy-coated chocolate,
- chocolate or yogourt covered raisins,
- sunflower seeds,
- dried green peas, and
- pretzels.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. When are people more prone to injuries on the trail?

Q2. What nutrients are in nuts?

Q3. What is GORP?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. People are more prone to injuries around 1100 hours and 1500 hours when blood sugar is low and people are tired from activities.

A2. Nuts are great source of carbohydrates, protein and fat.

A3. Good old raisins and peanuts. There is often a sugar source like chocolate chips added to dried fruit.

Teaching Point 3 — **Review, and Brief the Cadets on the Joining Instructions and Training Schedule for Silver Star Expedition Training**

Time: 10 min — Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to introduce and brief cadets on what is required during training at the expedition centre.

Review joining instructions and after briefing cadets, answer any questions the cadets have.

RISKS IN EXPEDITION TRAINING

Activities conducted at the expedition centres will likely include hiking, biking, canoeing and camping. With all adventure activities there are inherent risks. Risk is the chance or possibility of danger, loss or injury. Each activity has its own risks.

Hiking is the activity of walking outdoors on unpaved trails in a wilderness environment and may include many types of terrain and environments. It is not uncommon for cadets to be injured by tripping, falling and slipping over wet roots or rocks, or falling down a small slope.

Mountain biking is riding a bike on trails and secondary roads, using specialized equipment. Cadets are at risk of falling off the bike, or not using the bike properly which may cause injury. Injuries that may occur mountain biking are cuts and scrapes, bruising, flesh wounds, or broken bones.

Canoeing is travelling by canoe. Cadets should be seated, wearing PFDs and acting responsibly while canoeing. These actions will minimize the risks associated with canoeing.

Canoeing is of great cultural significance to Canadians and canoeing in expedition training allows cadets to see Canada's wilderness from a different perspective.

Refer to CATO 40-01, *Army Cadet Expedition Program* for general expedition information.

Medical Information

The Medical Information Form is located in A-CR-CCP-951/PT-002, Chapter 1, Annex B. This form must be completed by all cadets prior to undertaking expedition training. This form asks general questions regarding health.

Consent to Adventure Training

In addition to the medical form, the Consent to Adventure Training form, Chapter 1, Annex A to A-CR-CCP-951/PT-002, must be filled out by participating cadets. This form advises instructors and organizers that the cadet understands what they are undertaking and will comply with all rules and regulations.

Policies

Prior to participating in expedition training, all cadets shall be reminded of the following policies:

- CATO 11-08, *Environmental Stewardship Policy*,
- CATO 13-23, *Drug and Alcohol Policy*,
- CATO 13-24, *Harassment Prevention and Resolution Policy*,
- CATO 13-26, *Return To Unit Policy*, and
- CATO 15-22, *Cadet Conduct and Discipline Policy*.

JOINING INSTRUCTIONS

Joining instructions are issued to provide cadets with all the required information they may need to arrive at the expedition centre prepared and capable of performing the required training. They are issued for all activities outside of the local cadet corps.

Each region will have different joining instructions for each expedition centre.

Joining instructions for expedition training can be found at the regional website, through www.cadets.ca.

The joining instructions will have information such as:

- general information on the activity,
- directions to the expedition centre,
- dates of training,
- transportation requirements,
- what identification is required,
- administrative and claim information,
- rations and quarters information,
- uniform requirements,
- expected cadet conduct, and
- required kit list.

Joining instructions will often have a schedule/timetable included.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets participation in the briefing on the expedition centres training weekend will serve as confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets participation in the briefing of the expedition centres training weekend will serve as confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Participating in a briefing on the local expedition centre, wearing clothing, and bringing equipment and snacks will better prepare cadets for the upcoming challenges of expedition training.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

The joining instructions and timetable referred to in TP 3 will vary depending on the region. Instructors should acquire these from the local expedition centre.

This EO should be conducted in the two weeks preceding the cadet's Silver Star expedition centre training weekend.

REFERENCES

A2-001 A-CR-CCP-951/PT-002 Director Cadets 3 (2006). *Royal Canadian Army Cadets Adventure Training Safety Standards*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C2-051 (ISBN 978-0-7153-2254-3) Bagshaw, C. (2006). *The Ultimate Hiking Skills Manual*. Cincinnati, OH: David & Charles.

C2-066 (ISBN 1-4000-5309-9) Curtis, R. (2005). *The Backpacker's Field Manual: A Comprehensive Guide to Mastering Backcountry Skills*. New York, NY: Three Rivers Press.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 2

EO M326.02A – PADDLE A CANOE

Total Time: 165 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 1–3, and TP 6 to orient the cadet, generate interest and present basic or background material on canoeing, canoeing equipment, and safety procedures.

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TPs 4, 5, and 9 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate portaging a canoe, outfitting a canoe, and basic canoe strokes while providing an opportunity for the cadet to practice these skills under supervision.

Demonstration was chosen for TPs 7 and 8 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate launching/landing and the canoe over canoe assisted rescue in a controlled environment.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 10 as it is an interactive way for the cadet to experience paddling a canoe in a safe, controlled environment during an expedition. The expedition contributes to the development of canoeing knowledge and skills in a fun and challenging setting on-water.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have identified the parts of the canoe and the paddle; demonstrated how to: properly outfit a canoe with safety equipment, prepare for on-water activities and launch and land a canoe; performed a canoe over canoe assisted rescue; and performed basic canoe strokes.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to know the parts of the canoe and paddle, so they can respond to direction given by instructor when participating in canoeing activities. To ensure safety of individual cadets and those around them when canoeing it is critical that all cadets: understand how to outfit a canoe with the required safety equipment; know how to communicate with paddle and whistle signals; know how to properly fit a Personal Floatation Device (PFD); understand portaging, launching and loading procedures; have an awareness of emergency rescue procedures; and are able to manoeuvre their canoe on water.

Teaching Point 1 **Identify the Parts of a Canoe**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

It is important that cadets can see the canoe and its parts. A canoe should be on site and as the parts are identified, the instructor or an assistant should point to the respective part.

There are many different styles of canoes. The technological improvements in canoe building have made it quite difficult to choose an ineffective canoe. Despite the advances in design, the basic elements of the canoe remain the same. The parts of the canoe are:

Bow. The bow is the front section of the canoe. The bow can be easily spotted by looking at the seats. There is more leg room between the end of the canoe and the bow seat.

Stern. The stern is the back section of the canoe; most of the steering is done from the stern.

Gunwales. Gunwales are the upper edges of the sides of the canoe.

Thwart. The thwart on a canoe is a crosspiece which is attached on either side to the gunwales, two-thirds of the way back from the bow. The thwart provides structure and support to the gunwales and to the hull.

Hull. The hull is the body of the canoe which displaces water and provides the buoyancy for the canoe.

Keel. The keel is a narrow strip that runs along the centre of the bottom of the hull from bow to stern. The keel helps to provide better tracking (movement in a straight line) and stability; as well as providing a small barrier between the ground and the hull.

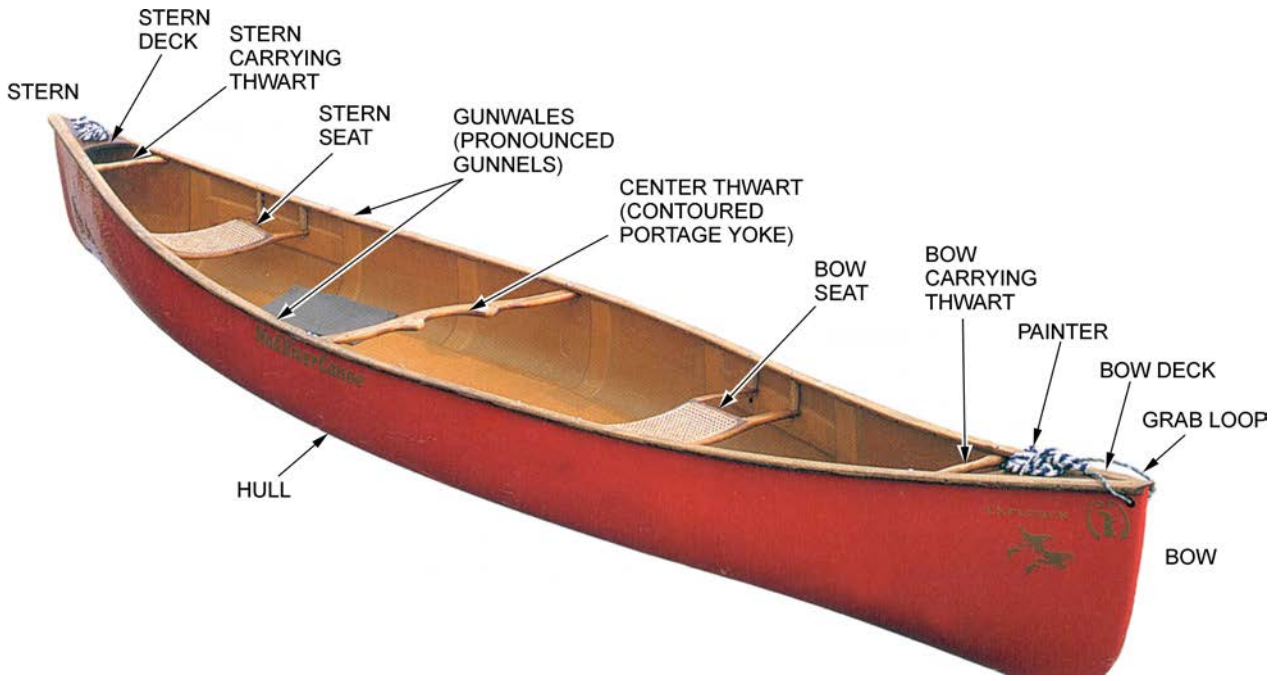
Bow Seat. The bow seat is located in the front (bow) of the canoe. It is further from the end of the canoe to provide leg room for the bow paddler.

Stern Seat. The stern seat is located in the back (stern) of the canoe. It is narrow and fastened to the gunwales closest to the rear of the canoe.

Bow Handle. The bow handle is a handhold at the bow, used for lifting and carrying. It is sometimes called the bow carrying thwart.

Stern Handle. The stern handle is a handhold at the stern, used for lifting and carrying. It is sometimes called the stern carrying thwart.

Deck Plate. The deck plate is a triangle piece of material that is fastened between the gunwales at both ends of the canoe. It is often called the bow deck and the stern deck. The deck plate provides a convenient handhold in the case of no bow or stern handle, as well as a place to attach a painter line.



G. McGuffin & J. McGuffin, Paddle Your Own Canoe, The Boston Mills Press (p. 13)

Figure 16-2-1 Parts of the Canoe

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the front and back of the canoe called?

Q2. What is the hull?

Q3. Where is the keel?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The front and back of the canoe are called the bow and the stern.

A2. The hull is the body of the canoe which displaces water and provides the buoyancy for the canoe.

A3. The keel is at the bottom of the canoe, running from bow to stern.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss Paddles**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Have a paddle available to help illustrate the parts.

The paddle is the most important piece of equipment required to canoe, with the exception of the canoe itself. The paddle provides the momentum to move the canoe.

PARTS OF A PADDLE

Shaft. The shaft is the narrow neck of the paddle between the grip and the blade.

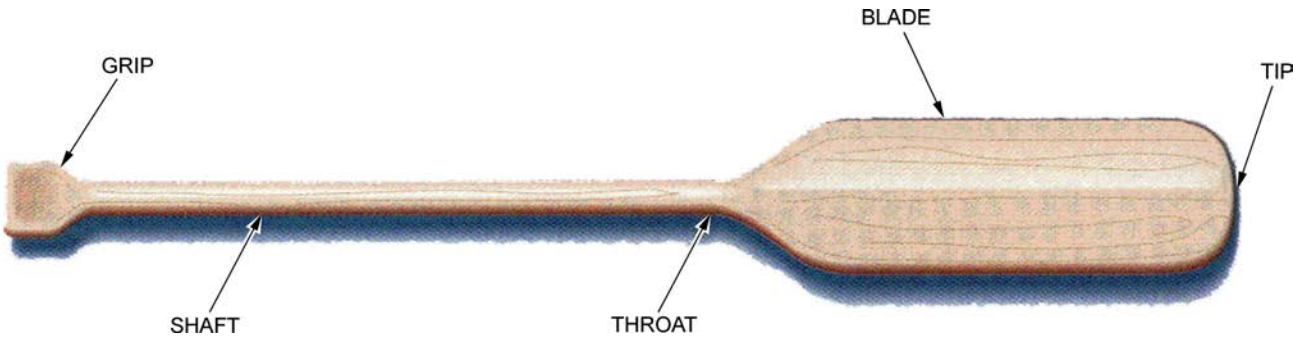
Grip. The grip is found at the top of the paddle shaft and is where the paddler holds the paddle.

Throat. The throat is located at the bottom of the shaft, where the paddler's shaft hand holds the paddle.

Blade. The blade is the part of the paddle that is placed in the water. The blade has two sides:

- **Power Face.** The power face is the side of the paddle blade that presses against the water during a forward stroke.
- **Back Face.** The back face is the side of the paddle blade that has no pressure against it during a forward stroke. The back face is the opposite side of the power face.

Tip. The tip is the very bottom edge of the paddle blade.



L. Guillon, Outdoor Pursuits Series: Canoeing, Human Kinetics Publishers (p. 21)

Figure 16-2-2 Parts of a Paddle

SIZING A PADDLE

When selecting a paddle, it is important to size it correctly. Torso length, canoe seat height and paddling style will determine the proper paddle length.

Most tandem paddlers will require a paddle length between 137 cm (54 inches) and 147 cm (58 inches). Shorter paddles allow for higher tempo strokes. If the grip hand is above the head during strokes, the paddle is too long.

Paddle length will differ with individual preference, based on comfort and efficiency.

When choosing a paddle from a group of paddles, there are two ways to size a paddle.

1. Hold the paddle in both hands over your head with one hand on the grip and the other on the shaft, close to the throat. With the paddle rested on the head, the arms should be able to bend comfortably at the elbow in a 90 degree bend.
2. Hold the paddle in one hand and rest the blade on the top of the foot. The grip should come to the chin.

HOLDING A PADDLE CORRECTLY

The paddle is held in both hands. One hand will hold the grip (control hand) and the second hand, called the shaft hand, will hold the paddle somewhere between the shaft and the throat of the paddle. If the paddler has shorter arms, the shaft hand will be higher up on the shaft.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. Where does the paddler hold the paddle?

Q2. What is the shaft?

Q3. What are the two sides of the paddle blade?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The paddler holds the paddle at the grip and the throat of the shaft.

A2. The shaft is the narrow neck of the paddle between the grip and the blade.

A3. The two sides of the paddle blade are the power face and the back face.

Teaching Point 3 **Discuss PFDs**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

Have a lifejacket and a PFD available to show the differences between each one to the cadets.

There are many people who use the water for both recreational activities and job-related duties. A lifejacket/ PFD is used to assist in keeping a person afloat if they should fall into the water.

Government of Canada regulations state that anyone who is on and near the water, must have a Coast Guard/Transport Canada approved floatation device.

THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN A LIFEJACKET AND A PFD

When in the water, a lifejacket is designed to keep the user's face up even if they are unconscious.

A PFD does not have the ability to turn the user face up but provides buoyancy (the ability to float without kicking or using arms).

Construction of a PFD

The Canadian Coast Guard regulates the construction of PFDs. When choosing a PFD, look for:

- Canadian Coast Guard/Transport Canada approved symbol;

- protection against hypothermia;
- allowance for maximum body movement;
- proper fit;
- ease of putting on and taking off; and
- rating for the user's weight.

Care Instructions for a PFD

Caring for a PFD is important in order to prolong its life.

The following is a list of PFD don'ts:

- dry clean,
- alter, or repair a PFD,
- use cleaners,
- leave in the sun for long periods,
- leave near direct heat (fires, radiators, hair dryer),
- place under heavy objects,
- use as a cushion or kneeling pad, or
- attach to a boat.

Before using a PFD it should be checked for:

- rips and tears,
- damage to seams and buckles, straps or zippers, and
- signs of waterlogging, mildew or hardening of the buoyant material.

FITTING A PFD

Fit is the most important thing when selecting a PFD. A PFD should:

- not be able to be pulled off easily,
- fit snugly, and
- be properly fastened.

A PFD must always be worn on and near water, and worn as the top layer.

Refer to A-CR-CCP-030/PT-001 *Water Safety Orders* for more information.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is the difference between a lifejacket and a PFD?

Q2. What is the approving body for PFDs and lifejackets in Canada?

Q3. How should a PFD fit?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. A lifejacket is designed to keep the user's face above water, while a PFD only provides buoyancy.

A2. Canadian Coast Guard/Transport Canada is the approving body for PFDs and lifejackets in Canada.

A3. A PFD should:

- not be able to be easily pulled off;
- fit snugly; and
- be properly fastened.

Teaching Point 4 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Practice Portaging a Canoe**

Time: 15 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

For this TP, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate each method of portaging while the cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step required to complete each method of portaging. Monitor the cadets as they practice each step.
3. Monitor the cadets' performance as they practice each method of portaging.

Note: Assistant instructors may be used to monitor the cadets' performance.

CARRYING A CANOE TO THE WATER

Once a canoe is off the vehicle or trailer, it still needs to get to the water. There are several ways to carry a canoe; having one person at each end is a typical way. Hand and arm placement should allow for maximum comfort and provide balance and security against dropping.

It is critical that the canoe is not dragged along the ground. This damages the keel and the bottom of the canoe which may result in holes.

Tandem Hand Carry

For a short distance over relatively flat ground, a canoe can be carried much like a briefcase. This is referred to as the tandem hand carry.

To execute the tandem hand carry:

1. The bow paddler will stand at the bow on the left or right of the canoe.
2. The stern paddler will stand at the stern on the side opposite to the bow paddler.
3. Each paddler will lift the canoe by the handle at their end.

L. Guillon, Outdoor Pursuits Series: Canoeing, Human Kinetics Publishers (p. 36)

Figure 16-2-3 Tandem Hand Carry

Tandem Portage Carry

For longer distances, a canoe can be carried on the shoulders in the tandem portage carry. The canoe is lifted over the head and carried in such a manner that the stern seat rests across the shoulders of the person at the rear and the bow deck rests on one shoulder of the person in front.

To execute the tandem portage carry:

1. Stand up straight, with the legs slightly apart and knees bent. Grasp the gunwale closest to the body, near the bow and stern seats respectively. Place the fingers inside the gunwale and the thumbs outside the gunwale.
2. Keeping the back straight and knees bent, lift the canoe to the thighs in a rocking motion.
3. Reach across the canoe and grasp the far gunwale. The fingers are pointing out and the thumb is in. Re-position the hand from step one so that the fingers are out and the thumb is in.
4. Rocking the canoe again, use your legs to launch and lift the canoe over the head.
5. As the canoe is raised, turn to face the bow and then guide the bow and stern seats onto the shoulders.
6. Rest the weight of the canoe on the shoulders. The bow person will move further forward to improve visibility.
7. To move forward, the bow paddler hand-walks along the gunwale toward the front of the canoe. Balance the canoe's weight side to side and bow to stern.
8. Rest the deck plate on the bow paddler's shoulder.

Figure 16-2-4 (Sheet 1 of 2) Tandem Portage Carry Steps 1–8

A. Westwood, Canoeing: The Essential Skills and Safety, Heliconia Press (p. 136)

Figure 16-2-4 (Sheet 2 of 2) Tandem Portage Carry Steps 1–8

A. Westwood, Canoeing: The Essential Skills and Safety, Heliconia Press (p. 136)

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 4

QUESTIONS

Q1. Why does dropping a canoe normally occur?

Q2. What are the different ways a canoe can be carried to the water?

Q3. When the portage is very long, what is the best way of carrying the canoe?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Dropping a canoe is usually caused by incorrect placement of the hands.

A2. A canoe can be carried to the water by the tandem hand carry or the tandem portage carry.

A3. When a portage is very long, the best way to carry the canoe is by the tandem portage carry.

Teaching Point 5 — Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Practice Outfitting a Canoe With Safety Equipment

Time: 15 min — Method: Demonstration and Performance

For this skill TP, it is recommended that the instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate the complete process of outfitting a canoe while the cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step to outfit a canoe. Monitor the cadets as they practice each step.
3. Monitor the cadets' performance as they practice the complete skill of outfitting a canoe.

Note: Assistant instructors may be used to monitor the cadets' performance.

Every boat that enters the water has to be outfitted with certain safety equipment that is required by law. The Canadian Coast Guard and Transport Canada deem every canoe must have the following safety equipment:

BUOYANT HEAVING LINE OR THROW BAG

One buoyant heaving line not less than 15 m (49 ft) in length must be available for use in emergencies such as capsized paddlers. The heaving line shall be capable of floating and shall be attached using a figure-of-eight knot, or by clipping the throw bag to the thwart or bow handle.

A throw bag is a nylon rescue bag with a length of rope stuffed loosely inside, so it can pay out through the top when thrown to a person in the water.

BAILER

A bailer is any container capable of removing water from a canoe. It must be made of plastic or metal, with an opening of 65 cm^2 (25 in^2) and a minimum volume of 750 mL (25 oz). The bailer will be attached to the thwart of the canoe using a clove hitch.

SPARE PADDLE

In addition to the paddles used by the paddlers, a third paddle is required in the case that one is lost, broken or forgotten on shore. The spare paddle should be secured, but immediately available in an emergency. Lashing the paddle into the canoe is not recommended.

WHISTLE

A pealess whistle or noise-making device is required to communicate with other paddlers and signal in case of emergency. The whistle is often attached to the paddler's PFD, if not, it should be worn on a cord around the paddler's neck.

WHITE NAVIGATION LIGHT

The white navigation light is a watertight flashlight complete with working batteries. This light can be used to signal other paddlers and during an emergency. It is attached to the bow plate using a carabiner or a piece of cordage.

The cadets are to be introduced to the requirement for a white navigation light as safety equipment, however, as cadets will not canoe at night, there is no requirement to use this device when outfitting a canoe.

PAINTER LINES

Painter lines are two lines 6 m (19 feet) in length made of 10 mm (0.3 inches) buoyant polypropylene rope, with no knots. The lines are attached to the bow (bow line) and stern (stern line) of a canoe. They are used for pulling the canoe through shallow water and securing it to the shoreline or other stationary object. Painter lines will be attached to the bow and stern handles using a re-woven figure-of-eight knot.

PFD

A vest style jacket filled with foam panels or tubes that provide buoyancy. A PFD must be worn when an individual is within 3 m (10 feet) or less of the shoreline, prior to or upon completion of an on-water activity and when they are on the water. It is important to ensure that the PFD is properly zipped and buckled prior to moving to the waters edge.

The A-CR-CCP-030/PT-001, states “the PFD shall always be worn over the outer layer of clothing. When worn, the PFD must have all fasteners and tighteners secured as they are intended to be used. A properly fitted PFD should be snug around the cadet’s upper body when in or out of the water. The PFD should not ride up to the cadet’s face when all fasteners and tighteners are fitted and secured. If it is riding up under these conditions, a smaller size is required.”

The A-CR-CCP-951/PT-002, states that one Canadian-approved PFD or lifejacket of appropriate size must be available for each person participating in on-water activities.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 5

The cadets’ participation in outfitting a canoe with safety equipment will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 6 **Discuss Safety Concerns While Canoeing**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

When completing any cadet training, safety is always the main concern. This is also the case when cadets are in an unknown area or unfamiliar terrain, such as a body of water. It is important to consider hazards and to get to know the strengths and limitations of the members of the group.

Discuss responsibilities on water and passing procedures.

UNDERSTAND PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITIES

Skill Level

It is the responsibility of the paddler to ensure that they have the proper skill set for paddling. Participants should always advise staff when they feel uncomfortable or unprepared for any aspect of canoe training.

Physical Fitness

Fitness and well-being are an important part of canoeing. Individuals must take responsibility for themselves. Every paddler must make sure they are physically and mentally prepared for paddling.

Physical preparedness includes having the endurance to be able to paddle the entire trip. The paddler should not be suffering from a cold or illness, and should not have any physical injuries, such as cramped or sore muscles.

IDENTIFY PADDLE SIGNALS

When explaining paddle signals, it is important for cadets to see the signal in action. Demonstrate all paddle signals.

The water can be a noisy place. Using a whistle, paddle or gestures are the best ways of getting the attention of other paddlers.

Before heading out on any body of water, it is important to know and understand universal paddle signals. Paddle signals are important in times when there is distance between canoes and it is difficult to hear. Good communication on the water is essential to prevent accidents and ensure swift emergency response.

When receiving a signal, it is important to repeat the signal to the sender and pass the signal on to paddlers behind.

Paddle signals are used to alert the entire group to the direction of travel or to an unexpected situation, such as an overturned canoe.

Stop. To communicate the stop signal, form a horizontal bar with the paddle and move with an up and down motion until remaining paddlers see it. If you are already stationary, stay where you are. Wait for the all clear signal before proceeding.

J. Rounds, Basic Kayaking: All the Skills and Gear You Need to Get Started, Stackpole Books (p. 83)

Figure 16-2-5 Stop

Paddle signals should be given to indicate the direction of travel; not the location of the obstacles.

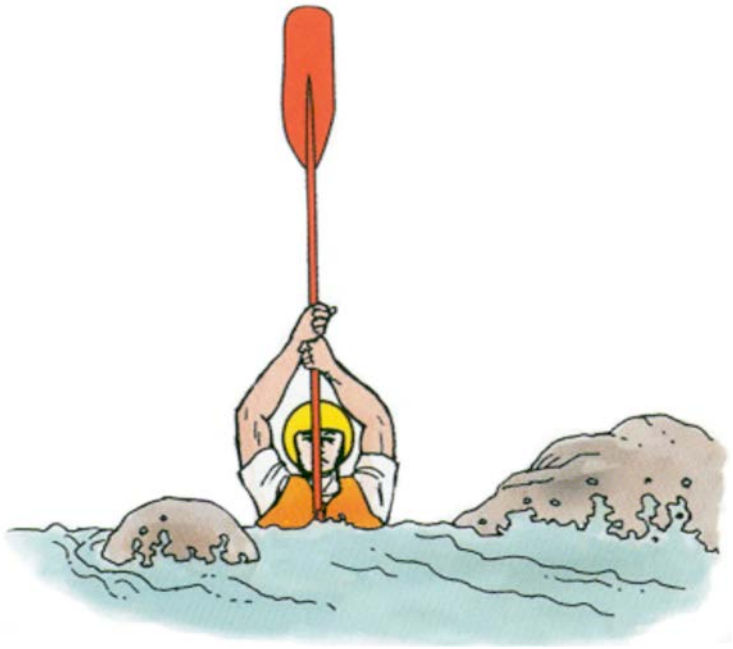
Help Required/Emergency. To communicate the help required/emergency signal, a paddle, helmet or a bright object (not a PFD) are waved in a continuous motion side to side above the head. This means “assist the signaller as quickly as possible”.

J. Rounds, Basic Kayaking: All the Skills and Gear You Need to Get Started, Stackpole Books (p. 83)

Figure 16-2-6 Emergency

Raft Up. To communicate the raft up signal, raise the paddle vertically above the head and move in a circular motion. This signal means “come to me”.

All Clear. To communicate the all clear signal, extend the paddle over the head vertically. Maintain the paddle in the air in order to ensure that all members of the group have seen the signal. This signal is used when it is safe to continue on and indicates that there are no obstructions or danger ahead.



J. Rounds, Basic Kayaking: All the Skills and Gear You Need to Get Started, Stackpole Books (p. 83)

Figure 16-2-7 All Clear

IDENTIFY WHISTLE SIGNALS

When explaining whistle signals, it is important for cadets to hear the signal in action. Demonstrate all whistle signals.

A whistle is an effective way to get the attention of other paddlers when visibility is limited and there is a lot of noise. Before heading out on any body of water, it is important to know and understand universal whistle signals. Good communication on the water is essential to prevent accidents and ensure swift emergency response.

Cadets shall be reminded that they will not play with or blow whistles unless they are in an emergency situation.

Universal Distress Signal. Three whistle blasts indicate that there is an emergency. All action should stop, and action should be taken for the emergency. This signal means: assist the signaller as quickly as possible.

J. Rounds, Basic Kayaking: All the Skills and Gear You Need to Get Started, Stackpole Books (p. 83)

Figure 16-2-8 Universal Distress Signal

Move to Shore/Raft Up. This signal indicates that there is a need for the group to get together. When two whistle blasts are heard, all personnel will look to the instructor or group leader for instructions and guidance on where to meet up, whether to move to the shore or to raft up at a given point. It should only be used when other forms of communication are not working.

All Clear/Look at Me. When one whistle blast is heard, focus attention on the instructor (look at me). It is used to get the attention of the group. This signal could also mean all clear.

As there are alternative meanings for one and two whistle blasts, it is imperative that the group understands what the signal means for their group. The team/group leader will specify before moving to the water.

Any series of three signals such as three whistle blasts or three horn blasts indicates an emergency. Immediately stop all activity and assist.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 6

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the personal responsibilities of the paddler when canoeing?

Q2. What is the paddle signal for raft up?

Q3. What action is to be taken when two whistle blasts are heard?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The personal responsibilities of the paddler include:

- making sure they are physically prepared; and
- ensuring that they have the proper skill set.

A2. To signal raft up, the paddler will raise their paddle vertically above the head and move it in a circular motion.

A3. When two whistle blasts are heard, all personnel will look to the instructor or group leader for instructions or guidance on where to meet up.

Teaching Point 7 — Explain and Demonstrate Launching and Landing a Canoe

Time: 10 min — Method: Demonstration

For this teaching point, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate launching and landing a canoe while the cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step required to complete the skill.

Note: Cadets will be given the opportunity to practice this skill during the on-water training and the practical activity.

IDENTIFYING A LOCATION

Putting a canoe on water and taking it out of water should be done carefully, smoothly and without damage to the canoe.

The ideal location to launch a canoe is a soft shore or beach where the water is calm. Avoid locations where there are large rocks, stumps and roots, strong wind or large waves.

If you are launching from a shallow beach, launch the canoe at a right angle to the beach and hold it with its stern touching the bottom at the water's edge.

AVOIDING EQUIPMENT DAMAGE

A canoe should not be pushed, pulled or slid in or out of the water on a beach, bank, or dock. When launching, it is best to lay the canoe in the water from a lift position. It should be raised with the same care when being taken out of the water.

The canoe should be empty when launching. Once the canoe is placed on the water, it can be loaded with equipment while it is floating.

ENTERING A CANOE

Getting into a canoe for the first time is difficult; with practice, it will become easier. The stern paddler should always hold the canoe steady while the bow paddler enters. Likewise, once the bow paddler has entered the canoe, they will steady the canoe, using their paddle and body, while the stern paddler enters.

The steps for getting into a canoe are:

1. Keep the body low at all times, to lower the centre of gravity; never stand in a canoe.
2. Place the paddle shaft across the gunwales for stability.
3. Grasp both gunwales and step into the canoe over the centreline.
4. Step along the centreline and slide the hands and paddle along the gunwales to move to the seat.

LAUNCHING A CANOE

Launching at a Shoreline

Launching and landing a canoe in waves is inadvisable. Wait for a lull and keep the canoe at a right angle to the water.

If the canoe swamps at any time, avoid getting between the canoe and the shore. A canoe full of water weighs approximately 1 ton (1 000 kg) and can seriously injure a paddler.

There are several ways to launch a canoe from shore. The most common is the bow first launch:

Procedure for the bow first launch:

1. Put on a PFD and have paddles in the canoe or on the shoreline. Set the canoe at a right angle to the shore.
2. Place the spare paddle and stern paddle in the centre of the canoe. Have the stern paddler hold the canoe while the bow paddler walks up the length of the canoe keeping low, along the centreline. Stability is maintained by keeping the paddle shaft across the gunwales.
3. Have the bow paddler sit or kneel and place the paddle in the ready position as detailed in Figure 16-2-9. The stern paddler will hold the paddle shaft across the gunwales for stability.
4. Have the stern paddler slide their paddle forward along the gunwales, continuing to hold both paddle shaft and gunwales. The blade is positioned on the side opposite to the bow paddlers' paddling side.
5. Once the stern paddler is kneeling and in the ready position move the canoe away from the shore.

G. McGuffin & J. McGuffin, Paddle Your Own Canoe, The Boston Mills Press (p. 36)

Figure 16-2-9 Bow First Launch

On windy days, the canoe should be faced directly into the wind when launching.

Launching at a Dock

Procedure for a dock launch:

1. Put on a PFD and have paddles in the canoe or on the dock. Pick the canoe up in the middle and lower it hand-over-hand into the water perpendicular to the dock.
2. Place the spare paddle in the centre of the canoe. Have the stern paddler swing the canoe parallel to the dock (bow facing into the wind if any). The bow has more buoyancy, so have the bow paddler get in first while the stern paddler steadies the canoe.
3. From a crouched position on the dock, have the stern paddler steady the bow end by holding the paddle shaft across the gunwales, with the blade extended toward the paddling side. Have the bow paddler step in, keeping low and over the centreline.
4. Have the bow paddler kneel, holding their paddle in the ready position as detailed in Figure 16-2-9. The stern paddler will steady the canoe by positioning their paddle across the gunwales. With the blade on the paddling side and still holding the dock, step in keeping weight low and balance over the centreline.
5. When the stern paddler is in the ready position, move the canoe away from the dock.

G. McGuffin & J. McGuffin, Paddle Your Own Canoe, The Boston Mills Press (p. 35)

Figure 16-2-10 Dock Launch

LANDING A CANOE

Landing at a Shoreline

When a suitable location to exit the canoe is found, the following procedure shall be followed:

1. Bring the canoe into landing without running up on shore.
2. Have the bow paddler exit first to steady the canoe for the stern paddler.
3. Have the stern paddler move forward, keeping their weight low in the canoe.
4. Have the stern paddler exit at the bow.

Landing at a Dock

1. Bring the canoe into landing without running into the dock.
2. Have the stern paddler hold the dock and steady the canoe while the bow paddler exits the canoe.
3. From a crouched position on the dock, have the bow paddler hold the canoe steady next to the dock for the stern paddler.
4. Have the stern paddler exit the canoe by keeping low and stepping to the dock.

EXITING A CANOE

To exit the canoe, reverse the entry procedures:

1. Bring the canoe into the landing slowly and carefully.
2. Keep the body low at all times, lowering the centre of gravity.
3. Place the paddle shaft across the gunwales for stability.
4. Grasp both gunwales and the paddle shaft, and move to the bow of the canoe.
5. Step out of the canoe, keeping weight low.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 7

QUESTIONS

Q1. When launching from shore, which paddler is first to enter the canoe?

Q2. How is a canoe launched in the wind?

Q3. How is a canoe brought to the dock for landing?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. When launching from shore, the bow paddler is the first to enter the canoe.

A2. On windy days, the canoe should be launched directly into the wind.

A3. The canoe is brought to the dock for landing carefully without running into the dock to avoid damaging the canoe.

Teaching Point 8 **Explain and Demonstrate Action on Capsizing**

Time: 15 min Method: Demonstration

For this skill TP, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Discuss the process a rescuer will follow in the event that a canoe has capsized, including the responsibilities of the cadet and what the rescuer will and will not do to assist them.
2. Explain and demonstrate the canoe over canoe assisted rescue while the cadets observe.
3. Explain and demonstrate the steps required to complete a canoe over canoe assisted rescue.

Note: Cadets will be given the opportunity to practice this skill during the on-water training and the practical activity.

Although strong rescue skills are important, preventing rescues by making careful, informed decisions will reduce the chances of capsizing. Anticipating changes in weather, actions of other paddlers and being properly trained will aid in the prevention of accidents.

RESCUE PRIORITIES

The priority of rescue is listed below, but rescuers will only initiate rescue if it is safe to do so without harm to themselves.

When carrying out rescues, it is imperative that every individual involved be aware of the priorities of rescue. The rescue priorities are:

Rescuer. Rescuer safety is priority. The rescuer should not complete any part of the rescue that is beyond the scope of the rescuer's ability. Another casualty will only escalate the emergency.

People. The paddler(s) in the water. Each paddler will make sure they are okay, and that their partner is okay. If they cannot see their partner, they must establish voice contact to confirm that their partner is conscious, not seriously injured and is preparing to self-rescue.

Canoes. Canoes will be retrieved once all the paddlers in the water are safe.

Equipment. Equipment is the last thing to be retrieved as it is not essential. Clothing and food can be shared if need be.

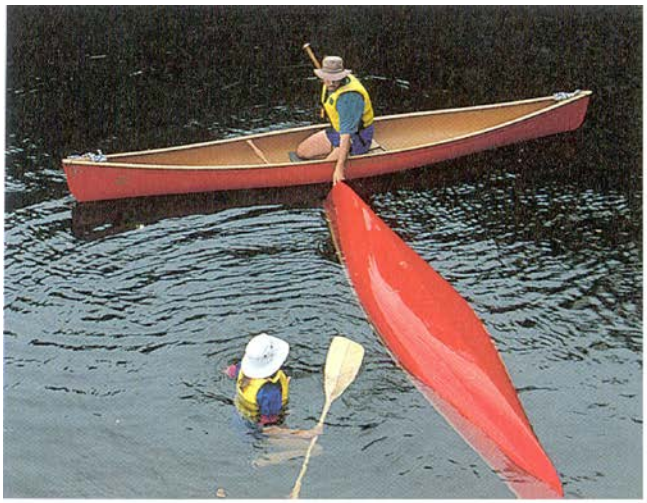
If involved in a high risk rescue, the rescuer or rescue team should be prepared and trained to perform effectively and efficiently and follow the procedures.

Cold water and wind will accelerate the loss of body heat. People can become hypothermic very quickly, even in warm weather.

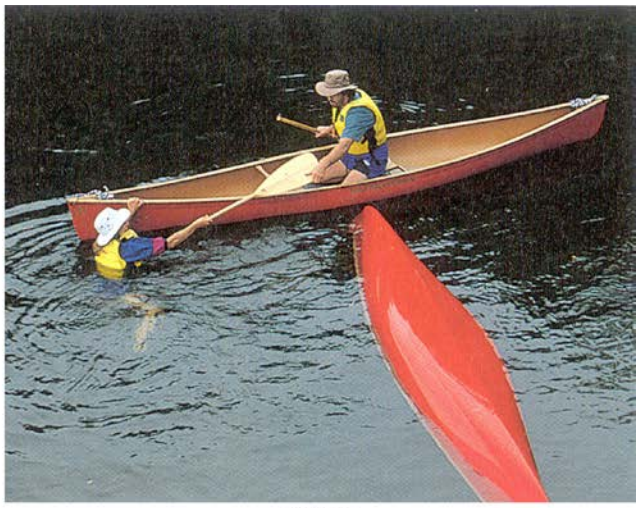
TANDEM CANOE OVER CANOE ASSISTED RESCUE

The canoe over canoe assisted rescue is the universal rescue means.

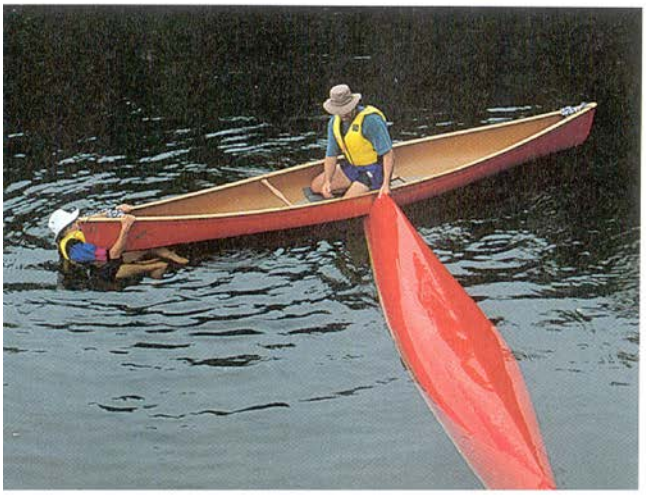
The figures below depict two solo paddlers completing a canoe over canoe assisted rescue. The procedure is virtually the same as a tandem rescue with only minor adjustments, which are detailed in the numbered procedure. Use the figures as a guideline.



STEP 1



STEP 2



STEP 3

STEP 4

Figure 16-2-11 (Sheet 1 of 2) Tandem Canoe Over Canoe Assisted Rescue

G. McGuffin & J. McGuffin, Paddle Your Own Canoe, The Boston Mills Press (p. 36)

Figure 16-2-11 (Sheet 2 of 2) Tandem Canoe Over Canoe Assisted Rescue

G. McGuffin & J. McGuffin, Paddle Your Own Canoe, The Boston Mills Press (p. 36)

The procedure to follow in a tandem canoe over canoe assisted rescue is:

1. One paddler will swim to the stern of a rescue canoe, hang on and get as much of the body out of the water as possible.
2. The second paddler will swim to the far end of the canoe.
3. The rescuers will lift up on the capsized canoe as the second paddler pushes down on the opposite end of the canoe to break the suction.
4. The second paddler will then move to the bow of the rescue canoe, hang on and get as much of the body out of the water as possible.
5. Both paddlers will remain in that position until told to move by the rescuers. The rescuers will move the canoe across the gunwales of their canoe. Once it is centred they will flip it over and gently continue to slide it into the water.
6. Maintain communication and when instructed to do so the paddlers will, one at a time, get back into the canoe by one of two ways:

a. hook one leg over each canoe and pull up out of the water and climb into the canoe; or

b. propel themselves upward by scissor kicking, tucking the shoulder in and rolling into the canoe.

7. Return to the paddling position.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 8

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the rescue priorities?

Q2. When shall the rescuer stop a rescue?

Q3. What are the two methods which can be used to re-enter a canoe after a capsizing?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The rescue priorities are rescuers, people, canoes and equipment.

A2. The rescuer shall stop a rescue when they are in danger themselves, or the rescue is beyond their scope of knowledge.

A3. The two methods a paddler can use to re-enter a canoe after a capsizing are:

- hook one leg over each canoe and pull up out of the water and climb into the canoe; or
- propel themselves upward by scissor kicking, tucking the shoulder in and rolling into the canoe.

Teaching Point 9 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Practice Strokes**

Time: 35 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

For this skill lesson, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate each stroke while the cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step required to complete each stroke. Monitor the cadets as they practice each step.
3. Monitor the cadets' performance as they practice each stroke.

Note: Time devoted to practice during this TP will be limited due to time constraints, however, cadets will be provided additional time to practice individual strokes during the practical activity.

Kneeling is the position of choice for paddling because it provides increased canoe stability. When a person kneels, their centre of gravity is lowered. To give sore knees a break, a paddler can sit on the seat.

There are four phases of a stroke that help ensure the transition between each stroke is natural and smooth.

Catch. The beginning of the stroke where the blade is inserted into the water. **Power.** The movement of the paddle through the water by rotating the torso to transmit power to the blade. When paddling, it is important to use the muscles of the torso, which have more strength and endurance than the arm muscles.

Exit. When the paddle leaves the water.

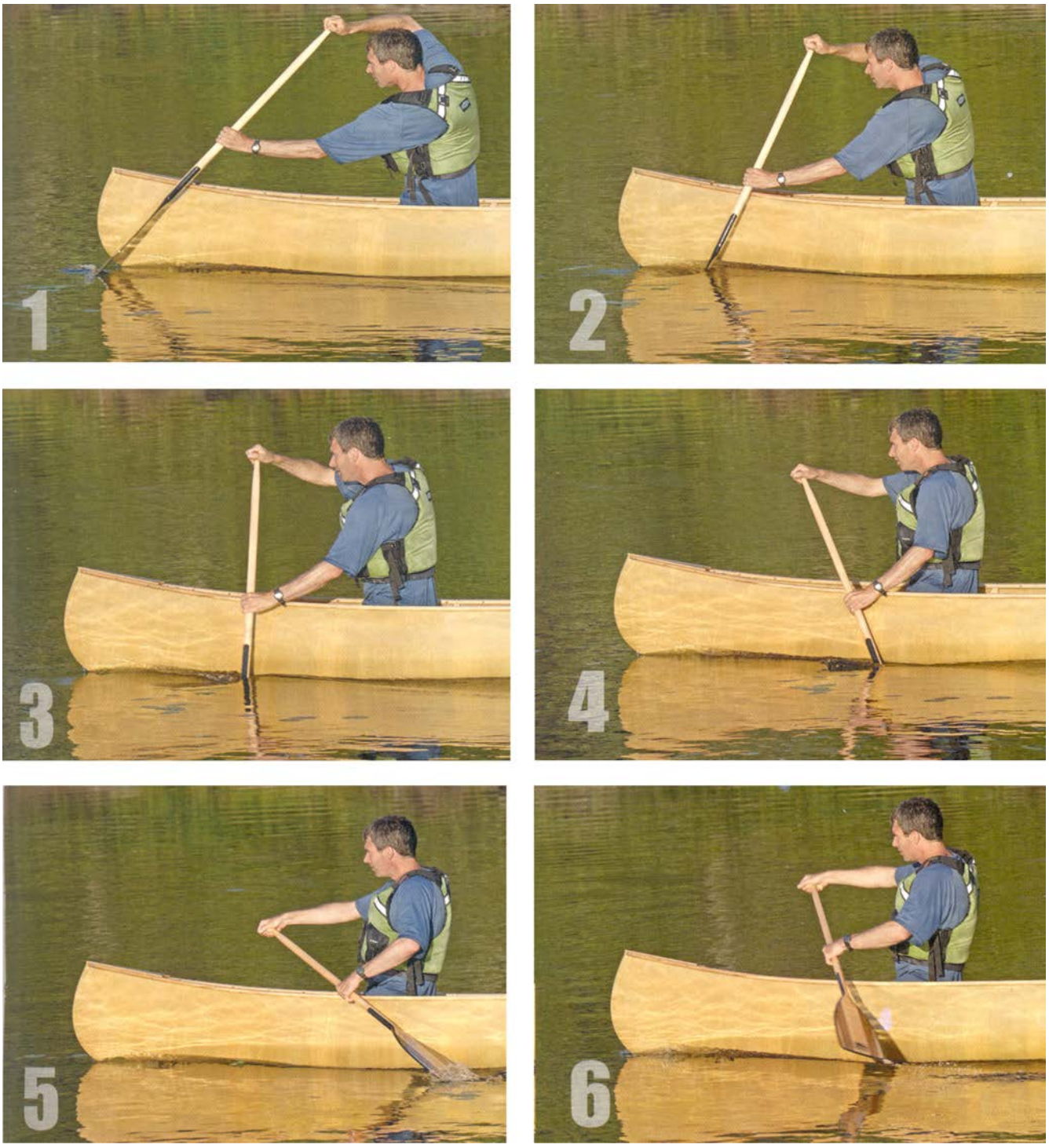
Recovery. When the paddle is returned to the catch position. This is completed by feathering the blade (keeping it flat and just above the water surface) to minimize wind resistance.

The stern paddler will control the direction of the canoe using corrective strokes where applicable. The bow paddler will complete mostly power strokes when canoeing, unless the stern paddler requires assistance with corrective strokes.

POWER STROKE

The power stroke is used to move the canoe forward. It is the foundation stroke on which most other strokes are built. The power stroke is made close to the side of the canoe and parallel to the keel, with the shaft of the paddle moving in a vertical or near-vertical plane. To complete the power stroke:

1. Rotate the torso forward toward the bow to engage the muscles for the stroke.
2. Place the blade deep into the water with as little splash as possible.
3. Unwind the torso while pulling on the shaft hand (lower hand) and pushing with the control hand (upper hand).
4. Power the stroke through the water until the blade of the paddle is in line with the knee.
5. Lift the paddle out of the water by slicing it out to the side.
6. Recover the stroke with the blade clear and flat across of the water (to reduce wind resistance) and complete another stroke.



A. Westwood, Canoeing: The Essential Skills and Safety, Heliconia Press (p. 71)

Figure 16-2-12 Power Stroke

J-STROKE

Watch for ruddering as the cadets' practice the J-stroke. Ruddering is when the stern paddler places their paddle in the water behind the hip and manoeuvres it back and forth to turn the canoe. This will create drag and slow the forward momentum of the canoe.

The J-stroke is a version of the power stroke used as a corrective stroke by the stern paddler to help keep the canoe travelling in a straight line. When applied with force, it can be used to turn the canoe to the stern paddler's side (the side they are paddling on). To complete the J-stroke:

1. Complete the first four steps of the power stroke, ending with the control hand above the gunwale and the shaft hand at the hip.
2. Twist the control hand thumb forward and down while pulling the shaft hand inward, forming a "J".
3. Recover to complete another stroke.

A. Westwood, Canoeing: The Essential Skills and Safety, Heliconia Press (p. 74 and p. 75)

Figure 16-2-13 J-Stroke

FORWARD SWEEP

The purpose of the forward sweep is to turn the canoe away from the canoeist's paddling side. It is a wide sweep of the paddle, using the power face of the blade. There are many occasions when this stroke would be used, such as:

- swinging the canoe for pivot turns or partial turns;
- manoeuvring the canoe around obstacles;
- following along the bends of streams or rivers;

- making sudden changes of direction in paddling;
- aiding in holding a straight course in crosswinds; and
- incorporating with other strokes as necessary to control the canoe.

Reverse sweeps use the back face of the blade and are the opposite of forward sweeps. Both sweeps have many of the same functions.

As the bow paddler, to complete the forward sweep:

1. Rotate the torso and bend forward slightly while immersing the blade of the paddle almost horizontally by the bow of the canoe.
2. Push the shaft hand out slightly from the waist while swinging in a 90 degree arc until the arm extends out from the hip (the paddle should be at a right angle to the side of the canoe).
3. Recover to complete another stroke.

As the stern paddler, to complete the forward sweep:

1. Lean back slightly as the upper body rotates while extending and immersing the paddle almost horizontally at a right angle to the side of the canoe at the hip, keeping the lower hand at waist height with the thumb pointing up.
2. Push out slightly with the shaft hand while swinging in a 90 degree arc (the paddle should be almost touching the stern).
3. Recover to complete another stroke.

When the bow paddler is completing a forward sweep, the stroke should never move past the paddler's body. Any further movement will result in drag and loss of momentum.

STEP 1

STEP 2

STEP 3

G. McGuffin & J. McGuffin, Paddle Your Own Canoe, The Boston Mills Press (p. 51)

Figure 16-2-14 Forward Sweep

DRAW

The purpose of the draw is to turn the canoe or to move it sideways. The draw stroke can be completed by both the bow and stern paddler. To complete the draw stroke:

1. Rotate the torso and extend the arms fully to position the paddle at the side of the canoe, adjacent to the knee.
2. Reach across the canoe with the control hand and place the paddle vertically into the water.
3. Plant the blade deeply in the water and pull the power face toward the body.
4. Twist the control hand thumb away from the body and rotate the blade 90 degrees (before the blade hits the canoe).
5. Bring the paddle back to the beginning position by slicing it through the water.

6. Twist the blade back into the original position to complete another stroke.

A. Westwood, Canoeing: The Essential Skills and Safety, Heliconia Press (p. 95)

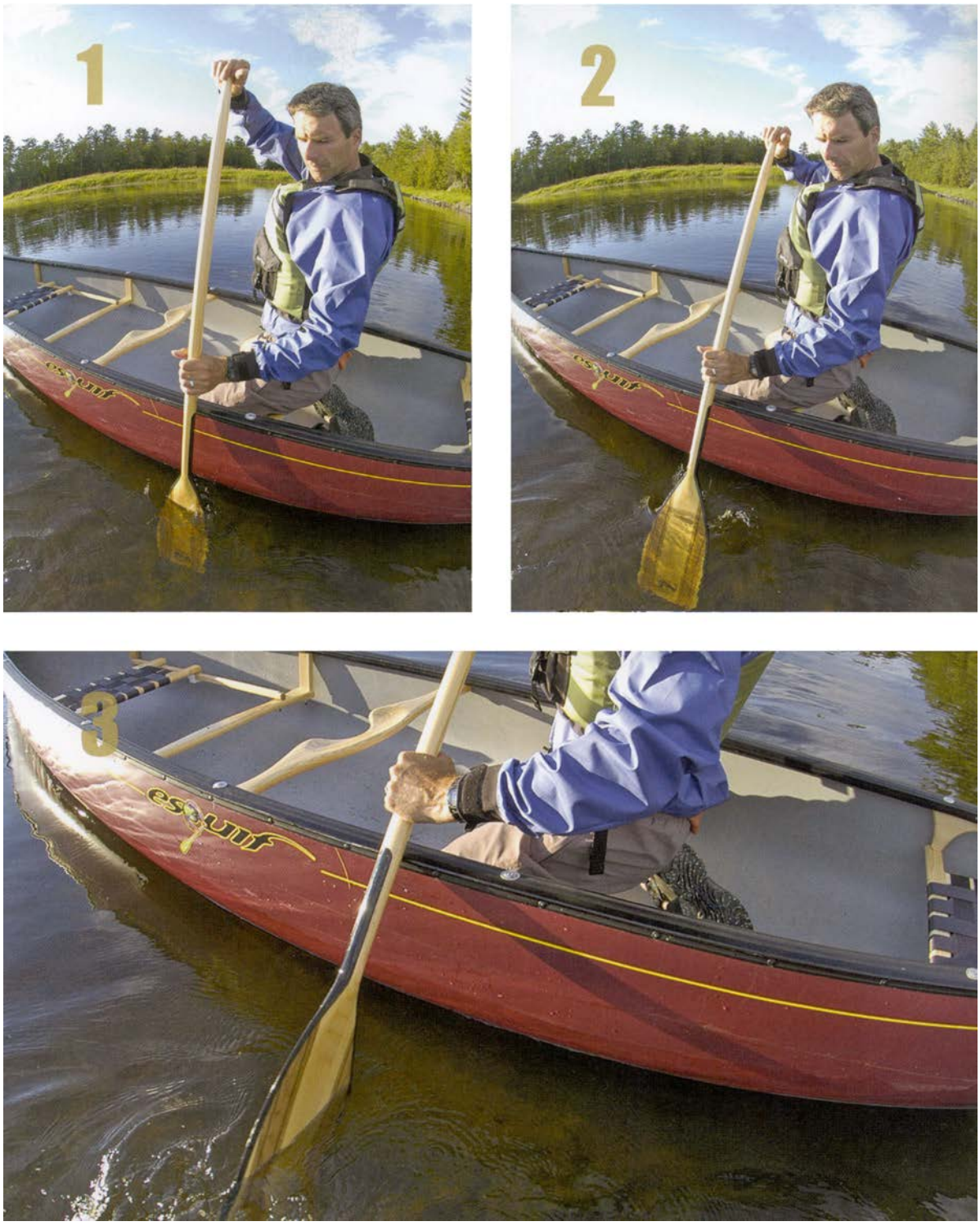
Figure 16-2-15 Draw

PRY

The pry is a powerful, deep-water stroke that can be applied by the bow or the stern paddler to move the canoe away from the paddler's side. To complete the pry stroke:

1. Place the paddle vertically against the gunwale adjacent to the knee with both hands above the gunwale.
2. Pull inward with the control hand to force the paddle away from the canoe.

3. Rotate the blade 90 degrees by twisting the thumb of the control hand away from the body and slicing the blade back to the beginning point.



A. Westwood, Canoeing: The Essential Skills and Safety, Heliconia Press (p. 96)

Figure 16-2-16 Pry

If the bow paddler completes a pry and the stern paddler completes a draw, the canoe will move sideways. This combination of strokes could be useful if trying to move a canoe parallel to a dock or when rafting up.

LOW BRACE

The low brace will assist in righting a canoe from capsizing or if it begins to tip. This stroke will also help a paddler rely on the paddle to steady the canoe as well as lean into turns. It can also be used by the stern paddler to steady the canoe when the bow paddler is initiating a turn. To complete a low brace:

1. Twist the upper body to face the water, with the paddle out at a 90 degree angle to the canoe.
2. Smack the water with the flat backside of the paddle to provide support to balance the body in the canoe.
3. Begin to get the knees level in the canoe by dropping the head towards the shaft of the paddle.
4. Assume a stable posture with the head centred inside the canoe once the canoe has levelled.

A. Westwood, Canoeing: The Essential Skills and Safety, Heliconia Press (p. 98 and p. 99)

Figure 16-2-17 Low Brace

JAM

The jam stroke will stop a canoe's forward momentum quickly when applied. To execute the jam, the paddler will shove the paddle into the water at a right angle to the canoe in a vertical position.

BACKPADDLING

To go backward, the bow paddler can complete a reverse power stroke. If necessary, the stern paddler can do a pry in the beginning to steady the canoe. To backpaddle:

1. Lean slightly back, rotate the shoulders back and place the blade of the paddle vertically in the water at the rear of the canoe up to the throat.
2. Unwind the body while pushing forward with the shaft hand and pulling with the control hand.
3. Continue with the stroke until the shoulders are square with the gunwales.
4. Lift the blade out of the water and recover to complete another stroke.

A. Westwood, Canoeing: The Essential Skills and Safety, Heliconia Press (p. 98 and p. 99)

Figure 16-2-18 Backpaddling

If both paddlers are backpaddling, the canoe will turn away from the bow paddler's side.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 9

The cadets' participation in practicing strokes will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 10 **Have the Cadet Practice Canoe Skills During an Expedition**

Time: 40 min Method: Practical Activity

The cadets shall receive feedback during and after the activity. Have each cadet perform the strokes individually. When completing strokes, watch closely for the following:

Power Stroke

The cadet shall lean forward, place the paddle vertically into the water up to the throat, rotate the torso while pulling on the shaft hand and pushing with the control hand until the paddle is just past the knee and in line with the hip, then slice the blade out of the water and then recover.

J-Stroke

The cadet shall lean forward, place the paddle vertically into the water up to the throat, rotate the torso while pulling on the shaft hand and pushing with the control hand, ending with the control hand above the gunwale and the shaft hand at the hip, twist the control hand thumb forward and down while pulling the shaft hand inward to form a “J”, then slice the blade out the water and then recover.

Forward Sweep

The cadet shall lean back, extend and immerse the paddle from the hip so it is horizontally at a right angle to the side of the canoe, pushing out and pulling with the shaft hand, swing the paddle in a 90 degree arc to the stern of the canoe, then slice the blade out of the water and then recover.

Draw

The cadet shall rotate the torso and extend the arms fully to the side of the canoe, adjacent to the knee, reach across the canoe with the control hand, plant the paddle vertically into the water, pull the power face toward the canoe, twist the control hand thumb away from the body, rotate the blade 90 degrees just before it hits the canoe and then slice it through the water back to its original position.

Pry

The cadet shall place the paddle vertically against the gunwale adjacent to the knee with both hands above the gunwale, pull inward with the control hand to force the paddle away from the canoe, rotate the blade 90 degrees by twisting the thumb of the control hand away from the body and then slice the blade back to the beginning point.

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for the cadets to participate in a practical expedition activity to practice canoe strokes in a controlled environment for an extended period of time.

RESOURCES

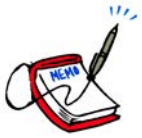
- Canoe equipment, to include:
  - Tandem canoe (one per two cadets),
  - Paddle (three per canoe),
  - PFD (one per cadet),
  - Whistle (one per cadet),
  - Bailer (one per canoe),
  - Painter lines (two per canoe), and
  - 15 m buoyant heaving line or throw bag (one per canoe);
- Water carrier (one per cadet),
- Topographical map of the area (two per team/group),
- Compass (one per team/group),
- Communication device (two per team/group),
- GPS Receiver (one per team/group),
- Batteries (spares for communication device and GPS), and
- First aid kit (one per team/group).

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

- All canoes must be ready to launch.
- All canoes must be outfitted.
- Designated expedition canoe route.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Place cadets in canoe partners.
2. Assign a bow and stern paddler (groups will be required to switch half-way through the activity).
3. Allow each group of cadets to launch their canoe, one at a time.
4. Have the cadets practice strokes to paddle in a straight line, turn 180 degrees and stop for the first half of the designated route.
5. Have each group complete a canoe over canoe assisted rescue.
6. Have the cadets land their canoes, switch positions and launch again.
7. Have the cadets practice strokes to paddle in a straight line, turn 180 degrees and stop for the remaining portion of the route.
8. Have the cadets land their canoes and store equipment.



When on the water, observe stroke technique and correct the cadets when necessary.

SAFETY

- All cadets must wear their PFDs at all times.
- The cadets must respect the pre-determined boundaries for this activity.
- Teams/groups will travel in single file.
- Teams/groups will not pass another team/group unless directed to do so by their team instructor.
- All the cadets must have at least 500 mL (16 oz) of water.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 10

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the practical expedition activity will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 7 (326 PC).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Canoeing is one of three dynamic modes of transport that can be used during expedition training. It is critical that the cadets understand the importance of following canoe safety procedures while on the water. Being able to manoeuvre a canoe on an expedition will provide a great sense of freedom and accomplishment. While there are many different strokes cadets should know prior to setting out on a canoe trip, these strokes will take a long time to master but the more they are used, the more comfortable they will feel.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Expedition centres are required to select two dynamic modes of travel from EO M326.02a (Paddle a Canoe), EO M326.02b (Ride a Mountain Bike, Section 3), and EO M326.02c (Hike Along a Route, Section 4) to incorporate into their weekend training.

This EO has been allocated five and a half periods in the overall course period allocation. Each expedition centre may adjust this allocation to reflect the choice of activities, facilities and available resources at the expedition centre.

Upon arrival at the expedition centre, cadets will be divided into teams/groups. These teams/groups will remain the same for the duration of the weekend.

REFERENCES

A1-010 A-CR-CCP-030/PT-001 Director Cadets 3. (2005). *Water Safety Orders*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

A2-001 A-CR-CCP-951/PT-002 Director Cadets 4. (2006). *Royal Canadian Army Cadets Adventure Training Safety Standards*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C0-025 (ISBN 1-895465-33-8) Gifford, D. (Ed.) (2000). *Canoeing Instructor's Resource Manual*. Merrickville, ON: Canadian Recreational Canoeing Association.

C2-076 (ISBN 0-87322-443-4) Gullion, L. (1994). *Outdoor Pursuits Series: Canoeing*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics Publishers.

C2-077 (ISBN 1-55013-654-2) Mason, B. (1995). *Path of the Paddle: An Illustrated Guide to the Art of Canoeing*. Toronto, ON: Key Porter Books Limited.

C2-078 (ISBN 1-55013-079-X) Mason, B. (1988). *Song of the Paddle: An Illustrated Guide to Wilderness Camping*. Toronto, ON: Key Porter Books Limited.

C2-106 (ISBN 0-900082-04-6) Rowe, R. (1997). *Canoeing Handbook*. Guildford, UK: Biddles Limited.

C2-112 (ISBN 1-55046377-2) McGuffin, G. & McGuffin, J. (2005). *Paddle Your Own Canoe: An Illustrated Guide to the Art of Canoeing*. Erin, ON: Boston Mills Press.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 3

EO M326.02B – RIDE A MOUNTAIN BIKE

Total Time:	180 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Every cadet must have a water carrier prior to the start of this lesson.

All mountain bikes and helmets being used should be organized by size prior to the start of this lesson.

For TP 3 select a mountain bike to use as a model when identifying the parts of the bike. These parts should be labelled on the bike using gear or masking tape.

Choose a location that is large enough to allow the cadets to ride and practice mountain bike techniques as they are presented, but not too large that control is compromised. The area should have some hills and varied terrain.

Have cleaning materials available to complete the pre-ride and post-ride check.

Timings for this EO will vary. While there is a requirement for initial training, the focus should be on having the cadets complete each technique through the practical activity in TP 7.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 1 and 2 to introduce the principles of safe riding and provide an overview of the parts of a mountain bike.

Demonstration and performance was chosen for TPs 3, 4, 6 and 8 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate selecting and adjusting a mountain bike, the procedure for a pre-ride and post-ride bike check, and proper mountain bike techniques while providing an opportunity for the cadet to practice each skill under supervision.

Demonstration was chosen for TP 5 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate safety precautions when mountain biking.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 7 as it is an interactive way to introduce the cadet to mountain bike techniques and procedures in a controlled environment during an expedition. The expedition contributes to the development of these skills and procedures in a fun and exciting manner.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have selected and fitted a mountain bike, followed trail etiquette, obeyed safety regulations and ridden a mountain bike.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to be able to safely ride a mountain bike for the safety of them and those around them. Safe riding practices are built on knowing the parts of a mountain bike, an ability to properly fit a mountain bike, the development of mountain bike techniques and an awareness of trail etiquette. Having a properly fitted mountain bike will make the riding experience more positive for the cadets, allowing for a more comfortable ride, limiting the possibility and occurrence of injuries and increasing the overall performance of the mountain biker. Demonstrating mountain bike techniques without difficulty will assist the cadets in keeping up with members of their team and completing the practical expedition activity. Following trail etiquette will ensure that all trail users (mountain bikers, hikers, joggers and motorists) are able to use the trails and roads in a safe, enjoyable manner.

Teaching Point 1 **Introduce Principles of Safe Riding**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

The following information will be explained to the cadets as a lead-in to the technical skills associated with mountain biking.

Mountain biking is a growing sport in North America. By the 1980s, the popularity of mountain bikes exceeded all other styles of bicycles combined, culminating with its entry into the 1996 Olympic games in Atlanta as a genuine racing event.

The popularity of the sport in the past two decades has led to the development of a trail classification system which informs mountain bikers of the type and technical difficulty of hundreds of trails throughout North America and the rest of the world.

TRAIL RATING SYSTEM

Mountain bike trails are classified by mountain biking organizations. Interest in establishing consistent criteria for the rating of trails has been increasing.

The International Mountain Bicycling Association (IMBA) developed a basic method to categorize the technical difficulty of recreation trails. The system was adapted from the International Trail Marking System used at ski areas throughout the world.

The IMBA Trail Difficulty Rating System has been created to:

- help trail users make informed decisions;
- encourage visitors to use trails that match their skill level;

- manage risk and minimize injuries;
- improve the outdoor experience for a wide variety of visitors; and
- aid in the planning of trails and trail systems.

Mountain bike trails, in accordance with the IMBA Trail Difficulty Rating System have been divided into three categories based on trail width, trail surface, trail grade, obstacles and technical features.

Novice Trails. A novice trail should take two hours or less to complete. Characteristics of a novice trail include:

- hard-packed surfaces,
- some hills which require limited skill to ascend and descend, that are short in duration with few obstacles to navigate around – not too many included in the route,
- no high-speed downhills, and
- mostly flat ground with the inclusion of interesting terrain features such as small roots, logs and rocks to negotiate around.

Intermediate Trails. An intermediate trail can be completed in three to four hours. Characteristics of an intermediate trail include:

- a variety of moderate hills, that require technical skill to ascend and descend with ease,
- some high-speed downhills,
- some difficult obstacles such as roots, logs and rocks are included, but should not be a common feature of the trail, and
- some loose surface.

Experienced Trails. An experienced trail can vary from one to several days in length. Characteristics of an experienced trail include:

- a mix of flat and technical terrain (hills, obstacles and cornering),
- a variety of ascents and descents on steep and uneven terrain,
- a combination of loose and hard-packed surfaces, and
- obstacles such as rocks, roots and logs throughout the route.

It is critical that trail ratings are observed and that the mountain biker pays due diligence by riding on trails that meet their skill and experience level.

SIX CODES OF CONDUCT

With the popularity of mountain biking on the rise, problems between mountain bikers and other trail users is increasing. Conflicts between trail users and mountain bikers have resulted in frequent trail closures in parks and wilderness areas, leaving enthusiasts of the sport seeking alternative locations to ride.

One of the best ways to prevent trail closures and to improve the image of the sport held by non-mountain bikers, is to improve relations with other trail users. To do this, mountain bikers are required to understand and practice trail etiquette whenever they are out on the trail. The IMBA has developed six codes of conduct to minimize the impact of mountain bikers on the environment and on other users, which all mountain bikers are encouraged to adhere to when riding.

Riding on Open Trails Only

Mountain bikers should always respect trail and road closures. Check the status of roads/trails before riding on them. Ensure that permits and authorization are obtained as required. Respect private and public property.

Practicing the Principles of Leave No Trace

Be sensitive to the earth. Even on open trails, care should be taken to ensure that no evidence is left once the trail has been ridden. After a rain or thaw, the ground may be soft and should not be ridden to avoid causing damage. When the trail bed is soft, consider other riding options. Practice low-impact mountain biking by not sliding when riding, staying on the existing trails and not creating new trails. Do not ride through streams and pack out what was brought in.

Controlling Your Bicycle

Inattention may cause an accident. Pay attention to the trail and be aware of approaching mountain bikers and hikers. Excessive speed can hurt the mountain biker and other people on the trail. Obey all speed regulations.

Giving Way to Other Users

Approach other trail users with caution. Let them know well in advance of the approach of a biker. A friendly greeting (or bell) is considerate and works very well. Try not to startle others on the trail by speeding up to or behind them. Show respect when passing others by slowing down or even stopping, depending on the trail width. Anticipate that other trail users may be around corners or in blind spots.

Avoiding Animals

Animals may be startled by an unannounced approach, a sudden movement or a loud noise. This can be dangerous for the mountain biker, other trail users and the animals. Give animals extra room and time to adjust. When passing horses, it is advised that the helmet and sunglasses are removed. Then use care and follow the directions of horseback riders. It is a serious offence to run cattle and disturb wild animals.

Planning Ahead

Know the equipment being used and the ability of the mountain biker and the trail, and prepare accordingly. Be self-sufficient at all times. Wear a helmet, ensure the bike is maintained and carry the necessary supplies for changes in weather and other conditions. A well executed trip will result in a satisfactory experience for the mountain biker.

Respect for other trail enthusiasts and the natural environment is an attitude that all mountain bikers should adopt.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What level of trail are you riding on when it is a mix of flat and technical terrain, made up of both loose and hard-packed surfaces, consists of a variety of ascents and descents on steep and uneven terrain and has obstacles such as rocks, roots and logs throughout the trail to navigate?

Q2. What measures should you take to practice low-impact mountain biking?

Q3. What actions should be taken when approaching a horse on the trail?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. An experienced trail.

A2. Practice low-impact mountain biking by not sliding when riding, staying on the existing trails, not creating new trails, not riding through stream and packing out what was brought in.

A3. When approaching a horse on the trail it is advised that the helmet and sunglasses should be removed. Use care and follow the directions of horseback riders.

Teaching Point 2 **Identify the Parts of a Mountain Bike**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is intended to give cadets an overview of the different parts of a mountain bike.

Use a mountain bike as a training aid to point out each as they are discussed. Allow the cadets to have a closer look.

Cadets will have some previous knowledge of the material presented in this TP. Use this knowledge through questions to identify the parts.

To make it easier for the cadets to remember the different parts, present them in a clockwise direction, as illustrated in Figure 16-3-1.

"Fullerton Bicycle Co. & Buena Park Bicycle Co.", Dirt–Mountain Bikes. Retrieved October 25, 2007, from http://www.fullertonbicycle.com/images/Yukon.lg.jpg

Figure 16-3-1 Parts of a Mountain Bike

Handlebar. The handlebar is a horizontal bar attached to the bike with handgrips at each end, where brake levers and gear shifters are attached.

Gear Shifter. There are two gear shifters, high and low, located on either side of the handlebars. The front shifter, which works the front derailleur, is normally located on the left side. The rear shifter, which works the rear derailleur, is normally located on the right side.

Brake Lever. There are brake levers on both sides of the handlebar to activate the brakes. The left brake lever is for the front brake, the right is for the rear brake.

Top Tube. The top tube is the horizontal tube running across the top of the bike providing strength and stability to the bike frame.

Tire. The tire is rubber tubing attached to the rim to form a wheel.

Quick Release. There are quick release levers located on both the front and rear wheels. These levers allow for the wheels to be dropped out without the need of a screwdriver or other tool.

Derailleur (Front and Rear). The derailleur is a lever-activated mechanism that pushes the chain off one chainring or sprocket and onto another, altering the gear ratio.

Sprocket is the general term that applies to both chainrings and to cassette cogs. A sprocket is defined as a disc with teeth which drives the chain when the bike is pedalled to propel it forward.

Chainring. A chainring is a toothed ring attached to the crank that drives the chain.

Chainset. The chainset is made up of two or three chainrings that pull the chain around when the pedals are turned.

Chainstay. The chainstay is the lower bar on the bike frame that attaches the rear wheel.

Pedal. The pedal is the platform for the foot to press on, attached to the crank.

Chain. A chain is the circular set of links to transfer power from the chainrings at the front of the bike, to the sprockets in the rear of the bike.

Cogs. A cog is a disc with teeth which drives the chain when the bike is pedalled to propel it forward. Cogs are blocked together to form cassettes which work in conjunction with the rear derailleur.

Cassette. A cassette is comprised of a number of cogs mounted together and attached to the rear hub. The smaller cogs provide a higher (harder) gear for maximum speed, while the larger cogs provide a lower (easier) gear for climbing hills.

Brakes. A bike has two sets of brakes: one set located in the front and the other in the rear. The brakes are activated by the brake levers attached to the handlebars.

There are two different types of braking systems which are used on mountain bikes. The traditional direct-pull (V-Brake) system and the more advanced disc brake system. Some bikes might have a combination of both types, with a disc brake on the front and a direct-pull on the rear.

Seat Tube. The seat tube is a hollow tube which runs from just below the saddle down to the bottom bracket of the bike in which the seat post is inserted into.

Seat Post Release. The seat post release is a quick release lever that holds the seat post in the desired position when it is inside the seat tube.

Seat Post. The seat post is an adjustable support for the saddle which fits into the seat tube.

Saddle. A saddle is the term used to describe the seat of a bike.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. If the left brake lever is pulled, which brake–front or rear–would be activated?

Q2. When climbing up a hill a biker would want to use the gear shifter on which side to move the chain to a smaller cog on the cassette?

Q3. What are the two different types of brakes found on mountain bikes?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The front brake.

A2. The right gear shifter.

A3. The two types of brakes found on mountain bikes are disc brakes and direct-pull brakes (V-brakes).

Teaching Point 3 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Select and Adjust a Mountain Bike**

Time: 20 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

For this skill TP it is recommended that the following format be followed:

1. Introduce cadets to the importance of selecting a proper fitting mountain bike and a proper fitting helmet.
2. Discuss selection of a helmet and then demonstrate how the helmet can be adjusted.
3. Discuss the different methods which can be used to select a mountain bike.
4. Using a bike that has already been properly selected and adjusted, explain the complete procedure for selecting and adjusting a mountain bike.
5. Explain and demonstrate each step required to complete the skill. Monitor cadets as they imitate each step.
6. Once each cadet has selected a mountain bike and helmet, they must be labelled with gear or masking tape.

Note: Assistant instructors may be used to monitor cadet performance.

Since the first introduction of the mountain bike in the mid to late 1970s, the design of bikes has evolved. The quest for improved products has led to continued improvements and advancements in materials being used to construct the bikes, as well as the overall design of the bikes themselves. With the introduction of new bikes each year by front runner manufacturers the use of stronger and lighter new materials and cutting edge designs compete to maximize speed, power and strength.

While it is important to have a well-designed mountain bike, if the bike chosen does not fit the mountain biker then the excellence in design will be lost. Having a properly fitted bike is important for riding efficiency and power as well as safety. When a bike does not fit the mountain biker properly, injuries are more likely.

SELECTING A HELMET

A properly fitted helmet should:

- fit level and square on the head;
- cover the front of the forehead;
- sit snug on the head, without fastening the chin strap;
- not slip when the head moves; and
- have straps adjusted to meet just below the ear and fasten tightly.

"Ministry of Transportation Ontario", Cycling Skills: Cycling Safety for Teen and Adult Cyclists, Copyright 2005 by Government of Ontario. Retrieved October 5, 2007, from http://www.mto.gov.on.ca/English/pubs/cycling/cyclingskills.htm

Figure 16-3-2 Proper Fit of a Helmet

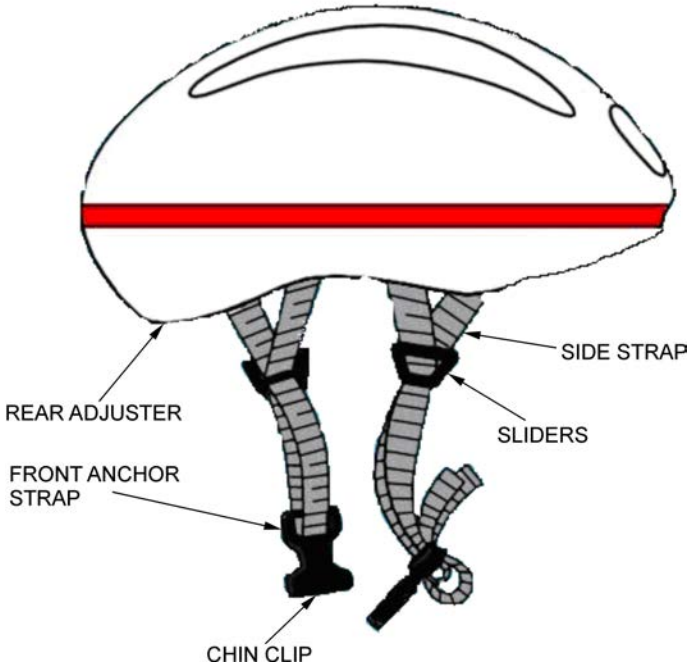
Helmet sizes vary from extra small to extra large and it is important to try on a variety of sizes to make sure the fit is correct.

ADJUSTING THE HELMET

A helmet will not necessarily fit properly without making some minor adjustments. The following are some basic adjustments that can be made to ensure the helmet will protect the mountain biker in an accident:

- Adjust removable pads, if required, to make the fit firm and comfortable.
- Centre the chin clip so it is just under the chin and so the strap is even on both sides. This is done by pulling the strap from one side to another through the underside of the helmet.

- Adjust the side straps by pulling or pushing them through the sliders. The slider should sit just below the ears forming a ’V’.
- Use the rear adjuster (if there is one) by sliding the mechanism to make it bigger or smaller.
- Buckle the chin clip and ensure that no more than two fingers can fit under it.



“U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission”, CPSC Issues New Safety Standard for Bike Helmets. Retrieved October 30, 2007, from http://www.cpsc.gov/cpscpub/prerel/prhtml98/98062.html

Figure 16-3-3 Parts of a Helmet

SIZING A MOUNTAIN BIKE

While some manufacturers size their bikes by labelling them as small, medium, large and extra large, in most cases bike size is given in inches and is based on leg length. The size is determined by measuring the distance from where the crank attaches to the bike to the intersection of the seat tube and the top tube.

"Dynamic Bicycles", Bike Sizing Guide, Copyright 2005 from Dynamic Bicycles, Inc. Retrieved October 31, 2007, from http://www.dynamicbicycles.com/bikes/sizing.php

Figure 16-3-4 Sizing Measurements

The following steps should be followed when sizing a mountain bike:

1. **Size by Eye.** The initial step in sizing a bike is to select a bike with a frame size that coincides with the height of the mountain biker.

2. **Stand-Over Test.** The next step is to straddle the bike. There should be minimum five-centimetre (two-inch) clearance between the top tube and the crotch when the mountain biker is straddling the mountain bike.

3. **Saddle Adjustment.** Standing next to the bike, the mountain biker will adjust the saddle height to just above their hip by opening the seat post release, raising or lowering the saddle, then closing the release. The mountain biker will then sit on the saddle, place their left foot on the pedal with the ball of the foot over the centre of the pedal. The left leg should be almost perpendicular, without the knee locking.

It is important for cadets to label their bikes and helmets after they have been selected and adjusted. This can be done by using a different colour of gear or masking tape for each team/group. On the bike it is best to wrap the gear tape around the left side of the handlebar and then using a permanent marker place the cadets' initials on the tape. On the helmet, wrapping the tape around one of the side straps on the inside will work. Ensure that the cadets initials are on that as well.

Note: It is best to have assistant instructors help with the labelling.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

Selecting and adjusting a helmet and a mountain bike will serve as the confirmation for this TP.

Teaching Point 4 — **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Practice the Procedure for Completing a Pre-Ride Bike Check Using the ABC Quick Check Method**

Time: 10 min — Method: Demonstration and Performance

For this skill, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate a pre-ride check while the cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step of the pre-ride check. Monitor the cadets as they practice each step.
3. Monitor the cadets' performance as they practice a complete pre-ride check.

Note: Assistant instructors may be used to monitor the cadets' performance.

When demonstrating the pre-ride check, have the cadets seated away from the bikes to ensure they are paying attention.

The cadets should don their helmets prior to completing any steps of the pre-ride check. This will ensure that no cadet will ride their bike without a helmet.

Mountain biking is incredibly hard on the bikes and equipment. Before the start of a ride it is important to run through a pre-ride check to ensure the mountain bike is in the best possible condition for riding. It may seem redundant to do this before every ride, especially when a post-ride check was completed; however, it only takes one broken cable or one flat tire to ruin a ride.

The ABC Quick Check is an easy way to remember what parts of the bike should be checked during a pre-ride check. The check is a series of questions that the mountain biker must ask themselves, in relation to five areas of the mountain bike. The ABC Quick Check should be practiced so that it can be done quickly and efficiently. The mountain biker will correct any minor issues at the time of the pre-ride check; any major issues, or those that require a bike tool, will have to be brought to the attention of the ride leader for further attention.

AIR

The first step in the ABC Quick Check begins by focusing the mountain bikers' attention on the wheels and tires of the bike.

Do the Tires Have Enough Air?

This can be checked using a bicycle pump that has a built-in tire pressure gauge. The tire pressure for mountain biking should not be below 35 pounds per square inch (psi) (240 kpa) and not above 65 psi (448 kpa).

When pumping the tires, the cadets should aim to ensure that the tire pressure is between 45–50 psi (310 kpa – 345 kpa). This will allow for a variety of trail conditions.

Different trail conditions require different tire pressures. Harder surfaces are easier to ride with harder tires; 50–65 psi (345 kpa – 448 kpa), and conversely, softer surfaces are easier with softer tires; 35–40 psi (240 kpa – 275 kpa).

Is There Any Excessive Wear on the Tread or Any Cuts on the Sidewalls of the Tires?

Any loose or engrained mud or debris that is lodged into the tread should be removed. This will help eliminate the possibility of sharp objects working their way through the tire casing into the inner tube, causing a flat.

BRAKES

The mountain biker will now inspect the front and rear brakes of the bike. It is important to spend time on the brake levers, as well as the actual braking mechanism.

Do the Brake Levers Work Effectively?

There should be at least two finger's width of distance between each brake lever and the handlebar when pulled. It should require little effort to engage the brake lever. If it is hard to pull then the brake cables require adjustment.

"Ministry of Transportation Ontario", Young Cyclists Guide, Copyright 2005 by Government of Ontario. Retrieved November 5, 2007, from http://www.mto.gov.on.ca/English/pubs/cycling/youngcyclists.htm

Figure 16-3-5 Brake Lever Positioning

Do the Brakes Function as They Are Supposed to?

The front and rear brakes should be checked independently. The mountain biker should stand beside the bike and push it forward by the handlebars. When the front brake lever is pulled, on its own, the rear wheel should lift up as the front wheel locks. When the rear brake lever is pulled, on its own, the rear wheel should lock and slide across the ground.

CHAIN AND CRANK

The chain and crank are what make the bike move forward. If they are not in good working order then the bike will be difficult to manoeuvre and will most likely not get very far.

Is the Chain On and Lubricated?

The chain should be able to move freely around the front and rear sprockets when the pedals are moved with no visible signs of bends or kinks. There should be no evidence of rust on the chain. If there is, an application of lubricant should work out the rust.

"Ministry of Transportation Ontario", Young Cyclists Guide, Copyright 2005 by Government of Ontario. Retrieved November 5, 2007, from http://www.mto.gov.on.ca/English/pubs/cycling/youngcyclists.htm

Figure 16-3-6 Lubricating the Chain

Do the Pedals Spin Freely?

The mountain biker should lift up the rear wheel and move the pedals with one hand to check the functionality.

QUICK RELEASE

Quick release levers are located on the front and rear wheels, as well as the seat post.

Are the Wheel Quick Releases Working?

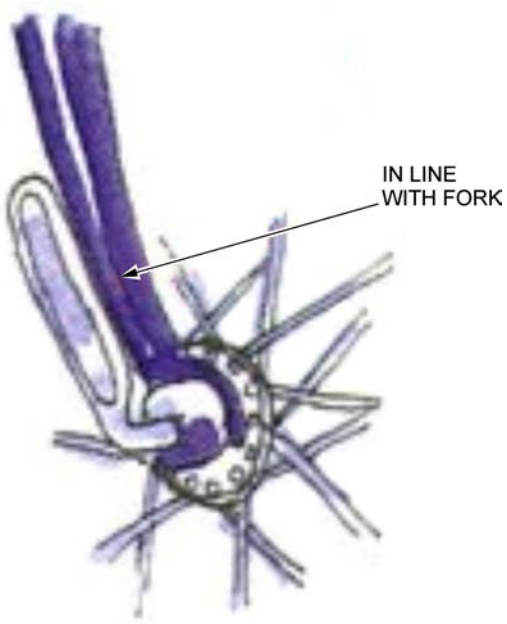
Open and close both the front and rear tire quick release levers. They should be easy to open and close. If not, lubricant can be applied. Ensure that they are fully tightened following the check and that the lever is flush with the fork of the bike.

"Ministry of Transportation Ontario", Young Cyclists Guide, Copyright 2005 by Government of Ontario. Retrieved November 5, 2007, from http://www.mto.gov.on.ca/English/pubs/cycling/youngcyclists.htm

Figure 16-3-7 Quick Release Incorrect Position – Example 1

"Ministry of Transportation Ontario", Young Cyclists Guide, Copyright 2005 by Government of Ontario. Retrieved November 5, 2007, from http://www.mto.gov.on.ca/English/pubs/cycling/youngcyclists.htm

Figure 16-3-8 Quick Release Incorrect Position – Example 2



"Ministry of Transportation Ontario", Young Cyclists Guide, Copyright 2005 by Government of Ontario. Retrieved November 5, 2007, from http://www.mto.gov.on.ca/English/pubs/cycling/youngcyclists.htm

Figure 16-3-9 Quick Release Correct Position

Is the Saddle Quick Release Working?

Open and close the lever to ensure that it is in good working order. It should be easy to open and close. If not, lubricant can be applied. When closed the lever should be flush with the seat post, pointing towards the back of the bike.

FINAL CHECK

Finally, the mountain biker should complete a final check of their bike. The bike should be lifted five to seven centimetres (two to three inches) off the ground and then dropped in a controlled manner. When it drops the mountain biker should be listening for sounds associated with loose parts (clings/clangs/pings).

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 4

The cadets' participation in completing a pre-ride check of a mountain bike will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 5 **Explain and Demonstrate Safety Precautions Which Must be Adhered to When Mountain Biking**

Time: 10 min Method: Demonstration

For this TP, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Discuss the rules of the road.
2. Demonstrate all three (left, right, stop) hand signals while cadets observe.
3. Discuss ride discipline.
4. Demonstrate riding distances and stopping procedures.

Keeping safe on mountain bikes is part common sense and part informed risk-taking, together with a healthy dose of good judgment. Prevention of injury is far easier to deal with than seeking medical attention after the fact. Following basic trail and road safety rules will ensure that the ride is safe, not only for the mountain biker but for all trail users.

Investigate the specific rules and regulations associated with bike safety for your province or territory to pass along to cadets in conjunction with the material presented in this TP.

Each province and territory has specific rules and regulations in relation to bike safety. Bikes are the smallest vehicles on the road which makes it very important for mountain bikers to be as visible as possible to other road users at all times.

RULES OF THE ROAD

Each province has specific rules of the road which form laws within the province. In Ontario, these rules are stated in the *Highway Traffic Act* (HTA).

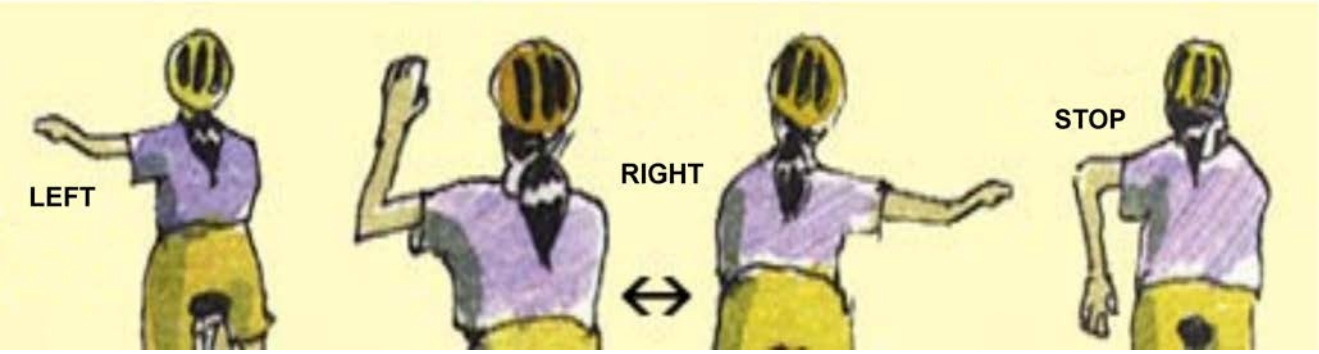
Some important rules that mountain bikers should know are:

- A bike is a vehicle and as a mountain biker, the same rights and responsibilities apply as to other road users.
- Stop at red lights and stop signs, and travel in the designated direction on one-way streets.
- A bike is a slow vehicle and must travel as far to the right as possible, except when preparing for a left turn or passing. Ride out from the curb far enough to maintain a straight-line path.
- Never compromise safety for the convenience of a motorist; use any part of a lane if safety of the mountain biker requires it.
- Stop for pedestrians at crosswalks, and walk the bike across crosswalks.
- Stop for school buses when the upper red lights are flashing and the stop arm is out.
- Stop 2 m (6.5 ft) behind streetcar doors and wait until the passengers have boarded or reached the curb.
- Do not attach a bike to a vehicle to hitch a ride.

- Do not ride on expressways, freeways or on roads where “No Bicycle” signs are posted.
- Mountain bikers must correctly identify themselves when stopped by the police for breaking traffic laws.

SIGNALLING

When riding a bike on the road it is important to ensure that drivers of motor vehicles are aware of the mountain bikers’ direction of travel at all times. Making a surprise turn in front of a car is dangerous to both the mountain biker and the driver. Demonstrating proper hand signals will help to eliminate some of the risk associated with riding a bike on roadways.



“Ministry of Transportation Ontario”, Young Cyclists Guide, Copyright 2005 by Government of Ontario. Retrieved October 5, 2007, from http://www.mto.gov.on.ca/English/pubs/cycling/youngcyclists.htm

Figure 16-3-10 Hand Signals

RIDE DISCIPLINE

Whether riding a bike on the side streets of town or on a double track in a conservation area, demonstrating awareness for the other mountain bikers will ensure that everyone has a safe ride. Ride discipline is a multi-faceted term that coincides with a variety of aspects of mountain biking, from personal and group organization, to stopping and starting procedures.

Riding in a group is one of the safest ways to ride. It is important to remember that each mountain biker is responsible for the person following them. Always have visual contact with the mountain biker behind. If when looking back the other mountain biker is not visible, stop and wait for a moment. If the mountain biker does not appear in a reasonable amount of time, call a halt to the mountain bikers ahead, and go back and look for the other mountain biker.

There are a few safety tips to keep in mind when travelling in groups:

- Ride in single file on roads and trails as much as possible.
- The lead mountain biker must communicate turns, obstacles and changes in momentum to the remainder of the group through hand signals and voice commands.
- Keep at least 1 m (3.2 ft) between mountain bikers in the group on flat ground.
- When descending hills, keep at least 3 m (9.8 ft) between mountain bikers.
- When ascending hills, stay in single file and keep to the right.
- When stopping, ensure that the entire group is completely off the trail or road.
- When stopped, all group members should get off their bikes, turn bikes so they are facing the road, close in ranks and stand to the left of their bikes.

- If travelling on roads in a large group, break into smaller groups of about 10 with at least 1 km (.62 miles) between each group to allow traffic to pass.
- Road crossings should be completed with the group lining up parallel to the other side of the road and then, in-line, walking their bikes across.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 5

QUESTIONS

Q1. The rules of the road are found in what document?

Q2. When making a left hand turn what hand signal should be used?

Q3. When riding in a group how should you cross a road?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. They are found in provincial regulations.

A2. The left arm should be extended straight out from the body.

A3. Road crossings should be completed with the group lining up parallel to the other side of the road and then, in-line, walk their bikes across.

Teaching Point 6 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Practice Mountain Bike Techniques**

Time: 55 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

The cadets should be standing beside and to the left of their bikes with their helmets on, in a large semicircle when presented the demonstration portion of each skill.

When the cadets are practicing each individual technique, it is important to set clear and defined boundaries of where they are to ride. It is also important to give specific time limits for each practice phase and a signal for the cadets that tells them to return to the main teaching area and reform the semicircle for further instruction. This could be a whistle blast. Establish signals before the demonstration and ensure cadets know what action is required.

Mountain bike techniques should be presented using the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate each technique while the cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate the steps for each technique in the following order – mounting, braking, dismounting, gearing, ascending hills and descending hills – while the cadets observe. Ascending and descending hills can be demonstrated concurrently.
3. In a controlled manner, have the cadets practice the steps for all skills. Changes from step to step and technique to technique should be on the command of the instructor.
4. Monitor the cadets as they practice all techniques.

Note: Assistant instructors may be used to monitor the cadets' performance.

MOUNTING

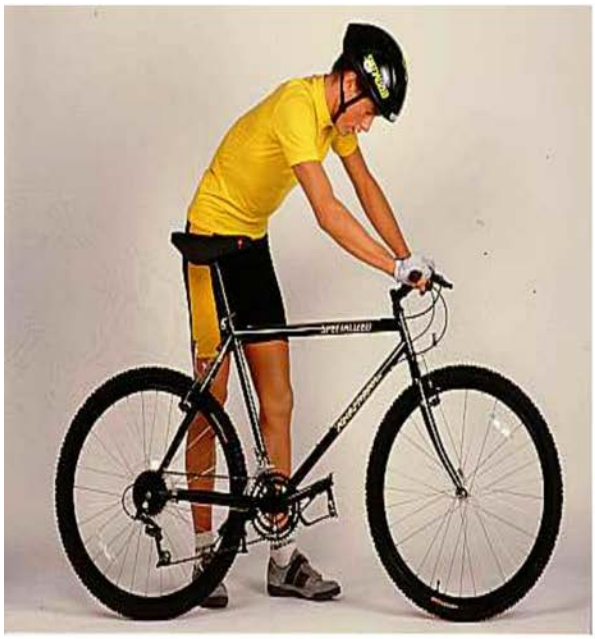
The straddle mount is the most common way to mount a bike. It is always advisable that the bike is in a low, easy gear prior to attempting to mount it.

It is recommended that the mountain biker start the mounting procedure with their non-dominant side. If they are right-handed then they should start with the left pedal. If left-handed then they should start with the right pedal.

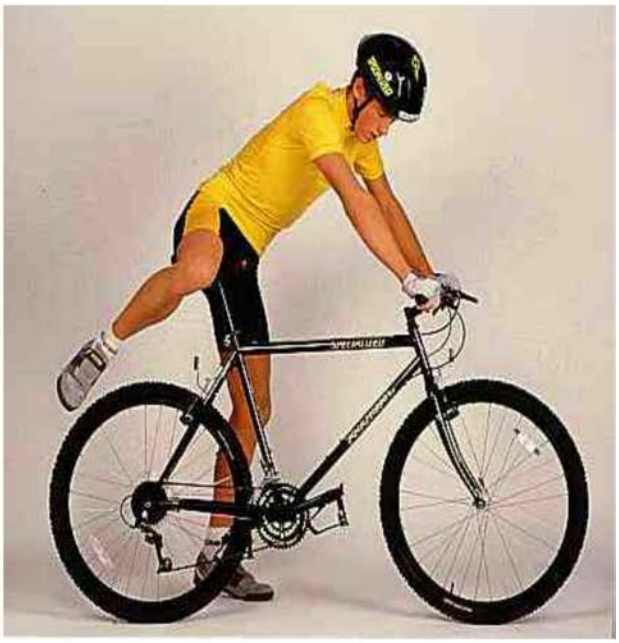
Instructions for the cadets who favour the left leg are in brackets.

The steps for completing a straddle mount are as follows:

1. Stand to one side of the bike with hands firmly on the handlebars.
2. Lift the right (left) leg over the saddle and straddle the bike.
3. Move the right (left) pedal into the three o'clock position.
4. Place the left (right) foot securely on the left pedal and then hop onto the saddle and push forward.
5. Once moving forward, place the right (left) foot onto the right (left) pedal and keep pedalling.



STEP 1



STEP 2

STEP 3-5

"DK Images", Sports, Games, Recreation, Mountain Biking, Copyright 2007 by DK Limited. Retrieved November 5, 2007, from http://www.dkimages.com/discover/Home/Sports-Games-Recreation/Outdoor-Adventure/Mountain-Biking/index.html

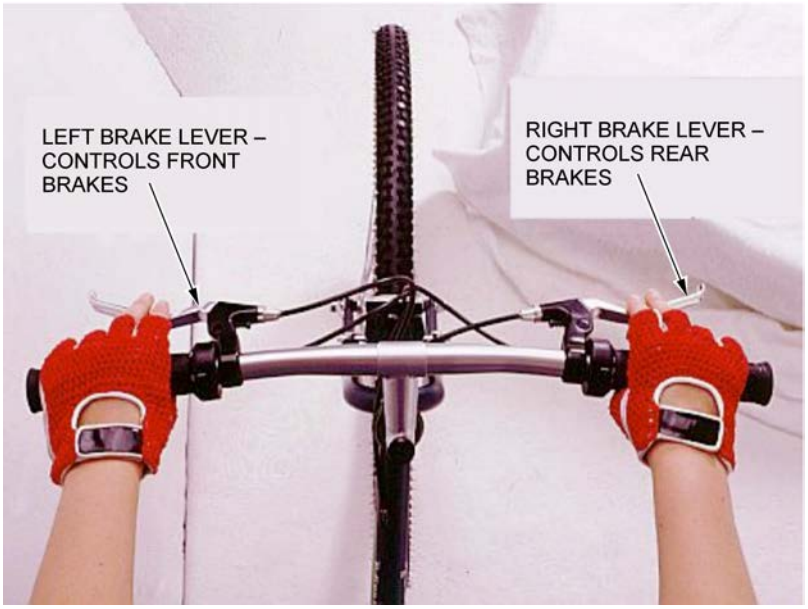
Figure 16-3-11 Straddle Mount a Bike

BRAKING

Braking is used not only for stopping, but for slowing down and controlling the bike through technical portions of the trail. It is important for a mountain biker to be able to judge the amount of pressure to use and when to

brake for various situations while on the roads and trails. This knowledge will ensure personal safety as well as the safety of other mountain bikers and trail users.

The left hand brake lever controls the front brake while the right hand lever controls the rear. Most braking is completed by the right hand, rear brakes, with the left adding assistance as required.



"DK Images", Sports, Games, Recreation, Mountain Biking, Copyright 2007 by DK Limited. Retrieved November 5, 2007, from http://www.dkimages.com/discover/Home/Sports-Games-Recreation/Outdoor-Adventure/Mountain-Biking/index.html

Figure 16-3-12 Braking Hand Position

DISMOUNTING

The straddle dismount is the most common and safest dismount.

The steps to complete a straddle dismount are as follows:

1. Prepare to stop by applying the brakes to slow down the bike.
2. While coasting, remain seated in the saddle.
3. Place the left (right) pedal into the six o'clock position.
4. Remove the right (left) foot from the right (left) pedal and place it on the ground slightly to the outside of the pedal.
5. Once the bike has come to a complete stop, slide forward off the saddle and place the left (right) foot onto the ground.
6. Swing the right (left) leg over the back of the bike.

Mountain bikers should be cautioned against using the left brake lever by itself. While this will stop the bike, the forward momentum may cause the mountain biker to continue over the front of the handlebars and bike, resulting in a possible injury.

GEARING

Terrain can change quickly when mountain biking. The ability to time a perfect gear shift is a crucial mountain bike technique to master. Smooth shifting makes the difference between a smooth, easy ride and a rough, hard ride. Gear components are equipped with pre-set gears and ramps built into the chainrings and cogs to help the chain move smoothly from one to another. The mountain biker has to shift to the correct gear at the appropriate time.

Gearing adjusts the pedalling load so the mountain biker can adapt to changes in terrain. A gear is described by the number of teeth on the sprocket that is being used.

Gear Ratio

The gear ratio is the relationship between the front chainring and the rear cassette being used. If the chainring and the cog have the same number of teeth, than the rear wheel would turn once for every pedal stroke and the ratio would be 1 : 1. If the chainring has more teeth than the cog, for example, 34 versus 17, then the ratio would be 2 : 1 and the rear wheel would revolve twice for every pedal stroke. There can also be negative gear ratios where the rear cog has more teeth than the smallest chainring, which makes the rear wheel turn slower than the pedal stroke.

FRONT CHAINSET REAR CASSETTE

"DK Images", Sports, Games, Recreation, Mountain Biking, Copyright 2007 by DK Limited. Retrieved November 5, 2007, from http://www.dkimages.com/discover/Home/Sports-Games-Recreation/Outdoor-Adventure/Mountain-Biking/index.html

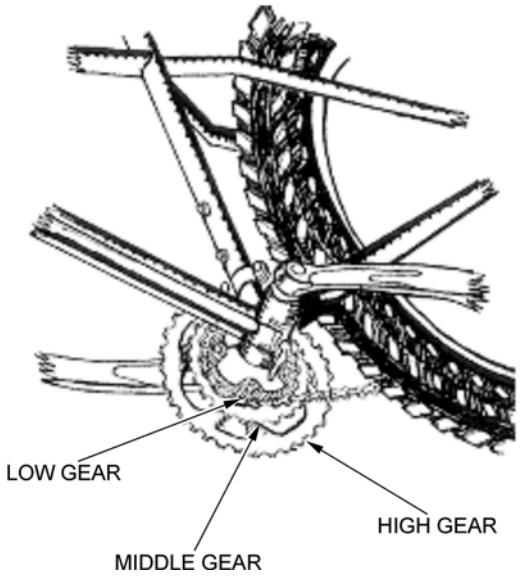
Figure 16-3-13 Front Chainset and Rear Cassette

Typically, mountain bikes have two or three chainrings in the front and seven to nine cogs in the back. Each of these sprockets is attached to a numerical value, which corresponds to the numbers on the gear shifting mechanism attached to the handlebars.

Chainset

The chainset is numbered one through three. The biggest chainring in the chainset – three – is located on the outside of the set while the smallest chainring in the chainset, one, is located on the inside of the set.

The bigger chainring in the chainset is used for flat terrain, high speeds, downhills and road pedalling. The middle chainring in the chainset is for most off-road situations including single track, small hills and bumpy downhills. The smallest chainring in the chainset is used for steep uphills and very difficult technical terrain.

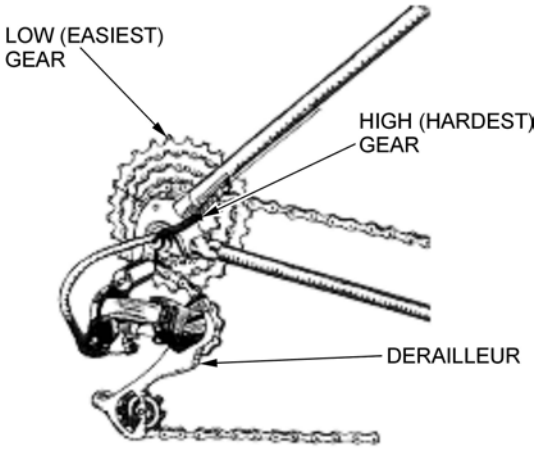


"Gorp", Your First Mountain Bike Moves: Shifting Gears, Copyright 2007 by Orbitz Away LLC. Retrieved November 7, 2007, from http://www.gorp.away.com/gorp/publishers/menasha/how_ride5.htm

Figure 16-3-14 Front Chainset

Cassette

The cassette is numbered one through nine from the inside, closest to the frame, to the outside. The inside cogs, the larger sprockets, equal the low and easiest gears which are primarily used to climb hills and when traversing uneven terrain. The outside, smaller sprockets, equal the highest and hardest gears which are used to gain speed on flat terrain.



"Gorp", Your First Mountain Bike Moves: Shifting Gears, Copyright 2007 by Orbitz Away LLC. Retrieved November 7, 2007, from http://www.gorp.away.com/gorp/publishers/menasha/how_ride5.htm

Figure 16-3-15 Rear Cassette

The bike chain should never be in the big rings on the front and rear at the same time. It places an enormous amount of tension on the chain as it moves the chain from a straight to a diagonal line.

Shifting Gears

As with braking, the left gear shifter controls the chainrings on the front chainset, while the right gear shifter controls the cogs on the rear cassette. When the gear shifter is pushed, the derailleur, front or rear, will move the chain from one sprocket to another.

"2 Wheel Bikes", Suspension Mountain Bikes. Retrieved November 7, 2007, from http://www.2wheelbikes.com/suspension-mountainbikes/sm3000-mountain-bike.html

Figure 16-3-16 Right Gear Shifter

All mountain bike gears are indexed which means that they are pre-set and will click into place when the gear lever is activated. Most bikes have a visual indicator on both sides, which shows what gear the bike is in.

Pushing the gear shifter moves the chain onto a bigger chainring or cog, because the movement is against the spring tension in the derailleur. The mountain biker will have to push the lever further than the resting point so that the chain can make it up onto the bigger chainring or cog. This is done with the mountain biker's thumb, because it is stronger than the index finger.

Changing to the smaller chainrings or cogs is an easier motion because the lever is releasing the spring tension, letting the derailleur fall naturally into position. These gear changes are completed using the mountain biker's index finger to pull the lever forward.

It is possible to change more than one gear at a time. This is done through either a series of several clicks or one movement depending on the type of gear shifting mechanism the bike uses.

There are several important points to remember when gearing:

- Gears cannot be changed if the pedals are not moving.
- Cogs are used for small changes in speed, like when the mountain biker is climbing a long steady hill.
- Chainrings are for bigger changes in speed, such as descending the summit of a hill.
- The ideal gear to begin biking is somewhere in the middle of the cassette, four or five, and the middle chainring.

ASCENDING HILLS

Climbing hills is a challenge when mountain biking and the mountain bike has been specifically designed to meet this challenge. Its broad, grippy tires, the position of the mountain biker over the back wheel and the increased number of gears give the mountain bike the technical ability to ascend hills.

A mountain bike can handle inclines close to 45 degrees on badly broken ground.

Being able to ascend a hill is influenced by two factors – power and balance. Balance is gained through awareness and practice, while power is gained through repetition of the skill and muscular and cardiovascular strength.

There are factors that affect the mountain bikers' technique while attempting to ascend a hill.

Position

The centre of gravity of a bike and the mountain biker is located at the mountain biker's abdomen. When climbing a hill, the centre of gravity must move forward on the bike to enable the mountain biker to keep their balance. The mountain biker should pull their body weight forward on the bike as the climb gets steeper, otherwise the front tire will not have enough weight on it and will lift up, resulting in a fall.

Centre of gravity is the point where all the weight of an object is concentrated.

T. Brink, The Complete Mountain Bike Book, Ragged Mountain Press (p. 51)

Figure 16-3-17 Proper Ascent Position

While it may seem easier to stand up from the saddle when climbing hills, it in fact requires more power and expends more of the mountain biker's energy. Keeping the body low and forward on the saddle is a much more effective climbing position.

Gearing and Shifting

Depending on the steepness of the hill, it is acceptable to have the front chainset on the middle chainring, index two. The rear cassette is more dependent on the grade of the hill. It is advisable, when approaching

a hill to begin shifting down into a medium intensity gear, perhaps four or five. Once the mountain biker has begun the ascent they will have to continue to lower the cogs in relation to their ability to maintain pedal power. Remember that in order to change gears, the pedals have to be moving and the more steep the incline the harder it will be to pedal.

DESCENDING HILLS

Descending is about letting gravity do the work, while the mountain biker concentrates on braking and distributing weight. It becomes a combination of balance and applying the brakes at the correct time. Mountain bikers must always think ahead and be aware of rough terrain, corners, obstacles and other mountain bikers that may be on the trail. It is critical to apply the brakes to move around or by disturbances, but not too much will completely lose the momentum from the hill.

Position

When descending a hill it is critical that the centre of gravity of the mountain biker does not fall more than halfway down the top tube of the bike. If it does, the mountain biker may go over the handlebars. The mountain biker should move their body weight towards the back of the bike, be as low as possible and extend their arms so they are almost straight in front of them. Depending on the steepness of the hill, the mountain biker may want to slide their bottom off and behind the saddle for further stability.

"2 Wheel Bikes", Suspension Mountain Bikes. Retrieved November 7, 2007, from http://www.2wheelbikes.com/suspension-mountainbikes/sm3000-mountain-bike.html

Figure 16-3-18 Proper Descent Position

Gearing and Shifting

Gearing and shifting are not as critical when descending hills as they are in ascending hills. The key thing to remember is that descending hills provides momentum, and speed must be maintained once the hill has ended. To do this, think ahead and shift into gears that will provide the most momentum. The front chainset should be in the biggest chainring and the rear cassette should be in the highest gear, eight. It may be necessary to shift to lower gears once the momentum from the hill begins to slow and pedalling gets harder.

Speed must be controlled when descending hills, with the mountain biker applying equal brake pressure, as required, on both the front and rear brakes. The mountain biker's hands must remain on the brake levers for the duration of the descent and should be ready to break at all times.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 6

The cadets' participation in the practice of each mountain bike technique will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 7 **Have the Cadet Practice Mountain Bike Skills and Techniques During an Expedition**

Time: 45 min Method: Practical Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for the cadets to participate in a practical expedition activity to practice mountain bike skills and techniques in a controlled environment for an extended period of time.

RESOURCES

- Mountain bike equipment, to include:
  - Mountain bike (one per cadet),
  - Helmet (one per cadet),
  - Bell or horn (one per mountain bike),
  - Lights and reflectors,
  - Water carrier (one per cadet),
  - Day pack (one per cadet); and
- Topographical map of area (one per team/group),
- Compass (one per team/group),
- Whistle (one per cadet),
- Communication device (two per team/group),
- GPS Receiver (one per team/group),
- Batteries (spares for communication device and GPS),
- First aid kit (one per team/group), and
- Bike maintenance tool (one per team/group).

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

Designated novice mountain bike trail route.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Have the cadets retrieve their bikes and helmets.
2. Have the cadets conduct a pre-ride check for no longer than 10 minutes.
3. Conduct a mountain bike phase of the practical expedition activity, following the designated route to practice:
   a. mountain bike techniques, to include:
      (1) mounting;
      (2) braking;
      (3) dismounting;
      (4) gearing;
      (5) ascending hills; and
      (6) descending hills; and
   b. riding formations, and
   c. communication skills.
4. Upon arrival at the end point, instruct TP 8 and then have the cadets store their bikes and helmets.

SAFETY

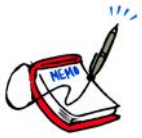
- Each group will have a cadet wearing a reflective vest in both the front and back.
- Road- and trail-riding rules must be reviewed with the cadets prior to the commencement of the ride.
- The cadets must travel in single file at all times.
- The cadets must use road hand signals.
- All the cadets must have at least 500 mL (16 oz) of water.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 7

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 8 **Explain and Demonstrate the Procedure for Completing a Post-Ride Bike Check**

Time: 5 min Method: Demonstration and Performance



This TP can be instructed following the biking phase of the practical expedition activity. The instructor should first demonstrate the procedure on their bike and then have the cadets complete a post-ride bike check on their own bike.

Proactive maintenance can reduce the chances of trail side breakdowns. It is the mountain biker's responsibility to ensure the bike is road/trail ready. The initial step in this process is through the implementation of the pre-ride bike check. While the pre-ride check is important, it is just as important to complete a post-ride check.

A post-ride check consists of:

- cleaning; and
- assessing for repairs.

CLEANING

Mountain biking can be a dirty sport. While riding through mud, dirt and water on the trails is part of the experience, if left on the bike long term they can effect the technical components of the mountain bike. Regularly cleaned parts last longer. The following steps should be taken when cleaning the bike:

1. Hose the bike down to get as much mud and dirt off as possible.
2. Turn the bike upside down, wipe down the tires.
3. Using a stuff brush clean all excess dirt and grease off the rear cassette and the front chainset.

ASSESSING FOR REPAIRS

A final quick assessment of the bike should be completed to ensure that nothing requires maintenance before the next time the bike is used. Some key issues to look for include:

- frayed or damaged cables,
- unevenness in the cable and lever system of the brakes; the brake lever should not be able to touch the handlebar,
- cuts in the sidewalls of the tires, and
- wear, cuts and missing knobs on the tires.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 8

The cadets' participation in completing a post-ride check of a mountain bike will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the practical expedition activity will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 7 (326 PC).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Mountain biking is one of three dynamic modes of transport that can be used during expedition training. It is critical that the cadets understand the importance of maintaining a mountain bike and riding it safely. Being able to perform mountain bike techniques will allow the cadets to have an enjoyable and safe experience during the biking phase of the practical expedition activity.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Expedition centres are required to select two dynamic modes of travel from EO M326.02a (Paddle a Canoe, Section 2), EO M326.02b (Ride a Mountain Bike), and EO M326.02c (Hike Along a Route, Section 4) to incorporate into their weekend training.

This EO has been allocated five and a half periods in the overall course period allocation. Each expedition centre may adjust this allocation to reflect the choice of activities, facilities and available resources at the expedition centre.

Upon arrival at the expedition centre cadets will be broken into teams/groups. These teams/groups will remain the same for the duration of the weekend.

IAW A-CR-CCP-951/PT-002, the following equipment is required for the familiarization ride:

1. reflective vest (worn by the person in the rear of the group),
2. topographical map of the area (if unfamiliar),
3. compass,
4. first aid kit,
5. communication device (cellular phone or hand-held radio), and
6. basic bike repair kit.

REFERENCES

A2-001 A-CR-CCP-951/PT-002 Director Cadets 3. (2006). *Royal Canadian Army Cadets Adventure Training Safety Standards*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C2-082 (ISBN 1-57954-883-0) Downs, T. (2005). *Bicycle Maintenance & Repair for Road & Mountain Bikes*. USA: Rodale Inc.

C2-083 (ISBN 0-07-149390-5) Brink, T. (2007). *The Complete Mountain Biking Manual*. Camden, ME: Ragged Mountain Press.

C2-084 (ISBN 1-55297-734-X) Allwood, M. (2004). *Mountain Bike Maintenance: The Illustrated Manual*. Richmond Hill, ON: Firefly Books Ltd.

C2-087 Badyk, M., Buck, K., Sahl, N., Schultz, R., & Vrooman, D. (1998). *Ontario Learn to Mountain Bike Clinic Workbook* (2nd ed.). North York, ON: Ontario Cycling Association and Ontario Recreational Mountain Bicycling Alliance.

C2-088 (ISBN 1-55297-653-X) Crowther, N. (2002). *The Ultimate Mountain Bike Book: The Definitive Illustrated Guide to Bikes, Components, Techniques, Thrills and Trails*. Toronto, ON: Firefly Books Ltd.

C2-089 Ministry of Transport Ontario. (2007). *Young Cyclists Guide*. Retrieved October 5, 2007, from http://www.mto.gov.on.ca/english/safety/cycling/youngcyclist.htm.

C2-090 International Mountain Bicycling Association. (2007). *Trail Difficulty*. Retrieved October 10, 2007, from http://www.imba.com/resources/trail_building/itn_17_4_trail_difficulty.html.

C2-092 Ministry of Transport Ontario. (2007). *Cycling Skills: Cycling Safety for Teen and Adult Cyclists*. Retrieved October 5, 2007, from http://www.mto.gov.on.ca/english/pubs/cycling/cyclingskills.htm.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 4

EO M326.02C – HIKE ALONG A ROUTE

Total Time: 165 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Ensure every cadet has a water carrier.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

Instructors should be aware of and discuss interesting historical sites and geographic features along the route as well as trivia on flora and fauna. This will enhance the experience for the cadet and help create interest. The hike should be treated as a learning experience, not a forced march.

APPROACH

A practical activity was chosen for this lesson as it is an interactive way to allow the cadet to experience hiking on Class 3 terrain in a safe, controlled environment.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to hike 8–10 km along a route with some Class 3 terrain using the “rest step” principle and employing obstacle crossing techniques as required.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to be able to hike along a route that contains Class 3 terrain so they will be prepared for the technical challenges if/when given the opportunity to participate in more advanced level expeditions. Hiking is not just about walking along a trail or predetermined route; it requires the individual to be aware of their surroundings, their limitations and the limitations of the group they are travelling with. Knowing what to do when an obstacle is on the route is critical for everyone’s safety. As well, having a basic knowledge and understanding of techniques such as the “rest step” will make the hike more enjoyable for all members.

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

The TPs for this lesson will be presented during hiking familiarization training. Some material may be presented prior to departure, with the remainder being incorporated into teachable moments and breaks throughout the route. Cadets will have been introduced to many of the theoretical concepts, this activity will provide them the opportunity to put into practice what they have already learned.

THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN HIKING, TREKKING AND BACKPACKING

Hiking is an activity of vigorous walking in the outdoors/wilderness on an unpaved trail, either on a path or navigating along an unmarked route. Usually day hikes consist of travelling cross-country over different terrains, sometimes with inclines and declines. It provides individuals the opportunity to travel to destinations that could not, in many cases, be seen any other way.

The aim of hiking is to learn skills beneficial to physical health. It offers an alternative learning environment and allows participants to explore the outdoor surroundings. For individuals who have never participated in hiking activities, it can be quite challenging. However, it can also offer a challenge to experienced hikers by varying the location/terrain of the hikes.

Trekking is a journey over long distances over several challenging days. Usually trekking involves terrain that requires crossing obstacles.

Hiking becomes backpacking when equipment is carried for an overnight stay.

PERSONAL CLOTHING AND EQUIPMENT FOR HIKING

Clothing

Clothing for the outdoors is slightly different than everyday clothing, yet everyone has clothing at home they can wear outside. When choosing clothing for outdoors, consider clothing that:

- is in good repair,
- breathes: perspiration must be able to escape the body and evaporate (depending on exertion, the body will warm up and become damp, even sweaty),
- is appropriate for the weather conditions and the activity,
- is made of materials that dry easily,
- offers wind and rain protection resistance,
- insulated and padded,
- flexible without drag,
- can be layered as necessary, and
- is comfortable.

Footwear

The most important factor to consider when selecting hiking footwear is fit. The footwear should be sufficiently sturdy to hold together throughout a trip. It should provide protection for the feet, and a firm foundation for

walking and scrambling. Today, boots are derived from athletic shoe technology. They are light, comfortable and functional. Common characteristics to look for when selecting a hiking boot are:

Sturdy. The boot should support feet and ankles from twisting on uneven surfaces. Higher boots with stiff ankle support provide lateral rigidity. The boot should also support the foot from overextending when placing too much weight on the toe or heel.

Lightweight. The lighter the boots the easier walking will be. Every extra pound of footwear weight can be compared to five pounds of added backpack weight.

Comfortable Fit. When worn, boots shall fit snugly with the heel snug against the wall of the shoe and a small amount of space for the toes to move.

Correct Size. Proper fitting boots ensure comfort during hiking. A boot fits correctly when:

- it is wide enough so the boot matches the width of the foot with little extra room,
- the tongue rests comfortably along the top of the toe, and
- the toes have room to wiggle.

Socks

The boot is only part of the footwear system; socks are the first line of defence for the feet. A two-sock system is common in many activities. Unless hiking regularly in hot, damp conditions, consider wearing one pair of heavy socks and one pair of light, inner socks. Always ensure socks are properly sized for the foot.

Inner Socks. This is a thin layer that helps wick, or pull moisture away, from the foot. They are usually made of a polypropylene material.

Outer Socks. This layer is most often made of wool or a wool blend, which can absorb moisture. This layer cushions the foot and provides insulation.

Pack

There are many devices made to assist in carrying loads on a hike. For day trips, use a small pack which can comfortably hold all required items. In the winter, there may be a requirement for extra capacity.

Fanny Pack. The pack for short hikes or treks up to a few hours is a fanny pack. This pack is a small, unobtrusive pack that sits atop the buttocks, with a thin belt that clips around the waist. These are also known as waist, or lumbar, packs. The simplest of these packs consists of a pouch sewn to a piece of flat webbing. More elaborate fanny packs can hold upwards of 10 L, and have padded belts and suspensions. The fanny pack is lightweight, and holds the load close to the spine and a person’s centre of balance. Items carried in a fanny pack should be limited to 4.5 kg (10 lbs).

ABC-of-Hiking, 2007, Shop Backpacks, Copyright 2007 by Max Lifestyle.net "Go Hiking Like Max". Retrieved April 19, 2007, from http://www.abc-of-hiking/shopitems/backpacks/prowler5-backpacks.asp

Figure 16-4-1 Fanny Pack

Day Pack. Day packs are produced in numerous model types; however, all have shoulder straps and a waist belt. Most day packs have pockets for organizing equipment and basic exterior features (eg, axe loops and daisy chains).

Important qualities of a good day pack include:

- back padding to protect shoulder blades,
- firmly padded shoulder straps,
- adjustment straps for placing weight between shoulders and hips,
- an internal frame (more durable and comfortable to wear),
- padded hip belt; four inches wide around hips and two inches at the buckle, and
- 35–40 L in volume (roughly 9–13 kg [20–30 lbs]).

ABC-of-Hiking, 2007, Shop Backpacks, Copyright 2007 by Max Lifestyle.net "Go Hiking like Max". Retrieved April 17, 2007, from http://www.abc-of-hiking/shopitems/backpacks/team-backpacks.asp

Figure 16-4-2 Day Pack

Ten Essential Items

Water Carrier. One indispensable item in any wilderness traveller's kit is a water carrier. Carrying water during a hike requires a lightweight water bottle with a tight lid that is easily refillable. Versatile equipment benefits the user. When choosing a bottle it is advisable to choose one that can withstand the temperatures of frozen or hot liquids.

Wide mouth bottles are a practical choice as many water filters are built to twist directly onto the opening of the bottle. This simplifies the water filtering process.

Hydration bags are an excellent water carrying device which allows the user to easily carry between 1 L and 4 L of water at a time. They are built into a pack and consist of a lightweight plastic bladder and a drinking tube that passes over the shoulder of the user and allows for easy hydration while hiking.

"Mountain Equipment Coop", Copyright 2007 by Mountain Equipment Coop. Retrieved March 28, 2007, from Shttp://www.mec.ca/Products/product_detail.jsp?PRODUCT%3C%3Eprd_id=845524442500177&FOLDER%3C%3Efolder_id=2534374302696609&bmUID=1177425692300

Figure 16-4-3 Wide Mouth Water Bottle

"Bionic Sports", Copyright 2007 by Bionic Sports. Retrieved November 16, 2007, from http://www.bionicsports.com/acatalog/Hydration.html

Figure 16-4-4 Hydration Bag

Pocket Knife. A knife or multi-purpose tool is essential for repairing equipment and cutting rope, cord or bandages. The key is to find a knife or tool that is small but has all the attachments – blade, scissors, screwdriver – that may be required while out on a hike.

Extra Food. It is always advisable to bring extra food on a hike. Snacks such as granola bars, GORP (good old raisins and peanuts), chocolate bars, and dried fruit will provide the hiker with an energy boost. In an emergency situation they may increase chances of survival.

Extra Clothing. Extra clothing includes an additional layer of warm clothing and a rain coat. A light down vest, sweater, or fleece jacket will provide insulation should the weather be cooler than expected, and during breaks

when sweat evaporates and the body cools. Just because the sun is shining at the start of a hike does not mean it will be shining at the end. Rain coats may also be used in building a shelter in an emergency situation.

Sunscreen. Sunscreen blocks or prevents the skin's exposure to the sun or ultraviolet light. The skin will burn when the amount of exposure to the sun, or ultraviolet light source, exceeds the ability of the body's protective pigment to protect the skin. According to the *Canadian Dermatology Association* a minimum of SPF 15 with UV-A and UV-B protection should be worn.

Sunglasses. Hikers should always wear sunglasses to protect their eyes against damage from the sun's light (eg, ultraviolet, bright or intense light, and blue light). This is especially important in the winter, as snow blindness is a prevalent injury.

Hat. A wide brimmed hat will protect the back of the neck, ears, and face from burning. A toque in the winter will keep the hiker's ears warm and stop the escape of heat from the head.

Insect Repellent. Annoying mosquitoes and black flies can have a negative impact on a hike. Wear loose fitting clothing with closed cuffs and apply insect repellent to ward off unwanted insects. The repellent should be applied to the exposed areas of the body. Many insect repellents rely on chemicals such as DEET to repel insects and have long durations per application.

Headlamp. A headlamp is simply a flashlight that has been attached to an adjustable strap that fits around the user's head. It is beneficial on a hike as it frees up the user's hands to complete tasks when light is low or it is dark.

"Mountain Equipment Coop", Copyright 2007 by Mountain Equipment Coop. Retrieved November 16, 2007, from http://www.mec.ca/Products/product_detail.jsp?PRODUCT%3C%3Eprd_id=845524442621000&FOLDER%3C%3Efolder_id=2534374302697057&bmUID=1195238790425

Figure 16-4-5 Headlamp

Survival Kit. Having a survival kit is a must during any wilderness hiking trip. It should include water purification tablets, a light source, waterproof matches, a signalling device and first aid materials.

Notebook and Pencil. Having a notebook and pencil will allow hikers to keep a log throughout the hike. Collecting information such as route details, trail condition, trail difficulty, and general observations will provide the individual with beneficial material when planning other hikes. It will also provide a record of the experience.

TERRAIN

Terrain is the physical characteristics of the ground, whether it is a flat, straight trail or an ice-peaked mountain. There are different types of terrain that one can expect to encounter on a route.

IAW with A-CR-CCP-951/PT-002, the CCM uses the Yosemite Decimal System (YDS) to rate trail difficulty levels. YDS has a scale from 1–5 and it rates the hardest/most technical section on a terrain/route. It also provides ratings for travel over flat terrain.

Class 1. Hiking, usually on a trail.

Class 2. Simple scrambling, crossing obstacles with the occasional use of hands, requires route-finding skills, may be backcountry dense bush.

Class 3. Angle is steep enough that hands are required for balance; scrambling on rocks using hands and feet, a rope might be carried.

Class 4. Simple climbing, often with exposure requiring a rope belay. A fall could be serious or fatal. Natural protection can usually be easily found.

Class 5. Technical rock climbing begins. Climbing involves the use of ropes, belays, and the placement of natural or artificial protection for the leader in case of a fall. An open-ended decimal extension to Class 5 exists for rating climbs within this category.

Types of Terrain

Easy Terrain. Terrain is flat and footing is secure. Forest roads, trails following streams and rolling hills are generally easy walking.

Moderate Terrain. Terrain with a trail that is mostly solid under foot with either one fairly steep hill or a series of small hills or forest floors with light underbrush.

Difficult Terrain. Any terrain in which a person ascends or descends over 150 m in 1 km. It can also consist of patches of dense forests, thick vegetation and rocky trails/root covered trails.

Rates of travel will differ, depending on the group, equipment, terrain, elevation above ground, etc. Generally:

- On easy terrain with a pack, a group can be expected to travel 3–5 km/h.
- On difficult terrain with a pack, a group can be expected to travel 1.5–3 km/h.
- In difficult terrain, the rate of travel can drop to a third or even a quarter of what it would be on easy terrain.
- When above 3000 m, the rate of travel will greatly decrease. On average, a person will travel 1 km/h less for every 1000 m gained in elevation.
- When descending on easy terrain, the rate can be up to twice the speed of the ascent.

USING TREKKING POLES WHILE HIKING

Types of Poles and Sticks

There are three types of trekking poles – ski poles, wooden walking sticks and telescoping trekking poles. Depending on the activity, the choice of pole will be different.

Trekking poles provide better balance and reduce the amount of stress on the knees, shoulders and back. They absorb some of the impact the body would otherwise absorb. The poles, rather than the body, absorb shock, reduce arm and leg fatigue and improve endurance.

Ski poles and walking sticks may be used for long walks and easy treks on fairly level surfaces. The walking stick may be an acceptable choice for moderate treks. Telescoping trekking poles are the most versatile choice. They work well for hiking and trekking on rough terrain.

Black Diamond, 2005, Gear, Copyright 2006 by Black Diamond Equipment Ltd. Retrieved April 12, 2007, from http://www.bdel.com/gear/fixed_length_ski.php

Figure 16-4-6 Ski Pole

Wintergoodies.com, 2007, Hiking, Trekking & Walking Pole Adjustable, Copyright 2007 by Wintergoodies.com. Retrieved April 12, 2007, from http://www.winterbrookgoodies.com/pd_swissgear_hiking_trekking_walking_pole.cfm

Figure 16-4-7 Telescoping Trekking Pole

The Walking Stick, 2005, Hiking Poles & Walking Sticks & Staffs, Copyright 2005 by The Walking Stick. Retrieved April 12, 2007, from http://www.backpacking.net/walkstik.html

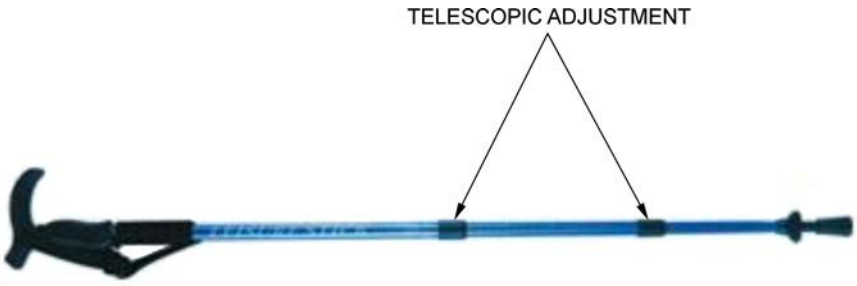
Figure 16-4-8 Wooden Walking Stick

Criteria for Choosing Trekking Poles

To find the right trekking poles or walking stick, one needs to consider the type of activities for which they will be used, the type of terrain and the weight one will carry.

Aluminum telescoping poles are the best option. They are affordable and will last longer.

Telescopic Adjustment. Poles with telescopic adjustment may be adjusted to be longer or shorter depending on the type of terrain. Multiple people can use the same set of poles by adjusting the length. The poles are easy to store when not in use.



Alibaba.com, 2007, Trekking Poles, Copyright 2007 by Alibaba.com Corporation and Licensors. Retrieved April 17, 2007, from http://aoqida.en.alibaba.com/product/50252655/51316862/Trekking_Poles/Trekking_Pole.html

Figure 16-4-9 Telescoping Pole

Grips. Grips that have been shaped to fit the hand are more comfortable to grasp and easier to use over a long period of time. Grips that are hard can get wet with sweat and be uncomfortable to hold. One should try multiple models to find the one that fits the hand the best. An adjustable strap should be attached to the grip to prevent dropping the pole.

Moontrail, Backcountry Equipment Ltd, 2006, MSR Denali II, Telescoping Trekking Poles, Copyright 2006 by Backcountry Equipment, Ltd. Retrieved April 17, 2007, from http://moontrail.com/msr-denali2.php

Figure 16-4-10 Grip With Strap

Anti-Shock System (Shock Absorption). The anti-shock system is built into the pole. Some systems are very complex and offer a range of settings depending on the user's preferences and the conditions of the trek. The anti-shock system helps absorb the impact of the pole striking the ground as one walks, easing the strain on the shoulders and arms. A lock system is a must as it allows the user to ensure the settings are locked and will not change during the hike.

Baskets. Baskets are the round rings at the bottom of trekking poles. The basket stops the poles from sinking into the surface (snow, mud or waterlogged ground). There are a variety of baskets. Baskets that are cut out like snowflakes are best used in the snow. Large, solid baskets are best used on soft muddy ground as they prevent sinking. If one is planning to buy trekking poles with baskets, ensure the baskets can easily be changed.

Backcountry Edge, 2004, LEKI Snowflake Baskets, Copyright 2004 by Backcountry Edge, Inc. Retrieved April 17, 2007, from http://www.backcountryedge.com/products/leki/snowflake_baskets.aspx

Figure 16-4-11 Snowflake Baskets

Backcountrygear.com, 2007, Black Diamond Trekking Pole Spare Baskets. Retrieved April 17, 2007, from http://www.backcountrygear.com/catalog/accessdetail.cfm/BD320

Figure 16-4-12 Solid Baskets

Tips. There are three types of tips – single point, chiselled and rubber tipped. Each of these tips will work well in a certain environment. The best overall tip is the chiselled. It looks like notches have been cut out of the very tip of the pole, leaving several points sticking out. This type of tip offers traction in almost any condition and is durable.

GoSki-Real Resort Info, 2005, Poles and Trekking Poles, Copyright 2005 by RSN. Retrieved April 17, 2007, from http://www.goski.com/gear/product/LifeLink_Replaceable_Flex_Tip_Pair.html

Figure 16-4-13 Replaceable Tips

METHODS OF USE

Using trekking poles may help prevent aches and pains. Poles are useful to help stabilize heavy loads and to negotiate trails. Besides providing better balance, trekking poles reduce the amount of stress on the back, legs and especially the knees. The poles absorb some of the impact the body would have to endure.

As the explanation is given, demonstrate the different techniques for holding trekking poles.

Trekking Uphill. When walking on even terrain, arms should be parallel to the ground when holding the grip. When trekking uphill, shorten the trekking poles for comfort and stability. This allows one to gain more power.

TrekkingPoles.com, 2006, How to Use Trekking Poles, Copyright 2006 by NicheRetail, LLC Company. Retrieved April 26, 2007, from http://www.trekkingpoles.com/custserv/custserv.jsp?pageName=How_To_Use

Figure 16-4-14 Trekking Uphill

Trekking Downhill. Trekking poles will help reduce the shock of each footfall on the joints when going downhill. For comfort and stability it is recommended that the poles be lengthened.

TrekkingPoles.com, 2006, How to Use Trekking Poles, Copyright 2006 by NicheRetail, LLC Company. Retrieved April 26, 2007, from http://www.trekkingpoles.com/custserv/custserv.jsp?pageName=How_To_Use

Figure 16-4-15 Trekking Downhill

The following may help while descending on rocky terrain:

- Walk slowly and test each rock before placing body weight on it.
- Lean forward to place body weight on the trekking poles.
- Grip the trekking pole securely.
- Keep the arms bent at 90 degrees.
- When possible, move one pole forward and step through with the opposite leg.

Trekking poles can also be used to:

- probe the depth of puddles or the strength of snow bridges;
- ward off aggressive animals; and
- provide support for a camera.

Some people like to have one hand free and only use one pole. For a greater level of support, two is better.

A solid wooden walking stick can be picked up in nature at any time during an expedition.

PERSONAL HIKING RHYTHM

An average day of hiking will consist of periods of hiking and periods of rest. The combination of a good hiking rhythm, a good hiking speed, and fixed rest intervals separate beginners from experienced hikers. Enthusiasm often tends to cause one to start too fast, get tired quickly, take an early rest, and start off too fast again.

Stride Rhythm and Speed

A steady hiking rhythm is generally more enjoyable as one over exerts themselves less and generally keep the physical strain at comfortable levels. Having a steady rhythm will enable a hiker to stick to a fixed schedule and lessen the strain put on the body. This allows a hiker to travel less fatigued.

Developing a Hiking Rhythm. A hiking rhythm is very personal and is developed over the course of many hikes. To develop a rhythm there are some guidelines to follow:

- Choose a specific stride rhythm and speed and keep to it. A good rhythm is one that allows a hiker to hike at the same intensity level for at least one hour without having to take a break.
- Adjust rhythm to terrain, weather and weight. The point where a person can no longer carry on a conversation indicates the hiker has gone beyond a comfortable tempo.
- Make the rhythm a full body movement where breathing and swinging of the arms happen in harmony.
- Uneven surfaces like uphill and downhill slopes of varying incline can make it difficult to maintain a steady hiking rhythm.

Controlling Fatigue

The purpose of resting is to slow down the heart rate and breathing, thereby allowing the heart and lungs to rest. Resting gives the body time to get rid of the lactic acids built up in muscles, and to recover from hot spots or sores.

Resting guidelines:

- Rest in regular intervals; try 10 minutes for every hour hiked (make them part of the rhythm).
- Stick to 10-minute rest breaks. Use only lunch and dinner (supper) breaks as extended rest periods.
- 10 minutes is the most effective rest duration for body recovery.
- Ensure to take off backpacks, rest in the shade, and sit down during rests.
- During the extended rest breaks, allow feet to rest and dry by removing shoes, and airing out footwear.

Adjusting Rhythm

Generally, hiking rhythm on a flat surface can be maintained easily; however, when weather and additional weight are included, hiking becomes more difficult. How fast one travels depends on the fitness level of the entire group, the terrain, the altitude and pack weight. One of the best ways to measure and regulate pace is to pay close attention to the tempo of breathing.

If breathing determines pace then, for example, on level ground one takes three steps per inhalation, and three steps per exhalation. Climbing a hill, while maintaining the same breathing rate, the steps per inhalation fall to two. A good rule of thumb to follow is to walk at a pace where one can still carry on a conversation.

When travelling in different conditions one's pace will change, according to:

- **Weather.** Poor weather will reduce pace and force the hiker to reduce step size for safety.
- **Weight.** Weight will affect pace size as the more weight one carries, the more energy must be expelled.
- **Terrain.** Travelling uphill will reduce pace size and distance travelled.

Full Body Synchronization

Hiking rhythm is a full body affair. Just like marching, hiking requires coordinated movements where every action has a reaction. The swinging of arms provides momentum, breathing controls pace, etc. To properly control rhythm, one must first learn what body parts work in unison. To employ full body synchronization during movement, the arms should be in motion at a natural swing, opposite the forward foot.

Resting Intervals

An average day of hiking consists of periods of hiking and resting. Resting intervals should occur once ever hour, for a duration of 10 minutes, in an area that is conveniently shaded and possibly near a water source. During the first five to seven minutes of resting, the body flushes out about 30 percent of the lactic acid buildup in the muscles, but only five percent in the next 15 minutes (be cautious rest does not extend beyond 10 minutes).

In addition to lactic acid buildup in the muscles, the body works in unison and other areas may become fatigued. By resting:

- the heart rate slows and beats at a reduced rate,
- the lungs supply less oxygen to the body,
- the body and mind rest, and
- feet and footwear can be aired out, reducing the chance of blisters.

The Rest Step

When trekking, sometimes a hill is so steep that it simply cannot be climbed without taking breaks. In these cases, the rest step can be used. The rest step is also good when hiking in snow and fog.

To employ the rest step:

1. Begin from an upright position. Step forward with the right leg, keeping the weight on the left (back) leg, with the knee locked. Pause before taking the next step, with the weight still on the back leg.
2. Transfer the weight to the right leg. Push up with the right leg and take a step forward with the left leg. Lock the right knee, so that the right leg is bearing all the body weight. Pause before taking the next step, with the weight still on the back leg.

3. Transfer the weight to the left leg. Push up with the left leg and take a step forward with the right leg. Pause before taking the next step, with the weight still on the back leg. Continue moving, walking at a slow and steady pace.

STEP 1 STEP 2 STEP3

K. Berger, Backpacking and Hiking, DK Publishing Inc. (p. 143)

Figure 16-4-16 Rest Step

CLASS 3 TERRAIN HIKING TECHNIQUES

Scrambling

Scrambling is a term used to describe making one's way over rough, uneven terrain and rocks by climbing or crawling. Scrambling usually requires the use of both hands and feet.

The following should be considered when using the scrambling technique:

- Test handholds and footholds before committing body weight.
- Keep the lower body close to the rocks.
- Use the hands to help maintain balance.
- Use large muscles in the legs to support body weight.
- Always maintain three points of contact with the rocks.

Talisman Newsletter, 2006, Merry Christmas, Copyright 2007 by Talisman Mountaineering Activities Scotland. Retrieved April 17, 2007, from http://www.talisman-activities.co.uk/downloads/newsletters/newsletter4/newsletter4.htm

Figure 16-4-17 Scrambling Technique

When scrambling and facing difficulty, take a moment to catch your breath. Study your route options and always identify a way back.

Boulder Hopping

Boulder hopping is when one uses speed and momentum to lightly hop from boulder to boulder, using arms or trekking poles to for balance.

The following should be considered when boulder hopping:

- Plan your route. Larger boulders are more stable.
- Use hands for stability.
- Keep knees bent and relaxed.
- Control speed. Lightly hop.
- If one begins to lose balance, move forward, stepping lightly from foot to foot until balance is regained.

Great Outdoor, 2006, Hiking the Forgotten End of the AT, Copyright 2006 by Greatoutdoor.com. Retrieved April 12, 2007, from http://www.greatoutdoors.com/go/photos.jsp?title=hikingtheforgottenendoftheat&imag=1

Figure 16-4-18 Boulder Hopping With Trekking Poles

Scree Crossing

A scree is a mass of fine, small rocks that are often found above the tree line on mountain slopes. When dealing with a scree, caution is the first rule.

East Riding of Yorkshire Council, E Riding Media Library-England North, Copyright 2007 by School Improvement Service, East Riding of Yorkshire Council. Retrieved April 17, 2007,from http://www.eriding.net/media/england_north.shtml

Figure 16-4-19 Scree

Traversing a Scree

Traversing means walking obliquely or crossing in a sideways movement.

Walking on a scree may be very slippery. When traversing a scree, a planned zig-zag path is the best option. The route should be broken down in small sections. One should keep the pace controlled and remember that speed can only mean greater risk of injury.

Walking Sideways. Walking sideways will provide more contact between the long side of the foot and the slope to give better stability.

Climbing a Scree

One should avoid climbing a scree, if possible as it can be very exhausting. If there is no other option, the following tips should be considered:

- Keep to the sides of the scree. The movement of the scree is slower and larger boulders can be found there.
- Aim to keep feet horizontal. If the scree is small enough, kick the toes into the slope (like in snow).
- Climbing with the feet spread-eagled will help put weight on the instep of each boot.
- Take small steps to reduce the strain on the legs. This also reduces the chances of slipping.
- Legs should be bent at the knee to support the body.

Descending a Scree

When descending a scree, one should keep the weight on the heels and take short steps. One's back should be straight and the knees should be slightly bent to absorb stress and improve balance.

The following should be considered when descending a scree:

- Dig the heels into the slope.
- Use the hands to stay steady.
- Relax the knees and keep moving.

CROSSING WATER OBSTACLES

Rivers

Crossing rivers can be very challenging depending on the time of the year (eg, spring when snow melts into streams and rivers). A plan should be established before crossing a river.

Choose a Place to Cross. The safest place to cross is where the water is calm and no deeper than the height of one's hips. Such conditions can be found around rivers bends, where the stream widens and slows to make the turn. The darker (and greener) the water, the deeper it is.

The following should be avoided:

- turbulence that causes white water;
- dark water; and
- a powerful current.

If conditions appear dangerous, walk upstream in search of a safer option. Always cross with caution.

Best Time to Cross. Early in the morning is the best time to cross. Rivers run slower in the morning because the water is colder at night.

Wading Across a River. Wading across a river is the safest option. When crossing, always face upstream, diagonal to the current.

If crossing in a group, link arms, with the strongest people at the end. The group should move slowly in a line, diagonal to the current.

Trekking poles can be used to wade across a river. They will help with the balance.

When crossing a river, to keep boots dry, take them off and wear sport sandals. If one does not have sport sandals, remove socks and boot liners, put boots back on and cross the river.

Hopping. Hopping is a technique used with rocks and will help one cross a river and stay dry. The following should be considered when hopping:

- Plan the route. Evaluate the steps to take.
- Decide which rocks are stable.
- Test steps before committing.
- If a step is unstable, move quickly to the next one.

Stepping in the water is an option. It is better to step into the water and get wet feet than to fall into it.

Crossing Rivers Using a Wooden Bridge or Ropes. Wooden bridges range from constructed bridges to logs placed across a stream. Always test a bridge first to see if it is fixed and stable. Crossing a log should be done one person at a time since weight can dislodge the log. If a bridge or a log is too narrow, unstable or high, shuffle across in a sitting position.

Unless trained in river rescue, hand-held rope should not be used. If a rope is fixed in place, it can be used to hold on to. Avoid getting tangled in the rope. Carabiners shall not be used to attach a person to the rope.

Waterlogged Ground

Avoid crossing waterlogged ground if possible. If there is no other way around, one should plan a route through it. Footsteps of previous trekkers can tell how deep and hard the soil is.

Natural Hard Spots. When planning a route, aiming for hard spots in the ground can save time. Trees and shrubs might indicate a solid piece of ground. Large rocks and clumps of hard grass are also good indicators.

Trails. Sometimes, trails go across waterlogged ground. Frequently used trails will often have small wooden pathways (looking like short bridges) built to help facilitate the crossing. Bridges made of fallen logs may also be used.

When crossing waterlogged grounds, boots should be tightly laced. Suction of mud may pull at the boots.

Crossing Snow and Ice

Reading the Snow for a Safe Route. When planning a route, it is best to avoid rocky places. Rocks absorb heat causing the snow near them to melt faster. The soft snow may not be firm enough to hold someone's weight. Before using a path, test the snow with trekking poles to prevent injuries. It is best to cross a large snowfield early in the morning when the snow is harder. As the sun rises and becomes more powerful, snow melts unevenly and creates soft spots.

Ascending on Snow. When walking on snow, the conditions will govern the route. A new route may be created to ascend safely. Zig-zags may also be an option. If it is easier to go straight up, one should kick the snow several times to make solid steps to stand on. Before standing on these steps, one should always test body weight.

Trekking uphill through snow can be very exhausting. It is recommended to plan twice as much time to complete this kind of trek. Take breaks as required.

Crossing Ice. Crossing ice requires caution. When crossing ice, one should use trekking poles to probe for holes or test the snow. On ice, do not rely on old footsteps. The route may not be safe if they are a few days old. Always test before advancing.

Ice is thinner in early winter and spring. During these seasons, one should try to go around.

Teaching Point 1 **Participate in Hiking Familiarization**

Time: 160 min Method: Practical Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for the cadet to hike along a route that contains some Class 3 terrain, using the "rest step" principle and employing obstacle-crossing techniques as required.

RESOURCES

- Hiking equipment, to include:
  - Hiking boots (one pair per cadet),
  - Day pack (one per cadet),
  - Water carrier (one per cadet), and
  - trekking poles (one pole per cadet);
- Topographical/trail map of the area (two per team/group),
- Compass (one per team/group),
- Whistle (one per cadet),

- Communication device (two per team/group),
- GPS Receiver (one per team/group),
- Batteries (spares for hand-held radio and GPS), and
- First aid kit (one per team/group).

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

Designated hiking route with some Class 3 terrain.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

Due to differences in geographic location, resources, and environment it may not be possible to cover all TPs in this lesson while travelling along the predetermined hiking route. It is suggested that a review of theoretical concepts takes place prior to departing. This should be completed as a discussion with the cadets, using leading questions to aid in the identification of the key concepts. During the hike, re-establish these points through practical examples, such as pointing out when the cadets are travelling on easy terrain versus moderate terrain. The TPs are organized into two main headings – pre-departure and during—but it should be understood that concepts discussed in the pre-departure section will be revisited during the hike.

1. Conduct pre-departure training, reviewing the following concepts through discussion:
    a. the difference between hiking, trekking and backpacking,
    b. personal clothing and equipment for hiking,
    c. terrain, including:
        (1) the Yosemite Decimal System (YDS), and
        (2) types of terrain, including:
            a. easy,
            b. moderate, and
            c. difficult; and
    d. trekking poles, including:
        (1) types of poles and sticks, and
        (2) criteria for choosing trekking poles.
2. Conduct a pre-hike briefing, to include:
    a. clothing/equipment requirements,
    b. trail etiquette,
    c. daily water requirements,
    d. rest intervals, and
    e. route overview.

3. Assign cadets the following positions and provide them with required equipment (positions will change throughout the route):
    a. navigator (topographical/trail map of area, compass),
    b. first-aider (first aid kit), and
    c. radio operator (hand-held radio, spare batteries).
4. Have cadets retrieve their day packs and trekking poles and prepare to move.
5. Depart on the predetermined hiking familiarization route, incorporating the remaining TPs, where applicable, into teachable moments and breaks throughout the route, to include:
    a. methods of using trekking poles while hiking;
    b. personal hiking rhythm, including:
        (1) stride rhythm and speed,
        (2) controlling fatigue,
        (3) adjusting rhythm,
        (4) full body synchronization,
        (5) resting intervals, and
        (6) the rest step;
    c. Class 3 terrain hiking techniques, including:
        (1) scrambling;
        (2) boulder hopping; and
        (3) scree crossing, to include:
            a. traversing a scree,
            b. climbing a scree, and
            c. descending a scree; and
    d. crossing water obstacles, including:
        (1) rivers,
        (2) waterlogged ground, and
        (3) snow and ice.
6. Upon arrival at the end point, debrief the cadets and have them return equipment.

SAFETY

- The cadets will respect the predetermined boundaries for this activity.
- Teams/groups will travel in single file.
- Teams/groups will not pass another teams/groups unless directed to do so by their team instructor.

- All the cadets must have at least 500 mL (16 oz) of water.
- A water supply will be available along the route.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in the practical expedition activity will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 7 (326 PC).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Hiking is one of three dynamic modes of transport that can be used during expedition training. It is critical that the cadets are given the opportunity to hike on routes which include some Class 3 terrain to prepare them for more advanced expedition experiences. Being aware of pacing and implementing the "rest step" while hiking will ensure a more enjoyable hiking experience for the individual and the team/group. When travelling on advanced hiking terrain, the possibility of encountering obstacles is quite great, therefore it is important that all members understand how to safely cross them.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Expedition centres are required to select two dynamic modes of travel from EO M326.02a (Paddle a Canoe, Section 2), EO M326.02b (Ride a Mountain Bike, Section 3), and EO M326.02c (Hike Along a Route) to incorporate into their weekend training.

This EO has been allocated six periods in the overall course period allocation. Each expedition centre may adjust this allocation to reflect the choice of activities, facilities and available resources at the expedition centre.

Timings for this EO will vary. While there is a requirement for some initial training, the focus should be on having the cadets practice hiking techniques through practical application.

Upon arrival at the expedition centre cadets will be broken into teams/groups. These teams/groups will remain the same for the duration of the weekend.

REFERENCES

A2-001 A-CR-CCP-951/PT-002 Director Cadets 3. (2006). *Royal Canadian Army Cadets Adventure Training Safety Standards*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C2-016 (ISBN 1-4000-5309-9) Curtis, R. (2005). *The Backpacker's Field Manual: A Comprehensive Guide to Mastering Backcountry Skills*. New York, NY: Three Rivers Press.

C2-042 (ISBN 0-7566-0946-1) Berger, K. (2005). *Backpacking & Hiking*. New York, NY: DK Publishing, Inc.

C2-051 (ISBN 978-0-7153-2254-3) Bagshaw, C. (Ed.). (2006). *The Ultimate Hiking Skills Manual*. Cincinnati, OH: David & Charles.

C2-103 (ISBN 0-89886-427-5) Graydon, D., & Hanson, K. (Eds.). (2001). *Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills* (6th ed.). Seattle, WA: The Mountaineers.

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 5

EO M326.03 – PRACTICE ENVIRONMENTAL STEWARDSHIP AS A TEAM LEADER

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

A group discussion was chosen for TP 1 as it allows the cadets to interact with their peers and share their experiences, opinions, and feelings about Leave No Trace principles. A group discussion also helps the cadets improve their listening skills and develop as members of a team.

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 2 and 3 to give an introduction and overview of current land management issues in Canada and generate interest in adhering to Leave No Trace principles.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to practice environmental stewardship as a team leader.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to understand environmental stewardship as it relates to ecological sustainability and Leave No Trace camping. Environmental management is constantly changing and knowing what is acceptable will assist the cadet in making good leadership decisions.

Teaching Point 1 **Review the Principles of Leave No Trace Camping**

Time: 5 min Method: Group Discussion

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

The point of the group discussion is to draw the principles of Leave No Trace camping from the group using the tips for answering/facilitating discussion and the suggested questions provided.

PRINCIPLES OF LEAVE NO TRACE CAMPING

Plan Ahead and Prepare

Plan ahead by considering your goals and expectations. Taking steps in advance of the trip will allow for minimum impact on the trail. Some points to help prepare include:

- **Knowing the Regulations and Special Concerns for the Areas Visited.** Taking the time to research specific locations will aid the group in packing and preparation.
- **Preparing for Extreme Weather, Hazards and Emergencies.** Information concerning weather, possible hazards, and emergencies should never be assumed or the importance underestimated. Check with weather forecasting services and research the location's seasonal weather history for any clues to weather that may be expected. Always plan for the worst weather expected, and be prepared for any emergency.
- **Carefully Planning Meals and Repackaging Food to Minimize Waste.** Reducing the amount of food you carry by carefully planning meals and repackaging food, reduces the amount of garbage produced. Eliminating trash removes the possibility of accidentally leaving waste behind.

Camp and Travel on Durable Surfaces

Trampled vegetation and eroded trails last for years, or even a lifetime. Walk and set tents on surfaces that endure (eg, rock, sand, gravel, dry grasses and snow). Adhere to the following guidelines:

- **Concentrate the Trek on Existing Trails and Campsites.** In popular areas, focus the trek where it is obvious that other visitors have already left an impact. Travelling on areas already worn will reduce the overall impact on the environment in the long term.
- **Walk in Single File in the Middle of the Trail, Even When Wet or Muddy.** Trails travelled frequently will show signs of wear. Maintaining travel in the centre of the path will reduce wear spreading to the edges of the trail.
- **Avoid Taking Shortcuts Away From Established Trails.** Taking shortcuts around routes or obstacles may be time saving however, the effect on the vegetation and environment is damaging. Avoid this whenever possible.
- **Travel on Rock, Gravel, Dry Grasses or Snow.** These surfaces are durable and can withstand the pressure of human travel. In pristine areas with no noticeable impact, groups should not walk in single file, but should disperse and travel separate routes.
- **Camp 100 m (300 Feet) From Lakes and Streams.** Ground water and water from lakes and streams have the potential to be spoiled by increased human contact. By camping a minimum distance of 100 m (300 feet) from these water sources, cadets can do their part to limit the impact on the area's ecosystem.

Dispose of Waste Properly

Pack it In, Pack it Out. Inspect the campsite and rest areas for trash or spilled foods. Pack out all trash, leftover food and litter.

Disposing of Human Waste. Dispose of all human waste in catholes dug 16–20 cm (6–8 inches) deep and at least 60 m (200 feet) from water sources, camps, and trails. Cover and disguise the cathole when finished. Be sure to follow any additional direction provided by the owner or manager of the area you are training in, and adhere to any regional directives that may be in place.

Pack Out Toilet Paper and Hygiene Projects. Soiled toilet paper and feminine products will take a considerable amount of time to decompose, especially if the trek involves many participants. Be sure to employ a suitable disposal plan.

Washing the Body or Dishes. Carry water 60 m (200 feet) away from streams or lakes and use small amounts of biodegradable soap. Scatter strained dishwater.

Leave What You Find

While trekking there will be many wonderful structures, intriguing objects, and items one will find interesting. Items of such nature shall be left alone for others to cherish.

Some guidelines to follow include:

- **Preserving the Past.** Leave all cultural or historical structures and artifacts untouched for all to enjoy.
- **Leave Flora and Fauna.** Plants, rocks, and animals shall be left alone and undisturbed.
- **Avoid the Construction of Structures.** While in the field, common practice is to invent or construct structures and furniture or dig trenches to make living easier, however, these actions leave a noticeable, unnatural indication of human presence in the environment. If structures are created out of necessity, once finished return the environment to its original appearance.

Minimize Campfire Impacts

Traditional open fires destroy the landscape, and can be avoided by using lightweight stoves. If fires are acceptable, build minimum impact fires using an existing fire ring, pan or fire mound. Only dead and downed wood, no bigger than an adult's wrist, should be used. Maintain a small fire by burning all the wood down to ash then, saturating the ash with water and scattering the ash broadly. There should be little to no evidence of a fire.

Respect Wildlife

Animals in their natural environment are not used to humans. Although some wild animals adapt to human presence, others flee, sometimes abandoning their young and their preferred habitat. As guests in the environment, and as expeditionists, we need to respect wildlife by observing these simple guidelines:

- Observe wildlife from a distance.
- Never feed the animals.
- Protect wildlife and food by storing rations and trash securely.
- Control pets.
- Avoid wildlife during sensitive times (eg, mating, nesting, when raising young, or during the winter).

Be Considerate of Other Visitors

While trekking, one will likely encounter other travellers. Be sure to respect others and afford common courtesies, such as:

- respecting visitors to protect the quality of their experience;
- yielding to others on the trail;
- camping away from trails and other visitors; and
- allowing nature's sounds to prevail.

GROUP DISCUSSION

TIPS FOR ANSWERING/FACILITATING DISCUSSION

- Establish ground rules for discussion, eg, everyone should listen respectfully; don't interrupt; only one person speaks at a time; no one's ideas should be made fun of; you can disagree with ideas but not with the person; try to understand others as much as you hope they understand you; etc.
- Sit the group in a circle, making sure all cadets can be seen by everyone else.
- Ask questions that will provoke thought; in other words avoid questions with yes or no answers.
- Manage time by ensuring the cadets stay on topic.
- Listen and respond in a way that indicates you have heard and understood the cadet. This can be done by paraphrasing their ideas.
- Give the cadets time to respond to your questions.
- Ensure every cadet has an opportunity to participate. One option is to go around the group and have each cadet answer the question with a short answer. Cadets must also have the option to pass if they wish.
- Additional questions should be prepared ahead of time.

SUGGESTED QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the seven principles of Leave No Trace camping?

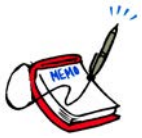
Q2. When in the wilderness, squirrels are often present around the campsite. How much food should you spare to feed the animals?

Q3. When preparing for a trek, what should one check to determine what clothing will be required for the trip?

Q4. Where should campfires be made?

Q5. What action should be taken with respect to other campers?

Other questions and answers will develop throughout the group discussion. The group discussion should not be limited to only those suggested.



Reinforce those answers given and comments made during the group discussion, ensuring the teaching point has been covered.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadet's participation in the group discussion will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss Land Management Issues in Canada**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to give cadets an introduction to land management issues in Canada that can affect expeditions. In addition, this information will allow cadets to be knowledgeable about current environmental issues.

SUSTAINABLE FORESTRY

Sustainable forestry is meeting society's increasing demands for forest products while respecting the values of society and preserving forest health.

Forests in Canada are almost 15 000 years old, but, without sustainable forestry they may not be around for another 15 000 years. Over the last decade, forest concerns have been raised by public interest groups, Aboriginal peoples, and concerned citizens. Concerns include clear cutting, using pesticides and managing the forest for wildlife, cultural values, recreation and park management, and fresh water.

Why is it Important for Canada to Have Sustainable Forestry Standards?

Ensuring the sustainability of the resource and the long term protection of forest ecosystems and maintaining employment in the forestry sector are all critical to Canada's competition in international markets. The forestry industry is Canada's largest industrial employer, with over 339 900 Canadians directly employed in the industry.

Sustainable forests are a source of well-being socially, environmentally and economically. Canada is home to approximately 30 percent of the world's boreal forest. There are 180 indigenous species of trees in our forests that provide habitat for 70 species of mammals and 300 species of birds.

Within the 30 percent, 294.8 million hectares are available for commercial use. 143.7 million hectares of commercially available forest are actively managed. Most of Canada's forests are publicly owned (93 percent) of which 77 percent are under provincial jurisdiction.

It is important to note that before any forestry take place, a forest management plan must be prepared.

Forest Management Plan. A plan developed by industry leaders, professional foresters and local citizens that follows the Forest Management Planning Manual. The plan includes determining available harvest areas and assessing criteria and indicators of sustainability.

Forestry companies manage crown forests under licences that are known as sustainable forest licences (SFLs). SFLs are valid for 20 years but must be renewed every five years to show compliance to regulations as well as public audit. If a company does not meet the standard, the licence is not renewed.

Stumpage fees are charges to companies for the right to harvest timber. Stumpage fees are based on the number of trees harvested.

Canada is committed to and is a world leader in sustainable forest management. As of 2006, Canada had the largest number of independently certified forests.

Independently Certified Forests. Forests that have been certified by an independent third party to be managed using sustainable methods.

WASTE MANAGEMENT

Waste management has changed drastically with recycling becoming a large part of waste reduction. Waste management is the responsibility of all levels of government. Provincial governments are responsible for licensing hazardous waste generators, carriers and treatment facilities.

Most waste management is contracted to private companies.

In field and wilderness settings, waste management is conducted by area residents, park staff or a private management company.

Carrying out what was carried in is crucial to waste management in wilderness areas. Bringing garbage back home, or back to the training centre where adequate disposal measures are in place assists in keeping wilderness areas clean.

WATER CONSERVATION

Nearly three quarters of the earth is water. Ninety-nine point six percent of all fresh water is frozen in glaciers and ice fields, or located deep underground. Within our land mass, Canada holds about seven percent of the world's renewable fresh water.

Canada holds 20 percent of the world's fresh water, but only seven percent is renewable.

Canadians rely on this seven percent of fresh water for drinking water, agriculture, recreation, industry and ecosystems. Managing this vast resource is the responsibility of all levels of government. Water conservation and management is an important issue within Canada that many people take for granted.

Why is Water Conservation so Important?

Although Canada has the largest supply of fresh water, it is diminishing. Demand for water is higher, pollution has increased within water supplies, water tables have declined, and prolonged warm weather has caused drought conditions more frequently. These factors are shrinking the usable water supply.

Water is used for cooking food, bathing, doing laundry and drinking. When we are done with the water, it is usually returned to the same body of water it came from, usually in a worse condition.

What Do we Mean by Water Conservation?

Water conservation means wasting less water, using water more efficiently, and not misusing water.

Using Water in the Wilderness

When in the wilderness, collecting water from rivers, streams and lakes should be done with care.

Bathing in lakes will contaminate water. Using soap when washing is especially detrimental to the water as chemicals and bacteria not found naturally are being added. Even soaps that claim to be biodegradable are harmful to the water.

One drop of oil can render up to 25 L of water unfit for drinking.

The increase in Canada's population leads to an increased demand for water. More chemicals and bacteriological pollutants are found in the water supply. Waterborne diseases found in municipal water have prompted awareness and action by organizations across the country. This, combined with a depleting water table, means that maintaining a stable clean water supply has never been more important.

Only about one percent of the water in the Great Lakes is renewed each year through rainfall and snowmelt.

The entire population of Prince Edward Island and over 60 percent of the population of New Brunswick and the Yukon rely on groundwater to meet their domestic needs.

ECOSYSTEM MANAGEMENT

Ecosystem. A self-regulating association of living plants, animals, and their non-living physical and chemical environment.

The sphere of life and organic activity extends from the ocean floor to approximately 8 km (5 miles) into the atmosphere. Within this sphere are thousands of different ecosystems. In an ecosystem, a change in one component causes changes in others as all systems adjust to the new conditions. An ecosystem includes biotic (living) and abiotic (nonliving) components. All of the components function as a whole, therefore, the slightest change in an ecosystem can drastically change its health.

Limiting factor. Physical or chemical factor that inhibits (through a lack of, or an excess of) biotic processes.

Changes that can threaten the biodiversity of areas are:

- habitat loss and degradation,
- invasive alien species,
- pollution, and
- climate change.

The national Species at Risk Act was adopted in 2002, to work with existing laws to protect wildlife species and protect ecosystems. Designed to ensure action plans are prepared for the recovery of declining species, the Act applies to all federal lands. Most provinces also have Species at Risk legislation.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What does water conservation mean?

Q2. Why is ecosystem management so important?

Q3. What can threaten the biodiversity of an area?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Water conservation means wasting less water, using water more efficiently, and not misusing water.

A2. Ecosystem management is so important because a change in one component causes changes in others as all systems adjust to the new conditions.

A3. Threats to the biodiversity of an area are:

- habitat loss and degradation,
- invasive alien species,
- pollution, and
- climate change.

Teaching Point 3 **Identify Ways a Team Leader Can Implement Leave No Trace Principles**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is designed to motivate cadets to follow Leave No Trace principles.

Allow cadets to develop their own ideas and implement them on corps trips and exercises.

LEAVE NO TRACE PRINCIPLES

Following Leave No Trace Principles Personally by Leading by Example

Cadets follow and do as their leaders do. Cadets watch everything and notice when leaders are doing things differently. Seeing their leaders following Leave No Trace principles allows other cadets to see the principles in action. Seeing the leader of the group apply the principles will cause the junior cadets to follow.

Designate a Leave No Trace Leader Within the Group

Before heading out on the hike, trip or expedition, designate a cadet as a Leave No Trace leader. The Leave No Trace leader ensures the group follows Leave No Trace principles throughout the activity.

Make the job fun! A button or badge can be attached to the person's pack to identify them.

Becoming a Leave No Trace Advocate

Being an advocate of Leave No Trace principles means following Leave No Trace at home and school as well. Use less water, take public transportation, walk to school, recycle, and compost.

Even those who do not enter the wilderness affect the places others enjoy by actions such as depleting the water table, contributing to air pollution, and living in large homes that need more heat than smaller ones.

Implementing Awards Systems for Those who Follow Leave No Trace principles

Trail snacks, or treats as well as certificates (or even larger prizes) can be awarded to the cadets that follow Leave No Trace principles, or encourage others to follow the principles.

Sharing Leave No Trace Information With Others

Tell Stories, Don't Preach. Lectures will invariably make the group lose focus. Do not lecture the group about littering or nag them when hiking. Make the point in a story about an experience, or a fictional tale. A story about a mother bear and her cubs living off garbage versus hunting for dinner will have more impact than lecturing the cadets.

Teachable Moments. Pointing out trail erosion or polluted water sources is better than teaching theoretically. Teach when opportunities present themselves.

Show a Better Way. Rather than telling cadets they are doing something wrong, show them the better way.

Authority of the Resource. Switch the authority from the platoon commander to the earth. Encourage people to change their behaviour based on their desire to help the environment rather than on a need to obey an authority figure.

ACTIVITY

Time: 5 min

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is get the cadets to brainstorm implementing Leave No Trace principles.

RESOURCES

N/A.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Divide the cadets into two or three small groups.
2. Have the cadets brainstorm implementation of the principles listed in TP 1.
3. Have the cadets share their ideas with the entire group.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets participation in the brainstorming session about implementing Leave No Trace principles will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. Describe the second principle of Leave No Trace, camp and travel on durable surfaces.

Q2. What is sustainable forestry?

Q3. What does being a Leave No Trace advocate mean?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Trampled vegetation and eroded trails last for years, or even a lifetime. Walk and set tents on surfaces that endure (eg, rock, sand, gravel, dry grasses and snow).

A2. Sustainable forestry is meeting society's increasing demands for forest products while respecting the values of society and preserving forest health.

A3. Being a Leave No Trace advocate means following Leave No Trace principles at home and school as well. Use less water, take public transportation, walk to school, recycle, and compost.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

N/A.

CLOSING STATEMENT

Understanding environmental stewardship and its practices will guide team leaders when in the wilderness to make proper stewardship decisions.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

This EO could be delivered by a local official or Ministry of Natural Resources representative.

If being delivered by a guest speaker, this EO may be tailored to the local area; however the human impact theme must remain. The guest speaker should present issues specific to area land management.

REFERENCES

C2-011 (ISBN 0-89886-910-2) McGivney, A. (2003). *Leave No Trace: A Guide to the New Wilderness Etiquette*. Seattle, WA: Mountaineers Books.

C2-186 Ministry of Natural Resources of the Government of Ontario. (2002). *Today's Forests – Promoting Sustainability*. Retrieved March 25, 2008, from http://onatrioforests.mnr.gov.on.ca/spectrasites/viewers/showArticle.cfm?objectid=551DC374-4876-4590-A4F564FD9E79093B&method=DISPLAYFULLBARNOTITLEWITHRELATED&id=551DC374-4876-4590-A4F564FD9E79093B.

C2-187 Environment Canada. (2002.) *Source to Tap: Protecting Canada's Water*. Retrieved March 20, 2008, from http://www.ec.gc.ca/EnviroZine/english/issues/22/feature1_e.cfm.

C2-188 Environment Canada. (2006). *Water: No Time to Waste (Water Myths and Facts)*. Retrieved March 25, 2008, from http://www.ec.gc.ca/water/en/info/pubs/nttw/e_nttw8a.htm.

C2-189 Natural Resources Canada. (2008). *Sustainable Forest Management–Canada's Forests*. Retrieved March 26, 2008, from http://canadaforests.nrcan.gc.ca/articletopic/top_suj/.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 6

EO M326.04 – NAVIGATE ALONG A ROUTE USING A MAP AND COMPASS

Total Time: 60 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TP 1 to review navigation background material.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 2 as it is an interactive way to allow the cadet to experience navigation in a safe, controlled environment. This activity contributes to the development of navigation knowledge and skills in a fun and challenging setting.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have navigated along a route using a map and compass.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to understand how to navigate along a route as it provides a foundation for building subsequent navigation skills. Navigation is an important aspect of expedition training. All cadets should take every opportunity to practice and refine these skills.

Teaching Point 1 | **IAW PO 222 (Navigate Along a Route Using a Map and Compass, A-CR-CCP-702/PF-001, Chapter 12), Review Navigation**

Time: 10 min | Method: Interactive Lecture

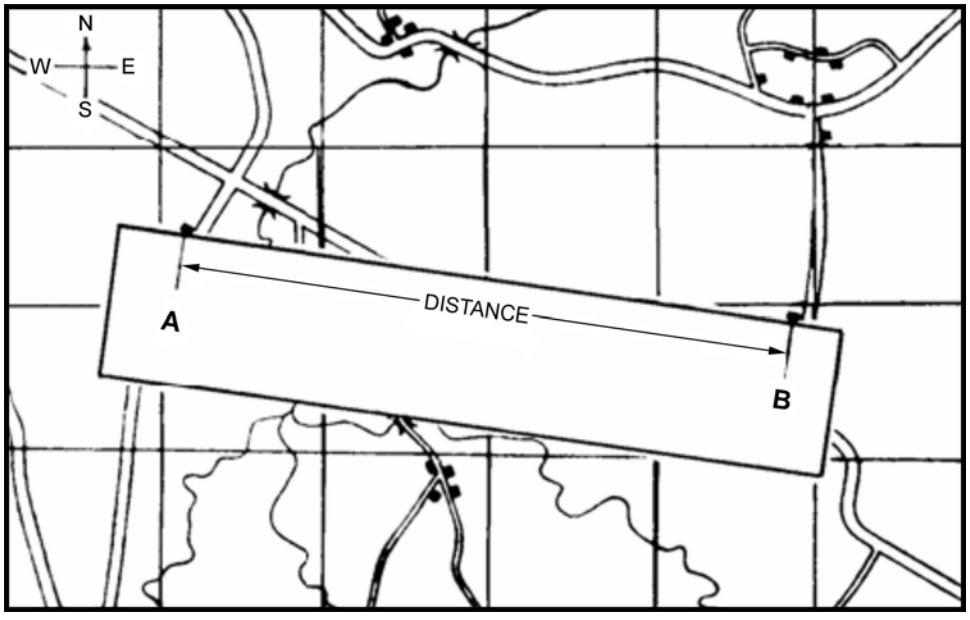
DETERMINING DISTANCE ON A MAP

Cadets can use their maps to measure the distance between two points (A and B) on the ground. All maps are drawn to scale; therefore, a specified distance on a map equals a specified distance on the ground. The scale of a map is printed at the top and bottom of each map (eg, scale 1 : 50 000). This means that 1 cm on the map equals 50 000 cm (500 m) on the ground. There are two ways to determine distance on a topographical map – point-to-point and along a route.

Measuring Point-to-Point

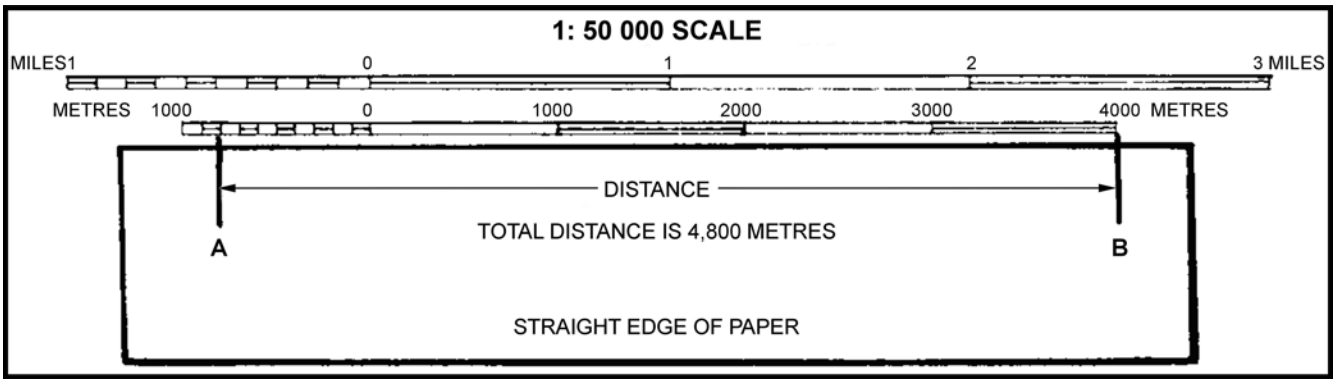
To measure a distance point-to-point:

1. Lay the straight edge of a piece of paper against the two points.
2. With a sharp pencil, mark the paper at the A (start) and B (finish) points.
3. Lay the paper just under the scale bar (metres) and move the B mark backwards to each thousands mark until the A mark falls within the subdivided thousands (hundreds) to the left of the zero.
4. To calculate the total distance, add the number of thousands where the B mark is, plus the number of subdivided thousands where the A mark is to the left of the zero.



A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001 (p. 5-24)

Figure 16-6-1 Measuring Distance Point-to-Point



A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001 (p. 5-25)

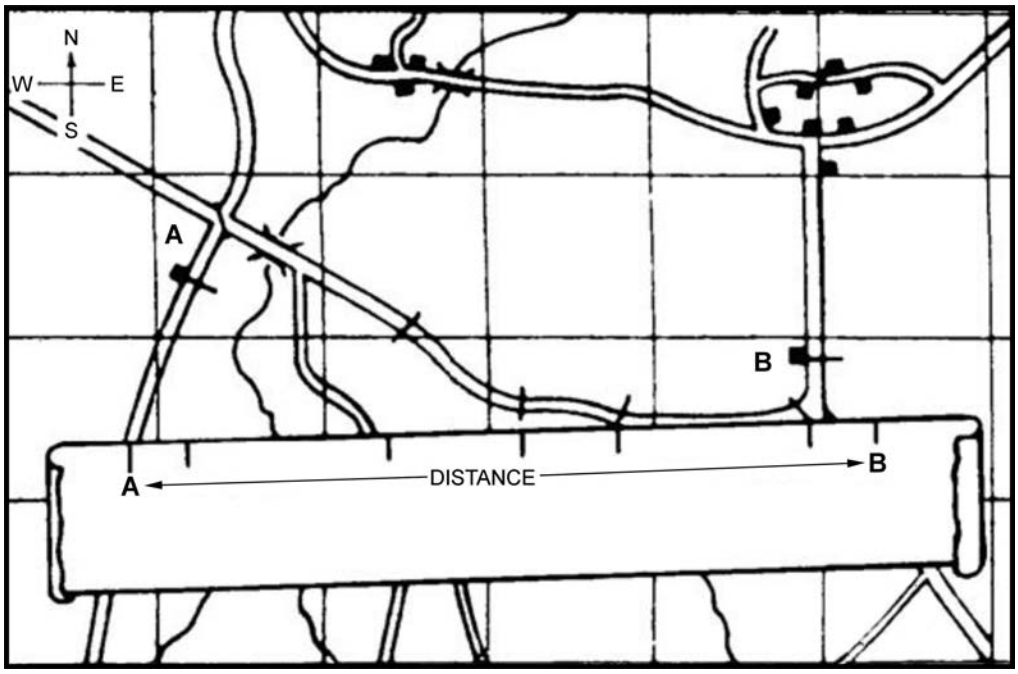
Figure 16-6-2 Calculating Distance

For a distance that is longer than 5 000 m, measure the first 5 000 m and mark the paper with a new line and label it ‘5 000 m’. Place the new mark at the zero or thousands mark until the A mark fits within the subdivided thousands bar. Add the total of that distance to the 5 000 m and that will be the total distance.

Measuring Along a Route

Sometimes the cadets need to find the distance between A and B around curves in a road or along a planned route. To measure a distance along a route between two points:

1. Lay the straight edge of a piece of paper against point A.
2. With a sharp pencil, mark point A on the paper and the map.
3. Line up the paper with the edge of the road until you come to a curve and make another mark on the paper and on the map.
4. Pivot the paper so that it continues to follow the road edge. Repeat until you reach point B.
5. Mark your paper and the map at point B.
6. Lay the paper just under the scale bar (metres) and move the B mark backwards to each thousands mark until the A mark falls within the subdivided thousands to the left of the zero.
7. Add the number of thousands where the B mark is, plus the number of subdivided thousands where the A mark is to the left of the zero, to determine the total distance.



A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001 (p. 5-25)

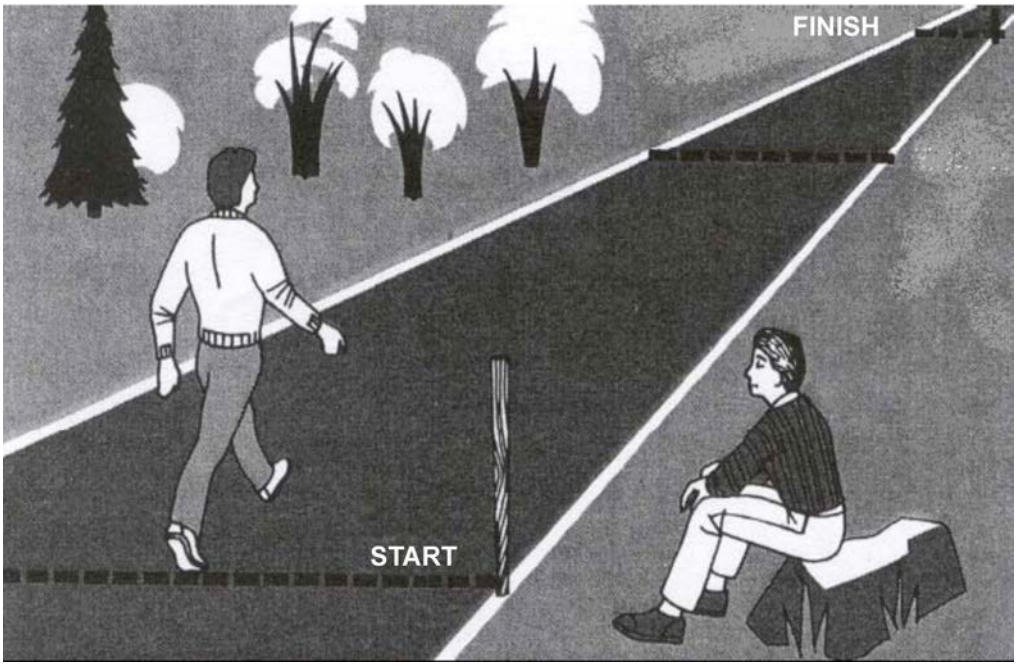
Figure 16-6-3 Measuring Distance Along a Route

DETERMINING INDIVIDUAL PACE

Pace Counting Method

The pace counting method (pacing) is used for measuring a given distance by counting every other step. Two steps equal one pace. Pacing is a very important skill in navigation, as each person has a different pace and needs to determine their pace before it can become a useful measurement tool. Pacing varies between individuals as it uses a natural stride – an average adult will pace about 60–70 paces in 100 m.

To determine an individual pace, practice taking uniform, comfortable steps over a measured distance (100 m) counting every second step of the dominant foot. Do this three to five times. The average will be the individual's pace number and should be remembered.



B. Kjellstrom, Be Expert with Map & Compass, Hungry Minds, Inc. (p. 53)

Figure 16-6-4 Determining Distance Using Pacing

Remember, pacing is an approximation. A margin of error of 1–2 percent is considered reasonable (eg, 10–20 m for every 1 km walked).

Factors That Affect Pacing

Pacing can be affected by different factors and numbers may vary. Some of the factors and their affect on individual pacing are:

- **Topography.** This is the most common factor. Walking through mud, thick bush and tall vegetation can shorten the paces.
- **Slopes.** Walking uphill will shorten the paces, while walking downhill will lengthen the paces.
- **Fatigue.** Pacing may change from natural in the morning, when cadets are rested, and shorter in the afternoon as they start to get tired.
- **Equipment.** Equipment could affect pacing, such as the wrong type of footwear. Too much or too little clothing and the amount of equipment being carried can shorten the paces.
- **Weather.** Heavy rain, wind velocity, temperature and snow can shorten the paces.

Pacing beads can be used to keep track of the distance walked. One bead is moved for every 100 m walked. If pacing beads are not available, stones can be used by moving them from one pocket to another to count every 100 m.

ORIENTING A MAP USING A COMPASS

To orient a map using a compass:

1. Check and set the current declination on the compass.
2. Set the compass dial to read 00 (zero) mils or 0 degrees (north).
3. Lay the compass flat on the map with the cover open.
4. Orient the compass to point the mirror to north (top of the map).
5. Align one side of the base plate with an easting line.
6. Turn the map and compass together until the red end of the magnetic needle is over the orienting arrow.

The mnemonic used to remember to put the magnetic needle over the orienting arrow is “Red in the Bed”.

Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 16-6-5 Set Declination

Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 16-6-6 Set Compass to 00

Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 16-6-7 Turn Until Red is in the Bed

TAKING A MAGNETIC BEARING

A compass can be used to identify the cardinal points such as north and south, the direction of travel and the bearing from one’s current location to a prominent object. However, the ability to take a magnetic bearing of a prominent object and to use that information to help identify one’s general location can save hours when trekking. A magnetic bearing is a quick method for determining the direction of travel.

There are two ways to determine a magnetic bearing.

Using a Prominent Object in Sight

To determine the magnetic bearing of a prominent object:

1. Check and set the predetermined declination on the compass.
2. Hold the compass at eye level, at arms length, and face the prominent object.
3. Aim at the object using the compass sight, ensuring the sighting line is in line with the index pointer.
4. Adjust the compass cover so the compass dial is seen in the sighting mirror.
5. Look in the mirror and turn the compass dial until the magnetic needle is over the orienting arrow (red in the bed).
6. Read the number on the compass dial at the luminous index pointer. The magnetic bearing of the prominent object is read at the luminous index pointer.

A-CR-CCP-121/PT-001 (p. 5-42)

Figure 16-6-8 Taking a Magnetic Bearing

Using a Map

To determine a magnetic bearing using a map:

1. Set the predetermined declination on the compass.
2. Identify and mark the start (Point A) and finish (Point B) points on a map.
3. Draw a plotting ray from Point A to Point B.
4. Lay the fully opened compass with the edge of the compass base plate along the plotting ray, in the direction of travel (Point A to Point B).
5. Hold the compass in place, rotate the compass dial so that the compass meridian lines align with the easting lines on the map, ensuring north on the dial indicates north on the map.

6. Read the number on the compass dial at the luminous index pointer.

Prior to determining a magnetic bearing on a map, it is good practice to first estimate the bearing by drawing a quick compass rose and looking at where the bearing would be on the compass rose. This serves as a good check to ensure the cadet has not accidentally measured the back bearing.

If the bearing is taken from Point B to Point A, the compass will be pointing 180 degrees or 3200 mils in the exact opposite direction of travel wanted. This is called a back bearing.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadets' participation in the activity in TP 2 will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 2 **Conduct a Navigation Activity**

Time: 40 min Method: Practical Activity

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

DESCRIBING BEARINGS

Bearing. A bearing is an angle that is measured clockwise, from a fixed zero line; north is always this zero line. Simply, a bearing is just another name for an angle.

Types of Bearings

There are three different types of bearings:

Grid Bearing. A grid bearing is a bearing that is measured between two points on a map. The ability to measure a bearing from a map allows a map user to plan routes or activities before going into the field, and allows an easy method of communicating information about movement or location.

Magnetic Bearing. A magnetic bearing is a bearing that is measured between two points using a compass. A magnetic bearing is a quick and efficient method of describing a route to take. The bearing alone is usually not enough information to navigate with and must also have distance or a target object.

Back Bearing. A back bearing is a bearing that is in the exact opposite direction of the bearing that has been measured. A back bearing can be useful for different reasons; to return to the start location after a hike, or to calculate the bearing from an object to one's current location. Depending on the compass being used, the steps to calculate a back bearing are:

- When the bearing is less than 3200 mils or 180 degrees, add 3200 mils or 180 degrees.
- When the bearing is greater than 3200 mils or 180 degrees, subtract 3200 mils or 180 degrees.

SETTING DECLINATION ON A COMPASS

The compass's declination scale must be set to compensate for the difference between true north and magnetic north. To do this the amount of declination in degrees east or west is needed. Then, turn the compass over and look at the back of the dial.

From the zero point, using the screwdriver on the end of the safety cord, turn the declination screw to the right for west and to the left for east declination. Each small black line is two degrees.

When setting declination on a compass, it is easier to hold the screwdriver and turn the compass, especially in cold weather. The declination shall *never* be turned past 90 degrees on the declination scale.

Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 16-6-9 Declination Screw

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is for the cadet to navigate along a route.

RESOURCES

- Topographical map of the area (one per team),
- Compass (one per team),
- Start and end point GR,
- Paper, and
- Pencils.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

In expedition teams, cadets will navigate a route as part of the practical expedition activity. The mode of travel will vary with each expedition centre. During the activity, cadets will:

1. describe bearings;
2. set declination on a compass;
3. determine distance between two points on a map;
4. determine individual pace;
5. orient a map using a compass;
6. take a magnetic bearing; and
7. travel on a series of bearings along a route.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets' participation in the navigation activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in navigating along a route will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 7 (326 PC).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Map and compass skills take a great deal of practice for a person to become efficient using them in the field. Throughout expeditions, cadets will always be required to navigate routes. Take every opportunity to practice map and compass, whether it is navigating a route or riding a bike. The skills learned in Green and Red Star navigation are building blocks. There are still more navigation skills to acquire.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Assistant instructors may be required for this lesson.

Expedition centres are required to select two dynamic modes of travel from EO M326.02a (Paddle a Canoe, Section 2), EO M326.02b (Ride a Mountain Bike, Section 3), and EO M326.02c (Hike Along a Route, Section 4) to incorporate into their weekend training.

This EO has been allocated one period in the overall course period allocation. Each expedition centre may adjust this allocation to reflect the choice of activities, facilities and available resources at the expedition centre.

Timings for this EO will vary. While there is a requirement for some initial training, the focus should be on having the cadets practice navigation techniques during the practical expedition activity.

REFERENCES

A2-041 B-GL-382-005/PT-001 Canadian Forces. (2006). *Maps, Field Sketching, Compasses and the Global Positioning System*. Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence.

C0-011 Canadian Orienteering Federation. (1985). *Orienteering Level Two Coaching Certification*. Ottawa, ON: Canadian Orienteering Federation.

C2-041 (ISBN 0-07-136110-3) Seidman, D., & Cleveland, P. (1995). *The Essential Wilderness Navigator*. Camden, ME: Ragged Mountain Press.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 7

EO M326.05 – USE EXPEDITION EQUIPMENT

Total Time: 60 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Refer to the owner's manual for the operating instructions for the following items:

- single-burner mountain stove,
- water filter,
- fuel bottle,
- fuel,
- rope,
- pocket knife/multipurpose tool,
- carabiner, and
- headlamp.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

Demonstration and performance was chosen for this lesson as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate the uses of expedition equipment while providing an opportunity for the cadets to practice operating this equipment under supervision.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to safely employ equipment required during an expedition.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to understand how to operate equipment being used on expedition training so that they can safely use the equipment. Proper working equipment will make expedition training safer and efficient. Correctly using equipment will ensure the equipment lasts longer and requires less maintenance.

For this skill lesson, it is recommended that instruction take the following format:

1. Explain and demonstrate the complete skill while cadets observe.
2. Explain and demonstrate each step required to complete the skill. Monitor cadets as they imitate each step.
3. Monitor the cadets' performance as they practice the complete skill.

Note: Assistant instructors may be employed to monitor cadet performance.

Teaching Point 1 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Operate a Single-Burner Mountain Stove**

Time: 25 min Method: Demonstration and Performance

Refer to the owner's manual for the operating instructions for the single-burner mountain stove.

This TP focuses on expedition equipment that the cadets may not have been introduced to before. When available, have examples of each piece of equipment and pass them around so the cadets can see the equipment and handle it.

During an expedition it is important that cadets are aware of the equipment that is being brought. Cadets should know the various uses for each piece of equipment, how it works and how to make basic repairs as required.

The stoves used at expedition centres are single-burner mountain stoves. These stoves are used because of size, weight and functionality. Single-burner mountain stoves are portable stoves that allow cooking anywhere without having to make a fire. These stoves are stored easily and can be carried during an expedition. Single-burner mountain stoves are commonly fuelled by using white gas such as naphtha and can perform well in extreme cold and high altitudes.

The stove featured in this lesson is the Coleman Peak One, if another is used, substitute information from the owner's manual.

IDENTIFYING PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

The Coleman Peak One single-burner mountain stove has the following characteristics:

- powerful 7500 BTUs with precise flame control,
- fold out legs that collapse for storage and keeps the stove stable,
- liquid fuel appliance offers superior operational fuel and cost efficiency,
- integrated 350-mL fuel tank,
- one fill-up per weekend of camping,
- 2-hour burn time on high, 7.5 hours on low, and
- boils 0.94 L (one quart) of water in four minutes.

The diagram provided is for part identification, not disassembly purposes.

The parts and accessories of a single-burner mountain stove are:

Burner Plate. Fitted with a grate to ensure cookware remains stable.

Stove Grate. The stove grate supports pot sets and ensures pots remain stable.

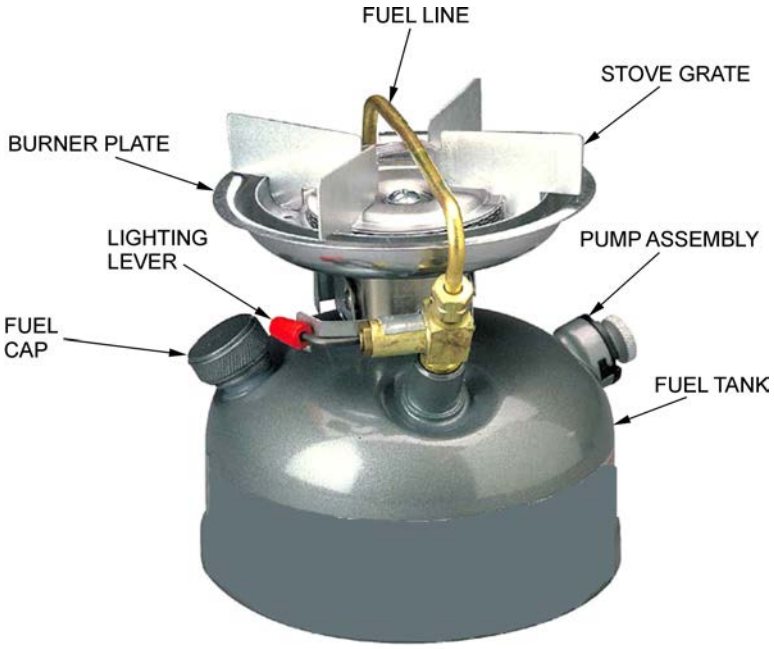
Fuel Line. The line from the fuel tank that provides the burner plate with fuel.

Pump Assembly. The pump assembly is fitted into the tank and is held in place by a locking mechanism.

Lighting Lever. The lighting lever is the on/off switch for the stove.

Fuel Cap. The fuel cap keeps the fuel from spilling.

Fuel Tank. The fuel tank is on the bottom of the stove. This tank is only intended to be filled to three quarters full, allowing air in for pressurization.



"Backpackgear Online", Copyright 2007 by Maguire and Johnson Web Services. Retrieved March 28, 2007, from http://www.coleman.com/coleman/colemancom/detail.asp?product_id=533B705&categoryid=2020

Figure 16-7-1 Single-Burner Mountain Stove

IDENTIFYING FUEL TYPE AND OPERATIONAL TEMPERATURES

The stove uses naphtha fuel.

It is operational in all types of temperatures.

ASSEMBLY

The single-burner mountain stove comes assembled. The fold out legs only need extending.

LIGHTING AND EXTINGUISHING

Precautions

Hazards are few if precautions are taken. Follow these few simple rules:

- Never leave the stove unattended.
- Do not use a stove as a heating device or in enclosed spaces such as buildings, tents or caves.
- Never loosen the filler cap on the fuel tank while the stove is in operation.
- Always fill and light the stove outside in a well ventilated area, away from open flame, heat and combustibles.
- Use only naphtha fuel.
- Store away from open flame or excessive heat.
- Before transporting or storing, ensure the stove is cool. Loosen the filler cap to release air pressure and retighten. Turn the control knob off.
- If the stove catches fire, turn off the fuel supply.

- When using the stove ensure a fire extinguisher is available.

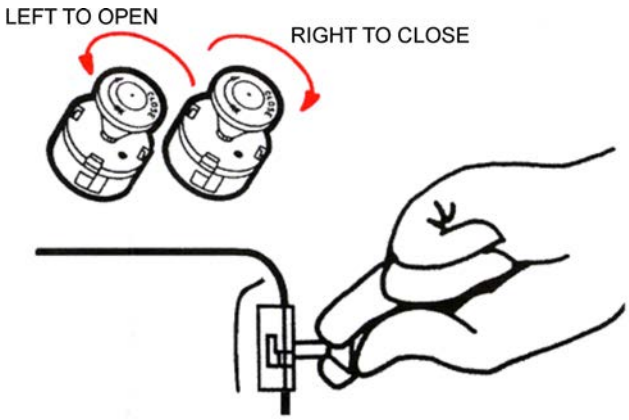
Stoves must not be used in enclosed spaces such as buildings and tents. The burning of naphtha and other fuels results in the release of carbon monoxide. Carbon monoxide binds with hemoglobin 200–250 times better than oxygen, and disrupts almost all physiologic and neurologic systems, even in fairly low concentrations. The gas is heavier than air, and pools in the low ground of tents and caves where outdoor enthusiasts sleep, and will not go away for days unless it is forced out by a strong, persistent direct draft of cold air at the height of the pooled gas. Preventing the problem in the first place requires a similarly active draft at the bottom of the stove, not at the top of the tent or cave as was once thought.

According to one recent research study, asphyxiation in tenting situations kills three times as many people yearly than mountaineering does. Other research has linked even moderate exposure to carbon monoxide to significant long-term effects, including depressed mood, apathy, disorientation, irritability and amnesia. Several of these symptoms occur in 100 percent of individuals exposed and can be measured years after the initial exposure. Risks also increase in higher altitudes.

Priming the Single-Burner Mountain Stove

To prime the single-burner mountain stove follow these steps:

1. Make sure the control knob is in the OFF position.
2. Turn the pump rod two full turns counter-clockwise to open.
3. Place the thumb over the air vent of the pump rod handle.
4. Pump 30–40 strokes to pressurize the fuel tank.
5. Turn the pump rod clockwise until it is closed tight.



The Canadian Coleman Co., Coleman Camp Stove Model M425F710C Instructions for Use, The Canadian Coleman Co.

Figure 16-7-2 Priming the Fuel Tank

Lighting the Burner

To light the burner follow these steps:

1. Do not lean over the stove while lighting.
2. Hold a lit match near the burner.

3. Turn the control lever to the LIGHT position.
4. Monitor the flame.
5. When the flame turns blue in colour (approximately one minute), turn the instant light lever down and turn the control knob to the desired heat setting (HI–LO).

Should the stove fail to light or the match goes out before ignition, turn the control lever to the OFF position and wait two minutes before attempting to light the stove again.

Extinguishing the Burner

To extinguish the burner follow these steps:

1. Remove cookware from the stove and turn the instant light lever to the OFF position.
2. Turn the control lever clockwise to the OFF position and close firmly.

Storing After Use

To store the single-burner mountain stove follow these steps:

1. Allow the stove to cool before packing.
2. Ensure the stove is clean and any dirt, matches, etc are removed.
3. Empty all fuel from the stove.
4. Store the stove in a cool, dry location.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

The cadets' participation in lighting a stove will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 2 **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Operate a Water Filter**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

A water filter can be used to strain out most parasites and micro-organisms by pumping the water through a filter. A filter is made of a thick porous material such as carbon or ceramic which trap particles as the water flows through it.

Contamination by wildlife, farm animals, pollutants or other hikers may introduce micro-organisms into water sources that can cause intestinal problems. It is imperative that all collected water is treated before being consumed. Filtering is the best way.

IDENTIFYING CHARACTERISTICS

Refer to the owner's manual for the operating instructions for the water filter.

The following are characteristics of the ceramic water filter:

- filters at a 1 L per minute flow rate;
- effective against all protozoa, most bacteria, and chemicals including iodine and chlorine; and
- includes foam pre-filter.

The MSR WaterWorks water filter (as illustrated in Figure 16-7-3) is a rugged and lightweight water filter. Its polyurethane construction and carbon-cored ceramic filter element removes larger bacteria and some chemicals (iodine and chlorine) along with odours and tastes.

A gauge is supplied to determine when the ceramic filter needs replacing.

IDENTIFYING PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

The diagram provided is for part identification, not disassembly purposes.

"Mountain Equipment Coop", Copyright 2007 by Mountain Equipment Coop. Retrieved November 16, 2007, from http://www.mec.ca/Products/product_detail.jsp?PRODUCT%3C%3Eprd_id=845524442372421&FOLDER%3C%3Efolder_id=2534374302696689&bmUID=1195238644467

Figure 16-7-3 Water Filter

Pumping Handle. The lever that allows the user to pump the water.

Filter Cap. A protective covering that covers the ceramic filter.

Ceramic Filter. Located within a plastic enclosure, the water filter has a 0.2 micron membrane that removes bacteria and acts as a second line of defence around the ceramic filter. The wide-mouth base reduces spillage and the risk of cross-contamination with unfiltered water.

Filter Gauge. Gauge used to determine when filter requires replacement.

ASSEMBLY

The water filter should be assembled and ready to use. To use:

1. Remove the filter cap.
2. Begin pumping the handle in a steady manner to pump water.

MAXIMUM FILTERING CAPACITY

Normal conditions will allow a user to filter between 10–20 L of water between cleanings.

PUMPING WATER

To pump water:

1. Place the hose with the float end in the water source. (If a bucket or pot is available, collect water in the bucket or pot and filter from there). This will assist in keeping dirt out of the filter.
2. Attach the filter to a wide-mouth bottle.
3. Pump the pumping handle a few times to prime the pump.
4. Pump the handle to draw water until the bottle is full.

DISMANTLING AND CLEANING

Any excess water should be released from the filter and the filter should be allowed to air dry. This will prevent the growth of mold, mildew and bacteria.

When storing for long term, the ceramic filter should be removed and air dried for 3–5 days. Wash and dry other filter parts thoroughly.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

The cadets participation in using a water filter will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

Teaching Point 3 — **Explain, Demonstrate and Have the Cadet Safely Use Expedition Equipment**

Time: 15 min — Method: Demonstration and Performance

Refer to the owner's manual for the operating instructions for the fuel bottle, rope, pocket knife, carabiner and headlamp.

When using equipment, everyone should:

- Store equipment in a secure place. Never leave equipment lying around or touching the ground.
- Always use the right tool for the job.
- Follow the safety procedures for using the equipment.
- Keep the edges of blades sharp and handles tight.
- Clean and lightly oil steel parts before storage.

FUEL BOTTLE

Fuel is carried in a separate container to ensure there is no spillage of fuel in the pack. Fuel containers are either aluminum or plastic. Aluminum containers are usually a cylindrical aluminum bottle. Plastic bottles are usually red in colour and have a fluoropolymer inner coating that resists both gasoline and alcohol. Plastic fuel bottles should never be used as a tank for a stove or be pressurized with a pump. Once a container is used for a particular type of fuel it should not be used for another fuel, as the substances will combine and deteriorate the container or combust.

"Mountain Equipment Coop", Copyright 2007 by Mountain Equipment Coop. Retrieved March 28, 2007, from http://www.mec.ca/Products/product_detail.jsp?PRODUC%3C%3Eprd_id=845524441772275&FOLDER%3C%3Efolder_id=2534374302696497&bmUID=1175178016804

Figure 16-7-4 Aluminum Fuel Bottle

Storing Techniques

During expedition training, fuel bottles will be stored with cooking equipment or in the designated location specified by the instructors.

Fuel bottles should be stored empty whenever possible.

If the bottle is being stored with fuel, it should be stored in a locked area, away from any flammables and other explosive materials.

Transferring Fuel to and From the Fuel Bottle

When transferring fuel to and from the fuel bottle, a funnel or spigot should be used to prevent splashes, leaks and spills.

ROPE

While rope can be heavy to carry, it is an extremely advantageous piece of expedition equipment. A length of rope, approximately 15 m, can be used to hang food in the food hang, make a clothesline to dry clothing or tie a tarp to make a shelter when there is inclement weather. It can also be used to complete minor field repairs.

Cleaning

Ropes should be washed frequently with a soap. Hang the rope to dry, out of direct sunlight.

Storing

Storing a rope should only be done when it is completely dry, free of knots and coiled loosely. Ropes should be stored in a cool, dry place away from sunlight, heat, and chemicals.

Coiling

Depending on the length of the rope, rope should be coiled using a mountaineer's coil or a butterfly coil.

POCKET KNIFE/MULTIPURPOSE TOOL

A pocket knife or multi-purpose tool is essential for repairing equipment and cutting rope, cord or bandages. The key is to find a knife or tool that is small but has a blade, scissors, and screwdriver that are required while out on an expedition.

Sharpening

Blades should be sharpened regularly with a proper sharpening stone or tool. It is important to follow the manufacturer's directions regarding care.

Holding

A firm grip should be taken on the handle of any knife. If the pocket knife has a locking mechanism, it should be used.

Storing

All pocket knives should be cleaned before storage. Pocket knives should be stored in their sheaths and oiled prior to long-term storage.

"Mountain Equipment Coop", Copyright 2007 by Mountain Equipment Coop. Retrieved November 16, 2007, from http://www.mec.ca/Products/product_detail.jsp?PRODUCT%3C%3Eprd_id=845524441773603&FOLDER%3C%3Efolder_id=2534374302696789&bmUID=1195240440348

Figure 16-7-5 Multi-Purpose Knife

"Mountain Equipment Coop", Copyright 2007 by Mountain Equipment Coop. Retrieved November 16, 2007, fromhttp://www.mec.ca/Products/product_detail.jsp?PRODUCT%3C%3Eprd_id=845524442622475&FOLDER%3C%3Efolder_id=2534374302696889&bmUID=1195240570229

Figure 16-7-6 Multi-Purpose Tool

CARABINER

A carabiner is a common piece of equipment used primarily in mountaineering activities such as climbing and abseiling. On an expedition, a carabiner is an essential piece of equipment as it can be used in a variety of circumstances, such as:

- attaching the tether line in the canoe or to a pack;
- clipping a water bottle to the outside of a pack;
- stringing up a food hang or clothesline; and
- attaching a throw bag to the thwart of the canoe.

HEADLAMP

A headlamp is simply a flashlight that has been attached to an adjustable strap that fits around the user's head. It is very beneficial while out on an expedition as it frees up the user's hands to complete tasks after dark, such as reading a map, lighting a stove, setting up a tent or finding the bathroom.

"Mountain Equipment Coop", Copyright 2007 by Mountain Equipment Coop. Retrieved November 16, 2007, from http://www.mec.ca/Products/product_detail.jsp?PRODUCT%3C%3Eprd_id=845524442621000&FOLDER%3C%3Efolder_id=2534374302697057&bmUID=1195238790425

Figure 16-7-7 Headlamp

Headlamps can use a combination of light-emitting diodes (LED) and halogen bulbs. Choosing a headlamp will vary depending on use. Halogen bulbs offer the brightest output, but use battery power fast. LED bulbs give off sufficient light and are very efficient.

Extra batteries must always be brought to supplement those currently in the headlamp.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. Why is it preferable to have a headlamp with both LED and halogen bulbs?

Q2. What are some of the materials that water filters are made from?

Q3. What can a carabiner be used for?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Halogen bulbs offer the brightest output, but use battery power very fast. LED bulbs do not give off as much light, but are very efficient.

A2. Filters can be made from a thin sheet with precisely-sized pores which prevent all objects larger than the pores from moving through it or from thick porous materials such as carbon or ceramic which trap particles as the water flows through it.

A3. Carabiners can be used for:

- attaching the tether line in the canoe or to the expedition field pack;

- clipping a water bottle to the outside of the expedition field pack;
- stringing up a food hang or clothesline; and
- attaching a throw bag to the thwart of the canoe.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in using expedition equipment will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 7 (326 PC).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Knowing how to properly use, and store expedition equipment will allow the cadets to successfully complete training without added assistance from instructors or staff.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Additional staff may be required to supervise cadets using expedition equipment.

Instructors should refer to the owner's manual for the operating instructions for the single-burner mountain stove.

Instructors should refer to the owner's manual for the operating instructions for the water filter.

Instructors should refer to the owner's manual for the operating instructions for the fuel bottle, rope, pocket knife, carabiner and headlamp.

It is recommended that this EO be taught where opportunities exist rather than in a structured 60-minute period.

Expedition centres are required to select two dynamic modes of travel from EO M326.02a (Paddle a Canoe, Section 2), EO M326.02b (Ride a Mountain Bike, Section 3), and EO M326.02c (Hike Along a Route, Section 4) to incorporate into their weekend training.

This EO has been allocated one period in the overall course period allocation. Each expedition centre may adjust this allocation to reflect the choice of activities, facilities and available resources at the expedition centre.

Timings for this EO will vary. While there is a requirement for some initial training, the focus should be on having the cadets practice hiking techniques through practical application.

Upon arrival at the expedition centre cadets will be broken into teams/groups. These teams/groups will remain the same for the duration of the weekend.

REFERENCES

N/A.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 8

EO M326.06 – FOLLOW DAILY ROUTINE

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

A demonstration was chosen for TP 1 as it allows the instructor to explain and demonstrate campsite selection.

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 2–4 to orient the cadet to following campsite routines during expedition training.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall be expected to follow daily routine during expedition training.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to understand the procedures involved in selecting a campsite and the routine that is to be followed during the occupation of that campsite. The departure routine is equally important in order to maintain organization and safety. The information in this lesson will assist the cadets during all corps exercises and expedition training.

Teaching Point 1 **Demonstrate Campsite Selection**

Time: 10 min Method: Demonstration

The information in this TP has been previously taught. Instructors should demonstrate campsite selection in an area that will allow cadets to recognize the tasks involved.

When selecting a campsite, ensure permission is obtained from the park auhority. Failure to do so could result in fines being issued by provincial or federal parks officers.

Determining the suitability of a campsite is key to the enjoyment of the time spent there. After a long day it is important that the cadets take the extra few minutes to choose an appropriate campsite.

Great campsites are found, not made. At the end of a day of travel take the pack off, put on a warm layer and drink something, eat if low on energy, then look for a good campsite. It is important that there is not a lot of time spent on this task.

DETERMINING THE SUITABILITY OF A CAMPSITE

Absence of Potential Hazards

Fallen Trees/Branches. Look up and around the campsite. Is there a potential for limbs of trees to fall on the tent or campsite?

Care must be taken as the cadets can easily trip over fallen trees/branches. A sharp branch can also cause damage to equipment such as tents and groundsheets. Tent sites should not be set up where fallen trees are present. However, fallen trees can mark boundaries, hold signs and help weatherproof a site.

Areas with dead trees should be avoided. Dead trees lack strength and therefore should not be in the area when considering a campsite. These trees can easily fall during high winds and storms. Also, look closely for any branches that may fall.

"Colby-Sawyer College", Kelsy Forest Walk, Copyright 2007. Retrieved November 22, 2007, from www.colby-sawyer.edu/images/image_9614.jpg

Figure 16-8-1 Fallen Trees

Poisonous Plants. Always look for poisonous plants prior to setting up a campsite. Common poisonous plants such as poison ivy, poison sumac and poison oak were identified in EO M121.05 (Recognize Environmental Hazards, A-CR-CCP-701/PF-001, Chapter 10, Section 5). Contact with poisonous plants will cause severe itching of the skin, red inflammation and blistering. Keep campsites away from areas containing poisonous plants.

Insects, Beehives and Hornet's Nests. Most insects are a nuisance rather than a danger. When bothered by insects like mosquitoes, blackflies and deer flies/chiggers, hikers have several options available to thwart such nuisances and reduce exposure by controlling their surroundings. Try to avoid camping areas with tall grass, weeds and standing water where insects are abundant.

In the field, beehives and hornet's nests can be found in trees, shrubs and even in the ground. When nests are disturbed, bees and hornets will get defensive and sting. Always look for beehives and hornet's nests before setting up a campsite. A good sign that a hive or nest is nearby is when a large number of bees or hornets are flying around.

P. Tawrell, Camping and Wilderness Survival, Paul Tawrell (p. 898)

Figure 16-8-2 Hornet's Nest

Ant Hills. Once disturbed, ant hills can become a big nuisance. Check the ground for ant hills prior to setting up a campsite.

Animal Dens. Prior to setting up a campsite, look for any areas that may be near animal dens. A group of cadets could easily disturb resting animals. A den may be found on a trail or at the end of a trail in the field.

Accessible Water

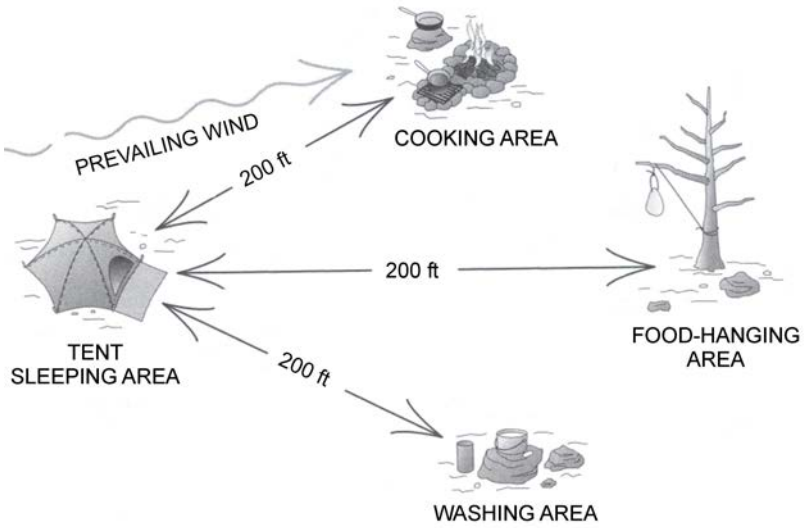
There should be an accessible water point within 60 m (200 feet) of the campsite. When in the wilderness, water sources can become contaminated very easily by such things as soap and feces.

Distancing the campsite from the accessible water point is an important step to ensure that contaminants from cooking and human waste do not pollute the water.

Space for Tents

There should be enough space for all tents and they should not have guy lines overlapping each other. Ideally, tents should be roughly 5 m (15 feet) away from each other to avoid this.

DETERMINING THE CAMPSITE LAYOUT



R. Curtis, The Backpackers Field Manual, Three Rivers Press (p 113)

Figure 16-8-3 Common Campsite Layout

Sleeping Area

Above all, the sleeping area should be upwind of the cooking area. Flat ground works best. If there is a slight angle in the ground, it is best to lie with the head uphill.

There may be many cadets in the field at any given time. It is important that tents are spread out. In both the male and female lines, tents should be spaced at least 5 m apart. Where guy lines exist, there must be adequate space between tents so the cadets can easily walk without stepping over lines.

By spacing tents a small distance apart, the cadets are provided with privacy, while still being able to easily communicate.

When night falls, shelters may be hard to see. When shelters are close together there is a greater chance of having an accident, such as tripping over guy lines.

It is a good idea to mark the guy lines with flagging tape or Glow Sticks.

Washroom/Latrine

Whenever possible, existing outhouses should be used. The smell in existing outhouses may be concentrated, but using them instead of catholes all over the area, will minimize the impact on the environment.

Washrooms/latrines are often the most uncomfortable thing to set up when camping. If group members will be using individual catholes, each cathole should be at least 60 m (200 feet) from water sources. In addition to the distance, the group should establish a route out of the campsite which the group will use.

In a group setting, it is best to set up a toilet and then pack out the waste. A group latrine should be downwind at least 60 m (200 feet) from the sleeping area as well as any trails or water sources.

Cooking Area

This is the area where most campers will spend the majority of their time. Naturally, the cooking area is popular due to the time spent cooking, washing dishes or eating a quick snack.

The best cooking area location is a durable surface such as a large flat rock or sandy area. If a durable surface cannot be found, meadow grass or gravel are the next best choices.

In some situations it may be beneficial to set up a separate area for eating. This is recommended for larger groups to prevent people from milling around hot stoves and boiling water, which are a primary source of accidents. The eating area can be just metres away.

Fire Area

Be aware of the fire regulations in the area being used. Certain times, especially late summer when forest fires are likely, there are often fire restrictions.

Discuss how the Fire Weather Index and the Canadian Forest Fire Danger Rating System (CFFDRS) measures the possibility of forest fires.

Pay attention to any individuals who may exhibit bad habits when dealing with fire and work to correct their bad habits.

Safety is paramount when lighting a fire. Be sure fire safety equipment is available when lighting fires.

Parks commonly follow the Fire Weather Index, which provides an assessment of relative fire potential that is based solely on weather observations. Check with park administration for rules and regulations when planning to light fires within the park boundaries.

Canadian Forest Fire Danger Rating System (CFFDRS)

The CFFDRS is Canada's national system for rating forest fire danger. The system evaluates and integrates data to help managers predict woodland fire potential.

The CFFDRS provides an index (see Figure 16-8-1) on how easy it is to ignite vegetation, how difficult a fire may be to control, and how much damage a fire may do.

BLUE	GREEN	YELLOW	ORANGE	RED
LOW	MODERATE	HIGH	VERY HIGH	EXTREME

Director Cadets 3, 2007, Ottawa, ON: Department of National Defence

Figure 16-8-4 CFFDRS Fire Index

Low. Low chance of fires occurring. Fires that do occur are likely to be self-extinguishing and new ignitions are unlikely.

Moderate. Moderate chance of fires starting. These fires are creeping or gentle surface fires. They are easily contained by ground crews with water pumps.

High. High chance of fire starting. These fires are challenging for ground crews to handle and heavy equipment (tanker trucks and aircraft) are often required to contain the fire.

Very High. Very high chance of a fire starting. These fires are fast spreading and are of high intensity. They are hard to control and require aircraft support.

Extreme. The environment is very dry and chances of fire are extreme. These fires are fast spreading, of high intensity and very difficult to control.

Advise cadets they can review this information for themselves by looking up the CFFDRS on the Internet for their area at https://nofc1.cfsnet.nfis.org/mapserver/cwfis/index.phtml.

Check for existing fire rings. Building a fire in a new spot all the time is damaging to the environment. Incorrectly built fires sterilize the soil below the fire, and it will take years before something can grow there again.

Food Storage Area

The food storage area should be a minimum of 60 m (200 feet) from the sleeping area. When possible, a food hang should be used.

Equipment Drying Area

A drying line should be put up within the sleeping area but not where members of the group could run into it or get caught up on it.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What should be taken into consideration when choosing a campsite?

Q2. Describe the common campsite layout.

Q3. Where is the best place to put the cooking area?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Absence of potential hazards, accessible water and space for tents should all be considered when choosing a campsite.

A2. The common campsite layout includes the sleeping area, latrine/washroom, cooking area, fire area, food storage area and equipment drying area.

A3. The best place to put a cooking area is on a durable surface such as a large flat rock or sandy area.

Teaching Point 2 **Discuss Campsite Set-Up Routine**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP details the process of elements of the campsite set-up when on expedition training.

Upon arrival at a suitable area, this process should be established to set up the campsite. All the cadets will have the opportunity to follow the process by delegating their peers to assist. Group work should be utilized whenever possible to keep the cadets active.

CAMPSITE SET-UP ROUTINE

The following is a sample routine that can be used when the cadets are tasked to lead a campsite set-up. These cadets will have selected the campsite and will delegate a section to complete the following tasks.

- All the cadets will set up their tents.
- Two cadets will locate and build a food hang.
- One cadet will identify and set up the cooking area and begin preparations for a meal.
- Two cadets will identify and set up the equipment drying area.
- Two cadets will purify water for cooking and drinking.
- Two cadets will gather firewood and set up the fire.
- One cadet will mark washrooms/latrines.

When these tasks have been completed, the entire section will gather for further instruction.

Organizing and Erecting Tents

The first step of the campsite set-up routine is to identify the sleeping area where the tents will be set up. Distinguish an area for males and females that is a minimum of 15 m apart. All the cadets should set up the tents upon arrival.

Erecting a tent was taught in EO M121.07 (Erect a Group Tent, A-CR-CCP-701/PF-001, Chapter 10, Section 7).

Setting up a Food Hang

Immediately upon arrival at the campsite, the food hang should be set up a minimum of 60 m (200 feet) from the sleeping area. A few members of the group should be tasked to set up the food hang so that everyone can hang their food bags when other tasks are completed.

The preferred method of constructing a food hang is:

1. Find a tree with a live branch a minimum of 10 cm (4 inches) in diameter.
2. Throw a weighted rope over the branch.
3. Pull about two-thirds of the rope over the branch.
4. Attach the food bag to one end of the rope and haul it up as high as possible.
5. Tie the loose end of the rope to the trunk of the tree.

To retrieve the bag, untie the end tied to the tree and lower the bag to the ground.

An alternate method of constructing a food hang is taught in C121.01 (Construct Field Amenities, A-CR-CCP-701/PF-001, Chapter 10, Section 10).

In established campsites, bear boxes or bear poles may be available to store food. When available, these are the preferred methods of protecting food.

Establishing a Cooking Area

The cooking area will remain the same during the entire time the group occupies the site. One or two cadets will be required to set up this area.

Setting up a Clothesline

A clothesline should be set up close to the sleeping area. Two cadets will be required to set up the clothesline.

If there is no drying area available, a drying rack can be constructed using the method taught in EO C121.01 (Construct Field Amenities, A-CR-CCP-701/PF-001, Chapter 10, Section 10).

Collecting Water

The best source of water will come from a fast moving stream. Avoid collecting water near livestock, human activity or from still water sources such as a small lake or pond. Muddy rivers are also poor sources of water.

Treat most water with suspicion. Boil the water for a minimum of 5 minutes adding 1 minute for every additional 300 m (1000 feet) in elevation. Whenever possible, use a water filter with micro-filtration systems to get rid of water-borne particles and viruses.

If the group plans to boil all collected water needed for the duration of the expedition, a greater amount of fuel will be required.

Gathering Firewood

It is best practice not to have a fire. Around highly-used campsites, most deadfall and downed trees have already been burned. It is getting increasingly difficult to find fallen wood to use in campfires. If this is the case, it likely means group members will have to forage further away from the site.

Starting a Fire

If using a fire, it should be started shortly before all other tasks are completed. Do not start a fire immediately on arriving at the site, as the fire will burn for no reason wasting valuable firewood.

Marking the Washrooms/Latrines

The washrooms/latrines should be marked using flagging tape and Glow Sticks before night falls. A good practice is to hang Glow Sticks when setting up the facilities and when dusk falls, a member of the group can activate the Glow Stick.

Cooking and Eating

A few group members should be assigned to oversee the cooking and other members of the group should clean up afterwards. Individuals will keep their food scraps with their garbage to keep the group waste smaller.

Hot water left on the stoves from meal time can be used for washing dishes or oneself later in the day. Water that has been used to cook Individual Meal Packages (IMPs) can be used for washing after the evening meal. It is important to ensure the water is used for washing only and not ingested.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. What tasks are done immediately upon arriving at a site?

Q2. Where is the best source of water?

Q3. When is a fire started?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Setting up tents and setting up a food hang are done immediately upon arriving at a site.

A2. The best source of water is from a fast moving stream.

A3. A fire is started prior to most of the routine tasks being completed.

Teaching Point 3 **Discuss Campsite Routine**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP is intended to give an overview of the elements of campsite routine when occupying a campsite.

Tasks should be divided among the cadets to follow the established routine that will be followed throughout the time the group occupies that campsite.

CAMPSITE ROUTINE

It is important that every member of the group understands campsite routine and its importance. It is important to have a campsite routine in order to maintain control, keep equipment organized and maintain the safety of every member of the group.

Ensuring Personal and Group Equipment is Always Organized

It is essential that all personal and group equipment be secured at all times. It is the responsibility of the individual to ensure that the equipment they have brought is in good repair and that they are aware of where it is. It is good practice to prepare for an exercise in advance. As an example, at dusk, retrieve the headlamp and any other equipment required to negate the task of going through packs in the dark.

Conforming to the Principles of Leave No Trace Camping

It is critical to ensure that the principles of Leave No Trace camping are followed. The Leave No Trace principles were covered in detail in EO M121.08 (Apply 'Leave No Trace' Camping, A-CR-CCP-701/PF-001, Chapter 10, Section 8). It is important to follow the Leave No Trace principles whenever training in the wilderness.

The principles of Leave No Trace camping are:

- Plan ahead and prepare.
- Travel and camp on durable surfaces.
- Dispose of waste properly.
- Leave what you find.
- Minimize campfire impacts.
- Respect wildlife.
- Be considerate of other visitors.

Cooking and Eating

All aspects of cooking and eating will be completed within the cooking area.

Before cooking or handling any food, be sure that the person washes their hands thoroughly.

If extra pots are available, put water on the stove immediately after the meal has finished cooking. This water can be used for making hot drinks later in the day.

Storing Garbage

Everything that goes into the field with the group, from socks to sunscreen, leaves the field with the group.

Keep track of individual garbage by storing it all in one bag. Keep the bag accessible within the pack in order to add to the waste whenever needed. This will negate putting apple cores and garbage into pack pockets. A bread bag or resealable plastic bag works well as a waste bag.

Ensure that all garbage is placed in the food hang at night.

Dealing With Food Scraps

Pay close attention to and retrieve any pieces of food that are dropped on the ground. This includes crumbs.

Food scraps, including leftovers, should never be buried. Animals will dig as soon as they smell it. This could happen before leaving the campsite.

Remember: Any and all food waste should be packed out.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

QUESTIONS

Q1. What does a campsite routine entail?

Q2. What is the correct procedure for dealing with garbage?

Q3. Why are food scraps not buried?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Campsite routine entails:

- organizing individual and group equipment;
- conforming to the principles of Leave No Trace camping;
- cooking and eating;
- storing garbage; and
- dealing with food scraps.

A2. The correct way to deal with garbage is to store it all in one re-sealable bag.

A3. Food scraps should not be buried because animals will smell the scraps and dig them up.

Teaching Point 4 **Discuss Campsite Departure Routine**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP details a step-by-step process of the campsite departure when on expedition training or corps exercise.

The importance of having a routine is crucial here as there may be little time to complete the departure routine.

CAMPSITE DEPARTURE ROUTINE

The following is a sample routine that can be used when the cadets are tasked to lead a campsite departure. These cadets will delegate a section to complete the following tasks:

- All cadets will strike their tents.
- Two cadets will dismantle campsite amenities.
- All cadets will organize their personal equipment.
- Two cadets will purify water for drinking during travel.
- One cadet will dismantle the cooking area and remove any food waste.
- Two cadets will ensure fire is extinguished.
- One cadet will remove any markings from washrooms/latrines.
- One cadet will erase all signs of occupancy.
- One cadet and a staff member will conduct a final sweep.

When these tasks have been completed the entire section will gather for further instruction.

When leaving any campsite, the site should look like there was never anyone there. This includes biodegradable material like fruit and vegetable leftovers. These will still take a very long time to decompose.

Striking Tents

It is advisable to leave the tents up a little longer in the morning to allow any condensation/water to dry before packing up.

To remove a tent from the campsite, one must first strip the tent site of all components belonging to the tent. Importance should be placed on removing pieces of string or rope that are used to tie down the structure. The sleeping surface should be returned to its original appearance (replacing sticks and stones removed for sleeping). Remove any left over garbage.

Dismantling Campsite Amenities

If a clothesline or other amenities were built, they should be dismantled. Do not cut ropes and be sure to remove any rope from the tree entirely.

Organizing Personal Equipment

Personal equipment should be packed shortly after waking, to ensure the task is completed and equipment is organized.

Pack all individual sleeping equipment prior to leaving the tent.

Dismantling Food Hang

The food hang should be dismantled when packing up personal equipment to ensure that individuals have their food.

The immediate area of the food hang should be checked to ensure that no waste has been left behind.

Purifying Water

Two cadets in the section shall be tasked to purify water for all members of the group to ensure everyone has a full canteen. This will also serve as a time management activity while packing.

Cooking and Eating

All members of the group shall ensure they have eaten a meal relatively close to departure time and have packaged and put away all food waste.

Ensuring Fire is Fully Extinguished

Extinguish a small fire by burning all the wood down to ash, then saturating the ash with water and scattering the ash broadly away from the campsite. Use a stick to stir up the ash and water. Stop burning the wood long before the requirement to put it out.

"Night logs" are not necessary as they will most likely only be half-burned in the morning.

Organizing Group Equipment

Establish what equipment members of the group will be carrying. Sharing the load is advantageous for a few reasons: the weight is spread out, packs are less bulky and the group must communicate with each other in order to set up and tear down camp.

Erasing Signs of Occupancy

Easy steps to erase the signs of occupancy:

1. Dismantle secondary fire rings at established campsites.
2. Disperse rocks and other natural objects to their original position.
3. Fluff the grass where tents were and fill in tent peg holes.
4. Use a fallen pine branch to sweep the sand and dirt of any footprints.

Conducting a Final Sweep of the Area

Inspect the ground after all equipment has been packed to ensure nothing is hidden in the grass or buried. A final sweep of the area will include:

- checking tent areas;
- checking garbage has been picked up;
- ensuring latrine/washroom area is clean; and
- scattering ash once the fire is completely out by using a trowel.

If using a civilian campsite, try to make the site more appealing to users. This will keep them from going to find a 'wilder' site.

Pack out any garbage and waste that was left by previous campers.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 4

QUESTIONS

Q1. When are the tents struck?

Q2. Why should everyone understand the routine at a campsite?

Q3. What is checked during the final sweep?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Tents are struck in the morning after waking. If tents are damp, they can be left a bit longer to dry out.

A2. Campsite routine should be understood by everyone to ensure that the campsite can be set up quickly and efficiently.

A3. During the final sweep, the following items are checked:

- tent areas;
- garbage has been picked up;
- latrine/washroom area is clean; and
- ash is scattered once the fire is completely out by using a trowel.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

QUESTIONS

Q1. What are some hazards to be considered when choosing a campsite?

Q2. What activities are completed when setting up a campsite?

Q3. What are the elements of a campsite departure routine?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. Hazards to consider are:

- fallen trees/branches,
- poisonous plants,
- insects, beehives and hornet’s nests,
- ant hills, and
- animal dens.

A2. The activities to be completed are:

- organizing and erecting tents;
- setting up a food hang;
- establishing a cooking area;

- setting up a clothesline;
- collecting water;
- gathering firewood;
- starting a fire;
- marking the washrooms/latrines; and
- cooking and eating.

A3. The campsite departure routine is:

- striking tents;
- dismantling campsite amenities;
- organizing personal equipment;
- dismantling food hang;
- purifying water;
- cooking and eating;
- ensure fire is fully extinguished;
- organizing group equipment;
- erasing signs of occupancy; and
- conducting a final sweep of the area.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 7 (326 PC).

CLOSING STATEMENT

The ability to move from campsite to campsite in an efficient way is important as the cadets could arrive at a campsite late in the day with minimum light and have to leave early the next morning. The key to an efficient routine is work and time management. These skills will assist the cadets in corps exercises and expedition training.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

Personal and group expedition equipment is outlined in PO 326 (Perform Expedition Skills).

The knowledge presented in this EO will enhance the cadets' participation in daily routine as part of the expedition training experience.

This EO has been allocated one period in the overall course period allocation. Each expedition centre may adjust this allocation to reflect the choice of activities, facilities and available resources at the expedition centre.

Timings for this EO will vary. While there is a requirement for some initial training, the focus should be on having the cadets practice hiking techniques through practical application.

REFERENCES

C2-009 (ISBN 0-684-85909-2) Harvey, M. (1999). *The National Outdoor Leadership School's Wilderness Guide*. New York, NY: Fireside Books.

C2-011 (ISBN 0-89886-910-2) McGivney, A. (2003). *Leave No Trace: A Guide to the New Wilderness Etiquette* (2nd ed.). Seattle, WA: The Mountaineers Books.

C2-016 (ISBN 1-4000-5309-9) Curtis, R. (2005). *The Backpackers Field Manual*. New York, NY: Three Rivers Press.

C2-051 (ISBN 978-0-7153-2254-3) Bagshaw, C. (2006). *The Ultimate Hiking Skills Manual*. Cincinnati, OH: David & Charles.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADETS

SILVER STAR

INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

SECTION 9

EO M326.07 – RECORD ENTRIES IN A JOURNAL

Total Time: 30 min

PREPARATION

PRE-LESSON INSTRUCTIONS

Resources needed for the delivery of this lesson are listed in the lesson specification located in A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 4. Specific uses for said resources are identified throughout the instructional guide within the TP for which they are required.

Review the lesson content and become familiar with the material prior to delivering the lesson.

Photocopy Annex A and distribute to each cadet.

PRE-LESSON ASSIGNMENT

N/A.

APPROACH

An interactive lecture was chosen for TPs 1 and 2 to introduce the journal and present background information.

A practical activity was chosen for TP 3 as it is an interactive way to provoke thought and stimulate interest in the journal.

INTRODUCTION

REVIEW

N/A.

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson the cadet shall have recorded entries in a journal during expedition training.

IMPORTANCE

It is important for cadets to understand the importance of recording entries in a journal, especially during expedition training. Completing entries in a journal records the cadet's involvement, not just their participation in the training. These entries provide a link between the knowledge learned throughout training and the direct experiences the cadet had.

Teaching Point 1 **Discuss Journals**

Time: 5 min Method: Interactive Lecture

This TP will take place in the evening while at the Expedition Centre. Team Instructors (TI) should ask the cadets to reflect on their previous experiences using journals.

Discuss how the cadets feel about previous experiences using a journal.

The cadets will be required to record entries in the journal during the evenings at the expedition centre.

When completing Leadership and Challenge, senior expeditions and international expeditions, cadets are required to keep a journal.

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN A JOURNAL, LOG AND RECORD BOOK

Journals, logs and record books are methods of recording information. Each records information about the expedition experience, from a different perspective.

Journals. Record personal thoughts, reactions to experiences, personal learning, and the participant's awareness of what happened in an experience. They are forms of expression that provide an avenue for reflection that is much different than speaking. Journals help people reflect on self-discovery, group dynamics, sense of place and professional development. They do not have a set format and can be a creative expression of the writer tying together experience and learning.

Some people who are reluctant to speak in front of a group find journals provide a place to express what is on their mind. Journals help open the thought process for some individuals, allowing them to speak freely about their entries at a later date.

Log. Logs are a written record of facts and events on a trip or activity. Logs contain information on what activities were accomplished and any incidents that took place. Logs also record factual information such as distance travelled, weather conditions, flora, fauna, wildlife encounters and campsite locations.

Logs are more formal forms of record keeping than journals and can often serve as legal documents in emergencies and critical incidents.

Record Book. A structured, fill-in-the-blanks document used to record the completion of specific training, skills and depth of experience.

THE PURPOSE OF JOURNALS

The purpose of journals is to allow the participant to record thoughts, feelings and experiences that allow the individual to grow and develop as a person.

TYPES OF JOURNALS

In addition to an individual's reflective journal, there are other journals which can be used in training. Examples of these are:

Group Journals. This type of journal is shared among participants. Each person takes a turn logging their impressions, thoughts and experiences. A person may also comment on someone else's entry. This type of

journal assists in fostering group cohesion and creativity. Issues may be brought to the attention of the whole group or used as topics during group reflection.

Project Journals. This type of journal has entries that are related to a future project to be accomplished by an individual or by the entire group. It is often used for long-term experiences and provides participants the opportunity to reflect on the process of working on a project.

Have the cadets brainstorm instances when each type of journal could be used.

JOURNAL ENVIRONMENT

The environment in which entries are recorded in a journal is of the utmost importance. In general, the journal environment should:

- provide each cadet with a minimum of 20 uninterrupted minutes;
- account for cadets who will require more than 20 minutes to complete an entry (eg, no training should be completed directly after);
- provide each cadet enough space to be free from other cadets; and
- allow each cadet to express their thoughts wherever they wish within a given set boundaries.

Journals should be thought of as public documents. References that are made to or about other people must be made in a respectful and positive manner.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 1

QUESTIONS

Q1. What is a journal?

Q2. What is a log?

Q3. What is a project journal?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. A journal records personal thoughts and reactions to experiences and personal learning, and creates awareness of what happened in an experience. It is a form of expression that provides an avenue for reflection that is much different than speaking. Journals help people reflect on self-discovery, group dynamics, sense of place and professional development.

A2. A log is a written record of facts and events on a trip or activity. Logs contain information on what activities were accomplished, and any incidents that took place. Logs also record factual information such as weather conditions, flora, fauna, wildlife encounters and campsite locations.

A3. This type of journal has entries that are related to a future project to be accomplished by an individual or by the entire group.

Teaching Point 2 **Describe a Journal**

Time: 10 min Method: Interactive Lecture

The Silver Star expedition journal uses both journal and log information in order to train cadets on the functions of recording information.

The purpose of the Silver Star expedition journal is threefold:

1. The journal will provide cadets with a training experience where they will take time to record personal experiences.
2. The journal will serve as a record of the cadets involvement in local expedition training. It will provide the link between the Army Cadet Program and their expedition experiences.
3. The journal will familiarize cadets with a new tool for their lives.

IMPORTANCE

Historically, logs and journals recorded a journey. Since then, they have been widely adopted among educators as a means of documenting personal development. The importance of a journal is to record activities and provide a chronological record of one's outdoor experiences which can serve as a tool for reflection on experience. The silver star expedition journal introduces elements of logs and journals.

INFORMATION REQUIRED IN THE SILVER STAR EXPEDITION JOURNAL

Information required in the journal includes:

Day and Date. The day of the trip. (eg. Day 2 of a 2 day trip) and the calendar date.

Mode of Travel. Record the mode of travel. How is the group travelling? Is the group hiking, biking or canoeing?

Time. Record the time the group woke up and went to bed. This will give a record of how long the days were. Record the start and finish time of the activity. This will be useful when debriefing and completing any reports required. It will also give an accurate estimate of the time required to make the trip at a given time of year (eg, canoeing in the spring will be faster than in the fall due to the melting snow).

Start and End Location. Record the start and end locations for the day. This should be a precise grid reference but can also be a description of the area.

Distance and Campsite Grid Reference (GR). The total distance travelled throughout the day and the grid reference of the campsite for the night.

Route Travelled. A chart with columns for the name of the trail or route, time it took to complete the section, how many kilometres the route was and a physical description of the route. The description could include any sections on the route that were difficult, if there were obstacles on sections, and the state of the trail.

Campsite Description. A description of the campsite and the area surrounding it. Does it require maintenance? Are there any special characteristics about it? Sufficient number of tent sites?

Weather. A written description of the weather including the temperature, cloud cover, wind speed, direction and a prediction for the short term.

Personal Goals. This is the place to set personal goals for the day and for the next day or few days.

Where Can I Use This Training? Is the training useful? Will the training be used in the future? Record where the training could be used and how it will benefit you.

Best Thing of the Day/Worst Thing of the Day/My Best Moments. A short description of the best and worst parts of the day and feelings felt.

Personal Reflections and Observations. Include anything with regard to the trip itself. Notes on weather, animals, and significant events can also be added. This is also a great place to record recurring themes and assess personal involvement. Incorporate any personal reflections or other observations not covered in other sections.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 2

QUESTIONS

Q1. Why are journals so important?

Q2. What is recorded in the times section?

Q3. What goes into the personal reflections section?

ANTICIPATED ANSWERS

A1. The importance of a journal is to record activities and provide a chronological record of one's outdoor experiences which can serve as a tool for showing a person's depth of experience.

A2. The times section records time the group woke up and went to bed. This will give a record of how long the days were and the start and finish time of the activity. This will be useful when debriefing and completing any reports required. It will also give an accurate estimate of the time required to make the trip at a given time of year (eg, canoeing in the spring will be faster than in the fall due to the melting snow).

A3. The personal reflection section is for any observation or thoughts not recorded in any other section.

Teaching Point 3 — **Have the Cadets Record Entries in a Journal During an Expedition**

Time: 10 min — Method: Practical Activity

ACTIVITY

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this activity is to familiarize the cadet with the Silver Star Expedition Journal. During expedition training cadets will make two entries in their journals.

RESOURCES

A variety of resources may be used during this activity. The writing and marking materials are not limited to this list.

There are many pages to the journal, although only the structured information page is covered within this lesson. The remainder of the journal is for free flowing thought.

- Silver Star Expedition Journal located at Annex A, and
- Pencils/pens.

ACTIVITY LAYOUT

N/A.

ACTIVITY INSTRUCTIONS

TIs will facilitate the journal activity as a group while cadets record comments into their own journals.

1. Distribute a journal located at Annex A to each cadet.
2. Have each cadet read and become familiar with the journal. Introduce the journal, which includes:
   a. a front page;
   b. a page of possible ideas that will provoke thoughts for writing during training;
   c. daily pages (one of which is to be completed each day following completion of taining);
   d. one extra page to be used after the expedition for any final thoughts or ideas that occurred throughout or after training; and
   e. a page for sketches, to be completed after expedition training.
3. Have the cadet record entries.

Within the journal, the page of possible ideas should be used as a guide, especially if a cadet is experiencing difficulty deciding what to write. Each entry should have a common theme.

SAFETY

N/A.

CONFIRMATION OF TEACHING POINT 3

The cadets' participation in the activity will serve as the confirmation of this TP.

END OF LESSON CONFIRMATION

The cadets' participation in recording entries in a journal will serve as the confirmation of this lesson.

CONCLUSION

HOMEWORK/READING/PRACTICE

N/A.

METHOD OF EVALUATION

This EO is assessed IAW A-CR-CCP-703/PG-001, Chapter 3, Annex B, Appendix 7 (326 PC).

CLOSING STATEMENT

Recording entries in a journal is a way for the cadets to express themselves and reflect freely, without speaking. There will always be individual differences within every group and a journal allows the cadets to express themselves using a variety of means. After expedition training, all the cadets will be given time to reflect on their expedition experiences.

INSTRUCTOR NOTES/REMARKS

The cadet will make two entries in the journal while at the expedition centre.

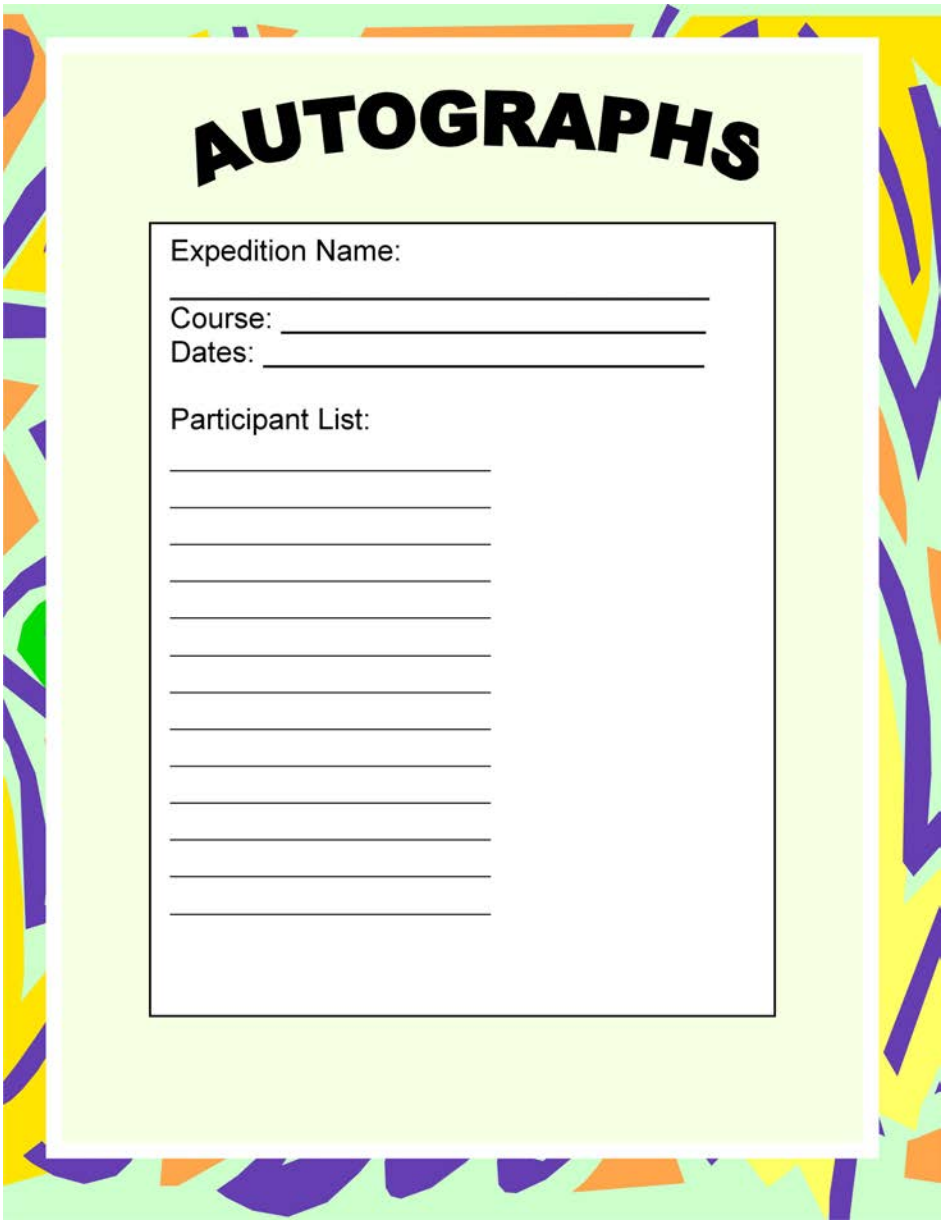
This EO has been allocated one period in the overall course period allocation. Each expedition centre may adjust this allocation to reflect the choice of activities, facilities and available resources at the expedition centre.

REFERENCES

C2-109 (ISBN 0-7872-6561-6) Sugerman, D., Dohery, K., Garvey, D., & Gass, M. (2000). *Reflective Learning: Theory and Practice*. Dubuque, IO: Kendall/Hunt Publishing Company.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SILVER STAR EXPEDITION JOURNAL



SILVER STAR EXPEDITION
JOURNAL
Name: _____

Individual Trip Journal

1. **Day:** _____ **Date:** _____

   Mode of Travel (canoe, bike, hike):

   _____

2. **Time:** Wake up: _____ Bedtime: _____

   Time: On Route: _____ Off Route: _____

3. **Start Location:** _____

   End Location: _____

4. **Distance:** _____ **Campsite GR:** _____

5. **Route Travelled:**

Name of Route (trail, lake, river, portage)	Time	Km	Description

6. **Campsite Description:**

7. **Weather:**

8. **Personal Goals:**

9. **Where can I use this training?:**

10. **Best Thing of the Day/Worst Thing of the Day, My Best Moments:**

11. **Personal Reflections and Observations (natural environment, leadership, personal involvement, recurring themes):**

(Copy enough pages for each day of the expedition activity)

Possible ideas:

- Feelings that occur on an expedition,
- Thoughts on leadership during an expedition,
- Feelings about acting as a leader,
- Seeing peers act as a leader,
- Leadership of the staff,
- Accomplishments at the end of the day,
- Challenges,
- Barriers or conflicts the group is facing,
- Teamwork when canoeing,
- Navigation and hiking,
- Mountain biking,
- Concern about the activities for tomorrow,
- Responsibility to peers,
- Responsibility to the environment,
- Learning from mistakes,
- I could be doing something different with my summer,
- The importance of teamwork on an expedition,
- Future opportunities at the corps, and

EXTRA
THOUGHTS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK